

SONY

MVS-3000 System (With ICP-3000 Control Panel)

**SONY**<sup>®</sup>

Multi Format Switcher System

# MVS-3000 System

(With ICP-3000 Control Panel)

MVS-3000

ICP-3000

MKS-6550

User's Guide English

Software Version 1.00 and Later  
1st Edition

MVS-3000 System  
(SY)  
4-444-918-11 (1)

**Sony Corporation**

<http://www.sony.net/>  
Printed on recycled paper.

Printed in Japan  
2012.09 32  
© 2012



4444918110

## NOTICE TO USERS

© 2012 Sony Corporation. All rights reserved. This manual or the software described herein, in whole or in part, may not be reproduced, translated or reduced to any machine readable form without prior written approval from Sony Corporation.

SONY CORPORATION PROVIDES NO WARRANTY WITH REGARD TO THIS MANUAL, THE SOFTWARE OR OTHER INFORMATION CONTAINED HEREIN AND HEREBY EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE WITH REGARD TO THIS MANUAL, THE SOFTWARE OR SUCH OTHER INFORMATION. IN NO EVENT SHALL SONY CORPORATION BE LIABLE FOR ANY INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR SPECIAL DAMAGES, WHETHER BASED ON TORT, CONTRACT, OR OTHERWISE, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THIS MANUAL, THE SOFTWARE OR OTHER INFORMATION CONTAINED HEREIN OR THE USE THEREOF.

Sony Corporation reserves the right to make any modification to this manual or the information contained herein at any time without notice. The software described herein may also be governed by the terms of a separate user license agreement.

---

# Table of Contents

---

## Chapter 1 Overview

<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>Features .....</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>Basic Video Processing .....</b>	<b>13</b>
Transitions.....	13
Keys .....	15
Wipes .....	15
DME Wipes .....	15
Frame Memory.....	15
Color Backgrounds .....	15
Copy and Swap .....	16
Color Corrector .....	16
Side Flags.....	16
<b>Creation of Special Effects and Management of Data and Operations .....</b>	<b>16</b>
Controlling External Devices.....	16
Keyframes .....	17
Snapshots .....	17
Utilities.....	17
Shotboxes.....	17
Macros.....	17
File Operations.....	17
<b>Setup .....</b>	<b>18</b>
<b>System Configuration Examples .....</b>	<b>19</b>
MVS/ICP System Configuration .....	19
Connection Example.....	20

---

## Chapter 2 Names and Functions of Parts

<b>Names and Functions of Parts of the Control Panel .....</b>	<b>21</b>
Control Panel Configuration .....	21
Cross-Point Control Block.....	22
Transition Control Block .....	24
Device Control Block .....	26

Flexi Pad .....	28
<b>Names and Functions of Parts of the Menu.....</b>	<b>30</b>
Overview .....	30
Top Menu List.....	30
Menu Screen .....	30
Top Menu Window .....	33
Numeric Keypad Window .....	34
Keyboard Window .....	35
Color Palette Window .....	36
<b>Basic Menu Operations .....</b>	<b>36</b>
Recalling Menus .....	36
Selecting Menus.....	37
Selecting List Items.....	37
Setting Parameters.....	37
Returning Parameters to Default Values.....	38
Operation with a Mouse.....	38
Using Shortcut Menus.....	38
<b>Power Supply and Connectors.....</b>	<b>39</b>
MVS-3000 Multi Format Switcher Processor.....	39
ICP-3000 Control Panel .....	42

---

## Chapter 3 Signal Selection and Transitions

<b>Video Processing Flow.....</b>	<b>44</b>
<b>Signal Selection .....</b>	<b>45</b>
Basics of Signal Selection.....	45
Bus Selection.....	45
Signal Assignment and Selection.....	45
Inhibiting Cross-Point Button Operations.....	46
Signal Name Display .....	47
<b>Transitions.....</b>	<b>47</b>
Transition Types .....	47
<b>Procedure for Basic Transition Operation .....</b>	<b>48</b>
<b>Key Priority Setting.....</b>	<b>49</b>
Setting the Key Priority in the Transition Control Block .....	49
Setting the Key Priority by a Menu Operation .....	50

Displaying the Key Output Status and Key Priority.....	50
<b>Super Mix Settings .....</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>Color Matte Settings .....</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>Executing a Transition.....</b>	<b>51</b>
Transition Indicator Function .....	52
Setting the Transition Rate .....	52
Pattern Limits.....	53
Executing an Auto Transition.....	55
Executing a Transition with the Fader Lever (Manual Transition).....	55
Combining Auto and Manual Transitions.....	56
Non-Sync State.....	56
Fader Lever Operation in Bus Fixed Mode .....	56
<b>Transition Preview .....</b>	<b>57</b>
<b>Independent Key Transitions .....</b>	<b>57</b>
Basic Independent Key Transition Operations .....	59
Setting the Independent Key Transition Rate .....	60
<b>Fade-to-Black.....</b>	<b>60</b>

---

## Chapter 4 Keys

<b>Overview .....</b>	<b>62</b>
Key Types.....	62
Key Modifiers.....	63
Key Memory.....	64
Key Default.....	64
<b>Key Setting Operations Using Menus .....</b>	<b>64</b>
Key Setting Menus .....	65
Key Type Setting .....	65
Selecting the Key Fill and Key Source.....	66
Chroma Key Composition and Basic Settings.....	67
<b>Key Adjustments (Menus) .....</b>	<b>68</b>
Chroma Key Adjustments.....	68
Key Edge Modifications .....	70
Mask .....	73
Key Modify Clear.....	74
Blink Function .....	74

<b>Key Adjustments (Flexi Pad).....</b>	<b>74</b>
<b>Resizer .....</b>	<b>76</b>
Two-Dimensional Transformations and Rotation of Keys.....	77
Resizer Interpolation Settings.....	78
Resizer Crop/Border Settings .....	79
Applying Resizer Effects .....	80
<b>Key Snapshots .....</b>	<b>81</b>
Key Snapshot Operations .....	81

---

## Chapter 5 Wipes

<b>Overview .....</b>	<b>83</b>
<b>Basic Procedure for Wipe Settings .....</b>	<b>83</b>
Wipe Pattern Selection .....	83
Setting Wipe Modifiers.....	83
Wipe Modify Clear .....	87
<b>Wipe Settings for Independent Key Transitions .....</b>	<b>87</b>
Basic Procedure for Independent Key Transition Wipe Settings.....	88
Setting Independent Key Transition Wipe Modifiers .....	88
<b>Wipe Snapshots .....</b>	<b>89</b>
Wipe Snapshot Operations with the Menus .....	89
<b>Wipe Pattern Operations in the Flexi Pad.....</b>	<b>90</b>
Recalling a Wipe Snapshot.....	90
Selecting the Wipe Pattern.....	90
Editing the Wipe Pattern.....	91
Saving, Canceling, and Deleting Edited Wipe Patterns .....	92

---

## Chapter 6 DME Wipes

<b>Overview .....</b>	<b>93</b>
Types of DME Wipe Pattern .....	93
DME Wipe Pattern Variations and Modifiers .....	94
Relation between DME Wipes and Other Effects.....	94

<b>Basic Procedure for DME Wipe</b>	
<b>Settings</b> .....	<b>95</b>
DME Wipe Pattern Selection.....	95
Setting DME Wipe Modifiers.....	95
DME Wipe Modify Clear .....	97
<b>DME Wipe Settings for Independent Key</b>	
<b>Transitions</b> .....	<b>97</b>
Basic Procedure for Independent Key	
Transition DME Wipe Settings .....	98
Setting Independent Key Transition DME	
Wipe Modifiers.....	98
<b>DME Wipe Snapshots</b> .....	<b>99</b>
DME Wipe Snapshot Operations with the	
Menus .....	99
<b>DME Wipe Pattern Operations in the Flexi</b>	
<b>Pad</b> .....	<b>99</b>
Recalling a DME Wipe Snapshot .....	99
Selecting the DME Wipe Pattern.....	99
Editing the DME Wipe Pattern .....	100
Saving, Canceling, and Deleting DME Wipe	
Snapshots.....	101
Clip Creation .....	114
Creating and Handling Frame Memory	
Folders .....	114
Clip Output.....	114
Recording and Playback of Ancillary	
Data.....	115
<b>Clip Transition Operations</b> .....	<b>115</b>
<b>Image Data Management</b> .....	<b>117</b>
Pair File Processing.....	117
Moving Files .....	117
Deleting Files .....	117
Renaming Files .....	118
<b>Using an External HDD</b> .....	<b>118</b>
HDD Formatting .....	118
Saving Files.....	118
Recalling Files.....	119
<b>Managing Images Using a DDR/VTR</b> .....	<b>119</b>
Using a DDR/VTR for High-speed Backup	
and Restoring .....	119
Extracting Images from a Video Tape .....	120

---

## Chapter 7 Frame Memory

<b>Overview</b> .....	<b>102</b>
<b>Still Image Operations</b> .....	<b>103</b>
Preparations.....	103
Interpreting the Frame Memory Menu .....	103
Selecting an Input Image .....	105
Selecting Outputs and Target Frame	
Memory .....	106
Capturing and Saving an Input Image .....	106
Recalling Still Images (Recall) .....	107
Image Output .....	108
Continuously Capturing Still Images	
(Record).....	109
Recalling a Continuous Sequence of Still	
Images (Animation).....	110
<b>Frame Memory Clip Function</b> .....	<b>111</b>
<b>Frame Memory Clip Operations</b> .....	<b>111</b>
Preparations for Operation.....	111
Recalling Clips.....	112
Clip Playback.....	112

---

## Chapter 8 Color Backgrounds, Copy and Swap, and Other Settings

<b>Color Background</b> .....	<b>122</b>
Basic Color Background Setting	
Operations.....	122
<b>Copy and Swap</b> .....	<b>123</b>
Overview of Copy and Swap .....	123
Copy and Swap Operations.....	124
<b>Misc Menu Operations</b> .....	<b>125</b>
Port Settings for Control from an External	
Device.....	125
Safe Title Settings .....	125
Displaying a List of Transition Rates and	
Changing the Settings.....	126
<b>AUX Menu Operations</b> .....	<b>126</b>
AUX Bus Settings.....	126
<b>Router Control Menu Operations</b> .....	<b>127</b>
Checking the List of Inputs for Each	
Destination.....	127
Switching the Source for Each	
Destination.....	127

---

## Chapter 9 Special Functions

<b>Side Flags .....</b>	<b>128</b>
Overview.....	128
Side Flag Settings.....	128
Wipe Action on Images with Side Flags .....	129
DME Wipe Action for an Image with Side Flags .....	129

---

## Chapter 10 External Devices

<b>Control of External Devices .....</b>	<b>131</b>
Shared Functions for External Device Control.....	131
<b>Control of P-Bus Devices .....</b>	<b>132</b>
Creating and Editing the P-Bus Timeline .....	132
P-Bus Trigger.....	133
<b>Control of GPI Devices .....</b>	<b>133</b>
GPI Timeline Creation and Editing .....	133
<b>Control of VTRs, Extended VTRs, and Disk Recorders.....</b>	<b>134</b>
Controlling the Tape/Disk Transport.....	135
Checking VTR/Disk Recorder/Extended VTR Information.....	136
Cueup & Play.....	137
VTR/Disk Recorder/Extended VTR Timeline .....	139
Disk Recorder/Extended VTR File Operations .....	142

---

## Chapter 11 Keyframes

<b>Regions .....</b>	<b>144</b>
<b>Registers .....</b>	<b>144</b>
<b>Overview of Keyframes.....</b>	<b>145</b>
Effects.....	145
Saving and Recalling Effects.....	145
Effect Attributes.....	145
Effect Editing.....	145
Time Settings.....	146

Paths.....	147
Effect Execution .....	148
Master Timelines .....	148
Sequence of Keyframe Operations .....	148
<b>Displaying the Timeline Menu.....</b>	<b>149</b>
Interpreting the Timeline Menu.....	149
Settings in the Timeline Menu.....	150
<b>Recalling a Register .....</b>	<b>150</b>
<b>Specifying the Region and Edit Points .....</b>	<b>152</b>
Selecting the Region in which Editing Applies .....	152
Specifying an Edit Point .....	153
<b>Creating and Editing Keyframes.....</b>	<b>153</b>
Keyframe Creation and Editing in the Flexi Pad.....	153
Creation.....	154
Insertion .....	154
Modification .....	154
Deletion.....	156
Movement.....	156
Copying.....	157
Pause .....	157
Keyframe Loop (Repeated Execution of a Specified Range) .....	157
Undoing an Edit Operation.....	158
Duration Mode Setting .....	158
<b>Time Settings.....</b>	<b>159</b>
Setting the Keyframe Duration.....	159
Setting the Effect Duration .....	159
Delay Setting .....	159
<b>Path Setting .....</b>	<b>159</b>
Basic Procedure for Path Settings.....	159
<b>Executing Effects .....</b>	<b>161</b>
Executing an Effect in the Flexi Pad .....	161
Setting the Run Mode .....	161
<b>Saving Effects .....</b>	<b>162</b>
<b>Creating and Saving a Master Timeline.....</b>	<b>162</b>
Creating and Saving a Master Timeline in the Flexi Pad.....	162
Creating and Saving a Master Timeline with the Menu.....	163

<b>Register Operations in the Menus</b> .....	<b>164</b>
Effect Attribute Settings .....	164
Effect Status Display.....	164
Effect Register Editing.....	164
Displaying a List of Effect Registers for Editing .....	166

---

## Chapter 12 Snapshots

<b>Overview</b> .....	<b>167</b>
Snapshot Types .....	167
Snapshot Attributes .....	167
<b>Snapshot Operations in the Flexi Pad</b> .....	<b>168</b>
Banks and Registers .....	168
Saving and Recalling Snapshots .....	169
<b>Snapshot Operations in the Menus</b> .....	<b>171</b>
Selecting a Region or Reference Region in a Menu.....	171
Setting Snapshot Attributes.....	171
Snapshot Status Display.....	173
Setting Key Snapshot Attributes.....	173
Creating and Saving a Master Snapshot ...	173
Editing Snapshot Registers .....	174
Displaying a List of Snapshot Registers for Editing .....	174
Operations in the Misc >Snapshot Menu.....	174

---

## Chapter 13 Utility/Shotbox

<b>Utility Execution</b> .....	<b>176</b>
Executing a Utility with Cross-Point Buttons in the 2nd Row.....	176
<b>Shotbox</b> .....	<b>176</b>
<b>Shotbox Register Creation</b> .....	<b>177</b>
Creating a Shotbox Register in the Flexi Pad .....	177
Creating a Shotbox Register using the Menus .....	178
<b>Shotbox Execution</b> .....	<b>179</b>
Executing a Shotbox in the Flexi Pad .....	179

Executing a Shotbox Function with Cross- Point Buttons in the 2nd Row .....	179
<b>Shotbox Register Editing</b> .....	<b>179</b>

---

## Chapter 14 Macros

<b>Macros</b> .....	<b>180</b>
Overview .....	180
Macro Creation and Editing .....	180
Macro Execution .....	182
<b>Macro Operations in the Flexi Pad</b> .....	<b>182</b>
Recalling a Macro Register and Executing a Macro.....	182
Creating and Editing a Macro .....	183
<b>Editing Macros using Menus</b> .....	<b>186</b>
Macro Register Editing .....	186
Online Editing of Macro Events .....	186
Offline Editing of Macro Events.....	188
<b>Macro Attachment Assigning</b> .....	<b>190</b>
Setting and Canceling a Macro Attachment.....	191
Displaying the Macro Attachment List ....	193
Executing a Macro by Macro Attachment.....	193
<b>Menu Macros</b> .....	<b>194</b>
Recalling a Menu Macro Register and Executing a Menu Macro .....	194
Creating and Editing a Menu Macro.....	196
Menu Macro Register Editing .....	198
<b>Macro Timeline</b> .....	<b>198</b>
Creating and Editing a Macro Timeline....	199

---

## Chapter 15 Files

<b>Overview of File Operations</b> .....	<b>200</b>
<b>Operations on Individual Files</b> .....	<b>202</b>
Viewing Detailed File Information .....	202
Selecting Regions.....	203
Selecting a Device for Operations .....	203
Saving Files.....	203
Loading Files.....	204

Copying Files.....	204
Renaming Files.....	205
Deleting Files.....	205
Saving the List of Frame Memory Files to a Local Disk or Removable Disk.....	206
<b>File Batch Operations .....</b>	<b>206</b>
Batch Saving Files .....	206
Batch Loading Files.....	207
Batch Copying Files .....	207
<b>Importing and Exporting Files .....</b>	<b>207</b>
Importing Frame Memory Data.....	207
Exporting Frame Memory Data.....	208
<b>Directory Operations.....</b>	<b>208</b>
Creating a New Directory.....	208
Renaming a Directory.....	209
Deleting a Directory .....	209
<b>Copying Files between Different Unit IDs.....</b>	<b>209</b>
<b>Saving Files Recalled by Autoload.....</b>	<b>209</b>

---

## Chapter 16 System Setup

<b>Setup for the Whole System.....</b>	<b>211</b>
<b>Network Settings.....</b>	<b>211</b>
Setting the Group ID.....	211
Authenticating the IP Address Automatically .....	211
<b>Setting the Signal Format.....</b>	<b>211</b>
Setting the Signal Format .....	211
Switching the Input Reference Signal for HD System.....	212
Setting Conversion Formats .....	212
Setting the Screen Aspect Ratio .....	213
<b>Selecting the State After Power-on .....</b>	<b>213</b>
Saving and Recalling Setup Data .....	214
Selecting the State at Start-up.....	214
Saving User-Defined Settings.....	214
Setting Automatic Loading of Register Data at Power On (Autoload Function).....	214
<b>Reset and Initialization .....</b>	<b>215</b>
<b>Installation and Device Setup .....</b>	<b>215</b>
Installing Software.....	215

Saving a Frame Memory Clip with Ancillary Data .....	216
Setting the Number of Format Converter Input/Outputs.....	216
<b>System Maintenance.....</b>	<b>216</b>
Setting the Date and Time .....	216
Using Removable Disks .....	216
Carrying Out the Primary Setting .....	216
Formatting a Local Disk .....	217
Locking the Setup Menu Settings.....	217
Locking File Loading Operations.....	218

---

## Chapter 17 Control Panel Setup

<b>Overall Control Panel Settings .....</b>	<b>219</b>
Interchanging the Bank Order or Disabling Operation.....	219
Linking Switcher Bus and Router Destination .....	219
Linking Transitions between Keyers .....	220
Linking the Next Transition Selection Buttons .....	220
Assigning Regions to Region Selection Buttons in the Flexi Pad .....	220
Setting Transition Control Block Button Assignments .....	221
Assigning Devices or Functions to the Region Selection Buttons of the Device Control Block (Trackball) .....	222
Inhibiting Utility Bus and Key Operations .....	222
Assigning Functions to the Buttons in the Flexi Pad.....	222
<b>Cross-Point Settings.....</b>	<b>223</b>
Creating Cross-Point Assign Tables.....	223
Setting the Cross-point Button Color for Each Signal.....	225
Copying Cross-Point Assign Tables.....	225
Selecting Cross-Point Assign Tables.....	226
Exporting Source Names and Destination Names.....	226
Assigning a Cross-Point Button to Enable/ Disable Side Flags.....	226



Making Vertical Blanking Interval Adjustment and Through Mode Settings .....	247
Making Safe Title Settings .....	247
Cropping the Image to a 4:3 Aspect Ratio in an HD System .....	247
Selecting the Output to be Used as the Format Converter .....	248
Setting the Format Converter Outputs .....	248
Making Settings for the Multi Viewer .....	248
<b>Settings Relating to Video Switching .....</b>	<b>250</b>
Selecting the Bank to Make the Settings .....	250
<b>Settings Relating to Keys, Wipes, Frame Memory and Color Correction .....</b>	<b>251</b>
Settings for the Show Key Function .....	251
Settings for Key Auto Drop Function .....	251
Automatically Naming and Saving to Frame Memory .....	251
Selecting the Bank to Make the Settings .....	251
<b>Settings Relating to Function Links .....</b>	<b>252</b>
Setting a Cross-Point Button Link .....	252
Making Link Table Settings .....	253
Linking Cross-Point Buttons and GPI Output Ports .....	253
Setting Links between M/E Banks .....	253
Making a Link Setting for Key Transition .....	254
<b>Interfacing with External Devices .....</b>	<b>254</b>
Making 9-Pin Port Device Interface Settings .....	254
Making Switcher Processor GPI Input Settings .....	254
Making Switcher Processor GPI Output Settings .....	255
Enabling or Disabling AUX Bus Control .....	256
Selecting the Mode for Turning Off Keys upon Receiving the Editor Command .....	256

---

## Chapter 19 Router Interface and Tally Setup

<b>Router Interface Settings .....</b>	<b>257</b>
Assigning Switcher Inputs and Outputs to S-Bus Space .....	257
<b>Tally Group Settings .....</b>	<b>257</b>
<b>Wiring Settings .....</b>	<b>258</b>
Making New Wiring Settings .....	258
Changing Wiring Settings .....	258
Deleting Wiring Settings .....	258
Sorting Wiring Settings .....	258
<b>Tally Generation Settings .....</b>	<b>258</b>
Making New Tally Generation Settings .....	258
Modifying Tally Generation .....	259
Deleting Tally Generation Settings .....	259
<b>Tally Copy Settings .....</b>	<b>259</b>
Making New Tally Copy Settings .....	259
Modifying Tally Copy Settings .....	259
Deleting Tally Copy Settings .....	259
<b>Serial Tally Settings .....</b>	<b>259</b>
Setting or Changing the Serial Tally Settings .....	259
Making the Serial Tally Source Address Settings .....	260

---

## Chapter 20 User Setup

<b>Source Patch .....</b>	<b>261</b>
Sequence of Source Patch Operations .....	261
Exporting a User Source Name File to a Removable Disk .....	261
Creating a Patch Table (Conversion Table) .....	261
Replacing Signal Pairs Using the Patch Table .....	262

---

## Chapter 21 Diagnosis

### Checking the Communications

<b>Status .....</b>	<b>263</b>
Communications Status Display .....	263

---

## Appendix

### Wipe Pattern List..... 264

Wipe Pattern List .....	264
DME Wipe Pattern List .....	264
Resizer DME Wipe Pattern List .....	265

### Menu Tree .....

M/E-1 Menu.....	267
PGM/PST Menu.....	269
Color Bkgd Menu .....	270
AUX Menu.....	270
Frame Memory Menu .....	271
Copy/Swap Menu.....	271
Misc Menu .....	272
Router Menu .....	272
Device Menu.....	272
Macro Menu.....	272
Key Frame Menu .....	273
Effect Menu .....	273
Snapshot Menu.....	274
Shotbox Menu.....	276
File Menu.....	276
User Setup Menu.....	277
Engineering Setup Menu.....	278
Diagnostic Menu.....	281

### Menus of Disabled Operations and Settings .....

<b>Settings .....</b>	<b>281</b>
<b>Menu Access by Pressing a Button Twice .....</b>	<b>286</b>

### Simple Connection of the MKS-8080/8082

<b>AUX Bus Remote Panel .....</b>	<b>288</b>
Procedure for Simple Connection.....	288
Setting Status of the MKS-8080/8082 in Simple Connection .....	288

### Macro File Editing Rules .....

Macro File Syntax.....	289
------------------------	-----

Syntax of Event and Continue Statements.....	289
File Name .....	290
Saving and Recalling a File .....	290
Errors.....	290
Correspondence between Events and Symbols .....	290
Symbols and Parameters .....	291
Example of File Contents.....	295

### About the Macro Attachment List

<b>Display .....</b>	<b>295</b>
M/E and PGM/PST Banks .....	295
Other Blocks .....	296

### Menu Operations Not Recorded in a Menu Macro..... 296

### Data Saved by [Setup Define] and [Initial Status Define] .....

<b>..... 297</b>	<b>297</b>
Data Saved by [Setup Define].....	297
Data Saved by [Initial Status Define] .....	298

### Error Messages .....

<b>..... 298</b>	<b>298</b>
Error Messages Displayed in the Error Status/Error Log Menu .....	299
Error Messages Appearing in a Message Box.....	300
Error Messages Shown in the Error Information Menu.....	309

### Maintenance .....

<b>..... 309</b>	<b>309</b>
Exchanging Button Labels .....	309
Care of the Control Panel.....	310

### Index .....

# Overview

## Chapter

# 1

## Introduction

This manual is the User's Guide for the MVS-3000 Multi Format Switcher system.

This manual principally describes operations when using the ICP-3000 control panel.

### Device and system nomenclature

#### Principal components and naming

The formal product names of the principal components of the MVS-3000 system, and the terms used in this manual are as follows.

Formal product name	Term used in this manual
MVS-3000 Multi Format Switcher Processor	Switcher and switcher processor
ICP-3000 Control Panel	Control panel

#### System nomenclature

The following terms are used for systems, depending on the combination of installed options, and the signal format.

System configuration and features	System nomenclature
System with settings that support HDTV format	HD system
System with settings that support SDTV format	SD system

## Features

The MVS-3000 Multi Format Switcher system boasts extensible high performance and multifunctionality. The following are some of the principal features of this system.

### System configuration flexibility

#### Multiformat support

This system supports both HDTV and SDTV signal formats.

The format selection can be switched by a simple control panel operation.

#### Powerful external device interfaces

By connecting to a Sony routing switcher or similar, a large system can be built. It is also possible to operate other equipment, including VTRs and disk recorders, from a switcher via a 9-pin serial port.

#### Powerful tally system

The complete system, including the routing switcher, provides an all-inclusive tally system. The system can be adapted to different applications and settings using multiple tally outputs, including both on-air and recording tallies.

#### Format converter board mounting support

An optional MKS-6550 format converter can be installed in the switcher to provide up-conversion, down-conversion, and cross-conversion functions when importing/exporting signals.

8-input/0-output or 4-input/2-output groupings are supported.

#### Large-capacity data storage

The control panel is equipped with a flash memory drive (called "local disk") as standard for storing parameter data, switcher frame memory static images and other material. USB-compatible storage devices (called "removable disks") can also be connected to the control panel for storing data.

### Comprehensive video manipulation

#### M/E banks

Each M/E (mix/effects) bank and PGM/PST (program/preset) bank is equipped with four keyers, and each keyer is capable not only of chroma keying, but also independent key transitions separate from the background transitions.

### Powerful frame memory functions

The frame memory can hold approximately 1000 frames in an HDTV system (approximately 2000 frames in 720P/59.94 format), approximately 5000 frames in an SDTV system in 480i/59.94 format, or approximately 4000 frames in 576i/50 format, and allows eight frames to be recalled simultaneously.

### Multi viewer function

Equipped with two-system multi viewer function, as standard, for displaying a window split into 10 subwindows or 4 subwindows.

### Designed for use in a live broadcasting environment

#### High-performance user interface

- An organic EL display with high visibility is used for the source name displays.
- The buttons in the Multifunction Flexi Pad (hereinafter called “Flexi Pad”) and transition control blocks use color backlit LCD displays. The signal names, and graphical representations of the patterns associated with buttons provide intuitive feedback, and allow the immediate decisions that are required in a live operating environment.

#### Backup power supply

Equipped with two backup power supplies, as standard. This alleviates the risk of power supply problems for improved reliability during live operations.

## Basic Video Processing

This section introduces basic functions used for video processing on the switcher.

### Transitions

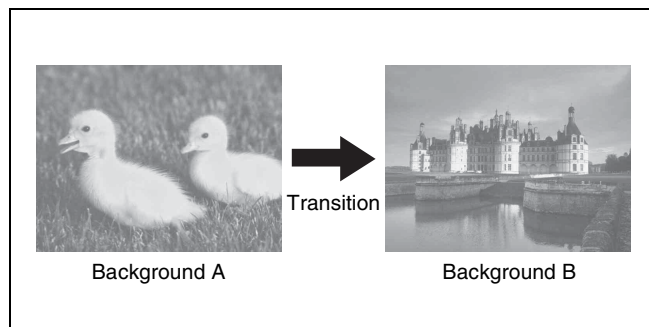
In the M/E banks and PGM/PST bank, the switch from the current video stream (appearing on the corresponding program monitor) to a new video stream is referred to as a transition.

In the M/E banks and PGM/PST bank, you can change one of the images, the background, and keys 1 to 4 (downstream keys 1 to 4 in the PGM/PST bank), and also vary combinations of these simultaneously.

The following are examples of transition.

### Changing the background

A background transition switches from the video currently selected on the background A bus (the current video) to the video selected on the background B bus (the new video).



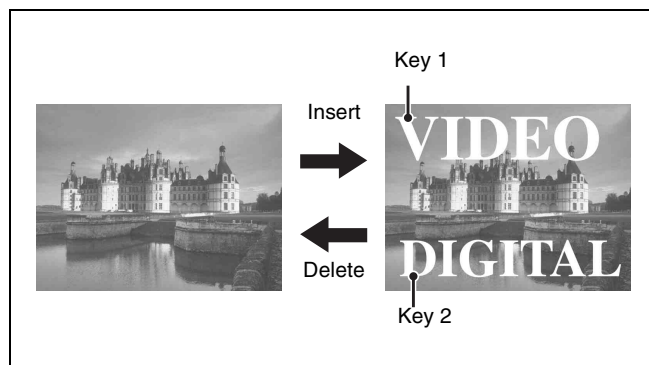
In the default selection of flip-flop mode (☞ p. 56), the background always switches in the direction from the A bus to the B bus. When the transition completes, the cross-point selections on the A and B buses are interchanged.

### Inserting and deleting a key

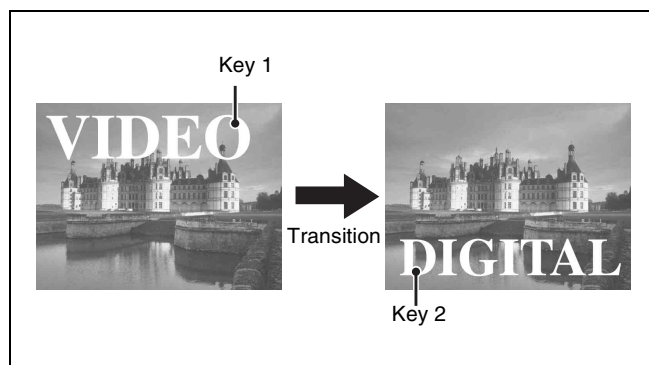
You can insert one or more of the four keys (downstream keys on the PGM/PST bank).

If you select a key which is already inserted, the transition will delete the key.

A simultaneous combination of deleting and inserting keys is also possible.



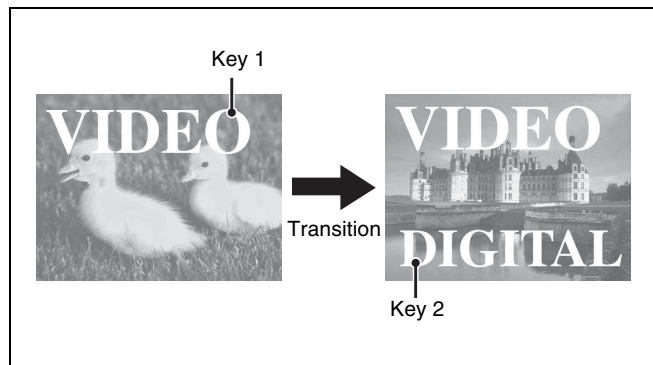
Inserting or deleting key 1 and key 2



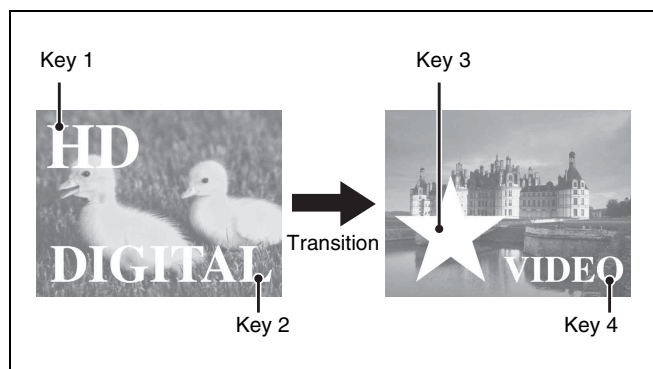
Deleting key 1 and inserting key 2

## Simultaneously changing the background and keys

You can change one or more of the four keys (downstream keys on the PGM/PST bank) and the background at the same time.



Changing the background and key 2 simultaneously



Changing the background and keys 1 to 4 simultaneously

Selecting the transition type determines the way in which the transition occurs. The following transition types are available.

- Mix
- NAM (non-additive mix)
- Super mix
- Preset color mix (color matte)
- Wipe
- DME wipe
- Clip transition
- Cut

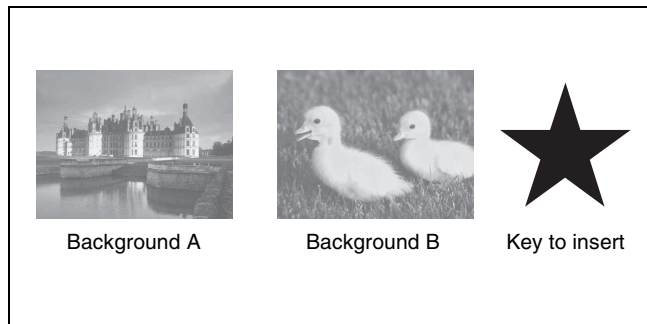
There are two modes of executing a transition: an auto transition by button operation or a manual transition using the fader lever. It is also possible to combine these two modes.

## Independent key transitions

In addition to common transitions, it is possible to carry out independent transitions on the keys of the M/E banks and PGM/PST bank. These are called “independent key transitions.”

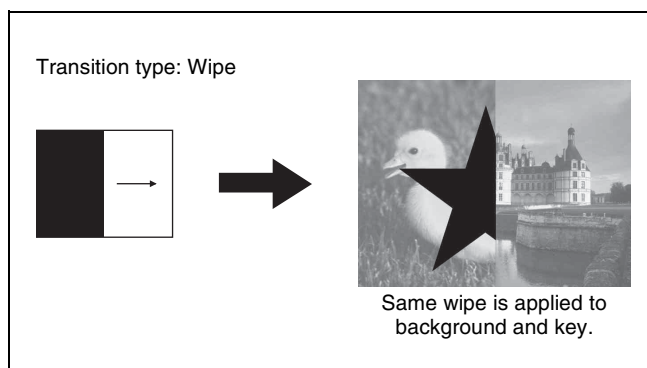
By carrying out an independent key transition in combination with a common transition, different transition types can be used for the background and keys. The following compares the independent key transition with a common transition, taking a simultaneous change of the background and key as an example.

## Video used in the transition



## Effect of a common transition

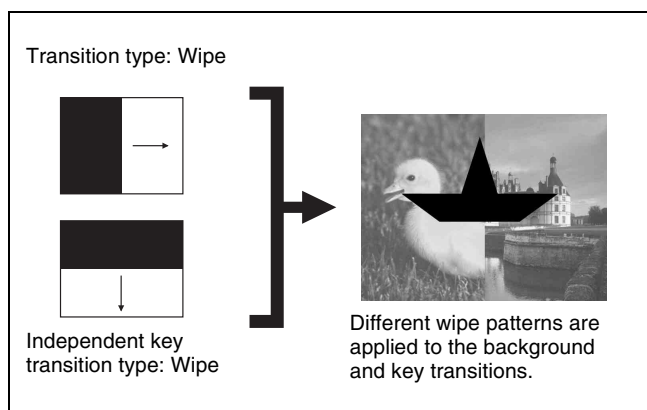
In the case shown in the previous illustration, carrying out a common transition produces the following change in the image.



Effect of a common transition

## Effect with use of an independent key transition

The key is inserted with an independent key transition as the background changes with a common transition, providing the following result.



Effect of a background transition and independent key transition

For details, see [Chapter 3 “Signal Selection and Transitions”](#) (🔗 p. 44).

---

## Keys

A key is an effect in which a part of the background image is replaced by an image or superimposed text. The signal determining how the background is cut out is termed “key source,” and the signal that replaces the cut-out part is termed “key fill.” The system component responsible for processing a key is referred to as a “keyer.”

For the four keyers on each switcher bank, you can use the following key types (i.e., methods of processing the key source).

- Luminance key
- Linear key
- Color vector key
- Chroma key
- Key wipe pattern key

## Key modifiers

You can apply borders and other modifiers to the edge of the key image.

## Masks

A mask allows a part of the image to be masked by the background or a key. If unwanted holes occur in the background, or if a key is not the desired shape, you can correct the problem with a mask.

## Resizer

This function allows you to apply effects, such as zoom, movement, or aspect ratio change to a part of a created key. You can use the following operations.

- Two-dimensional transform of a key
- Rotation of keys
- Resizer interpolation settings
- Resizer crop/border settings
- Resizer effect settings (mosaic, defocus)

For details, see [Chapter 4 “Keys”](#) (🔗 p. 62).

### Notes

Resizer and key edge cannot be used on some keyers.

For details, 🔗 [“Keyers that support resizer/key edge”](#) (p. 62).

---

## Wipes

A wipe is a transition from the current video stream to a new video stream, using a wipe pattern.

Changing the background by means of a wipe is referred to as a “background wipe,” and inserting or deleting a key with a wipe is termed a “key wipe.”

There are two types of wipe: those that can be selected in a common transition, and those that can be selected in an independent key transition.

You can also specify the wipe direction, or set the pattern position, applying various changes and modifiers to the selected wipe pattern.

For details, see [Chapter 5 “Wipes”](#) (🔗 p. 83).

---

## DME Wipes

A DME wipe is a wipe transition that uses an image transformation effect to change from one video image to the next.

The patterns that can be used for a DME wipe are as follows.

Slide, Squeeze, Door, Flip tumble, Frame in-out, Picture-in-picture, Mosaic, and Defocus

You can also specify the wipe direction, or set the pattern position, applying various changes and modifiers to the selected DME wipe pattern.

## Resizer DME wipes

Using the resizer, you can carry out key DME wipes.

For details, see [Chapter 6 “DME Wipes”](#) (🔗 p. 93).

---

## Frame Memory

Frame memory is a function for using a still image or video (frame memory clip) as material for editing.

You can create a still image by capturing a frame of input video, or a clip by specifying a range of input video. The created images and clips can be written to memory for playback, editing, and output.

For details, see [Chapter 7 “Frame Memory”](#) (🔗 p. 102).

---

## Color Backgrounds

This function can be used to obtain color background video.

Two color signals generated from the dedicated generators can be switched or mixed, and then output.

For details, see [“Color Background”](#) (🔗 p. 122) in [chapter 8](#).

## Copy and Swap

This function can be used to copy and swap the settings between switcher banks or between keyers.

The following settings can be copied or swapped.

- Settings for the M/E and PGM/PST banks
- Keyer settings
- Wipe settings in a transition control block
- Wipe settings in an independent key transition
- DME wipe settings in a transition control block
- DME wipe settings in an independent key transition
- Matte color settings (color 1, color 2, and how to compose them)
- Color settings
- Format converter input settings (copy only)
- Format converter output settings (copy only)

For details, see “Copy and Swap” (☞ p. 123) in chapter 8.

## Color Corrector

The color corrector enables video signal color correction (black balance/white balance adjustment, gamma correction, knee correction, etc.).

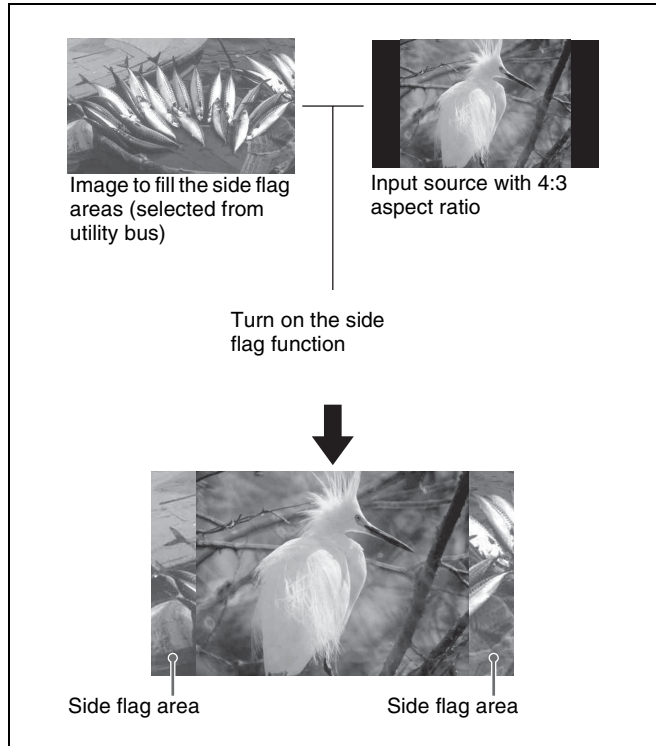
The color corrector includes the following adjustments.

- Input video processing
- Primary color correction
- RGB clip

For details, see “Configuring the Color Corrector” (☞ p. 242) in chapter 18.

## Side Flags

The term “side flags” refers to the areas to left and right of an image with aspect ratio 4:3 embedded within a 16:9 frame, when these areas are filled with a separate image selected from the utility bus.



For details, see “Side Flags” (☞ p. 128) in chapter 9.

# Creation of Special Effects and Management of Data and Operations

This section introduces functions used for creation of special effects, control of external devices or switcher operations, and data management.

## Controlling External Devices

In this system, you can operate while controlling the following types of external device:

- Devices supporting P-Bus (Peripheral II protocol)
- Devices supporting GPI
- VTRs
- Disk recorders (video disk communications protocol)
- Extended VTRs (Abekas A53 protocol)

For details about the devices that can be connected, consult your Sony representative.

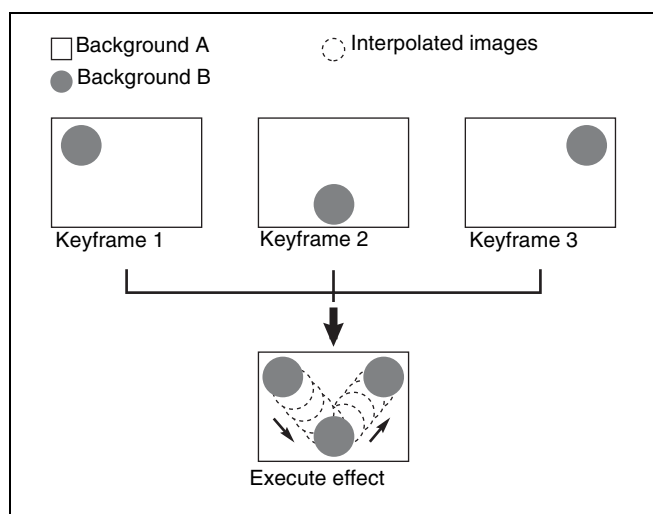
You can also control an external device by registering timeline keyframes beforehand.

For details, see Chapter 10 “External Devices” (☞ p. 131).

## Keyframes

A keyframe represents an instantaneous state of an image; it can be saved in a register and recalled for reuse. By arranging a number of keyframes on the time axis, and interpolating between successive keyframes, you can create a “keyframe effect” in which there is a continuous change from each keyframe to the next.

The following figure shows three keyframes created with a wipe pattern (the circle) in different positions. This is interpolated to create the effect shown.



Example of keyframes and effect execution

You can save the sequence of keyframes representing a single effect in a register. Then by recalling this register, you can replay the same effect.

For details, see [Chapter 11 “Keyframes”](#) (p. 144).

## Snapshots

The term “snapshot” refers to a function whereby the various settings required to apply a particular effect to an image are saved in a register as a set of data, for recall as required, to recover the original state.

Snapshots are divided as follows.

- Snapshots applying to a particular region (functional block of the switcher)
- Master snapshot
- Key snapshot
- Wipe snapshot
- DME wipe snapshot

For details, see [Chapter 12 “Snapshots”](#) (p. 167).

## Utilities

The utility function refers to a function whereby you can assign an arbitrary action or a shortcut for a frequently used menu to a particular button, then instantly recall the action or menu by pressing the button.

For details, see [“Utility Execution”](#) (p. 176) in [chapter 13](#).

## Shotboxes

The term “shotbox” refers to a function whereby for each specified region (see [“Regions”](#) (p. 144) in [chapter 11](#)) any snapshot or keyframe effect can be recalled simultaneously.

For details, see [“Shotbox”](#) (p. 176) in [chapter 13](#).

## Macros

The term “macro” refers to the function whereby a sequence of signal selections and other operations on the control panel is saved as data in memory (macro register), so that it can be recalled as required to automatically execute the same sequence of operations.

The individual control panel operations constituting a macro are termed “events.”

Macros also provide the following functions.

### Menu macros

The term “menu macro” refers to the function whereby a sequence of menu operations is saved as an event, so that it can be recalled as required to automatically execute the same sequence of operations.

### Macro timelines

By recording macro recalls and execute actions on a timeline, in the same way as for keyframes in an effect, you can automatically execute them in a sequence.

### Macro attachments

Macro attachment is a function whereby a macro register is assigned to a control panel button or a particular position of a fader lever, linking the execution of the button function or a fader lever operation with a macro execution.

For details, see [Chapter 14 “Macros”](#) (p. 180).

## File Operations

You can save register data, including setup information and snapshot information, as a file on a local disk or removable disk, and recall it as required.

Regarding frame memory, it is possible to capture image data stored in an external device into frame memory. You can also convert the format of image data in frame memory into a different format and save it in an external device.

For details, see [Chapter 15 “Files”](#) (🔗 p. 200).

---

## Setup

Various settings are required, in order to operate the switcher, control panel, external devices, and so on, connected together in a single system.

This is referred to as “setup,” and you can carry out the setup operations from the Engineering Setup menu. The settings are grouped under the following headings.

### **System setup (System)**

For details, see [Chapter 16 “System Setup”](#) (🔗 p. 211).

### **Panel setup (Panel)**

For details, see [Chapter 17 “Control Panel Setup”](#) (🔗 p. 219).

### **Switcher setup (Switcher)**

For details, see [Chapter 18 “Switcher Setup”](#) (🔗 p. 240).

### **Router/tally setup (Router/Tally)**

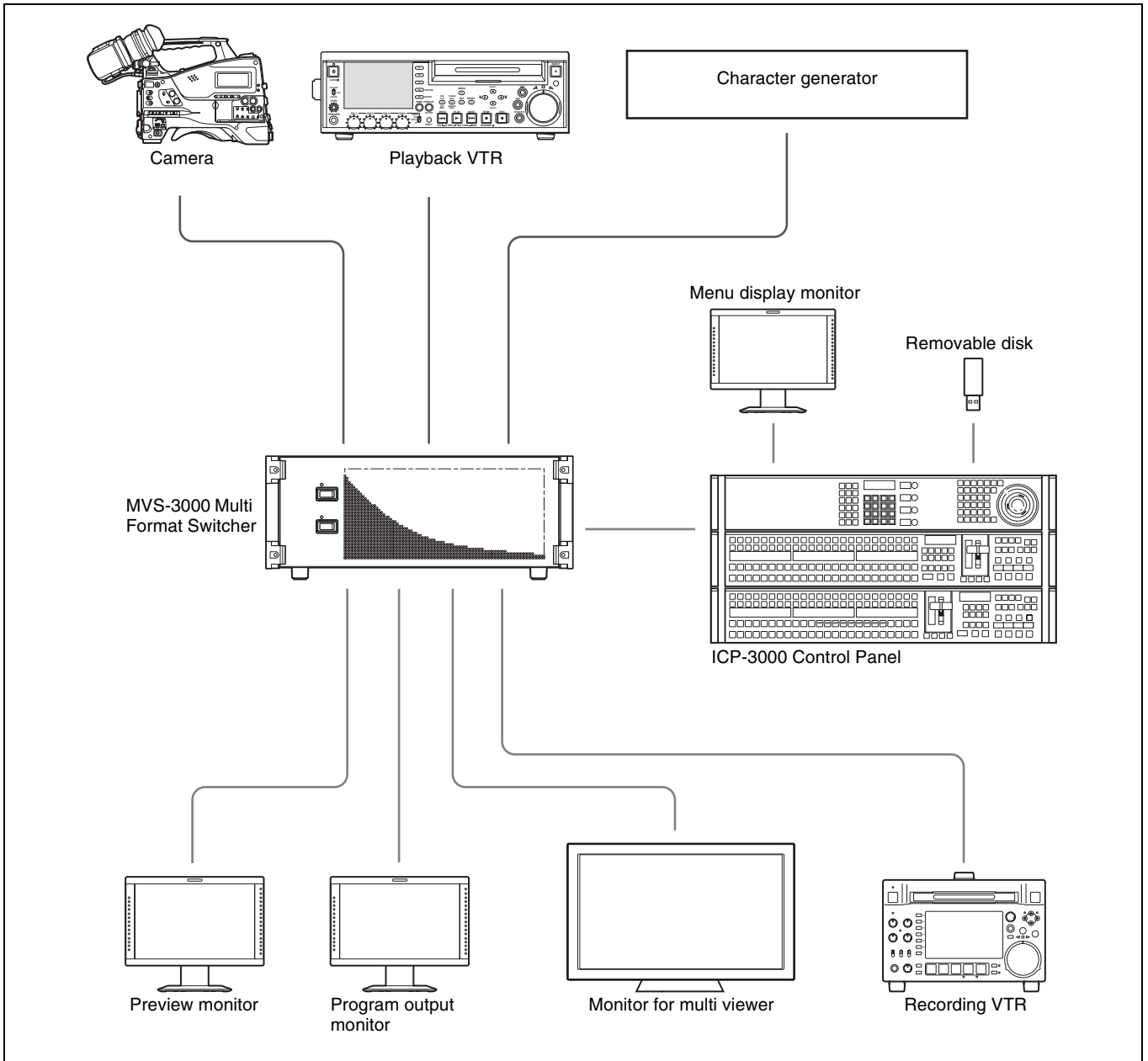
For details, see [Chapter 19 “Router Interface and Tally Setup”](#) (🔗 p. 257).

### **User setup (User Setup)**

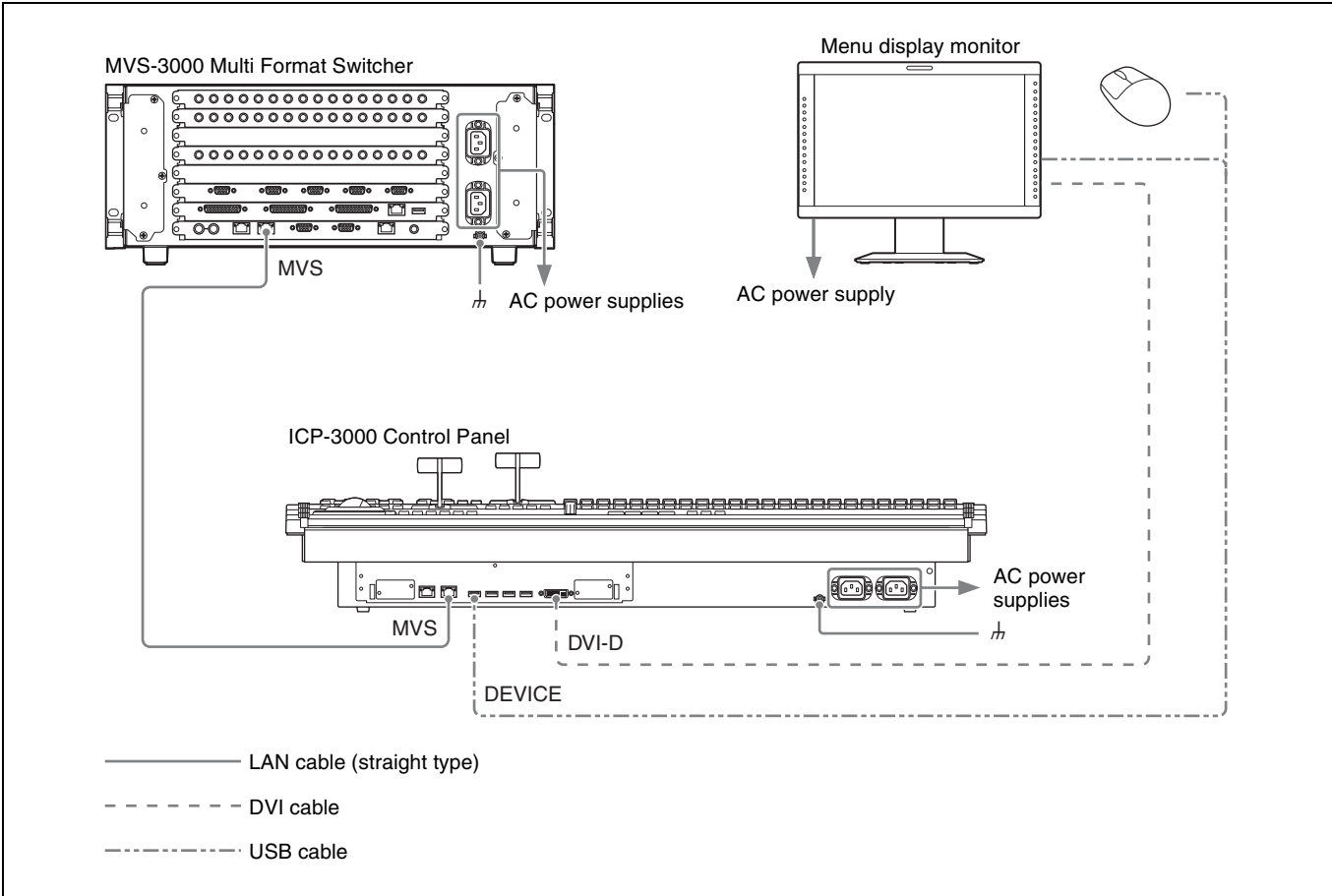
For details, see [Chapter 20 “User Setup”](#) (🔗 p. 261).

# System Configuration Examples

## MVS/ICP System Configuration



# Connection Example

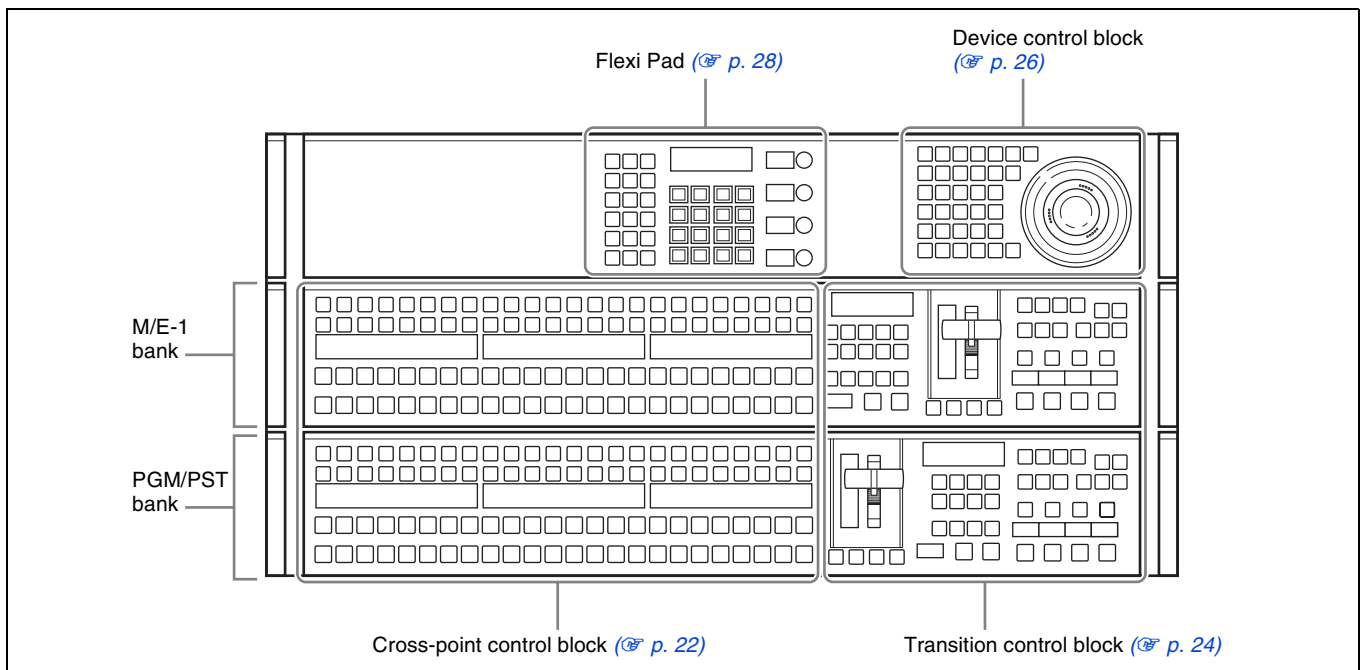


## Names and Functions of Parts of the Control Panel

The MVS-3000 system is composed by the MVS-3000 switcher processor and the ICP-3000 control panel. An external monitor connected to the control panel is required to operate the menus.

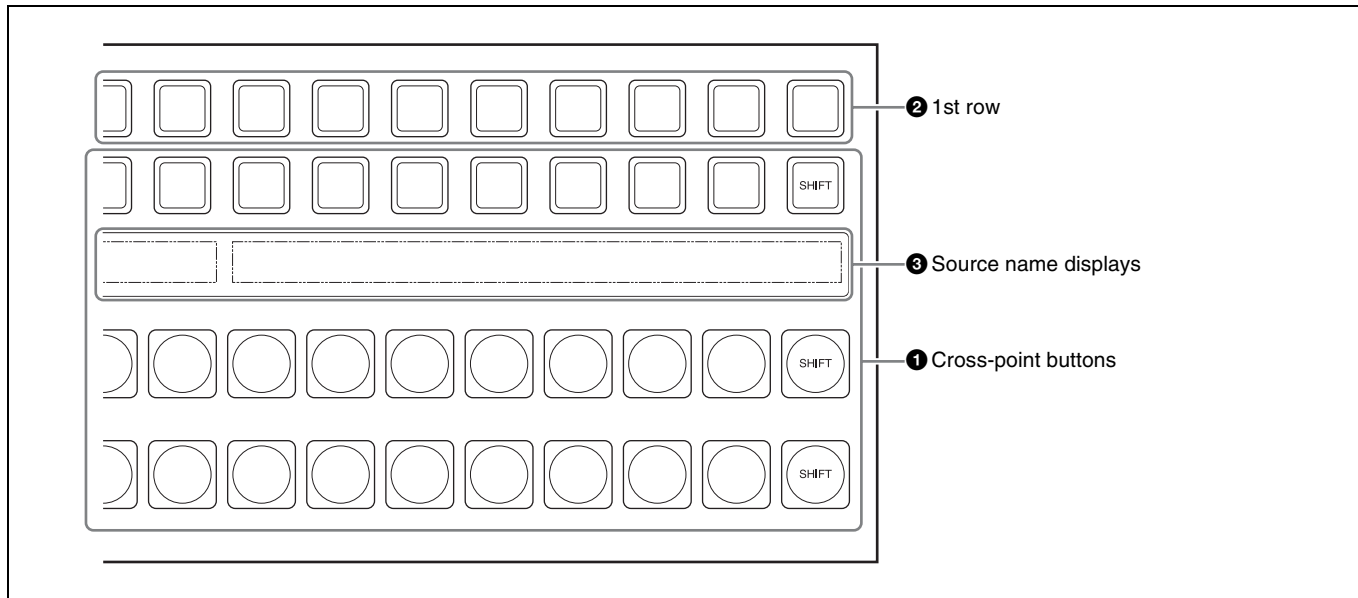
*For details about monitors that can be connected, consult your Sony representative.*

### Control Panel Configuration



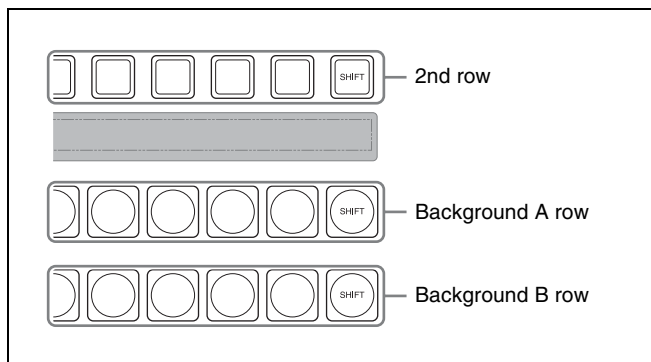
## Cross-Point Control Block

In the cross-point control block, you can select the signals to be used in the M/E bank or PGM/PST bank.



### 1 Cross-point buttons

These select the signals used for video processing on this M/E bank or PGM/PST bank. Each row of buttons corresponds to one or more signal buses within the switcher.



Name	Description
2nd row	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use this to select the cross-point of the bus that is specified with the 1st row buttons.<sup>a)</sup></li> <li>If the utility/shotbox function is selected with the 1st row buttons, use this to recall the register or to execute the function.</li> </ul>
Background A row	Use this to select the signal as the current background video on this M/E bank or PGM/PST bank.
Background B row	Use this to select the signal as the background video after the transition on this M/E bank or PGM/PST bank.

a) You can select the source signal of the key bus by selecting the cross-point while holding down the button to which any of KEY1 to KEY4 or DSK1 to DSK4 is assigned in the 1st row.

### Cross-point button numbers

Cross-point buttons are respectively numbered ([☞ p. 46](#)).

### Assigning signals to buttons

You can assign a signal to each button using the Setup menu.

For details, [☞ “Cross-Point Settings” \(p. 223\)](#).

### Visual indications on cross-point buttons

For details, [☞ “Colors of lit cross-point buttons” \(p. 47\)](#).

### 2 1st row

This selects a key bus, AUX bus, or function.

You can assign the following buses, functions, and buttons in the Setup menu.

- KEY1 to KEY4, DSK1 to DSK4, UTIL1, EDIT PVW, AUX1 to AUX24, FMS1, FMS2
- Utility/shotbox function
- [INH SET], [XPT HOLD], [PRE MCRO], [POST MCRO], [MCRO ATTCH ENBL], [KEY], [1ST ROW DSPLY], [2ND ROW DSPLY], [SHIFT] buttons

For details about assignments, [☞ “Assigning a Bus or Function to 1st Row Buttons” \(p. 235\)](#).

### Utility/shotbox function

Assign the function of the [UTIL/SBOX] button, and use for utility/shotbox operations.

When you turn on the button to which [UTIL/SBOX] is assigned, the buttons in the cross-point control block will be used for utility/shotbox operations.

For details, see “Executing a Shotbox Function with Cross-Point Buttons in the 2nd Row” (p. 179).

### Assignable buttons

Name	Description
INH SET (inhibit set)	Disables button operation. To inhibit operation for a button, press and hold the button assigned with [INH SET], and press the cross-point button whose operation you wish to inhibit.
XPT HOLD (cross-point hold)	Recalls a keyframe or snapshot while maintaining the current cross-point selection conditions. Available for background A row and background B row. The following function blocks can be enabled, depending on settings in the Setup menu. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Background A and B rows</li> <li>• Key bus</li> <li>• Utility bus</li> </ul>
PRE MCRO (pre-macro)	Sets a macro attachment in pre-macro mode. Simultaneously pressing this button and the [POST MCRO] button sets a macro attachment in macro-only mode.
POST MCRO (post-macro)	Sets a macro attachment in post-macro mode. Simultaneously pressing this button and the [PRE MCRO] button sets a macro attachment in macro-only mode.
MCRO ATTCH ENBL (macro attachment enable)	Enables the macro attachments set for the buttons in the M/E (PGM/PST) bank. In the Setup menu, you can also set the buttons to light whenever they are enabled.
KEY	Pressing and holding this button and then pressing a 2nd row button selects the key signal.
1ST ROW DSPLY (first row display)	Displays the name of the bus and function currently assigned to the 1st row in the source name display.
2ND ROW DSPLY (second row display)	Displays the source name for the bus currently selected in the 1st row in the source name display. If the [UTIL/SBOX] button is selected in the 1st row, the function name is displayed.

Name	Description
SHIFT	Performs one of the following functions, according to the setting made in the Setup menu. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Source name display shift button Displays the name of the signal in shift mode in the source name display.</li> <li>• Bus shift button Functions as the shift button for all buses in the M/E (PGM/PST) bank.</li> </ul>

### ③ Source name displays

These show the names of the signals (sources) or registers which can be selected on the cross-point buttons, in four-character mode or auto mode.

While the [SHIFT] button assigned to the 1st row or the [SHIFT] button assigned to the cross-point button row is enabled, the source name of the signal assigned to the cross-point button in shift mode appears.

You can set the source name display mode in the Setup menu.

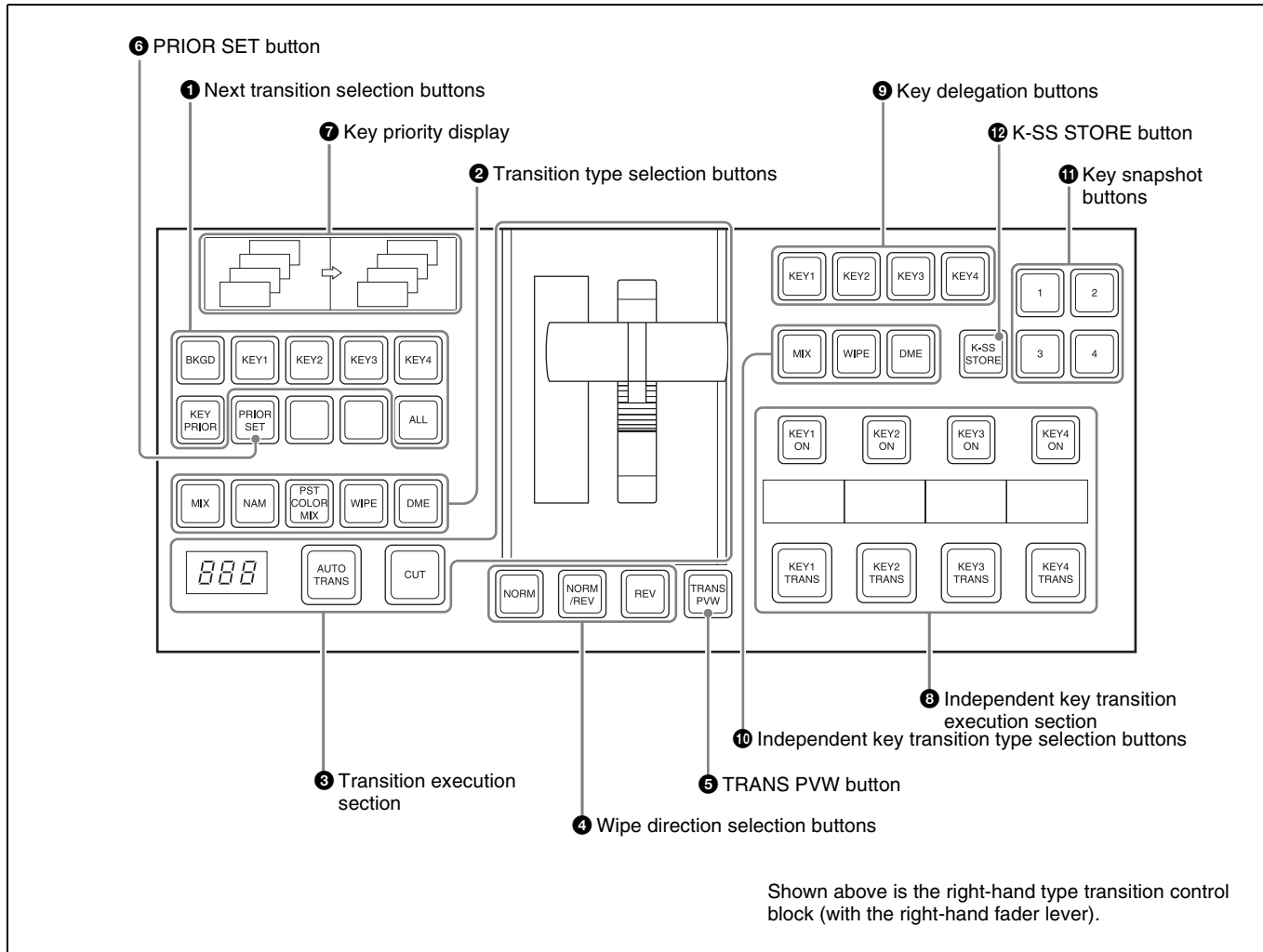
The following displays may also appear, depending on the status of the [1ST ROW DSPLY], [2ND ROW DSPLY], and [KEY] buttons.

Button name		Display
1ST ROW DSPLY	2ND ROW DSPLY	
Off	Off	A/B bus signal names
On	Off	Bus names or function names
Off	On	Key/AUX bus signal names <sup>a)</sup> or function names

a) Key signal names are displayed when the [KEY] button is pressed, and video signal names are displayed when the [KEY] button is not pressed.

## Transition Control Block

In the transition control block, you can modify the output of the M/E bank or PGM/PST bank, and perform transitions. Both common transition and independent key transition operations are possible.



### 1 Next transition selection buttons

These specify how the image will be changed as a result of the next transition.

Name	Description
BKGD (background)	The next transition will change the background.
KEY1 to KEY4 (DSK1 to DSK4 for the PGM/PST bank)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press a button, turning it on, to make the next transition insert or remove the corresponding key (keys 1 to 4).</li> <li>If the key is currently not inserted, the transition will insert it, and if the key is currently inserted, the transition will delete it.</li> </ul>
KEY PRIOR (priority)	The priority setting of the key after the next transition is enabled.

Name	Description
ALL	This turns on a preselected set of the [BKGD], [KEY1] to [KEY4], and [KEY PRIOR] buttons. Make this setting in the Setup menu.

### 2 Transition type selection buttons

These select the transition type ([p. 47](#)). When multi-program mode is selected in the Setup menu, two or more of the following buttons may light.

*For details about the multi-program mode setting, see “Setting the Operation Mode” (p. 240).*

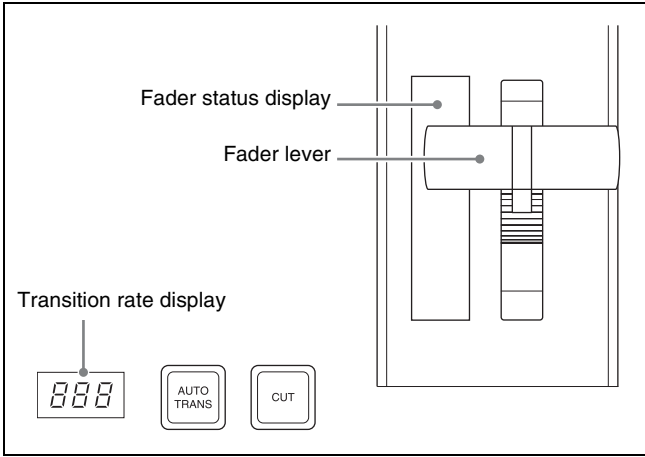
You can also assign a function to these buttons that selects whether or not the fader levers are used as keyframe faders.

*For details, see “Executing an effect manually” (p. 161).*

For details about assignments for the transition type selection buttons, see “Setting Transition Control Block Button Assignments” (p. 221).

### 3 Transition execution section

This section is used to carry out a transition and check the progress of the transition.



Name	Description
Fader status display	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Displays the transition progress as a bar (transition indicator).</li> <li>In a non-sync state, “Non Sync” and “Sync” appear at the top and bottom.</li> </ul>
Fader lever	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Move this up or down to carry out the transition.</li> <li>When you press the transition type selection button to which the KF button function has been assigned and turn it on, you can use this as a keyframe fader.</li> </ul>
Transition rate display	This shows the “transition rate” (the time from the beginning of a transition to its completion) set for an auto transition, in frames.
AUTO TRANS (transition) button	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pressing this button carries out an auto transition of the set transition rate (duration). The transition starts immediately, and the button lights amber.</li> <li>When the transition completes, the button goes off.</li> </ul>
CUT button	Pressing this button carries out the transition as a cut (i.e. instantaneously).

### 4 Wipe direction selection buttons

When a wipe or DME wipe is selected as the transition type, you can press to light these buttons to select the wipe direction.

Name	Description
NORM (normal)	The wipe proceeds in the direction from black to white or in the direction of the arrows as shown in “Wipe Pattern List” (p. 264).

Name	Description
REV (reverse)	The wipe proceeds in the opposite direction of [NORM].
NORM/REV (normal/reverse)	The wipe direction alternates between normal and reverse every time a transition is executed.

### 5 TRANS PVW (transition preview) button

With the preview output of the M/E bank and PGM/PST bank, you can check the effect of a transition in advance. During the preview, you can use the fader lever, [AUTO TRANS] button, and [CUT] button. One of the following functions of this button can be selected in a Setup mode.

- When the transition completes, the system returns to the normal mode.
- The transition preview mode is maintained while this button is pressed.
- Switching is made between the transition preview mode and normal mode every time this button is pressed.

### 6 PRIOR (priority) SET button

While this button is held down, you can set the key priority.

The setting mode when this button is pressed depends on whether or not the [KEY PRIOR] button is lit, as follows.

- When the [KEY PRIOR] button is off, the current key priority is set.
- When the [KEY PRIOR] button is lit, the key priority after the next transition is set.

Press the [KEY PRIOR] button as required, to switch between these two modes.

In either mode, hold down the [PRIOR SET] button, and press the [KEY1] to [KEY4] ([DSK1] to [DSK4]) button corresponding to the key you want to bring to the front.

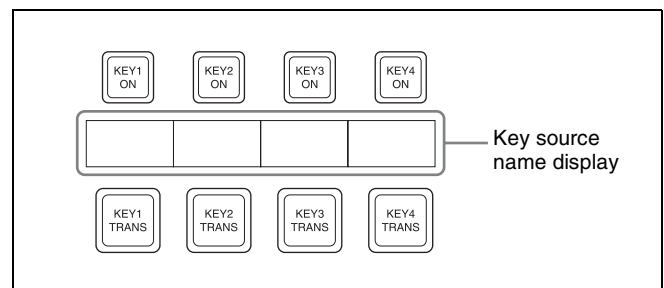
For details, see “Setting the Key Priority in the Transition Control Block” (p. 49).

### 7 Key priority display

The current key priority status is displayed on the left, while the key priority status after the transition is displayed on the right.

### 8 Independent key transition execution section

This is used to insert or delete keys 1 to 4, and carry out auto transitions.



Name	Description
KEY1 ON to KEY4 ON (DSK1 ON to DSK4 ON for the PGM/PST bank)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the corresponding one of these buttons to cut key 1 to key 4 in or out instantaneously.</li> <li>The button lights red when the corresponding key appears in the final program output, and lights amber when the key does not.</li> </ul>
KEY1 TRANS to KEY4 TRANS (DSK1 TRANS to DSK4 TRANS for PGM/PST banks)	Press these buttons to carry out an auto transition.
Key source name display	This displays the source name selected on the corresponding keyer.

### 9 Key delegation buttons

Assign the desired keyer, by pressing [KEY1] to [KEY4] ([DSK1] to [DSK4]) and turning them on. While these buttons are held down, you can select a key source with the cross-point buttons for the key bus.

Pressing one of these buttons twice in rapid succession changes its state so that you can make cross-point selections on the corresponding key bus. The key delegation buttons can also be used for copying keys.

For details, see “Copy and Swap Operations” (p. 124).

### 10 Independent key transition type selection buttons

These select the independent key transition type.

For details, see “Basic Independent Key Transition Operations” (p. 59).

### 11 Key snapshot buttons

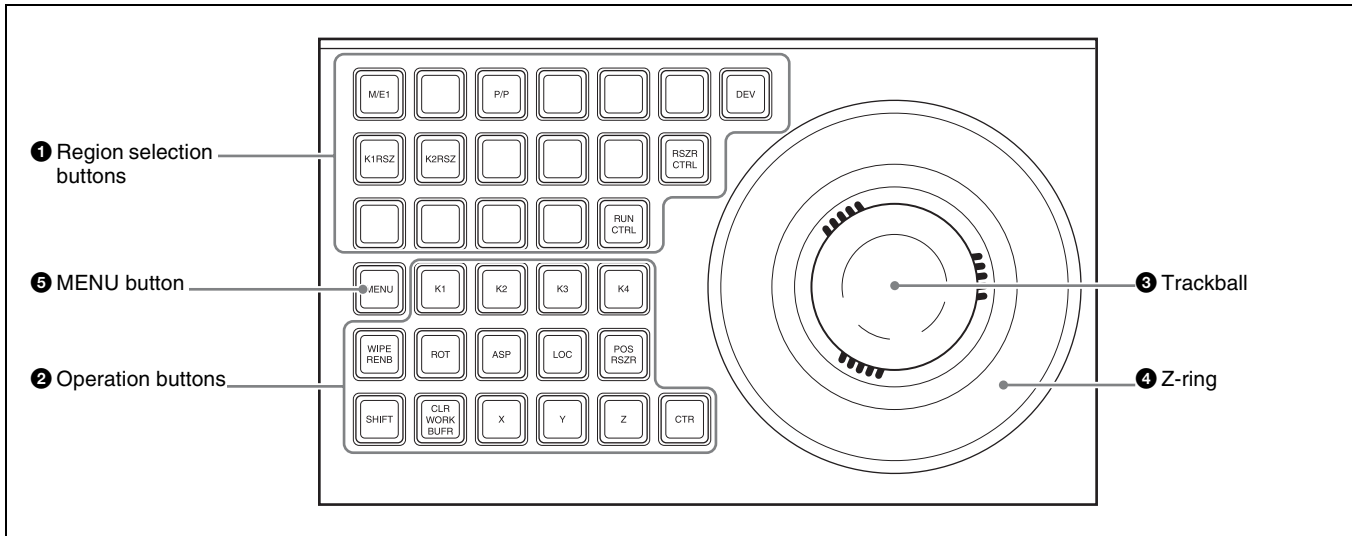
These correspond to registers 1 to 4 of the keyer selected with the key delegation buttons, and pressing a button saves or recalls a key snapshot.

### 12 K-SS STORE (key snapshot store) button

Press the key snapshot button of the register you want to save while holding this button to save the key snapshot.

## Device Control Block

The device control block is used for wipe pattern position setting and for VTR/disk recorder/frame memory clip operation.



### 1 Region selection buttons

The operation mode allocated to the device control block depends on the selection state of the region selection buttons.

Region selection button	Overview of assigned operation
M/E1, P/P	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>These enable the positioner (wipe pattern position setting) operation mode.</li> <li>You can select more than one button simultaneously.</li> </ul>

Region selection button	Overview of assigned operation
DEV	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This enables the VTR/disk recorder/frame memory operation mode.</li> <li>The operation applies to the [DEV1] to [DEV12], [FM1 CLIP], [FM2 CLIP], and [FM LOOP] buttons.</li> <li>You can also assign the [FM3 CLIP] to [FM8 CLIP], [RECUE], and [LOOP] buttons in the Setup menu.</li> </ul>
RUN CTRL	This enables the keyframe operation mode.
RSZR CTRL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This enables the resizer operation mode.</li> <li>Use the [M/E1] or [P/P] button to select the target switcher bank.</li> <li>The operation applies to the [K1RSZ] and [K2RSZ] buttons.</li> </ul>

## ② Operation buttons

These perform various operations. The function of each button varies with the operation mode.

### When the positioner operation mode is enabled

Name	Description
K1 to K4 <sup>a)</sup>	These enable wipe pattern position setting for keys 1 to 4.
WIPE <sup>a)</sup>	This enables wipe pattern position setting for normal transitions.
POS (position)	This enables the trackball to move the wipe pattern in the x-axis and y-axis directions.
X, Y	These restrict which axes the trackball can control to the x- or y-axis.
CTR (center)	This returns the pattern position to the center of the screen.
CLR WORK BUFR (clear work buffer)	Press this twice in rapid succession to reset all parameters on the target M/E or PGM/PST to their initial values.

a) You can configure settings in the Setup menu to allow simultaneous selection of multiple buttons.

### When the VTR/disk recorder/frame memory operation mode is enabled

The buttons are used for VTR control or playback of frame memory clips.

For details, see [“Controlling the Tape/Disk Transport” \(p. 135\)](#).

### When the resizer operation mode is enabled

Name	Description
ASP (aspect)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pressing this button and operating the trackball or Z-ring changes the aspect ratio of a key to which the resizer function is applied.</li> <li>When this button is held down, the trackball or Z-ring operation is switched to a finer control (fine mode).</li> </ul>

Name	Description
LOC (location)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pressing this button and operating the trackball or Z-ring moves, shrinks, or magnifies a key to which the resizer function is applied.</li> <li>When this button is held down, the trackball or Z-ring operation is switched to a finer control (fine mode).</li> </ul>
RSZR (resizer)	Press this button, turning it on, to enable the resizer.
ROT (rotation)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pressing this button, after pressing the [RENB] button, and operating the trackball or Z-ring rotates the key to which the resizer function is applied or adjusts perspective.</li> <li>When this button is held down, the trackball or Z-ring operation is switched to a finer control (fine mode).</li> </ul>
RENB (rotation enable)	Press this button, turning it on, to enable rotation operation.
CLR WORK BUFR (clear work buffer)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pressing this button once returns the two-dimensional transformation and rotation settings to the defaults.</li> <li>Pressing the [CLR WORK BUFR] button twice, or holding down [SHIFT] and pressing the [CLR WORK BUFR] button returns all resizer parameter values to the defaults.</li> </ul>
X, Y, Z	These restrict the axes affected by the trackball and Z-ring to the x-, y- or z-axis.
CTR (center)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pressing this button once changes the two-dimensional transformation and rotation settings to the closest detent values.</li> <li>Pressing the [CTR] button twice, or holding down [SHIFT] and pressing the [CTR] button returns the two-dimensional transformation and rotation settings to the defaults.</li> </ul>
SHIFT	Use this in combination with the [CTR WORK BUFR] or [CTR] button.

## ③ Trackball

The effect of operation depends on the operating mode as follows.

### When the positioner operation mode is enabled

By moving this, you can move the pattern in the x-axis and y-axis directions.

### When the resizer operation mode is enabled

By turning the trackball, you can move in the x and y directions of the key to which the resizer is applied, change the aspect ratio, and rotate around the x-axis and y-axis. When the [ASP], [LOC], or [ROT] button is held down, the operation is switched to a finer control (fine mode).

#### 4 Z-ring

The effect of operation depends on the operating mode as follows.

##### When the keyframe operation mode is enabled

By turning the Z-ring, you can run the keyframe effect, independent of the STOP NEXT KF, EFFECT LOOP, and similar settings in the Flexi Pad.

Turn clockwise to run the effect in the normal direction, and counterclockwise for the reverse direction.

##### When the VTR/disk recorder/frame memory operation mode is enabled

Turning the Z-ring controls the tape transport/disk drive/frame memory clip operations, at a speed determined by the operating buttons. Turn clockwise for the normal direction, and counterclockwise for the reverse direction.

##### When the resizer operation mode is enabled

By turning the ring, you can zoom the key to which the resizer is applied, and change the aspect ratio and perspective.

When the [ASP], [LOC], or [ROT] button is held down, the operation is switched to a finer control (fine mode).

#### 5 MENU button

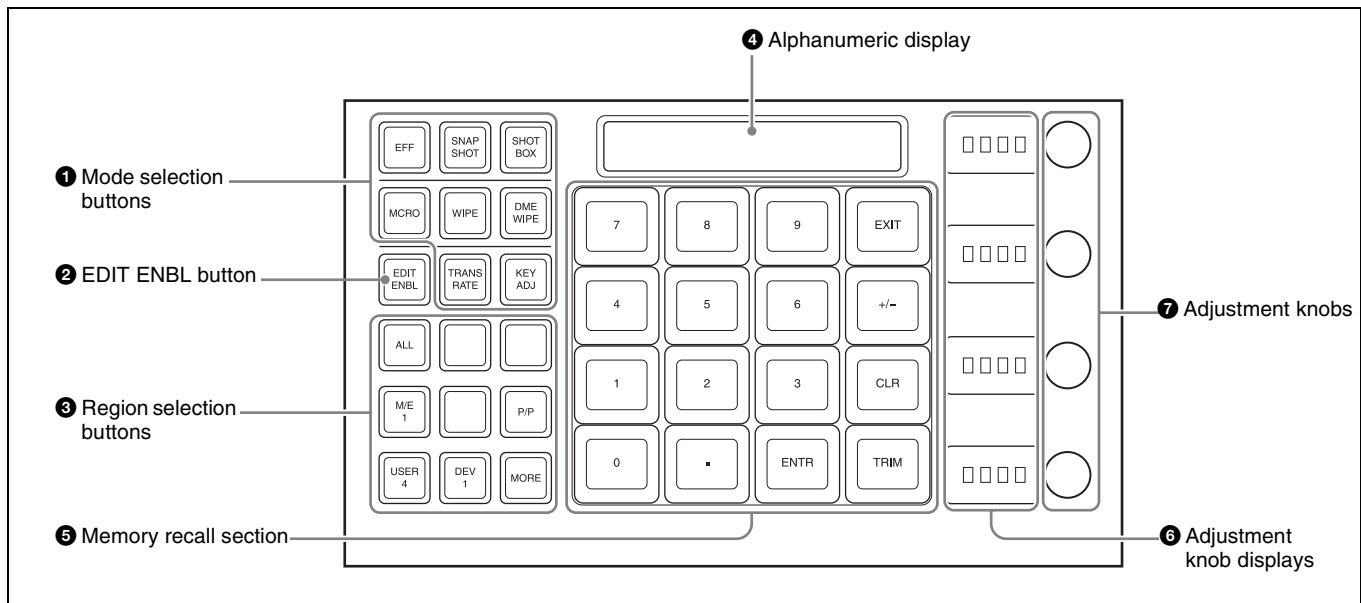
This enables adjustment of the menu parameters using the trackball and Z-ring.

Pressing this button and turning it on in VTR/disk recorder/frame memory operation mode makes it possible to carry out timeline start/stop point setting operation for the selected device (timeline setting mode).

## Flexi Pad

The Flexi Pad is used for creating and recalling snapshots, wipe snapshots, DME wipe snapshots, key snapshots,

effects, shotboxes, and macros, for setting the transition rate, and for adjusting keys.



#### 1 Mode selection buttons

These select the mode.

Name	Description
EFF (effect)	Press this to carry out effect creation/recall/editing/execution/deletion.
SNAPSHOT	Press this to carry out snapshot creation/recall/editing/deletion.
SHOTBOX	Press this to carry out shotbox creation/recall/editing/execution/deletion.
MCRO (macro)	Press this to carry out macro creation/editing/execution/deletion.

Name	Description
WIPE (wipe snapshot)	Press this to carry out wipe snapshot creation/recall/deletion and wipe adjustments.
DME WIPE (DME wipe snapshot)	Press this to carry out DME wipe snapshot creation/recall/deletion and DME wipe adjustments.
TRANS RATE (transition rate)	Press this to set the transition rate.
KEY ADJ (key adjust)	Press this to carry out key adjustments and set modifiers.

Name	Description
KEY SS (key snapshot)	Press this to carry out key snapshot creation/recall/deletion. By default, this is not assigned to a mode selection button, so you must assign it to a mode selection button in the Setup menu before use.

### 2 EDIT ENBL (edit enable) button

This enables the following operations.

- Effect creation/editing
- Snapshot attribute setting
- Shotbox creation/editing
- Macro creation/editing
- Wipe adjustments
- DME wipe adjustments

### 3 Region selection buttons

These select the functional block (“region”) of the control panel to which operations apply.

When the [EFF], [SNAPSHOT], [SHOTBOX], or [MCRO] mode selection button is selected, you can select multiple region selection buttons simultaneously. In this case, the first button pressed lights green as the reference region, and the other buttons pressed light amber (the buttons for the regions shown in the memory recall section are yellow).

Name	Description
ALL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Selects all regions.</li> <li>• If any region is selected, press this button to unset the selection of all regions.</li> </ul>
M/E1, P/P	Select the M/E-1 and PGM/PST regions, respectively.
USER4	Selects the USER4 region.
DEV1	Selects the device 1 region.

Name	Description
MORE	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Displays buttons in the memory recall section for regions not assigned to a region selection button, so that they can be selected.</li> <li>• By default the following regions are shown on the memory recall section buttons: MSTR (master snapshot, master timeline registers), USER1 to 3, USER5 to 8, MCRO (macro), DEV2 (device 2), PBUS, GPI, RTR (router)</li> <li>• If there is a region selected in the memory recall section, this is indicated by the MORE button lighting green.</li> <li>• To revert the button displays in the memory recall section, press the [MORE] button once more, or press the [EXIT] button that appears in the memory recall section.</li> <li>• Note that except for the [ALL], [EXIT], and [MORE] buttons, you can freely change the region assignments in the Setup menu.</li> </ul>

### 4 Alphanumeric display

This shows the selected region name, register number, and entered numeric values.

### 5 Memory recall section

This comprises 16 LCD buttons, each with a display that changes according to the operating mode.

### 6 Adjustment knob displays

Each of these shows the initial letter of the parameter that can be adjusted with the knob to the right, and the setting value (three digit places, including the minus sign).

### 7 Adjustment knobs

Use these to adjust the parameters selected with the memory recall section buttons.

# Names and Functions of Parts of the Menu

## Overview

In the MVS system, all detailed settings for basic operations such as transitions, keys, and wipes are made in menus. In addition, system management, data management, and setup are all performed using menu operations.

You can display menus on an external monitor, and operate using a mouse or touch panel.

You select menus and items by pressing buttons and lists displayed on the screen (touch operation) or by clicking with the mouse.

*For information about using the mouse, see “Operation with a Mouse” (p. 38). For information about supported monitors, contact your Sony representative.*

## Top Menu List

When the control panel is powered on, the top menu list appears as shown below.

## Menu Screen

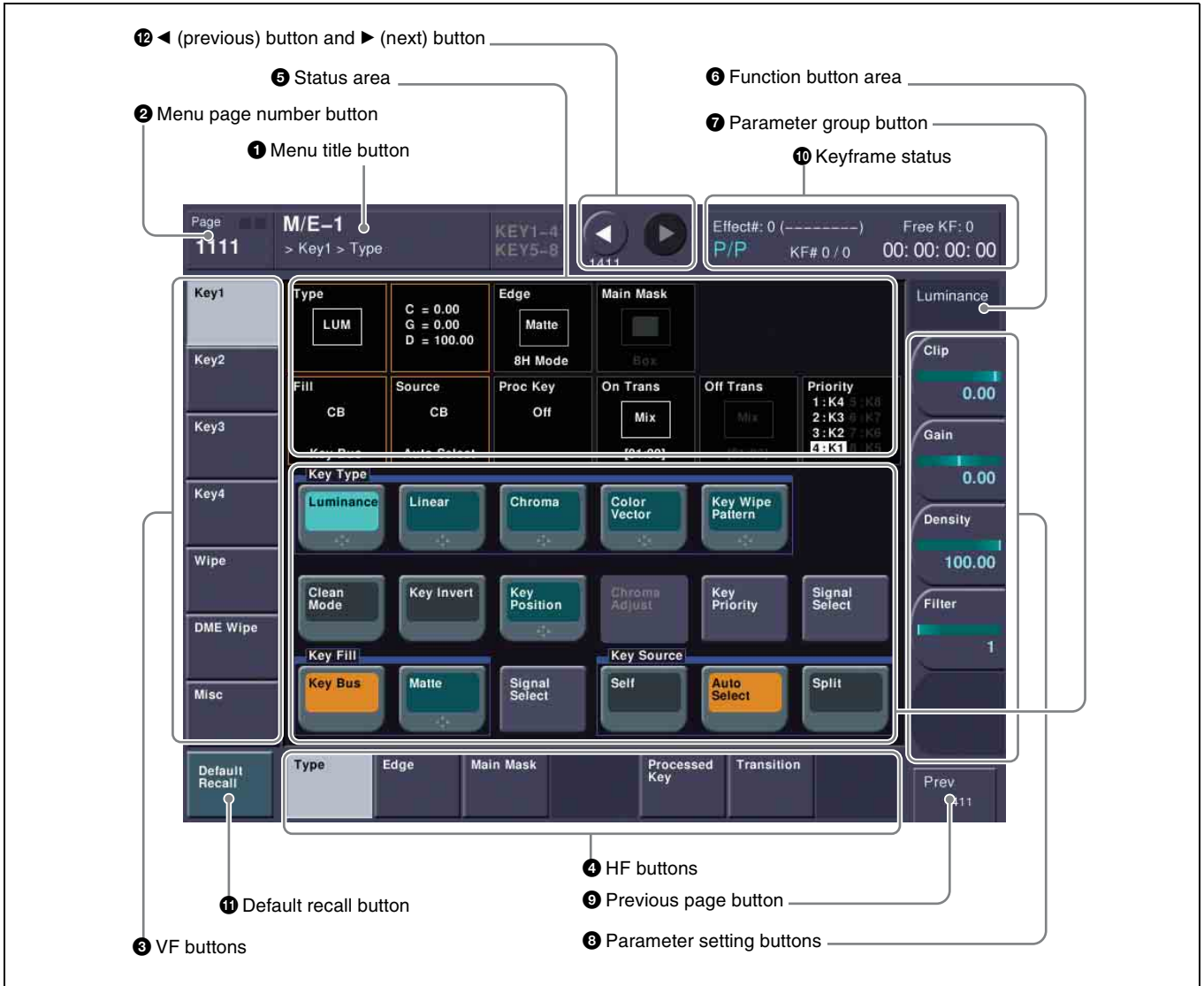
The menu screen consists of the following principal parts. The section describes the M/E-1 >Key1 >Type menu (1111) screen as an example.



Press each button to display the corresponding top menu in the monitor screen.

Press the [Shutdown] button on the bottom right to shut down the control panel.

*For details about shutting down the control panel, see “Shutting down the control panel” (p. 42).*



### 1 Menu title button

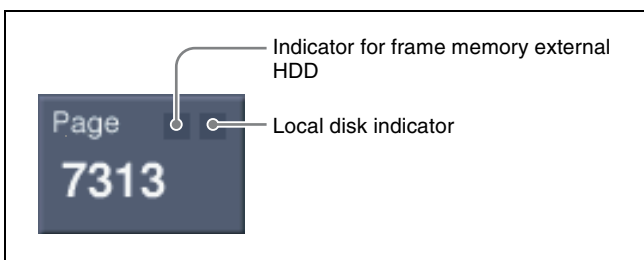
This shows the title of the menu screen.

### 2 Menu page number button

This shows the menu screen page number.

When you press this button, the top menu window (see p. 33) appears. You can enter the page number for the desired menu, or press one of the top menu selection buttons in the window, to display that menu.

While the system is accessing the local disk or external HDD, the indicator lights red.



### Notes

When the indicator is lit, do not power off the switcher or disconnect the USB cable<sup>1)</sup>.

1) When an external HDD is connected

### 3 VF buttons

These indicate the larger subdivisions (2nd level) of the menu.

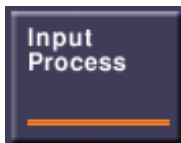
Depending on the selected item, the menu screen contents change, including the HF button indications.

### 4 HF buttons

These indicate the smaller subdivisions (3rd level) of the menu.

Depending on the selected item, the menu indications change.

Depending on the function, if any one is on, the status is shown by an orange bar, as in the following figure.



### 5 Status area

This shows the status of the settings items controlled by the selected menu.

An orange frame appears around the parameter area relating to the displayed menu. For each of the twelve areas, pressing the display jumps to the related menu.




### 6 Function button area

This shows the functions that can be operated in the currently selected menu by means of buttons.

Each function button corresponds to a function which can be set in the currently selected menu. Press a button to enable the function, display a parameter group and adjust the parameters, or execute the function.

These buttons are grouped by function. In the screen example, the [Key Bus] and [Matte] function buttons constitute the <Key Fill> group.

Pressing a button turns it on and lights it, showing the state.

Color	State
Pale blue 	The function is enabled, and the parameters can currently be adjusted.
Orange 	The function is enabled.
Purple 	Execution button. Pressing the button immediately executes the function. (Example: [Auto Start] button in the Chroma Adjust menu)



When you press a function button that is in this state, another menu appears.  
(Example: [Chroma Adjust] button in the Type menu)

### 7 Parameter group button

This displays parameter group names for adjustments, the current parameter setting page number, and the total number of the parameter setting pages. (Example: Color Vector 1/2)

When there are more than five parameters within the same parameter group, press this button to display the sixth and subsequent parameters, which can then be controlled.

### 8 Parameter setting buttons

These show the parameters and their values. Pressing one of these buttons displays the numeric keypad window ([p. 34](#)), and you can then enter a new value for the corresponding parameter with the numeric keypad.

### 9 Previous page button

This shows the page number of the previously displayed menu screen. Press it to go back to that page. When the [Parent] indication appears, this displays the parent directory (menu level).

### 10 Keyframe status

This shows the keyframe status of the reference region. Pressing this button switches the menu screen as follows.

**When a menu other than the Key Frame menu is currently shown:** The menu screen switches to the Key Frame menu.

**When the Key Frame menu is currently shown:** The menu screen switches to the menu that was on the screen immediately before the Key Frame menu.

In some menus, such as the File menu, this functions as a “Region selection area” for selecting the region to which operations apply.

### 11 Default recall button

Press this button, and then press a VF button or parameter setting button to return the parameters to their default values, in the following groupings.

- Function grouping (functions of the HF buttons under the VF button)
- Parameter grouping (values of the parameter setting buttons)

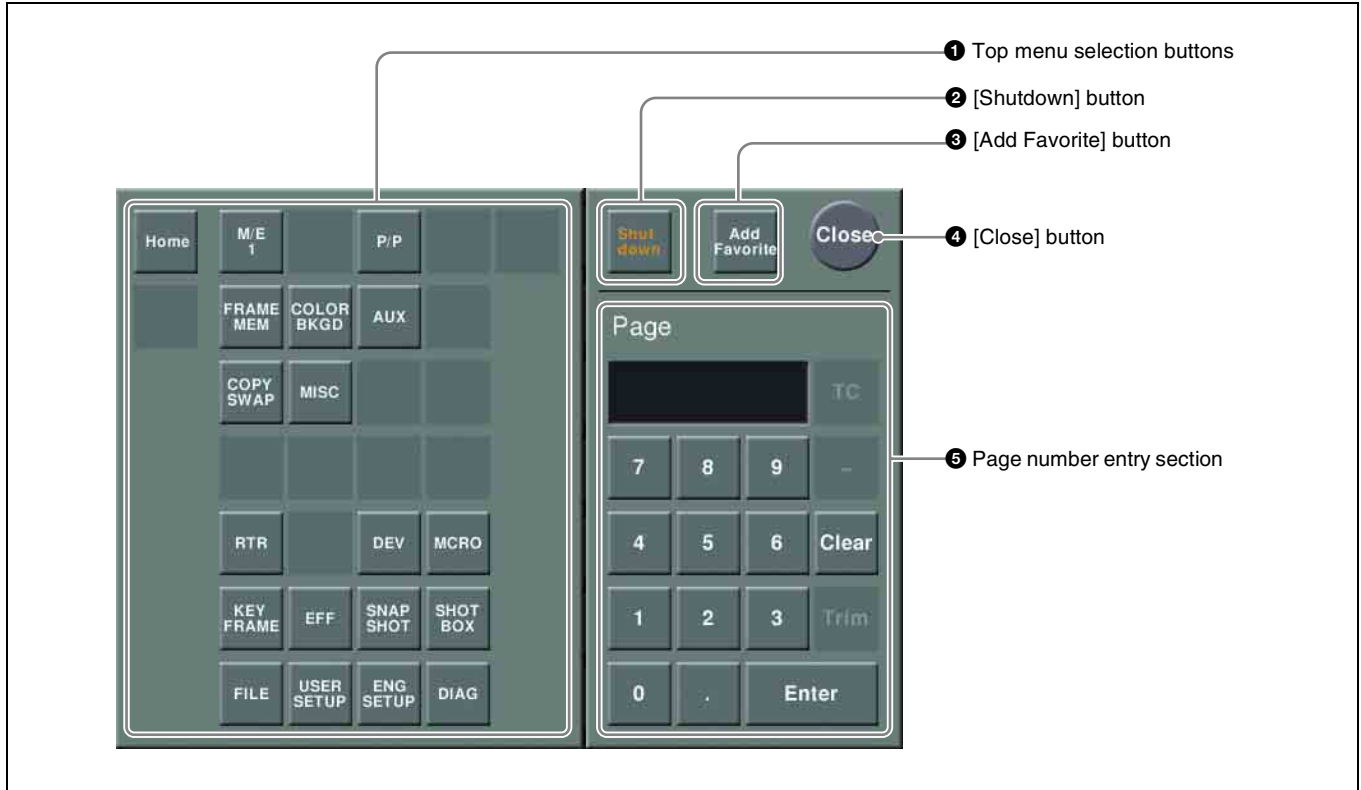
This only appears in those menus for which the default recall function is available.

*For details about menus that can be returned to their default states, see “Menu Tree” (p. 266).*

### 12 ◀ (previous) button and ▶ (next) button

The ◀ button returns to the previous menu. Press the ▶ button to continue to the next menu.

## Top Menu Window



### ❶ Top menu selection buttons

These display the selected menu.

### ❷ [Shutdown] button

Shuts down the control panel.

For details about shutting down the control panel,  
[☞ “Shutting down the control panel” \(p. 42\).](#)

### ❸ [Add Favorite] button

This registers the currently displayed menu to the Shortcut menu ([☞ p. 38](#)).

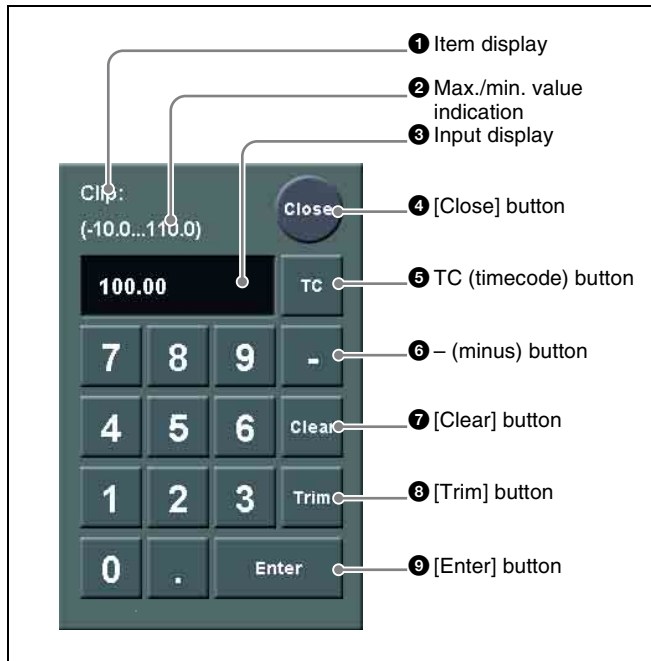
### ❹ [Close] button

This closes the top menu window.

### ❺ Page number entry section

Enter a page number and press the [Enter] button to open that page. If the page number does not exist, the color of the entered page will change. Pressing the [Clear] button clears the entry.

## Numeric Keypad Window



### 1 Item display

This is the name of the parameter being set in the numeric keypad window.

### 2 Max./min. (maximum/minimum) value indication

This shows the maximum and minimum values of the parameter.

### 3 Input display

This is the value being input into the numeric keypad window.

### 4 [Close] button

This closes the numeric keypad window.

### 5 TC (timecode) button

When the numeric keypad window is opened for a setting requiring a timecode value to be entered, this button appears in a depressed state.

The range of timecode values you can enter varies as follows depending on the signal format.

00:00:00:00 to 23:59:59:nn,

where nn = (number of frames per second) – 1.

### 6 – (minus) button

This toggles the sign of the entered value.

### 7 [Clear] button

This clears the input display. It does not change the parameter setting.

### 8 [Trim] button

After entering the difference from the current value, press this button to confirm the numeric input.

### 9 [Enter] button

This confirms the entered value.

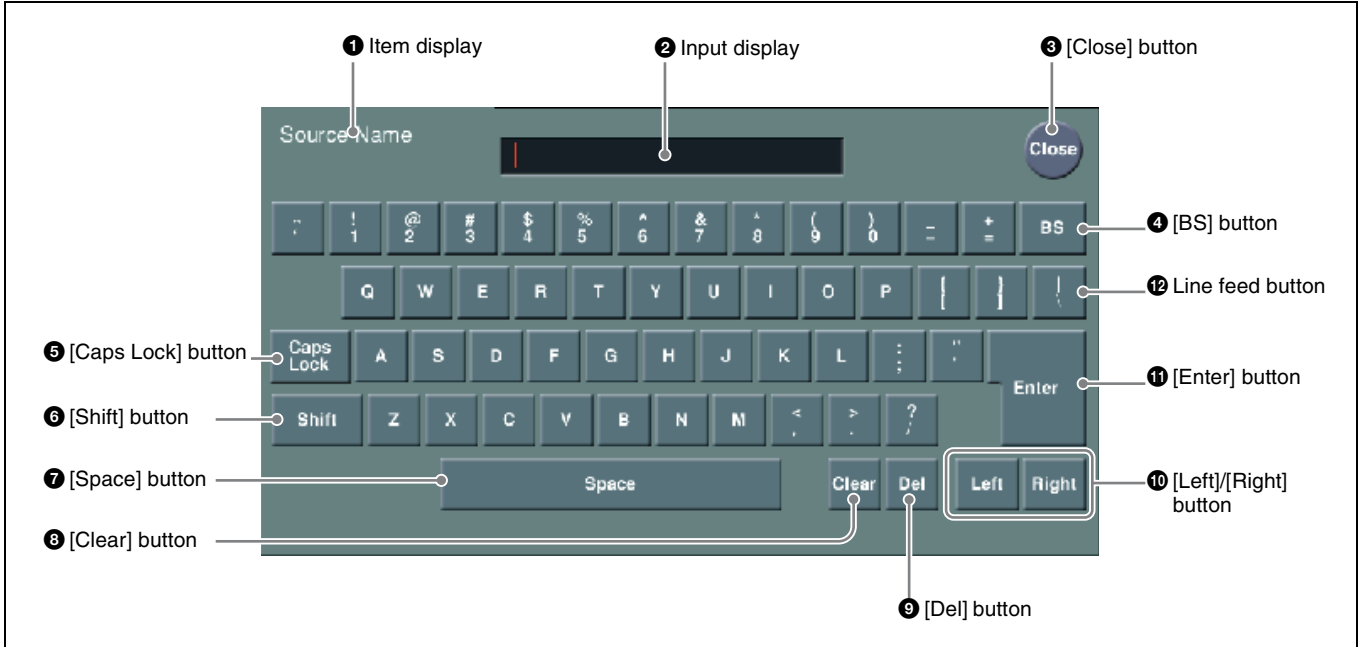
If correctly set, the numeric keypad window closes.

If it is not correctly set, the input display changes color.

# Keyboard Window

## Notes

Except when changing source names, the following characters cannot be used.  
space, \, /, :, ;, , (comma), . (dot), <, >, \*, ?, ", |



### 1 Item display

This is the name of the parameter being set.

### 2 Input display

This is the character string being input.

### 3 [Close] button

This closes the keyboard window.

### 4 [BS] (backspace) button

This clears the character immediately before the cursor.

### 5 [Caps Lock] button

This enables input of capital letters only.

## Notes

You can enter items to be displayed on the control panel LCD using lowercase letters, but these will be converted to capitals for display.

MS-DOS does not distinguish case in filenames, and therefore you are recommended to enter filenames in capital letters.

### 6 [Shift] button

This selects the characters on the shift side of the keys. The shift is released when you enter a character.

### 7 [Space] button

This enters a space character.

### 8 [Clear] button

This clears all of the characters in the input string.

### 9 [Del] (delete) button

This clears the character immediately after the cursor.

### 10 [Left]/[Right] button

These move the cursor one character to the left or right in the input string.

### 11 [Enter] button

This sets the input string as a parameter value.

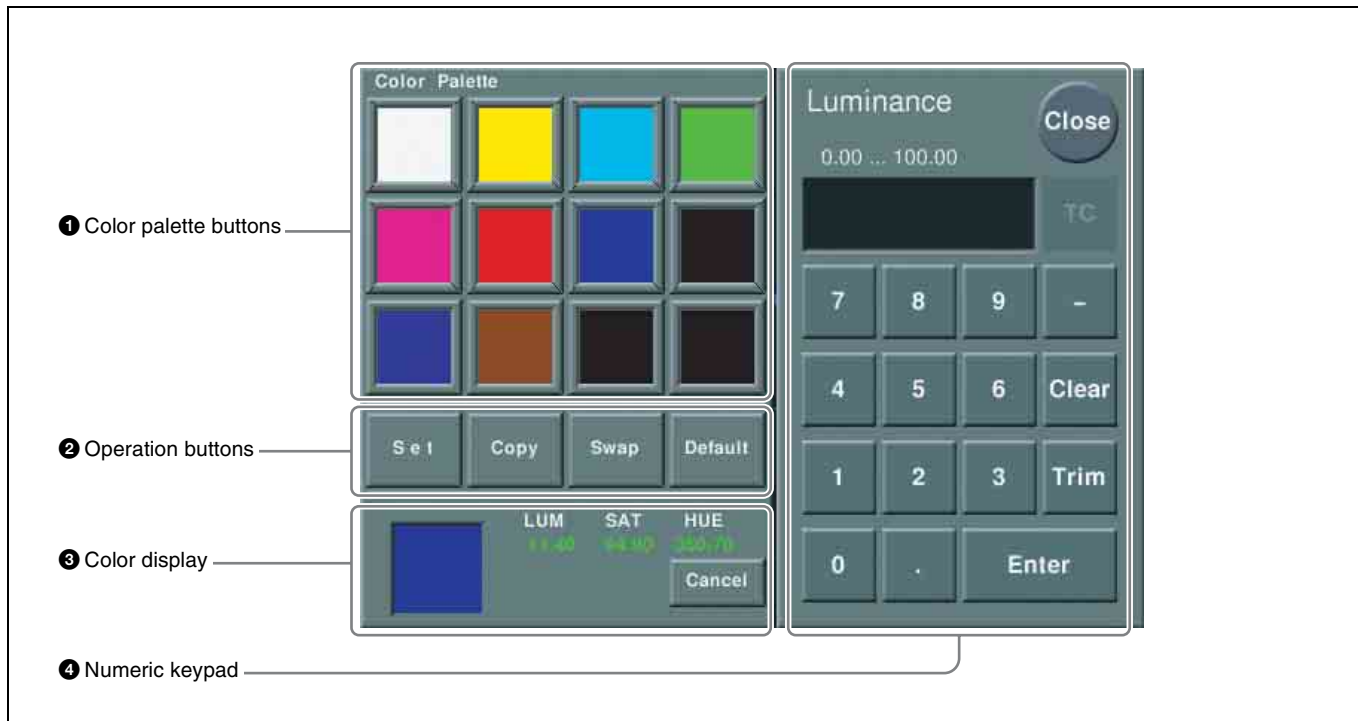
If correctly set, the keyboard window closes. If it is not correctly set, the input display changes color.

### 12 Line feed button

After pressing the [Shift] button, press this button to feed a line. The input display shows this as "l".

## Color Palette Window

When parameters are assigned as a combination of luminance, saturation, and hue, pressing a parameter setting button displays a color palette window.



### 1 Color palette buttons

Press one of these to display the corresponding color in the color display.

### 2 Operation buttons

**Set:** If you press any color palette button with this button held down, the color shown in the color display is assigned to the color palette button.

**Copy:** If you press a color palette button with this button held down, the color is used as the source for copying. Next press a different color palette button to copy to that button.

**Swap:** If you press two color palette buttons in sequence with this button held down, the two colors are swapped.

**Default:** If you press any color palette button with this button held down, the color palette button is set to the default color.

### 3 Color display

This shows the setting color and its parameters (LUM, SAT, and HUE).

By adjusting the parameters, you can create any color. If a parameter value is outside the permitted range for RGB (0 to 255), the “Illegal Color” indication appears, and this is adjusted to a value within range.

**Cancel:** Pressing this button returns to the state when the color palette window was opened.

### 4 Numeric keypad

Use this to enter numeric values for parameters.

For details, see [“Numeric Keypad Window” \(p. 34\)](#).

## Basic Menu Operations

### Notes

Some functions and items not supported by the MVS-3000 system may be displayed in parts of the menu. These items are ignored, even if selected and values specified, and are not reflected in the system operation.

For details, see [“Menus of Disabled Operations and Settings” \(p. 281\)](#).

## Recalling Menus

The following three methods are available for recalling menus.

### Top menu selection buttons on the top menu window

Open the top menu (1st menu level) of the corresponding menu for each button.

For details, see “Top Menu Window” (p. 33).

### Top menu window page number entry

Specify the menu page number to open the menu.

For details, see “Top Menu Window” (p. 33).

### Pressing a particular button twice

Open the menu that corresponds to the button.

For details, see “Menu Access by Pressing a Button Twice” (p. 286).

## Selecting Menus

- 1 Display the top menu.
- 2 Use the VF buttons (right side of screen) to select the 2nd level of the menu, and then use the HF buttons (bottom of screen) to select the 3rd level of the menu.
- 3 Press the appropriate function button within the function button area (center of screen).

In this manual, menu selection operations are indicated as “1st level >2nd level >3rd level (menu number).”

**Example:** To select the Shortcut menu  
Home >Favorites >Shortcut menu (0021)

### To go back to the previous menu

To return to the last displayed menu, press the previous page button.

## Selecting List Items

The following methods can be used to select items displayed in lists on the menu screens.

- Press an item in the list directly.
- Press the arrow keys to scroll to highlight the item.
- Press the parameter settings button for the item selection, and enter the item number in the numeric keypad window.

Depending on the menu, you can click [Plural] to select multiple items or the [All] button to select all items. You can also select the number of parameters using [Num].

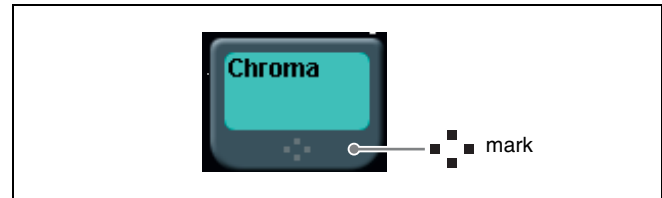
**Example: Selecting frame memory folders**

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	No	Select folder

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
2	Num	Number to select

If the [No] parameter is set to “2” and the [Num] parameter is set to “5,” five folders are selected starting from folder number 2.

## Setting Parameters



The above mark on a function button indicates that there are parameters which can be adjusted.

When you press such a button, you can set the parameters using one of the following methods.

- Press the parameter setting button corresponding to the parameter. This displays the numeric keypad window allowing you to enter the desired value.
- Operation using the mouse (see p. 38).

In this manual, the parameter setting operation is described as shown below.

The “No.” column indicates the parameter setting button position (1 to 5 from the top).

**Example: To set the key wipe pattern key parameters**

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Size	Pattern size
2	Soft	Edge softness
3	Density	Key density

You adjust the [Size] parameter (pattern size) using the first parameter setting button.

In addition, when the [MENU] button in the device control block is pressed and turned on, you can use the trackball and Z-ring to adjust the parameters.

- Move the trackball on the x-axis to adjust the first parameter, and on the y-axis to adjust the second parameter. Moving up or to the right increases the parameter value, and moving down or to the left decreases the parameter value.
- Turn the Z-ring to adjust the third parameter. Turning clockwise increases the parameter value, and turning counterclockwise decreases the parameter value.

## Returning Parameters to Default Values

Press the [Default Recall] button, turning it on, then press a VF button or parameter setting button to return the parameters to their default values, in the following groupings.

- When a VF button is pressed: Function grouping (functions of the HF buttons at the bottom of the screen)
- When a parameter setting button is pressed: Parameter grouping

### Notes

- The default state of the parameters depends on the initial status mode specified in the Setup menu, as follows.  
**User:** The state when [Initial Status Define] is executed.  
**Factory:** Factory default settings
- The horizontal (H) and vertical (V) position settings cannot be returned to their default states individually. For example, returning the horizontal (H) position to its default value also returns the vertical (V) position to its default value automatically, and vice versa.

For details about menus that can be returned to their default states, [☞ “Menu Tree” \(p. 266\)](#).

## Operation with a Mouse

Instead of pressing buttons on screen (touch operation), you can position the mouse cursor over a button and click the mouse. The parameter setting and list scrolling operations are described below.

### To set a parameter with the mouse

To adjust the value of a parameter setting button with the mouse, you can use one of the following three methods.

- Position the cursor over the parameter setting button for which you want to adjust the value, and turn the mouse wheel.
- Position the cursor over the parameter setting button for which you want to adjust the value, then hold down the right mouse button, and drag the bar showing the setting to the desired value.
- Position the cursor over the parameter setting button for which you want to adjust the value, then click the left mouse button to open the numeric keypad window and enter the desired value.

### To scroll a list with the mouse

Position the cursor over the list you want to scroll, and turn the mouse wheel.

In the Setup menu, you can specify the scroll direction and whether parameters increase or decrease in relation to the mouse wheel rotation. You can also switch the functions of the right and left mouse buttons during parameter setting button adjustments.

For details, [☞ “Setting the Mouse Wheel Scrolling Direction for Parameter Setting” \(p. 239\)](#) and [☞ “Selecting the Mouse Button for the Parameter Setting Buttons” \(p. 239\)](#).

## Using Shortcut Menus

Create a shortcut menu by grouping frequently used menus into a “Favorites” menu.

In addition to menus, menu macros can also be saved to the shortcut menu.

For details about menu macros, [☞ “Menu Macros” \(p. 194\)](#).

The shortcut menu settings are handled as part of the control panel setup. You can recall and save them in the same way as setup data.

### Recalling a menu from the shortcut menu

- 1 Open the Home >Favorites >Shortcut menu (0021).
- 2 Select a group in the <Group Select> group.
- 3 Press the button to which the desired menu is registered.

### Registering a menu to the shortcut menu

You can register 15 buttons to a single shortcut menu group. The following two registration methods are available.

#### To register by page number

- 1 In the Home >Favorites >Shortcut menu (0021), select the group to which you want to register the menu.
- 2 Press [Button Edit].  
The Home >Favorites >Button Edit menu (0023) appears.
- 3 Select the position in which to display the button.  
To change the content of an already displayed button, press the button to select it.
- 4 Press [Page Set].

- 5 Enter the page number for the menu you want to register.

### To register the currently displayed menu

- 1 In the Home >Favorites >Shortcut menu (0021), select the group to which you want to register the menu beforehand.
- 2 Display the menu you want to register in the shortcut menu.
- 3 Press the menu page number button, and press [Add Favorite].

The menu selected in step **2** is automatically registered to an open button in the group selected in step **1**.

## Customizing the shortcut menu

### To customize buttons

- 1 In the Home >Favorites >Shortcut menu (0021), press [Button Edit].

The Home >Favorites >Button Edit menu (0023) appears.

- 2 Use the following procedures.

#### To rename the button

Select the button you want to change, press [Rename], enter a new button name (up to 24 characters), and then press [Enter].

#### To change the button color

Select the button you want to change, press [Color Set], and then select the desired color.

#### To copy button settings

Select the button you want to copy, press [Copy], and then select the target button and press [Paste].

#### To delete button settings

Select the button you want to delete, then press [Clear].

### To customize groups

- 1 In the Home >Favorites >Shortcut menu (0021), press [Group Edit].

The Home >Favorites >Group Edit menu (0022) appears.

- 2 Use the following procedures.

#### To rename a group

Select the group you want to change, press [Rename], enter a new group name (up to 24 characters), and then press [Enter].

#### To copy group settings

Select the group you want to copy and press [Copy], and then select the target group and press [Paste].

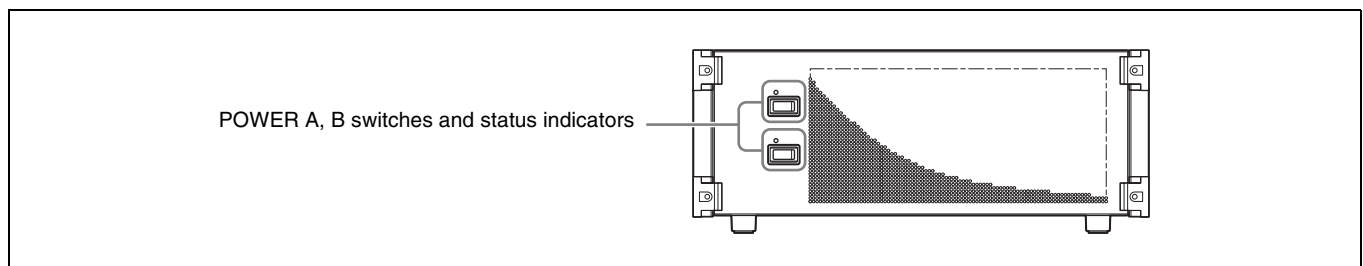
#### To delete group settings

Select the group button you want to delete, press [Clear]. Check the message, then press [Yes].

# Power Supply and Connectors

## MVS-3000 Multi Format Switcher Processor

### Front panel



#### POWER A, B switches and status indicators

The POWER switches turn the unit on and off. The unit is powered on when the POWER switches are on the “I” side, and powered off when the POWER switches are on

the “O” side. The status indicators light in green when the unit is powered on.

Operation continues as long as power supply is normal on one unit.

## Meaning of status indicator display

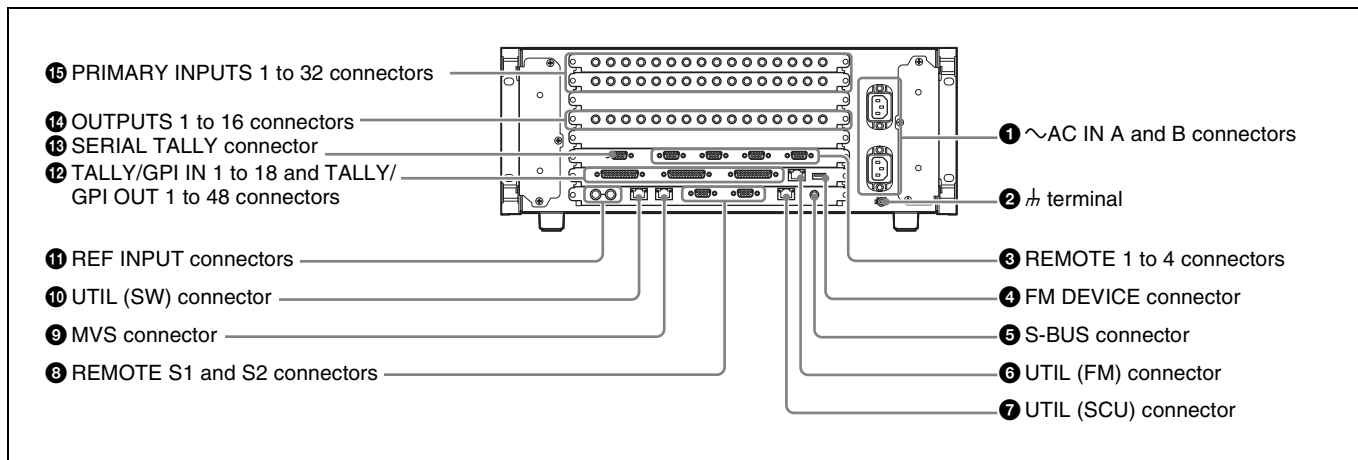
The power supply unit status indicator shows the status if an error is detected when the unit is powered on and during operation.

Indicator color	Status	Description	Steps to take
Green	Lit	Operating normally	—
Red	Lit	Power supply unit fan fault	Exchange the fan unit.
—	Not lit	Power supply fault	Exchange the power supply unit.

## Notes

- If a status indicator does not light when you turn a POWER switch on, there may be a fault in the power circuits. Turn the POWER switch off and contact your Sony service representative.
- When the unit is powered on, the status indicators may light momentarily in red and a whining sound may be heard. If POWER A or B only is turned OFF, the power supply status indicator for that power supply lights in red. This is not a malfunction. Turn both POWER A and B switches ON.

## Rear panel



### 1 ~ AC IN (AC power input) A and B connectors (3-pin)

Connect to 100 V to 240 V AC power supply with the optional AC power cords.

The unit is equipped with two power supplies. When A or B power supply is connected, unit operation can proceed.

### 2 h (signal ground) terminal

Connect to the system ground.

### 3 REMOTE 1 to 4 connectors (D-sub 9-pin, RS-422A)

Connect devices supporting Sony 9-pin VTR, VDCP (Video Disk Communications Protocol), or P-Bus (Peripheral II Protocol) protocols.

### 4 FM (frame memory) DEVICE connector (USB 2.0 compliant)

This connector is for attaching an external HDD for frame memory.<sup>1)</sup>

### 5 S-BUS connector (BNC-type)

Connect this connector with a BNC cable to an S-Bus data link via a T bridge.

Connecting devices such as IXS series routing switchers and MKS-8080/8082 AUX bus remote panels via an S-Bus data link enables the following kinds of control.

- Returning to the S-Bus, tally data created by this unit on the basis of data received from other devices
- Switching the cross-points of a routing switcher from the control panel
- Switching the cross-points of a switcher from the remote panel
- Displaying on the control panel source names set on a routing switcher

### 6 UTIL (FM) (utility (frame memory data)) connector (RJ-45 compliant)

Intended for future expansion.

### 7 UTIL (SCU) (utility (SCU)) connector (RJ-45 compliant)

Intended for future expansion.

### 8 REMOTE S1 and S2 connectors (D-sub 9-pin, RS-422A compliant)

These connectors are used to operate the MVS-3000 system from external devices or editing control systems such as the BVE-9100.

Define the types of the connected devices on the control panel.

**9 MVS (multi format video switcher) connector (RJ-45 compliant)**

Connect to an ICP-3000 control panel. You can also connect to the control panel via an Ethernet switch.<sup>1)</sup>

**10 UTIL (SW) (utility (SW)) connector (RJ-45 compliant)**

Intended for future expansion.

**11 REF INPUT (reference video input) connectors (BNC-type)**

If you wish to synchronize this unit to an external reference signal, input the reference signal. For an HDTV system, input an HD tri-level sync signal, black burst signal, or analog sync signal. For an SDTV system, input a black burst signal or analog sync signal.

The two connectors have a loop-through configuration. Signal input to one connector can be output from the other connector. If you will not be using the loop-through output, be sure to terminate the unused connector with the supplied 75 ohm terminator.

**12 TALLY/GPI IN (tally/ general purpose interface input) 1 to 18 and TALLY/GPI OUT (tally/ general purpose interface output) 1 to 48 connectors (D-sub 25-pin)**

Output tally data created with the control panel of the MVS-3000 system (open collector). These connectors can also be used as GPI output ports.

You can also input trigger signals as GPI inputs.

Input and output settings are made on the control panel of the MVS-3000 system.

**13 SERIAL TALLY connector (D-sub 9-pin, RS-422A)**

Output tally data created with the control panel of the MVS-3000 system.

**14 OUTPUTS 1 to 16 connectors (BNC-type)**

These connectors output serial digital signals. You can assign them as program output, preview output, AUX output, and so on.

Make output assignments on the MVS-3000 system control panel.

*For details about assignable signals, refer to “Signal Output Settings” (p. 246).*

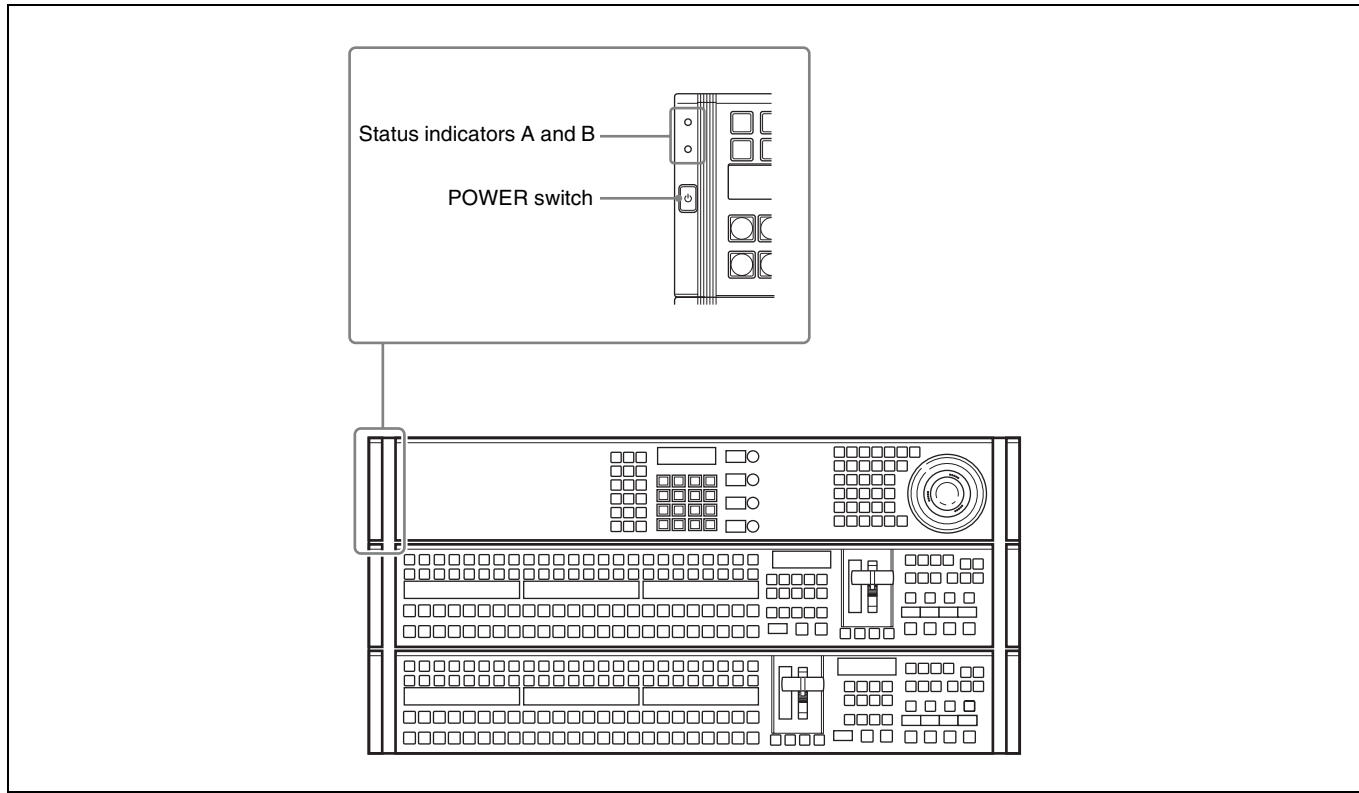
**15 PRIMARY INPUTS 1 to 32 connectors (BNC-type)**

These connectors allow you to input up to 32 serial digital video signals.


<sup>1)</sup> For information about devices that can be connected, contact your Sony representative.

# ICP-3000 Control Panel


## Top panel



### POWER switch and status indicators A and B

When power is supplied to the AC IN A and B connectors on the rear panel, the status indicators (green) light. If you press the POWER switch under this condition,  lights green and the panel turns on.

### Shutting down the control panel

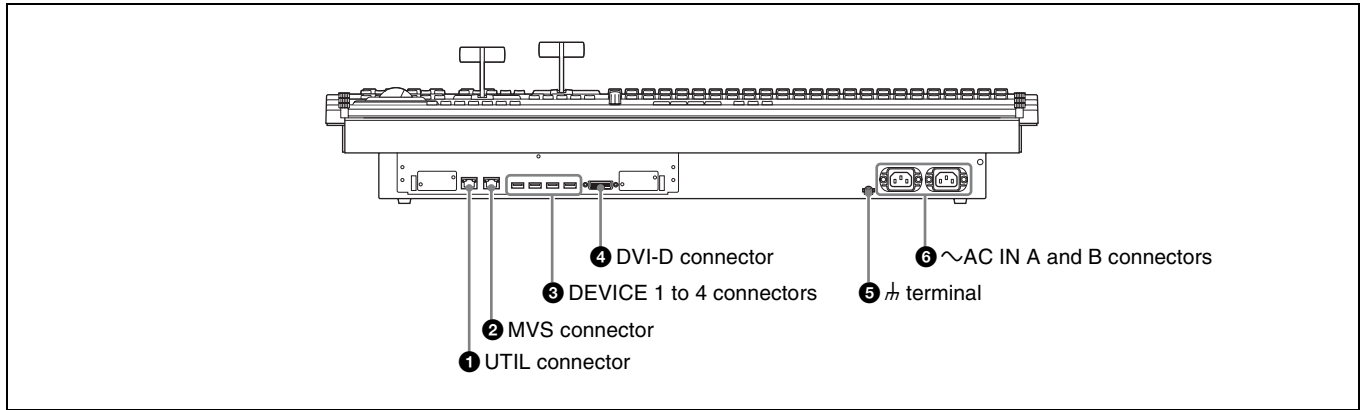
Press the [Shutdown] button in the top menu list or top menu window, and follow the on-screen instructions. After the menu screen goes fully black, check that the control panel power switch indicator  has gone out.

You can forcibly turn off the power without shutting down by pressing and holding the POWER for about five seconds.

### Notes

- If status indicator A or B does not light even when power is supplied to the AC IN A and B connectors, there may be a fault in the power circuits. Disconnect the cords from the AC IN A/B connectors, and contact your Sony service representative.
- If you force shutdown without performing shutdown processing, setting data may not be saved.
- Shut down the control panel before turning off the AC power supply (or disconnecting the power cord).

## Rear panel



### ① UTIL (utility) connector (RJ-45 compliant)

Intended for future expansion.

### ② MVS (multi format video switcher) connector (RJ-45 compliant)

Connect to the MVS-3000. You can also connect to the switcher processor via an Ethernet switch.<sup>1)</sup>

### ③ DEVICE 1 to 4 connectors (USB 2.0 compliant, USB Type-A)

Connect to a USB device.<sup>1)</sup>

### ④ DVI-D connector

Connect to an external monitor.<sup>1)</sup>

### ⑤ $\hbar$ (signal ground) terminal

Connect to the system ground.

### ⑥ $\sim$ AC IN (AC power input) A and B connectors (3-pin)

Connect to 100 V to 240 V AC power supply with the optional AC power cords.

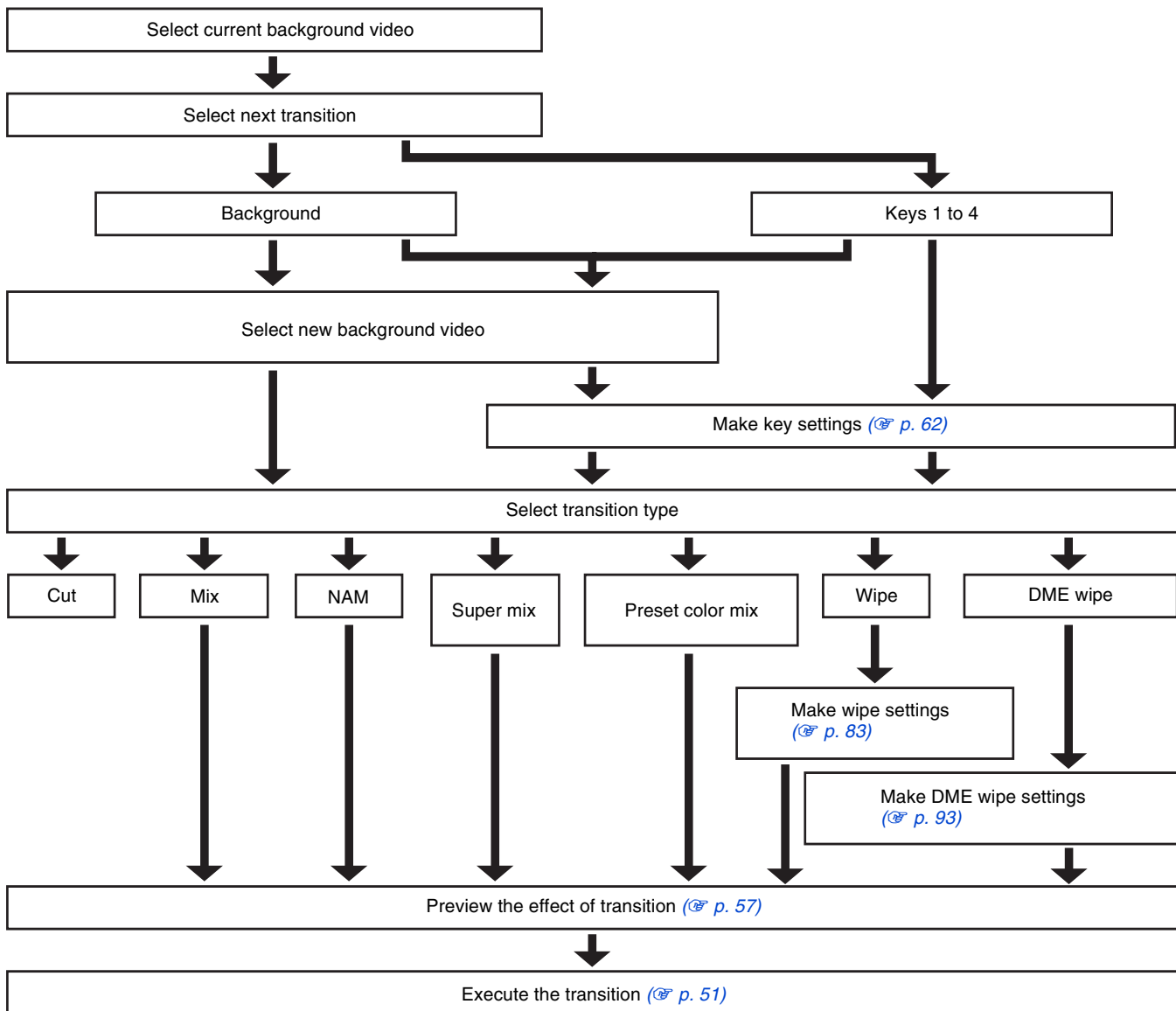
The unit is equipped with two power supplies. When A or B power supply is connected, unit operation can proceed.

1) For information about devices that can be connected, contact your Sony representative.

## Video Processing Flow

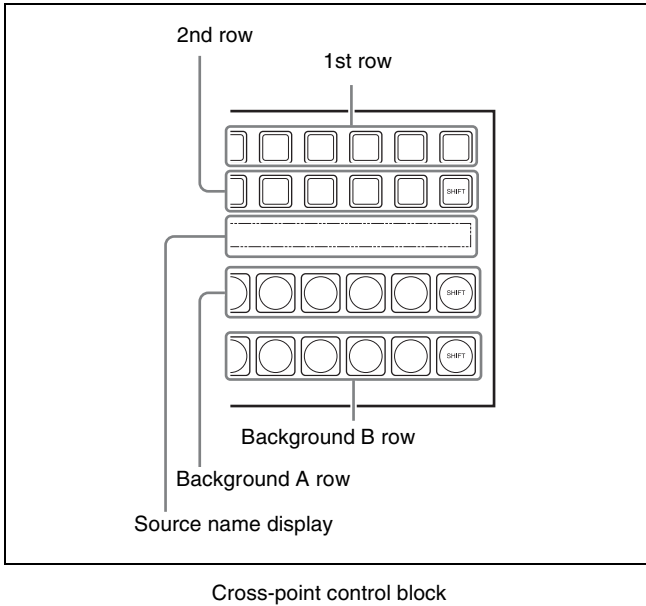
The switch from the current video stream (appearing on the corresponding program monitor) to a new video stream is referred to as a transition.

The following illustration shows the flow of operations for carrying out a transition on a switcher bank.



# Signal Selection

You carry out signal selection in the cross-point control block of each bank.



The following table illustrates the correspondence between buses and cross-point button rows, and the delegation operations.

Bank	Bus name	Cross-point button row	Delegation operation
M/E-1	Background A bus	Background A row	–
	Background B bus	Background B row	–
	Key 1 bus	2nd row	In the 1st row, press the button to which the corresponding key was assigned during setup, turning it on.
	Key 2 bus		
	Key 3 bus		
Key 4 bus			
PGM/PST	Program bus	Program row	–
	Preset bus	Preset row	–
	DSK 1 bus	2nd row	In the 1st row, press the button to which the corresponding key was assigned during setup, turning it on.
	DSK 2 bus		
	DSK 3 bus		
DSK 4 bus			
M/E-1 PGM/PST	Utility bus	2nd row	In the 1st row, press the button to which UTIL1 was assigned during setup, turning it on.
	AUX1 to AUX24 buses		In the 1st row, press the button to which the corresponding bus was assigned during setup, turning it on.
	Frame memory source 1 and 2 buses		
	Edit preview bus		

## Basics of Signal Selection

Each of the switcher banks have 24 cross-point buttons in their cross-point control blocks.

These buttons are identified by numbers common to all of the banks and blocks, and a signal is assigned to each number.

The basis of signal selection is to select, in a cross-point button row, the cross-point button to which the desired signal is assigned.

### M/E reentry signal selection

A video signal created on the M/E bank can be imported as an input signal on the PGM/PST bank. These signals are referred to as “M/E reentry input” signals.

To select an M/E reentry input signal using the cross-point buttons, the signal must be assigned beforehand in the Setup menu (☞ p. 223).

For example, if the program output from the M/E-1 block (M/E1 OUT) is assigned to an arbitrary cross-point button, the signal can be used as input material at any time.

## Bus Selection

Each row of the 24 cross-point buttons is shared by multiple buses.

## Signal Assignment and Selection

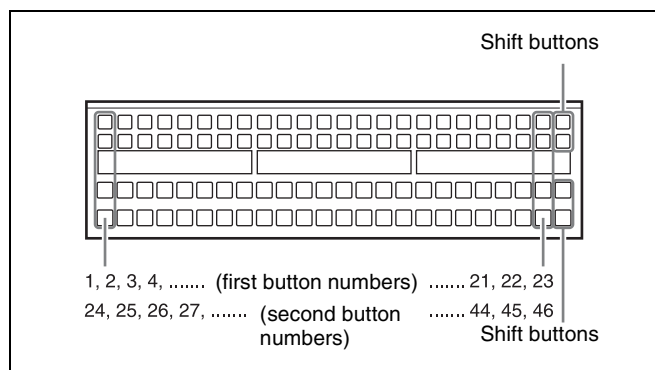
### Assigning signals to buttons

Each of the 24 cross-point buttons has a corresponding button number, to which you assign a signal.

In addition to the signals input to the connectors at the rear of the switcher processor, you can also select signals generated within the switcher.

Each button has assigned to it a video signal and a key signal, forming a pair. You can set these video and key combinations in the Setup menu.

## Cross-point control block button numbers



On each switcher bank, each cross-point button has two button numbers, and you use the shift button to switch between these numbers.

In the case of a 24-button layout, the button numbers are as follows.

Cross-point control block button numbers

Button	Number when the shift button is not pressed	Number when the shift button is pressed
From the left end to the 23rd button	1 to 23	24 to 46

### Notes

You can use the rightmost (24th) button as a [SIDE FLAG] button. In this case, the shift button moves one to the left, to the 23rd, and the button numbers are offset by one.

For details about the [SIDE FLAG] button, see [“Assigning a Cross-Point Button to Enable/Disable Side Flags”](#) (p. 226).

### Switching button numbers

The rightmost (24th) button functions as a shift button. (The shift button function can be disabled in the Setup menu.)

When selecting the signals of button numbers 1 to 23, press the cross-point button for the desired signal. To select button numbers 24 to 46, hold down the shift button, and press the cross-point button for the desired signal.

## Inhibiting Cross-Point Button Operations

For each cross-point button, you can temporarily inhibit operations.

### Notes

This setting is cleared when you reset the control panel.

## Buses for which operations can be inhibited

This setting applies to the cross-point buttons in each switcher bank.

If you make the setting for one cross-point button, this inhibits operation of all cross-point buttons with the same number in the following buses.

The corresponding name also disappears from the source name display.

- Background A, background B
- Keys 1 to 4
- Utility bus

## Assigning the function of disabling cross-point button operation to a button

In the Setup menu, assign “Inhibit Set” to any of the buttons in the 1st row.

For details, see [“Assigning a Bus or Function to 1st Row Buttons”](#) (p. 235).

## Inhibiting operation of a cross-point button

Hold down the button to which “Inhibit Set” is assigned, and press the cross-point button whose operation you want to inhibit.

The button you pressed flashes amber, and its operation is inhibited.

### Notes

Even when you inhibit operation of a cross-point button, macro attachment settings are still possible.

For details, see [“Setting and Canceling a Macro Attachment”](#) (p. 191).

## Clearing a cross-point button operation inhibit setting

Hold down the button to which “Inhibit Set” is assigned, and press the button whose operation is inhibited (flashing amber).

This clears the operation inhibit setting for the button you pressed.

## Clearing all operation inhibit settings

Press the button to which “Inhibit Set” is assigned and the button to which “Inhibit All Clear” is assigned simultaneously.



## Signal Name Display

You can attach a name (source name) to each signal assigned to a cross-point button, with a maximum of 16 characters.

- The source name displays in the cross-point control block show the source names of the video signals assigned to numbers 1 to 23.
- To display the source names for numbers 24 to 62, press the [SHIFT] button assigned to the 1st row.

### Colors of lit cross-point buttons

In a particular row of cross-point buttons, only the last pressed button is effective, and lights amber or red. The amber indicates the “low tally” state, and the red indicates the “high tally” state, to indicate whether or not the selected signal appears in the final output video.

Meaning of colors of lit cross-point buttons

Color	State	Meaning
Amber	Low tally	Does not appear in final output video.
Red	High tally	Appears in final output video.

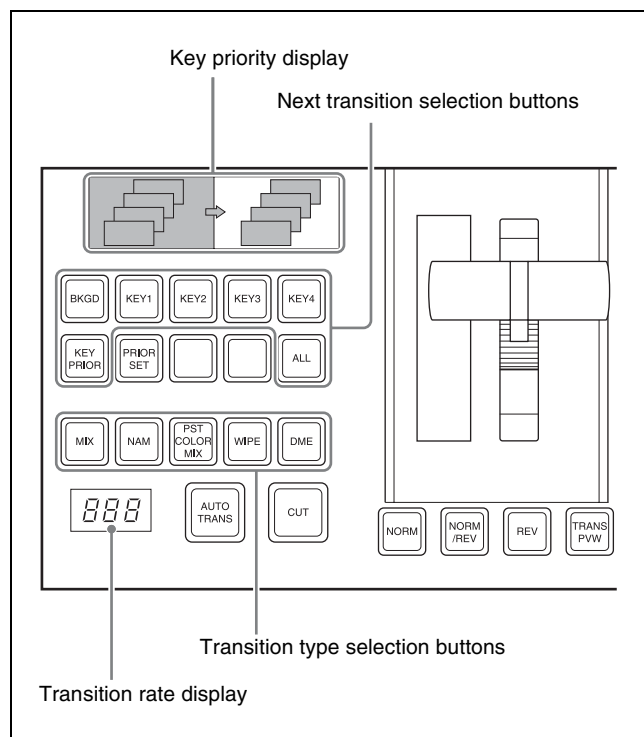
## Transitions

### Transition Types

Type	Description	Independent key transition	See page
Mix	The new video progressively fades in over the current video. The sum of the two video outputs is maintained at a constant, with the output of each at 50% at the mid-point of the transition (i.e., when the fader lever is in the center position).	Selectable	–

Type	Description	Independent key transition	See page
NAM (non-additive mix)	The current video and new video signals are compared, and the signal with the higher luminance level is given priority in the output. The signals are compared at the mid-point of the transition when both signals are at 100%, at which point the signal with the higher luminance level overpowers the other signal.	Not selectable	–
Super mix	The current video is maintained at 100% output for the first half of the transition as the new video is mixed while increasing progressively to 100%.	Not selectable	<a href="#">p. 50</a>
Preset color mix	The current video is replaced by the new video in a two-stage transition, with a color matte (unpatterned display) inserted during the first stage.	Not selectable	<a href="#">p. 50</a>
Wipe	The current video is replaced by the new video according to a predetermined wipe pattern.	Selectable	<a href="#">p. 83</a>
DME wipe	Using an image transformation effect, the current video is replaced by the new video as in a wipe.	Selectable	<a href="#">p. 93</a>
Clip transition	Linked to a mix (dissolve) or wipe transition, a frame memory clip (movie) is played back.	Not selectable	–
Cut	The new video quickly cuts into and replaces the current video.	Selectable	–

# Procedure for Basic Transition Operation



Transition control block (M/E bank)

- 1 In the background A row of the cross-point control block, select the background video.
- 2 Select the way in which the transition will affect the image, using the next transition selection buttons in the transition control block.

**To change the background:** Press the [BKGD] button, turning it on.

**To insert or delete a key:** Press one of the [KEY 1] to [KEY 4] buttons (or [DSK 1] to [DSK 4] buttons in the PGM/PST bank), turning it on.

**To enable the key priority setting, which determines the key overlay order after the transition:** Press the [KEY PRIOR] button, turning it on.

You can press more than one button at the same time.

**To change preset keys and backgrounds simultaneously:** Press the [ALL] button.

*For details about allocating a particular next transition button to the [ALL] button function, see “Setting the Operation Mode of the [ALL] Button in the Transition Control Block” (p. 237).*

- 3 For the transition to change the key priority, set the priority for after the transition.

*For details about operations, see “Key Priority Setting” (p. 49).*

- 4 Select the new video used for the transition.

- In the background B row of cross-point buttons, select the new background video.
- When inserting a key, select the key signal, and make any required settings.

*For details about key settings, see “Keys” (p. 62).*

To carry out a cut transition, skip to step 7; otherwise continue to step 5.

- 5 Select one of the transition type selection buttons in the transition control block.

**To carry out a dissolve to the new video:** Press one of the [MIX], [NAM], [SUPER MIX], and [PST COLOR MIX] buttons, turning it on.

**To carry out a wipe:** Press the [WIPE] or [DME] button, turning it on.

**To carry out a transition while playing back a frame memory clip:** Press one of the buttons corresponding to the clip to be used (FM1&2CLIP, FM3&4CLIP, FM5&6CLIP, and FM7&8CLIP), turning it on.

You can also use the Misc > Transition menu (1171) to select a desired transition type for a switcher bank.

## Notes

The transition type selection buttons in the transition control block can be interchanged in the setup menu.

*For details, see “Setting Transition Control Block Button Assignments” (p. 221).*

- 6 Make the required settings, according to the selected transition type.

**Super mix:** “Super Mix Settings” (p. 50)

**Preset color mix:** “Color Matte Settings” (p. 50)

**Wipe:** “Basic Procedure for Wipe Settings” (p. 83)

**DME wipe:** “Basic Procedure for DME Wipe Settings” (p. 95)

**Clip transition:** “Clip Transition Operations” (p. 115)

Using the transition preview function (p. 57), you can check the transition on the preview monitor.

- 7 Carry out the transition in the transition control block.

**For a gradual transition such as a mix (dissolve) or wipe:** Press the [AUTO TRANS] button, or operate the fader lever.

To execute a transition by pressing the [AUTO TRANS] button, first set the transition rate (specified as the duration of the transition) (☞ p. 52).

When you have selected a wipe or DME wipe as the transition type, you can also set the transition range (☞ p. 53).

**For an instantaneous transition:** Press the [CUT] button.

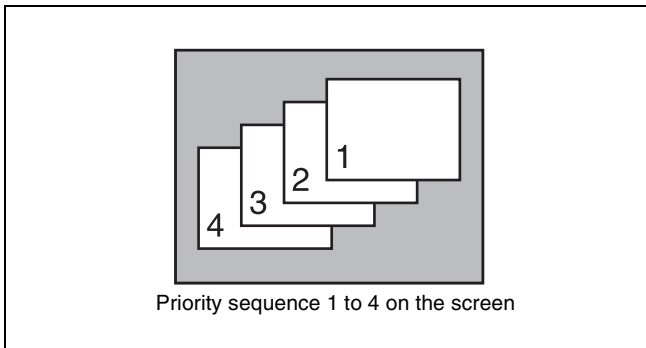
For details, ☞ “Executing a Transition” (p. 51).

## Key Priority Setting

If a number of keys are already inserted in the current video, you can check or change the key priority, that is to say, the order in which the keys are overlaid.

When a key priority ([KEY PRIOR]) is selected as the next transition, you can also change the key priority in the new video.

The key priority values go from 1 to 4, with a higher priority key being “in front” as seen on the screen.

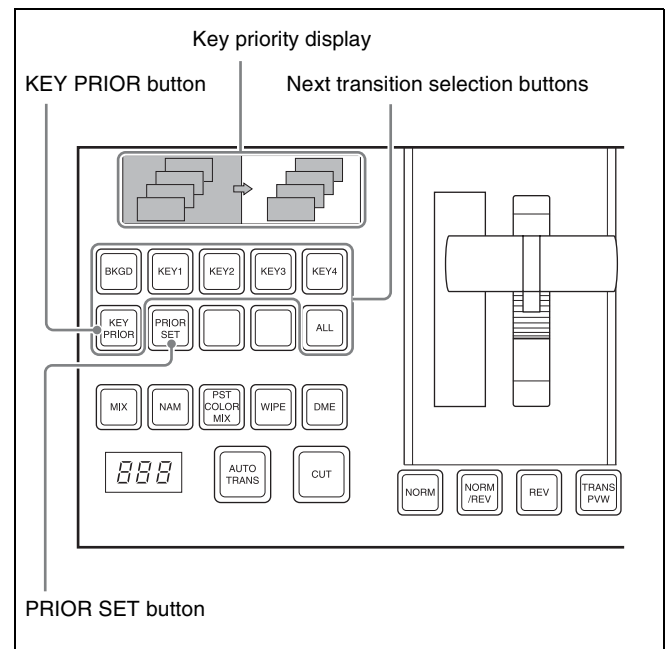


You can set the key priority for keys inserted in the current screen and for keys after the transition. There are two ways of setting the priority: either using the [PRIOR SET] button in the transition control block, or using the Misc menu to access the Key Priority menu for each switcher bank.

### Notes

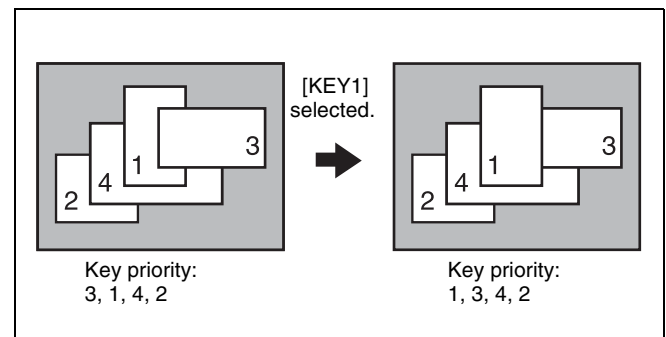
When the operating mode is set to multi program, the key priority setting cannot be made.

## Setting the Key Priority in the Transition Control Block



Transition control block

## Changing the key priority



- 1 To target the currently inserted keys, press the [KEY PRIOR] button to turn it on.  
To target the keys after transition, hold down the [PRIOR SET] button and press the [KEY PRIOR] button to turn it on.
- 2 Hold down the [PRIOR SET] button, and press one of the next transition selection buttons [KEY1] to [KEY4] ([DSK1] to [DSK4] buttons in the PGM/PST bank) for the key you want to bring to the front after the transition.  
To set the priority to be the same as before the transition, press the [BKGD] button.

**Notes**

The [BKGD] button is only effective when in the mode for changing the key priority for after the transition.

When the next transition selection button [KEY PRIOR] is on, the selected key appears on top on the preview monitor. The priority of keys other than the selected one does not change.

- 3 To change the priority of more than one key, repeat the previous operation as required.

## Setting the Key Priority by a Menu Operation

### Changing the key priority

- 1 When operating from the M/E-1 bank, for example, open the M/E-1 >Misc >Key Priority menu (1173).
- 2 To target the currently inserted keys, select [Key Priority].  
To target the keys after transition, select [Next Key Priority].
- 3 For each of <Priority1>, <Priority2>, <Priority3>, and <Priority4>, select a key to determine the key priority sequence.

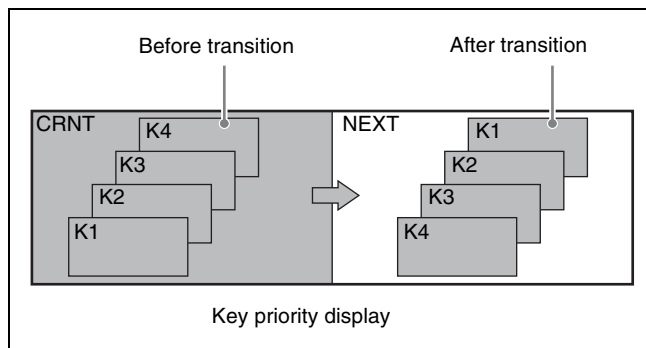
**Notes**

It is not possible to select the same key for two or more priority numbers.

The keys appear in the set order on the program monitor of the corresponding bank.

## Displaying the Key Output Status and Key Priority

The key status is displayed as follows in the key priority display of the transition control block. (Example: K1 indicates key 1.)



The current priority (i.e., before transition) is displayed on the left (CRNT), and the priority after the transition is displayed on the right (NEXT).

After the transition is complete, the CURRENT and NEXT displays switch places.

## Super Mix Settings

You can set the output levels of the current and new video signals at the mid-point of the transition, in the range 0 to 100%.

**Notes**

This transition type is not available for an independent key transition.

- 1 When operating from the M/E-1 bank, for example, open the M/E-1 >Misc >Transition menu (1171).
- 2 In the <Transition Type> group, select [Super Mix].
- 3 Adjust the output levels.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
2	A Gain	Background A output level
3	B Gain	Background B output level

## Color Matte Settings

You can specify the color matte that is inserted during preset color mix by luminance, saturation, and hue values. Also, in place of a color matte you can use an image selected on the utility bus.

**Notes**

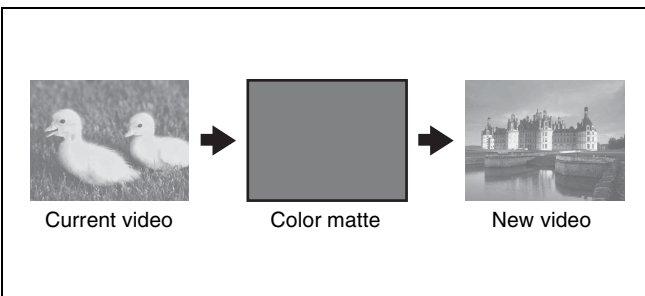
- This transition type is not available for an independent key transition.

- In the multi-program mode, you can use a preset color mix only when selecting the background for the next transition.

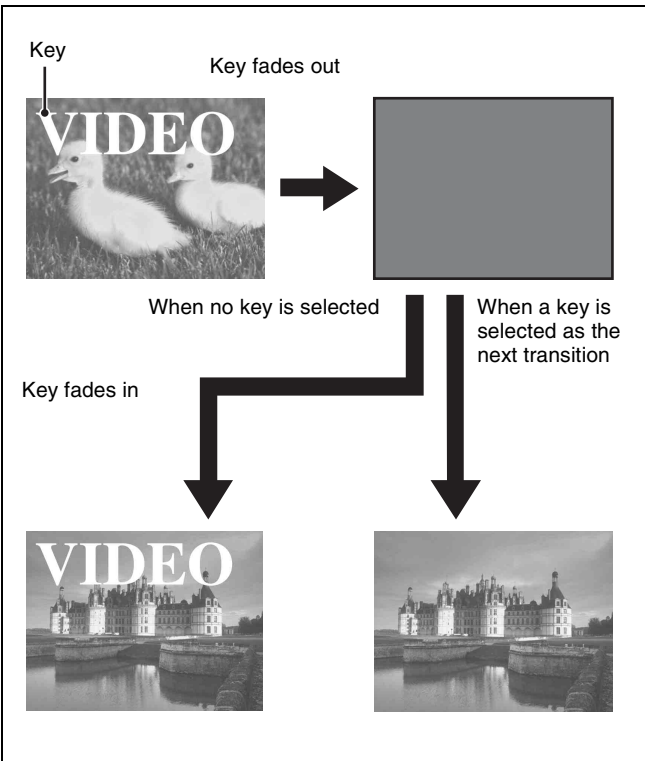
**One-stroke mode and one-time mode**

- You can make a setting such that a preset color mix is carried out in a single transition. This is called “one-stroke mode.”  
When the bus fixed mode is selected in the Setup menu, a preset color mix is always carried out in the one-stroke mode.
- You can also make a setting such that when a preset color mix is completed, the next transition switches to the previous transition type automatically. This is called “one-time mode.”

**When only the background is changed**

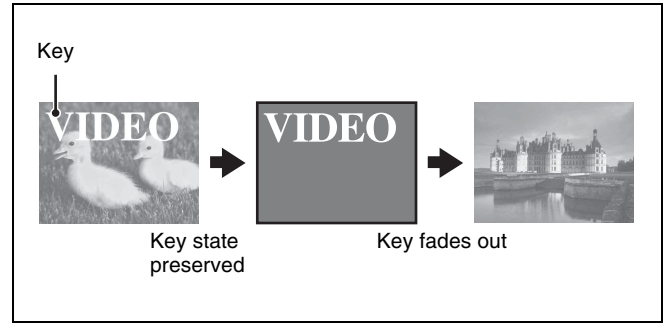


**When a key is inserted**



By means of a Setup menu setting, it is possible to preserve the key state while carrying out the color matte mix.

**When a key is selected for the next transition while a key is inserted**



**Setting the color matte**

- 1 When operating from the M/E-1 bank, for example, open the M/E-1 > Misc > Transition menu (1171).
- 2 Select [Preset Color Mix] in the <Transition Type> group.
- 3 In the <Preset Color Mix Fill> group, select one of the following.  
**Flat Color:** Monochrome color matte  
**Utility 1 Bus:** Signal selected on the utility bus
- 4 When “Flat Color” is selected, adjust the color matte.

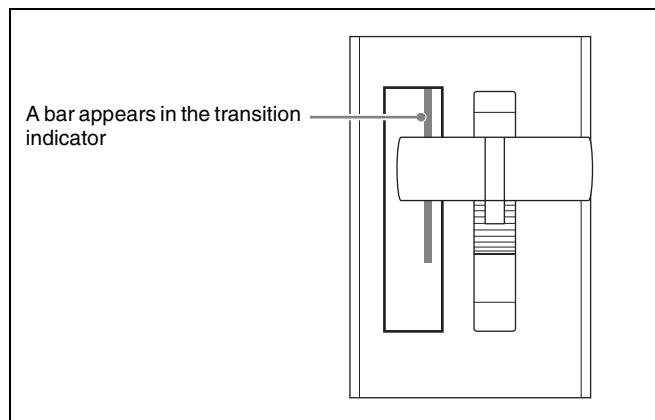
No.	Parameter	Adjustment
2	Luminance	Luminance
3	Saturation	Saturation
4	Hue	Hue

**Executing a Transition**

There are two modes of executing a transition: an auto transition by button operation or a manual transition using the fader lever. It is also possible to combine both methods, taking control with the fader lever of an auto transition which has partly completed, or complete a transition started with the fader lever as an auto transition. By combining common transitions with independent key transitions, different transition types can be applied to the background and keys, for example allowing a key wipe combined with a background dissolve.

## Transition Indicator Function

In each of the switcher banks, to the left of the fader lever is a transition indicator. This indicator shows the state of the transition, whether auto or manual.



For example, in the previous illustration, it can be seen that the transition is more than half completed. When the transition is completed, the indicator turns off.

## Setting the Transition Rate

There are two ways of setting the transition rate: using the Flexi Pad to enter a numeric value, or using the Misc menu to access the Transition menu for each switcher bank. You can also display the transition rate, independent key transition rate, and fade-to-black transition rate for each bank, and change the settings ([p. 126](#)).

### Notes

When a clip transition is selected as the transition type, it is not possible to set the transition rate.

## Frame input mode and timecode input mode

For numeric input of the transition rate value, there are two modes: frame input mode and timecode input mode. You select one of these modes using the Flexi Pad.

**Frame input mode:** The entered value is a number of frames.

Example: Entering 123 constitutes an entry of 123 frames

**Timecode input mode:** The entered value is a timecode value.

Example: Entering 123 constitutes an entry of 1 second 23 frames.

### Notes

Whereas you can enter a value of up to 999 in frame input mode, a value not smaller than 10 seconds cannot be entered in timecode input mode.

## Frame display mode and timecode display mode

For the transition rate display in the transition control block, there are two modes: frame display mode and timecode display mode. You can select one of these modes in setup.

For details, see [“Setting the Transition Rate Display Mode” \(p. 236\)](#).

### Notes

The setting is common to all banks of the switcher.

**Frame display mode:** Values are shown as from 0 to 999 frames. In this display mode, a value entered in timecode input mode is converted for display as a number of frames.

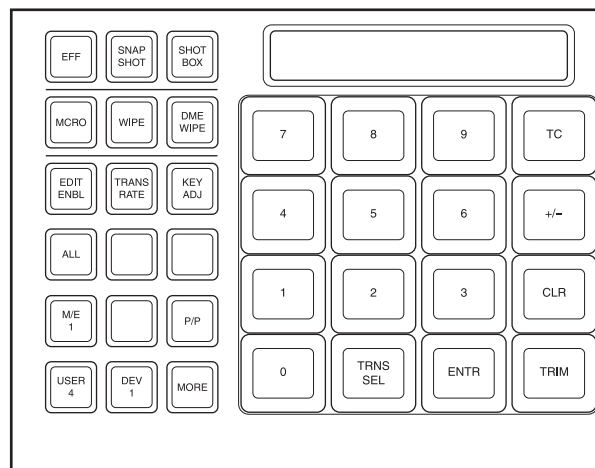
**Timecode display mode:** Values are shown as timecode values, consisting of seconds and frames. In this display mode, a value entered in frame input mode is converted for display as a timecode value. If the value consists of four or more digits, the last digit is not shown.

Example: A value of 9 seconds 23 frames appears as “9.23” and a value of 10 seconds 01 frame appears as “10.0.”

## Setting the transition rate in the Flexi Pad

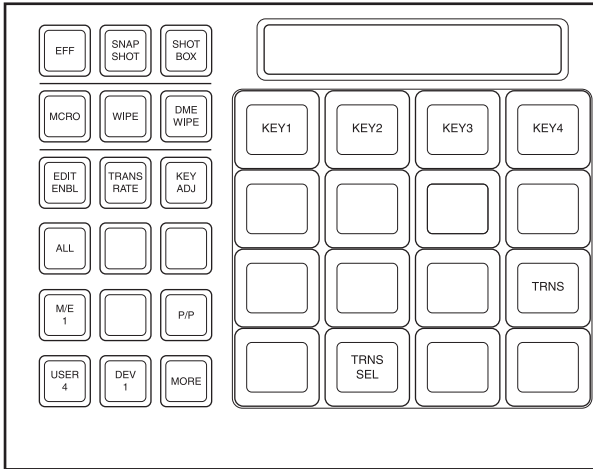
1 In the Flexi Pad, press the [TRANS RATE] button.

The button displays in the memory recall section change as shown in the following illustration, and the Flexi Pad switches to the transition rate setting mode.



- 2 In the region selection buttons, select the switcher bank.
- 3 Press the [TRNS SEL] button in the memory recall section.

The button displays in the memory recall section change as shown in the following illustration, and you can select the type of transition for which to set the rate.



- 4 Press the [TRNS] button.  
You can now set the M/E-1 bank background transition rate.
- 5 While viewing the alphanumeric display, enter the transition rate you want to set with the memory recall section button.  
If required, press the [TC] button to toggle the input mode (frame input or timecode input).
  - Enter a value of up to three digits.
  - To cancel the input, press any of the mode selection buttons.
- 6 Press the [ENTR] button.

### Setting the transition rate by a menu operation

- 1 When operating from the M/E-1 bank, for example, open the M/E-1 >Misc >Transition menu (1171).
- 2 Select any transition type in the <Transition Type> group.
- 3 Set the transition rate.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Transition Rate	Transition rate

### Displaying the transition rates in a menu and changing the settings

For each of the banks, you can display the transition rate, independent key transition rate and fade-to-black transition rate, and change the settings (☞ p. 126).

### Pattern Limits

When a wipe or DME wipe pattern is selected for the transition, you can specify the range of movement of the wipe pattern through the course of the transition, for each bank.

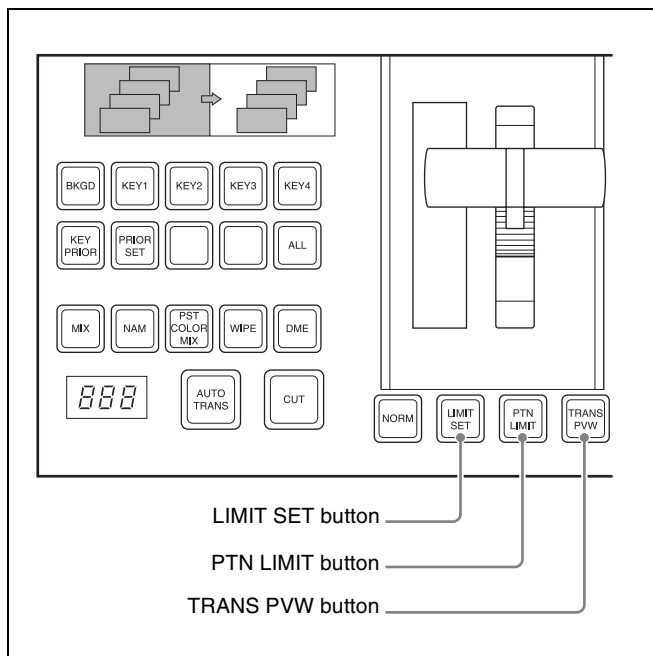
When the pattern limit function is enabled, carrying out a transition results in the following effect for example settings.

- When the limit value is set to 50%, the effect at the end of the transition is the same as when the fader lever is at the center position in the normal case (with the pattern limit function disabled); the wipe pattern does not complete.
- When the limit value is set to 0%, the wipe effect is completely disabled, and carrying out the transition produces no change in the image.
- When the limit value is set to the maximum 100%, the image changes in exactly the same way as when the pattern limit function is off, but when the transition is completed, the cross-point selections on the background A and B buses do not interchange.

There are two ways of setting a pattern limit: either by operating the fader lever to save the fader position, or by using the Wipe menu or DME Wipe menu to access the Edge/Direction menu for each bank.

#### Notes

- A pattern limit only applies when a wipe or DME wipe is selected as the transition type.
- A pattern limit cannot be applied to an independent key transition (☞ p. 57).
- In multi program mode, a pattern limit can be used only when the background transition type is a wipe or DME wipe. If a key is selected for the next transition, the pattern limit setting is reflected in the wipe or DME wipe selected by the background transition type.



Transition control block

## Setting the pattern limit with the fader lever

For assignment of buttons for pattern limits, see “Setting Transition Control Block Button Assignments” (p. 221).

- 1 Move the fader lever to the position corresponding to a particular pattern size.
  - First make sure that the [PTN LIMIT] button is off.
  - To check the pattern size on the preview monitor, first press the [TRANS PVW] button, to select the transition preview mode (see p. 57).

- 2 Press the [LIMIT SET] button.

This sets the current fader lever position as the pattern limit.

## Setting the pattern limit by a menu operation

- 1 When operating from the M/E-1 bank, for example, open the following menu.
  - When wipe is selected, M/E-1 >Wipe >Edge/Direction menu (1154).
  - When DME wipe is selected, M/E-1 >DME Wipe >Edge/Direction menu (1164).
- 2 Press [Pattern Limit], turning it on.

- 3 Adjust the following parameter.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Pattern Limit	Pattern limit

## Executing a pattern limit transition

- 1 Press [PTN LIMIT], turning it on.

The button you pressed lights amber.

- 2 Execute the transition.

The transition progresses as far as the set pattern limit. Even if the transition completes, the cross-point button assignments of the background A and B buses do not interchange.

- 3 Carry out the transition once again.

The status before the previous transition is restored.

## To cancel the pattern limit

To cancel the pattern limit after completion of step 3 in the previous procedure, press the [PTN LIMIT] button, turning it off.

If after carrying out step 2 in the previous procedure, the pattern limit has been reached, carry out the following procedure.

- 1 Press the [PTN LIMIT] button.

The button you pressed lights green.

- 2 Execute the transition.

The [PTN LIMIT] button turns off, and the pattern limit state is released.

Depending on the way in which the transition was executed, the action will be as follows.

- When you press the [CUT] button, the pattern limit is immediately released, and the image switches instantaneously.
- When you press the [AUTO TRANS] button, until the state of the next transition, the transition is carried out over the duration given by the transition rate.
- When you move the fader lever, the transition is carried out from the pattern limit state to the state before the pattern limit transition was carried out. Moving the fader lever even a little synchronizes the fader lever position with the transition state, and you can move the fader lever either in the forward direction or in the reverse direction.

Depending on the Setup settings, the transition may be executed at the instant you press the [PTN LIMIT] button, and the button will turn off. In this case,

execution continues for the time specified by the dedicated transition rate in the menu setting, as far as the state of the next transition.

For details about settings, [☞ “Selecting the Bank to Make the Settings” \(p. 251\)](#).

### To set the transition rate when the pattern limit is released

**1** In the <Pattern Limit Release> group of the Edge/Direction menu (1164), select one of the following.

**Auto Trans Rate:** Use the transition rate set in the transition control block

**Independ Trans Rate:** Independent transition rate

**2** If you selected “Independ Trans Rate” in step **1**, adjust the following parameter.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Transition Rate	Independent transition rate

## Executing an Auto Transition

The following two modes can be used.

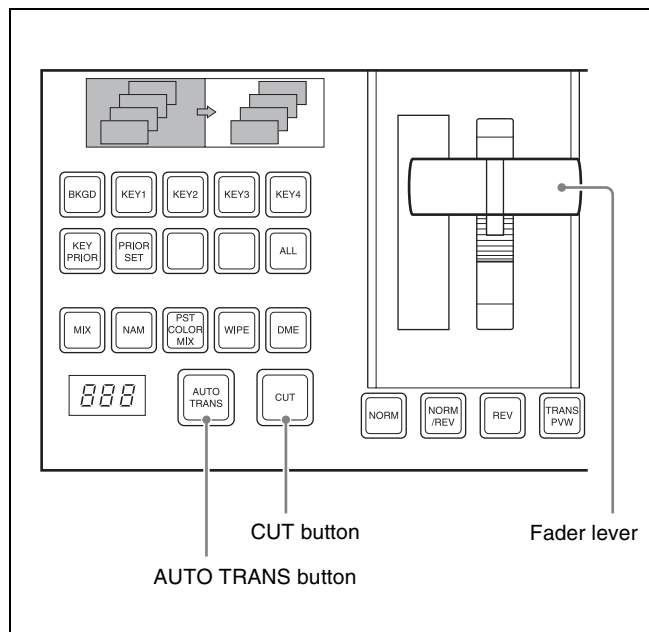
### Cut

A cut switches instantaneously from the current video to the new video. When the next transition is a key transition, the key cuts in or out instantaneously.

### Auto transition

The transition from the current video to the new video is carried out automatically at a constant rate, using the transition effect selected as the transition type.

You can set the transition rate in advance ([☞ p. 52](#)).



Transition control block

To execute a transition on a switcher bank by a button operation, use the following procedure in the transition control block.

**To carry out an instantaneous cut transition:** Press the [CUT] button.

**To carry out a gradual transition:** Press the [AUTO TRANS] button.

This executes the transition at the preset transition rate ([☞ p. 52](#)).

While the transition is executing, the [AUTO TRANS] button lights amber. When it completes the button turns off.

**To complete a partially executed transition instantaneously:** Press the [CUT] button.

The [AUTO TRANS] button turns off.

## Executing a Transition with the Fader Lever (Manual Transition)

Using the fader lever, you can manually control the progress of transition from the current video to the new video using the transition effect selected as the transition type. Moving the fader lever from one end of its travel to the other completes the transition.

To execute a manual transition with the transition control block fader lever, use the following procedure.

**To carry out the transition completely:** Move the lever over the full range of its travel.

**To pause a partly executed transition:** Stop moving the fader lever.

**To resume a paused transition:** Resume moving the fader lever.

## Combining Auto and Manual Transitions

Using the [AUTO TRANS] button, the [CUT] button, and the fader lever, use the following procedures.

### Moving the fader lever during an auto transition

During an auto transition started by pressing the [AUTO TRANS] button, operating the fader lever immediately enables the fader lever, and the [AUTO TRANS] button turns off. Thereafter, the fader lever controls the progress of the transition.

### Executing an auto transition after partly moving the fader lever

- Press the [CUT] button to instantaneously complete the transition.
- Press the [AUTO TRANS] button to complete the rest of the transition at the preset transition rate.

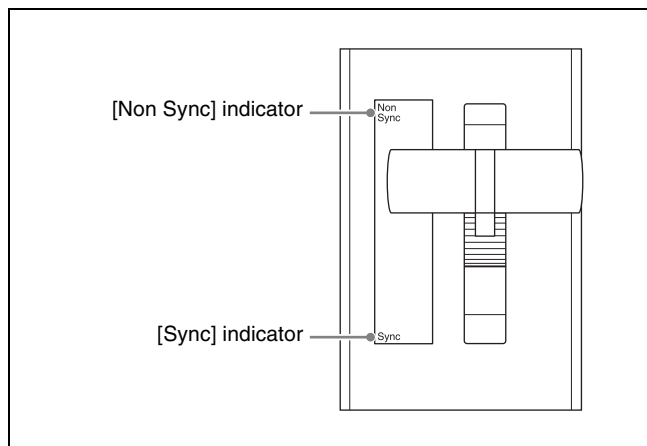
If the transition rate is set to 100 frames, and the fader lever has moved through  $\frac{1}{4}$  of the transition, then the remaining  $\frac{3}{4}$  of the transition is carried out in 100 frames.

## Non-Sync State

If the fader lever is in an intermediate position when a transition is completed as an auto transition, then the lever position no longer agrees with the transition state. This is termed a “non-sync state.”

In a non-sync state, the [Non Sync] or [Sync] indicator indicates the position from which a normal transition can be carried out. This is at both end positions of the fader lever travel.

- If you move the fader lever toward the [Non Sync] indicator, transition is not executed, and the non-sync state will be released and the [Non Sync] indicator will disappear when you reach the end of the lever travel.
- If you move the fader lever toward the [Sync] indicator, the transition resumes, and the [Sync] indicator will disappear when you reach the end of the lever travel. In this case, a 100% transition is executed in the remaining section.



- Even in a non-sync state, you can carry out auto transitions. If you execute an auto transition by pressing the [AUTO TRANS] button, the indicators show the transition progress in the usual way, but when the transition completes, they once again indicate the non-sync state.

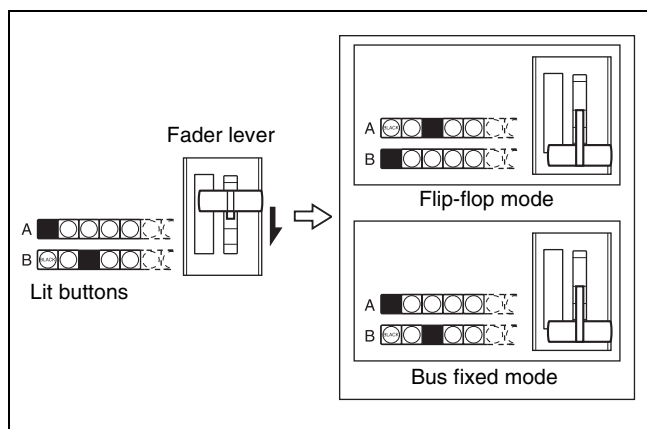
## Fader Lever Operation in Bus Fixed Mode

### Flip-flop mode and bus fixed mode

The following describes the difference between flip-flop mode and bus fixed mode, taking an M/E bank as an example; the functionality is the same, however, on the PGM/PST bank.

Normally, when a background transition is carried out on the M/E bank, the signals selected on the A and B rows of the cross-point buttons are interchanged at the end of the transition. That is to say, except during a transition, the background output is always from the background A bus. This is called “flip-flop mode.”

The alternative is known as “bus fixed mode,” in which there is no bus interchange. In this mode, when the fader lever is at the top of its travel the output from the A bus is always 100%, and when the fader lever is at the bottom of its travel the output from the B bus is 100%.



In the bus fixed mode there is a fixed relationship between the position of the fader lever and the signal output on background A bus and B bus. Depending on the direction of the transition, the fader lever must therefore always be moved in a particular direction, as shown in the following table. This does not affect an auto transition, which is executed regardless of the fader lever direction.

Next transition	Transition direction	Fader lever movement
Background	A → B	Downward
	B → A	Upward
Keys 1 to 4	On → Off (delete)	Downward
	Off → On (insert)	Upward

- When a transition applies to a combination of more than one of the background and keys, then the transition for all of these must be in the same direction complying with the above table.
- If as a result of an auto transition, for example, the fader lever position does not agree with the signal output, this is a non-sync state (☞ p. 56) and the [Non Sync] indicator will appear.

## Transition Preview

With the preview output of the M/E bank and PGM/PST bank, you can check the effect of a transition in advance. To carry out a transition preview, press the [TRANS PVW] button in the transition control block to enable transition preview mode.

### Notes

It is not possible to carry out a transition preview during the following.

- Transitions in progress
- Multi-program mode
- Bus fixed mode

### Carrying out a transition preview

- 1 In the transition control block of a switcher bank, press the [TRANS PVW] button.

The [TRANS PVW] button lights green, and the switcher is now in the transition preview mode. At this point, the preview output is the same as the program output before the [TRANS PVW] button was pressed.

- 2 Operate the fader lever, or press the [AUTO TRANS] button or [CUT] button.

On the preview monitor, you can check the effect of the transition.

### To terminate a transition preview

There are three modes for a transition preview. To terminate a transition preview, carry out the operation which depends on the mode, and press the [TRANS PVW] button, turning it off.

**Lock:** Switching the [TRANS PVW] button on or off switches between the transition preview mode and the normal mode.

**Hold:** The preview mode is enabled only while the [TRANS PVW] button is held down.

**One Time:** Each time a transition ends, it reverts to the normal mode.

Set the transition preview mode in the following combinations.

For details, ☞ “Setting the Button Operation Mode” (p. 237) and ☞ “Setting the transition preview mode” (p. 250).

Transition preview mode	Switcher setup (Transition menu) <Transition Preview> group	Panel setup (Operation >Custom Button menu) <Trans Pvw> group
Lock	Normal	Lock
Hold	Normal	Hold
One Time	One Time	–

## Independent Key Transitions

### What is an independent key transition?

In addition to common transitions, it is possible to carry out independent transitions on the keyers of the M/E banks and PGM/PST bank. These are called “independent key transitions.”

By carrying out an independent key transition in combination with a common transition, different transition types can be used for the background and keys.

It is also possible to use different transition types for key insertion and key deletion by means of a Setup menu setting (☞ p. 59).

### Combining other transitions with independent key transitions

When you set a common transition and a key independent transition for the same key, you can apply two different effects such as a wipe and mix (dissolve) to the key simultaneously.

When carrying out such a combination of transitions on the same key as auto transitions ([p. 55](#)), the result varies depending on the timing at which the two respective [AUTO TRANS] buttons are pressed.

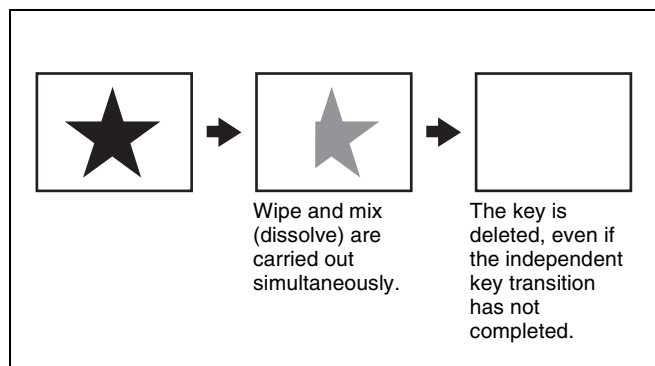
### Simultaneous execution

If the [AUTO TRANS] buttons for the two transitions are pressed simultaneously, the following is the result.

Note that in both cases the common transition is a wipe and the independent key transition is a mix (dissolve).

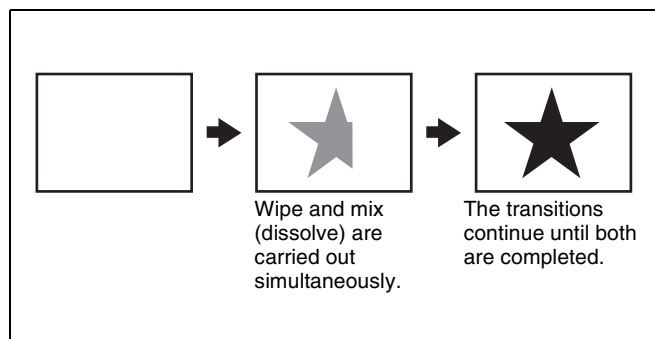
**Deleting a key with simultaneous transitions:** With the key inserted, the key is gradually deleted using the two transition types simultaneously.

When the common transition completes, even if the independent key transition is still not completed, the two end simultaneously.



**Inserting a key with simultaneous transitions:** With the key not inserted, the key is gradually inserted using the two transition types simultaneously.

If the common transition or independent key transition ends first, the other continues to completion.



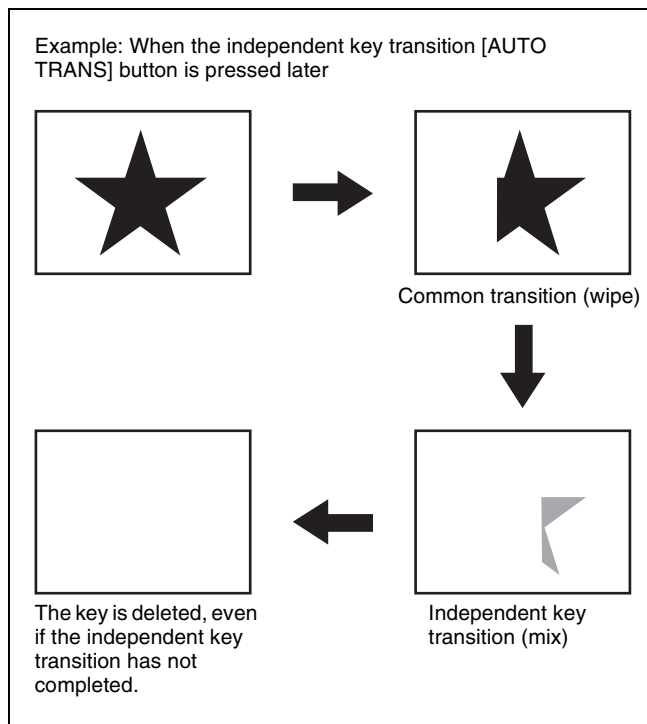
### Time offset execution

If the [AUTO TRANS] buttons for the two transitions are pressed with a time offset, the following is the result.

Note that in both cases the common transition is a wipe and the independent key transition is a mix (dissolve).

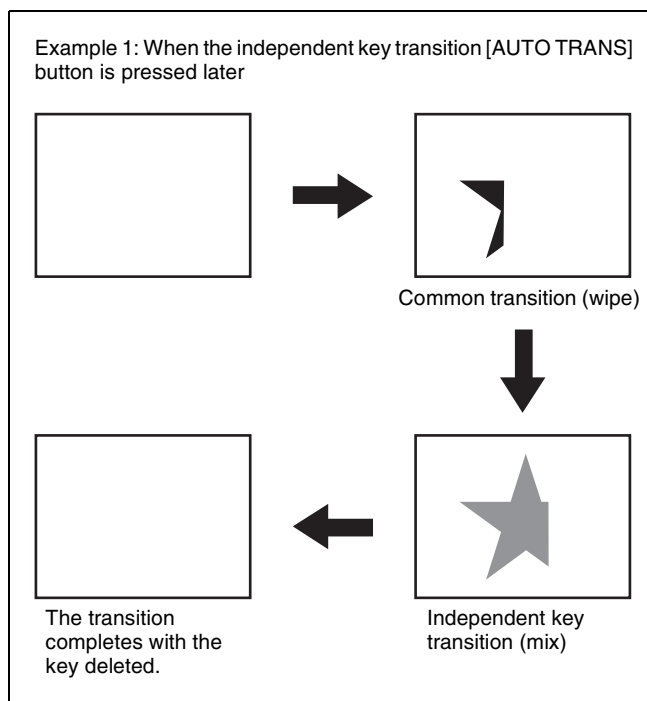
**Time offset execution with the key inserted:** With the key inserted, the key is gradually deleted using two transition types with a time offset.

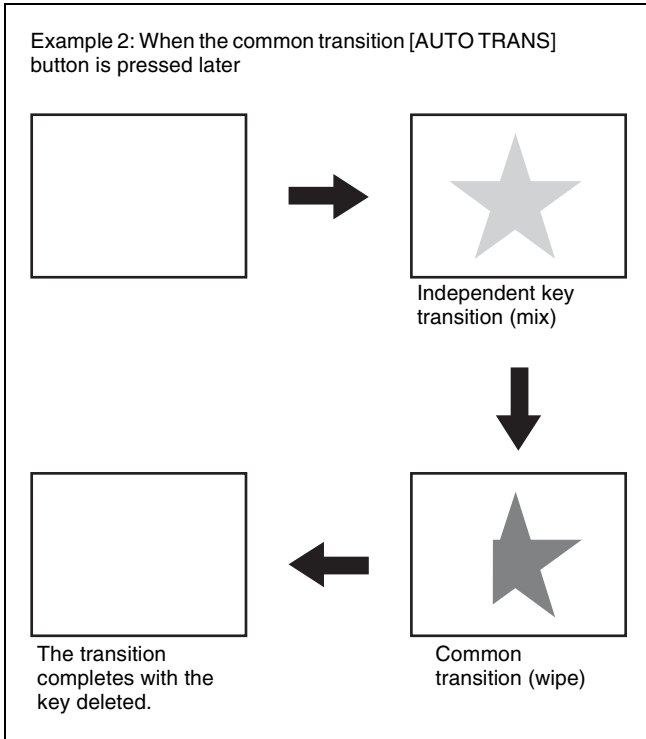
Whichever button is pressed first, when the common transition completes, even if the independent key transition is still not completed, the two end simultaneously.



**Time offset execution with the key not inserted:** With the key not inserted, the key is gradually inserted using the transition type whose [AUTO TRANS] button is pressed first.

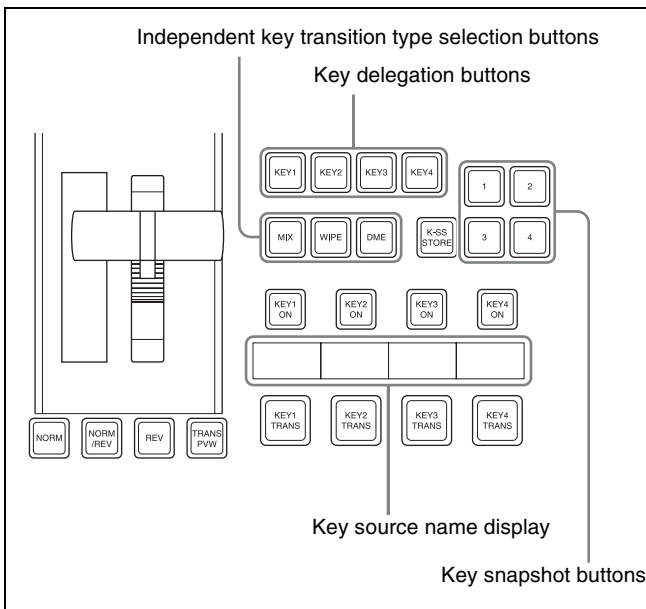
Since the key is then in the inserted state, the transition whose [AUTO TRANS] button is pressed later will delete the key. When the key is completely deleted, both transitions complete.





## Basic Independent Key Transition Operations

### Switching keys with key independent transitions



Transition control block (right side)

To set independent transitions for the keys on switcher bank, use the transition control block.

- 1 Select one or more of the delegation buttons [KEY1] to [KEY4] ([DSK1] to [DSK4] in the PGM/PST bank), turning them on.

You can press more than one button at the same time.

- 2 Select the transition type.

**To fade a key in or out:** Press the [MIX] button, turning it on.

**To insert or delete a key using a dedicated wipe pattern:** Press the [WIPE] button, turning it on.

**To insert or delete a key using a dedicated DME wipe pattern:** Press the [DME] button, turning it on.

If, in the Setup menus, you set insertion and deletion as independent modes, make the following transition settings.

Separate settings are required for both inserting a key and deleting it. For example, with the key not inserted, if you select the transition type and carry out a transition, this will be the setting when inserting a key. You can also use the Transition menu to select a desired independent key transition type for each key (see the next section).

For details about wipe settings, [☞ “Wipe Settings for Independent Key Transitions” \(p. 87\)](#).

For details about DME wipe settings, [☞ “DME Wipe Settings for Independent Key Transitions” \(p. 97\)](#).

- 3 Execute the transition.

**To insert or delete the key gradually with a mix or wipe transition:** Press one of the [KEY1 TRANS] to [KEY4 TRANS] buttons.

For details about the transition rate, [☞ “Setting the Independent Key Transition Rate” \(p. 60\)](#).

For details about operation together with a common transition, [☞ “Combining other transitions with independent key transitions” \(p. 57\)](#).

**To cut the key in or out instantaneously:** Press one of the [KEY1 ON] to [KEY4 ON] buttons for each key.

#### Notes

In an independent key transition, the pattern limit function is not available.

## Copying keys

### To copy keys within the same block

Press the [KEY3] button while holding down the [KEY1] button.

Information for key 1 is copied to key 3.

**To copy keys between blocks**

Press the [DSK3] button in the PGM/PST bank while holding down the [KEY1] button in the M/E-1 bank. Information for key 1 of M/E-1 is copied to key 3 of PGM/PST.

---

## Setting the Independent Key Transition Rate

There are two ways of setting the independent key transition rate: using the Flexi Pad to enter a numeric value, or using the Misc menu to access the Transition menu for each switcher bank.

You can also display the transition rate, independent key transition rate, and fade-to-black transition rate for each bank, and change the settings (☞ p. 126).

If, in the Setup menus, you set insertion/deletion as independent modes, you can set the transition rates for key insertion and deletion independently. For example, with the system in the state with the key not inserted, the transition rate setting applies to key insertion.

### Setting the independent key transition rate in the Flexi Pad

For example, to set the independent key transition rate for M/E-1 key 1, carry out the following procedures.

- 1 In the Flexi Pad, press the [TRANS RATE] button.  
The Flexi Pad switches to the transition rate setting mode.
- 2 In the region selection buttons, select the switcher bank.
- 3 Press the [TRNS SEL] button in the memory recall section.  
You can select the type of transition for which to set the rate.
- 4 Press the [KEY1] button.  
This enables setting of the independent key transition rate for key 1 of the M/E-1 bank.
- 5 While viewing the alphanumeric display, enter the transition rate you want to set with the memory recall section button.  
If required, press the [TC] button to toggle the input mode (frame input or timecode input).
  - Enter a value of up to three digits.
  - To cancel the input, press any of the mode selection buttons.

- 6 Press the [ENTR] button.

### Setting the independent key transition rate by a menu operation

- 1 For DSK1, for example, open the PGM/PST >Misc >Transition menu (1471).
- 2 Select any transition type in the <Transition Type> group.  
If, in the Setup menus, you set insertion/deletion as independent modes, make the settings for insertion in the <On Transition Type> group, and the settings for deletion in the <Off Transition Type> group.
- 3 Set the transition rate.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Transition Rate	Transition rate

### Displaying the independent key transition rates in a menu and changing the settings

For each of the banks, you can display the transition rate, independent key transition rate and fade-to-black transition rate, and change the settings (☞ p. 126).

---

## Fade-to-Black

This function gradually darkens the program output video of the PGM/PST bank, eventually cutting it to black.

### Notes

- In multi-program mode, it is possible to carry out a fade-to-black on a number of programs simultaneously.
- Fade-to-black can be executed via GPI or a macro. It cannot be executed from a control panel button.

You can also make a Setup menu setting such that a fade-to-black does not apply to particular programs.

For details about settings, ☞ “Enabling or disabling the fade-to-black function” (p. 250).

### Setting the fade-to-black transition rate

- 1 Open the PGM/PST >Misc >Transition menu (1471).
- 2 Select [FTB].
- 3 Set the fade-to-black transition rate.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Transition Rate	Transition rate

## Displaying the transition rates in a menu and changing the settings

For each of the banks, you can display the transition rate, independent key transition rate and fade-to-black transition rate, and change the settings ([🔗 p. 126](#)).



## Overview

A key is an effect in which a part of the background image is replaced by an image or superimposed text. The signal determining how the background is cut out is termed “key source,” and the signal that replaces the cut-out part is termed “key fill.” The system component responsible for processing a key is referred to as a “keyer.” Each switcher bank has four keyers.

### Notes

If using a DME wipe with background selected for the next transition on the M/E bank, KEY1 cannot be used. Similarly, DSK1 cannot be used with DME wipes on the PGM/PST bank. You select whether to enable KEY1 (DSK1) or DME wipes in the Setup menu ([ⓘ p. 241](#)).

### Keyers that support resizer/key edge

The resizer and key edge functions can be used by following keyers.

- Keys 1 and 2 of the M/E bank
- DSK1 and DSK2 of the PGM/PST bank

## Key Types

The key type indicates the manner in which the key source signal is used to cut out the background.

Type	Description	Clean mode
Luminance key	The background is cut out according to the luminance (Y) of the key source signal, and at the same time the key fill signal is cut out and then added to the background signal.	Can be used
Linear key	This is a type of luminance key, but there is a reduced variability in gain, allowing more precise adjustment.	Can be used

Type	Description	Clean mode
Color vector key	The key signal is created from a combination of the luminance and chrominance components of the key source signal. When perfect keying is not possible with a luminance key, this allows a key signal to be created even if the luminance level is low, provided that the colors have high saturation.	Can be used
Chroma key	A key signal based on a particular color is used to cut out the background, and the key fill is then inserted.	Cannot be used
Key wipe pattern key	This uses the wipe pattern selected for an independent key transition to cut out the background and insert the key fill.	Cannot be used

### Clean mode

In a luminance key, linear key or color vector key, you can turn clean mode on. When clean mode is on, key fill is added to the background without cutting out with key source. This improves the keyed image quality, but means that the part of the key fill signal which is not to be inserted must be completely black, or it will color the background. You set the clean mode with the Type menu of the respective keyer.

For details, [ⓘ “Setting the key type in a menu” \(p. 65\)](#).

Note that in the following situations, the clean mode is turned off, and cannot be turned on.

- When the key type is a pattern key
- When key inversion is on
- When the key fill is a matte
- When the key edge is an outline
- When the key edge is normal with soft edge being on
- When fine key is on
- When the key positioner is on


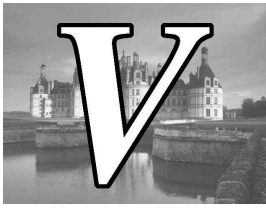
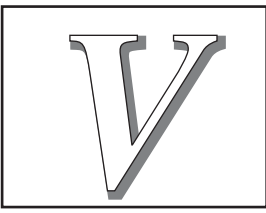
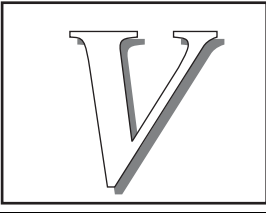

# Key Modifiers

## Edge modifiers

You can apply borders and other modifiers to the edge of the key image ([🔗 p. 70](#)).

### Notes

Key edge functions can only be used for keys 1 and 2 (DSK1 and DSK2 for the PGM/PST bank).

Type	Description	Image
Normal	This is the state with no key edge modifiers applied.	
Border	This applies a uniform width border to the edge of the key. You can adjust the border width and density. You can also enable the separate edge function, and adjust the top, bottom, left, and right border widths separately.	
Drop border	This applies a border below and to the right of the key, for example. You can adjust the border width, position, and density.	
Shadow	This applies a shadow below and to the right of the key, for example. You can adjust the shadow width, position, and density.	
Outline	This uses the outline of the original key as the key. You can adjust the width and density of the outline. You can also enable the separate edge function, and adjust the top, bottom, left, and right outline widths separately.	

Type	Description	Image
Emboss	This applies an embossing effect to the outline of the key. You can adjust the width and position of the embossing and the density. You can adjust the density separately for key fill and key edge. When embossing is on, the Fine Key and zabton functions turn off.	—
Soft edge	This softens the edge of the key.	—
Zabton	This inserts a translucent pattern behind a key. You can adjust the pattern size, softness, density and color.	—

## Edge type and key fill/key source position

The key edge modification function has two modes: a mode (“key drop ON mode”) in which the key fill/key source position moves downward, and a mode (“key drop OFF mode”) in which it does not move.

**Key drop ON mode:** The key fill/key source position moves downward by eight scan lines or four scan lines. When a drop border or shadow is selected, it is possible to apply a border to the top edge of the key.

**Key drop OFF mode:** The key fill/key source position does not move. When a drop border or shadow is selected, it is not possible to apply a border to the top edge of the key.

In the key drop ON mode, a menu setting selects between the mode (“4H mode”) in which the key fill/key source position is lowered by four scan lines, and the mode (“8H mode”) in which the key fill/key source position is lowered by eight scan lines.

When Fine Key is on, the edge width is forced to the range 0.00 to 4.00.

Note that in the following situations, the key drop mode is forcibly turned on.

- When the edge type is border, outline, or emboss
- When the edge type is normal with soft edge being on
- When fine key is on

### To fix key fill / key source in key drop OFF mode

Switch frame delay mode on.

Regardless of the fine key and edge type settings, key fill and key source are fixed in key drop off mode. In this mode key image has a one-frame delay.

## Notes

This function uses the resizer, and therefore the normal effect of the setting is not obtained while using DME wipe or other effect that uses the resizer.

## Edge fill

When a border, drop border, or shadow modifier is selected, you can select a signal to fill these edge effects (“edge fill”).

The signal from the dedicated color matte generator is used for the edge fill.

In the case of an outline, there is no edge fill signal selection, because the key fill signal fills the outline, and the rest of the image remains as the background.

For the emboss effect, in place of the edge fill signal, the emboss fill matte 1 and emboss fill matte 2 signals are used.

## Masks

A mask uses the background or a key to hide a part of the image. If unwanted holes occur in the background, or if a key is not the desired shape, you can correct the problem with a mask.

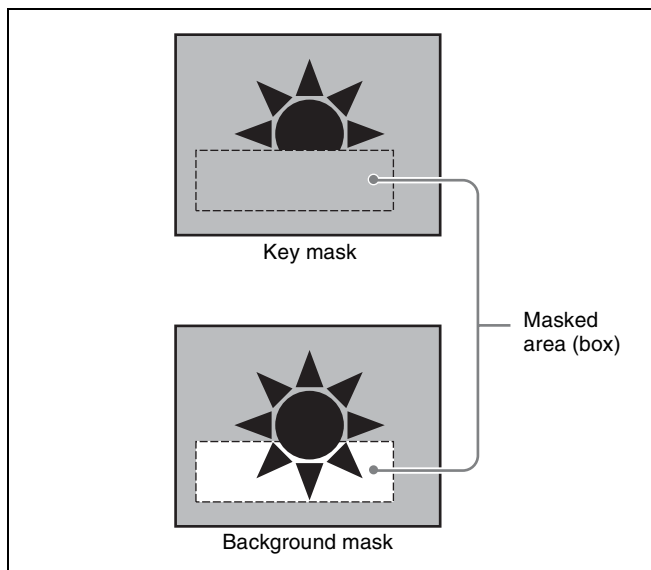
For details about masking operations, [☞ “Mask” \(p. 73\)](#).

### Key mask and background mask

There are two types of mask: a key mask and a background mask.

**Key mask:** This masks out a part of the key, which will result in the background appearing.

**Background mask:** This masks out a part of the background, which will result in the key fill appearing.



**Main mask:** This uses the signal from the dedicated box generator provided on each keyer, or the signal from the dedicated pattern generator as the mask source.

When the box generator is selected, a mask using a rectangular signal is formed.

When the pattern generator is selected, you can select the pattern and apply modifiers.

## Key Memory

The key memory function allows the keyer settings on each cross-point button to be automatically stored, so that the next time the same cross-point button is selected these settings are recalled automatically.

There are two modes for key memory: simple mode and full mode.

The parameters stored in each mode are as follows.

**Simple mode:** Key type, clean mode (including the plane setting for chroma keying), key position, key inversion, and adjustment values for the particular key type (Clip, Gain, Density, Filter, etc. This includes color vector key, key wipe pattern key, and chroma key. However, in the case of a chroma key, it excludes color cancel, Y balance, foreground CCR, and window.)

**Full mode:** All settings except transition (the same parameters as simple mode, fine key, key modifiers, mask settings, chroma key detailed settings, etc.)

For details about settings for these modes, [☞ “Selecting the key memory mode” \(p. 251\)](#).

## Key Default

With a simple operation, you can return the key adjustment values to their defaults.

The adjustment values that can be returned to their default values are as follows.

- Adjustment values for the particular key type (Clip, Gain, Density, Filter, etc.)  
In the case of chroma keying, all adjustment values return to their default values.
- Key position
- Key inversion
- Clean mode

For details about the method of operation, [☞ “Returning Parameters to Default Values” \(p. 38\)](#).

## Key Setting Operations Using Menus

There are two ways of making key settings: either using menus, or using the Flexi Pad.

This section describes basic procedures for making key settings using the menus, taking the M/E-1 >Key1 menu as an example.

Operations in the Key menus are the same for each switcher bank.

## Key Setting Menus

The key setting menus for each bank are as follows.

Bank	Keys set	Menu
M/E-1	Keys 1 to 4	M/E-1 >Key1 to 4
PGM/ PST	Downstream keys 1 to 4	PGM/PST >DSK1 to 4

## Key Type Setting

### Setting the key type in a menu

- 1 Open the M/E-1 >Key1 >Type menu (1111).
- 2 In the <Key Type> group, select the key type.

**Luminance:** Luminance key

**Linear:** Linear key

**Chroma:** Chroma key

**Color Vector:** Color vector key

**Key Wipe Pattern:** Key wipe pattern key

- 3 Carry out the following settings as required, depending on the key type selected in step 2.

**To enable clean mode** (☞ p. 62) **for a luminance key, linear key, or color vector key:** Select [Clean Mode] to turn it on.

When clean mode is enabled, key fill is added to the background without cutting out with key source.

**When chroma key is selected:** Select [Chroma Adjust] to access the Chroma Adjust menu (☞ p. 69), and make the required settings.

**When a key wipe pattern key is selected:** In the M/E-1 >Key1 >Transition >Wipe Adjust menu (1116.1) (☞ p. 88), carry out pattern selection and modifier setting, then return to the M/E-1 >Key1 >Type menu (1111).

- 4 Set the parameters.

**When a luminance key or linear key is selected**

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Clip	Reference level for generating the key signal
2	Gain	Key sensitivity

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Density	Key density
4	Filter	Filter coefficient <sup>a)</sup>

a) Setting this value to 1, produces the “through” state in which no filter is applied. The larger the value, the more strongly the filter is applied.

**When a chroma key is selected**

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Density	Key density

**When a color vector key is selected**

Parameter group [1/2]

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Y Clip	Reference level for creating luminance signal
2	Y Gain	Luminance signal sensitivity
3	C Clip	Reference level for creating chrominance signal
4	C Gain	Chrominance signal sensitivity
5	Density	Key density

Parameter group [2/2]

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Y Filter	Luminance signal filter coefficient
2	C Filter	Chrominance signal filter coefficient

**When key wipe pattern key is selected**

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Size	Pattern size
2	Soft	Edge softness
3	Density	Key density

- 5 Make the following settings, as required.

**To invert the black and white of the key source:**

Press [Key Invert], turning it on.

**To adjust the horizontal position or key source width for a luminance key, linear key, or chroma key:**

Press [Key Position], turning it on, and set the parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	H Phase	Key horizontal position
2	Left	Key left edge position
3	Right	Key right edge position

**To set the key priority:** Press [Key Priority] or open the M/E-1 >Misc >Key Priority menu (1173).

For details, ☞ “Setting the Key Priority by a Menu Operation” (p. 50).

## Selecting the Key Fill and Key Source

### Selecting the key fill and key source

To select the key fill and key source for key 1 on the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the M/E-1 >Key1 >Type menu (1111).
- 2 In the <Key Fill> group, select either of the following for use as the key fill.

**Key Bus:** Signal selected on the key 1 fill bus

**Matte:** Signal from the dedicated color matte generator

- 3 If you selected [Key Bus] in step 2, select the [KEY1] button in the 1st row of the cross-point control block, and select the key fill in the 2nd row.

- 4 If you selected [Matte] in step 2, in the same Type menu, press the [Matte Adjust] button to display the Matte Adjust menu, then adjust the single-color or two-color combination color matte. Select whether to use a single-color matte or a two-color combination in the <Fill Matte> group.

**Flat Color:** Adjust color 1 with the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Luminance	Luminance
2	Saturation	Saturation
3	Hue	Hue

**Mix Color:** Carry out a color mix. Adjust color 1 and color 2, and select a mix pattern (see the next section).

- 5 In the <Key Source> group, specify the key source selection mode.

**Self:** The key fill bus signal is automatically selected as the key source.  
When the key type is selected as chroma key, select [Self].

**Auto Select:** The signal allocated, being paired with the key fill bus signal, to a cross-point button is automatically selected as the key source.  
The pairing settings are carried out in the Setup menu.

For details, see “Cross-Point Settings” (p. 223).

**Split:** You can select a key source signal independently of the key source automatically selected in Auto Select mode.

- 6 If you selected [Split] in step 5, select the key source using any of the following methods.

- In the cross-point control block, press the button in the 2nd row while holding down the [KEY1] button in the 1st row.
- Press the button in the 2nd row of the cross-point control block while holding down the [SPLIT] button in the Flexi Pad.
- Press the button in the 2nd row while holding down the [KEY1] key delegation button in the transition control block.
- When [Split] is selected, the key memory function (see p. 64) is disabled.

### Notes

To select a video signal that is assigned to a cross-point button, the operation mode for the [KEY] button must be set.

For details, see “Setting the Button Operation Mode” (p. 237).

## Selecting the key source and key fill in the menu

### Selecting the key source

To select the key source, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the <Key Fill> group of the M/E-1 >Key1 >Type menu (1111), select [Key Bus].
- 2 Press [Signal Select].

The Signal Select menu (1111.3) appears.



- 3 In the <Target> group, press [Source].
- 4 In the <Key Source> group, specify the key source selection mode (Self, Auto Select, or Split).

See step 5 in “Selecting the key fill and key source” (see p. 66).

- 5 If [Split] is selected, select the key source signal.
- 6 In the <Assign> group, select the video signal or key signal from the V/K pair to assign to the key source.
- 7 Press [Set Xpt].

### Selecting the key fill

To select the key fill, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the status area of the Type menu, press “Fill.”  
The Signal Select menu appears.
- 2 In the <Target> group, press [Fill].
- 3 Select the fill signal from the list on the right.
- 4 Press [Set Xpt].

### Carrying out a color mix for the key fill

When [Matte] is selected for the key fill, you can combine color 1 and color 2 using the independent key transition wipe pattern.

- 1 In the <Key Fill> group of the M/E-1 >Key1 >Type menu (1111), select [Matte] and press [Matte Adjust].  
The Matte Adjust menu appears.
- 2 Select [Mix Color] in the <Fill Matte> group.
- 3 Adjust the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Size	Pattern size
2	Soft	Edge softness of the pattern

- 4 Return to the Type menu, and adjust color 1 and color 2.

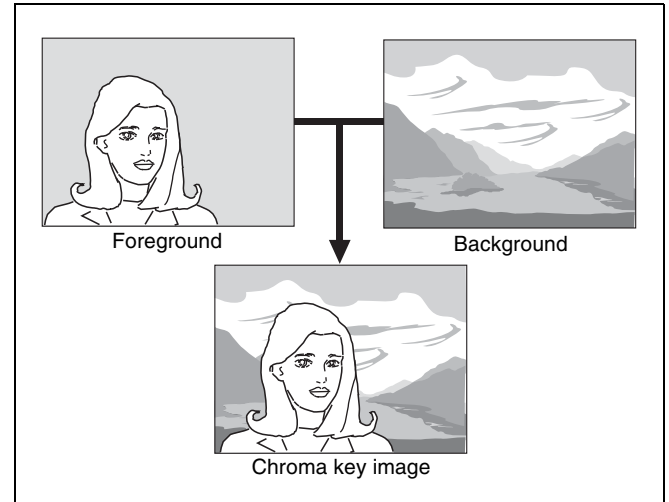
To adjust colors 1 and 2, turn on [Color1] or [Color2] respectively, then adjust the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Luminance	Luminance
2	Saturation	Saturation
3	Hue	Hue

- 5 To interchange color 1 and color 2, press the [Color Invert] button, turning it on.

## Chroma Key Composition and Basic Settings

A key signal based on a particular color is used to cut out the background, and the key fill is then inserted. The inserted signal is also referred to as the foreground, and the composite image is called a chroma key image.



For details about adjusting chroma key images, see [“Chroma Key Adjustments” \(p. 68\)](#).

In creating a chroma key image, either a normal mix or an additive mix can be used.

**Normal mix:** The foreground is cut out with the key signal, and then combined with the background, which has also been cut out with the key signal.

**Additive mix:** The background, which has been cut out with the key signal, is combined with the unshaped foreground. This is effective for a natural-looking composite when the scene includes glass or other translucent objects.

### Plane

In an additive mix, the foreground is not shaped by the key signal, and variations in the (blue) background will appear in the composite image. To prevent this, it is possible to set a particular luminance level for the background, and any parts below this level are cut forcibly.

## Composing an image by chroma keying

- 1 Open the M/E-1 >Key1 >Type menu (1111).
- 2 Select [Chroma] in the <Key Type> group.  
It becomes possible to adjust the key density ([p. 65](#)).
- 3 Select [Chroma Adjust].  
The Chroma Adjust menu (1111.1) appears.

- 4 Carry out auto chroma key adjustments.  
Also carry out manual adjustments (see next item), if necessary, to obtain an optimum chroma key image.
- 5 In the <Mix Mode> group, select [Normal Mix] or [Additive Mix] depending on the desired type of chroma key composition.

When using an additive mix for chroma keying, the (typically blue) background parts of the foreground video must be converted to black. For this, use the color cancel function (🔗 p. 69).

## Using the plane function

In an additive mix, the foreground is not shaped by the key signal, and variations in the (blue) background will appear in the composite image. To prevent this, it is possible to set a particular luminance level for the background, and any parts below this level are cut forcibly.

- 1 In the Chroma Adjust menu, set [Plane] on.
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Luminance	Luminance level

## Key Adjustments (Menus)

This section describes key adjustments made using menu operations.

You can adjust the following functions using menu operations.

- Chroma Key Adjustment (🔗 p. 68)
- Key Edge Modifications (🔗 p. 70)
- Masks (🔗 p. 73)
- Specifying the Key Output Destination
- Key Modify Clear (🔗 p. 74)
- Blink Function (🔗 p. 74)

## Chroma Key Adjustments

Methods of adjusting the composite obtained from chroma keying include automatic adjustment with the auto chroma key function, and manual adjustment carrying out the necessary processing separately. The optimum results will be obtained by first carrying out adjustments with the auto chroma key function, then making any fine adjustments as required.

The following manual adjustments are possible.

### Key active

When this function is off, only the foreground is output and you can make adjustments for color cancel (see the next paragraph).

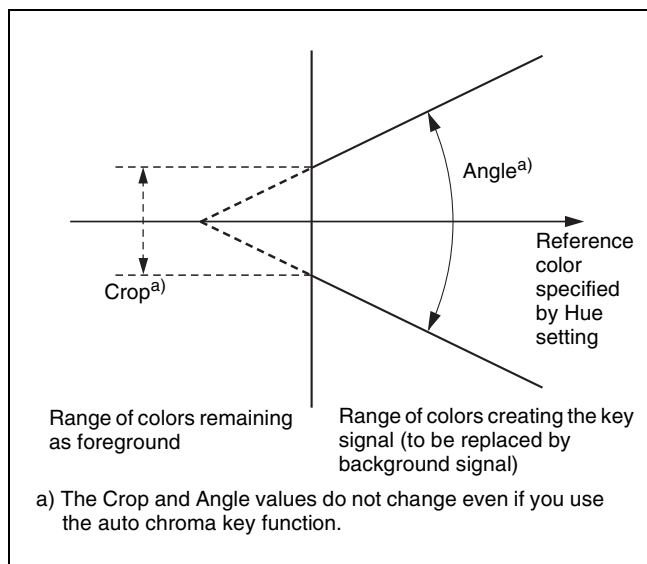
### Color cancel

If the foreground image includes shades of the background color, turn this function on to remove the color from the foreground image.

### Window

You can adjust the range over which the key signal is determined as matching the specified hue. When this function is off, the default range is used for the key. Chroma keying generates a key signal based on a particular color (reference color) in the foreground (typically a plain blue background), and the “window” refers to the range of colors which are regarded as matching this specified reference color to create the key signal.

As seen on a vectorscope (that is, in the hue-saturation color space), the range for this matching corresponds to a truncated sector. This range is specified by two parameters: the “Angle” parameter, which determines the range of the hue parameter, and the “Crop” parameter, which determines the degree of truncation (see the following figure).



### Y balance

In normal chroma keying, the key signal is generated from the chrominance component only, and all elements of the foreground with the same hue are replaced by the background. Using the Y balance function, you can specify a luminance level range within which the key is active, and replace the specified part by the background.

You can use the Y balance function independently on the key signal for the composition and the key signal for the color cancel function. When applied to the key signal for the composition, this produces the foreground with the

color cancel effect applied. This can therefore be used to provide an impression of smoke, for example. When the Y balance function is applied to the color cancel key, the relevant part is output in its original color without canceling, and therefore it is possible to combine colors which are the same color as the background (i.e. typically blue) in the foreground.

### Video signal adjustment

You can vary the foreground signal gain, or change the hue. There are separate adjustments for the gain of the overall video signal, and Y and C components.

### Making auto chroma key adjustments

Auto chroma key is an automatic adjustment function which allows you to specify a part of the foreground video (for example, the blue background color) and use it as a reference for creating the chroma key image.

- 1 In the <Key Type> group of the M/E-1 >Key1 >Type menu (1111), select [Chroma].
- 2 Select [Chroma Adjust].  
The Chroma Adjust menu (1111.1) appears.
- 3 Select [Sample Mark] in the <Auto> group.  
The foreground video only appears on the monitor, with a white box-shaped sample selector.
- 4 Adjust the position and size of the sample selector, to specify the color to be used as the basis of chroma keying (typically a blue background).

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Position H	Horizontal position
2	Position V	Vertical position
3	Size	Size

- 5 Press [Auto Start] in the <Auto> group.  
This executes an auto chroma key based on the color specified by the sample selector, and displays the composite image on the monitor.

### Making key active adjustments

When the key active function is on, the composite image is output to the monitor, and you can watch the monitor while manually adjusting the keying.

When the key active function is off, only the foreground image appears. Set this off when manually adjusting color cancel (see the next section).

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Key1 >Type >Chroma Adjust menu (1111.1), set [Key Active] on.

- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Clip	Chroma key reference level
2	Gain	Key gain
3	Hue	Hue
4	Density	Density
5	Filter	Filter coefficient

### Making color cancel adjustments

If the background color is leaking into the foreground video, turning the color cancel function on allows you to eliminate this leakage.

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Key1 >Type >Chroma Adjust menu (1111.1), set [Key Active] off.  
Only the foreground image appears on the monitor.
- 2 In the <Color Cancel> group, set [Color Cancel] on.
- 3 Adjust the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Luminance	Luminance
2	Saturation	Saturation
3	Hue	Hue
5	Filter	Filter coefficient

- 4 Set [Key Active] on.  
The chroma key composite image now appears in the monitor.

### Making key signal adjustments for color cancel

When the color cancel function is set on, you can adjust the key signal for color cancel.

- 1 In the <Color Cancel> group of the M/E-1 >Key1 >Type >Chroma Adjust menu (1111.1), set [Color Cancel] on.
- 2 In the <Color Cancel> group, set [Cancel Key] on.  
The cancel key is now on, and you can now adjust the key signal for color cancel.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Clip	Color cancel key reference level
2	Gain	Color cancel key gain

- 3 Make the following settings, as required, in the <Color Cancel> group.

### When setting [Key Position] on and adjusting the color cancel key edge position

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	H Phase	Move left and right edges of the color cancel key simultaneously
2	Left	Move left edge of the color cancel key
3	Right	Move right edge of the color cancel key

### When setting [Window] on and adjusting the detection range of the color cancel key

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Crop	Crop value
2	Angle	Angle value

For details about the crop and angle parameters, see “Window” (p. 68).

### When setting [Y Balance] on and adjusting the ratio in which Y balance is added to the color cancel key

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Mixture	Ratio of Y balance key

### Adjusting the window

Setting the window (see p. 68) function on allows you to adjust the detection range used to determine the key signal. When this function is off, the default range is used for image adjustment.

After making sure that the values of Clip, Gain, and Hue are adjusted appropriately, use the following procedure to make the window adjustment.

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Key1 >Type >Chroma Adjust menu (1111.1), set [Window] on.
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Crop	Crop value
2	Angle	Angle value

### Adjusting the Y balance

Setting the Y balance (see p. 68) on allows you to specify that, even if the hue is the same, only portions of a particular luminance will be replaced by the background.

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Key1 >Type >Chroma Adjust menu (1111.1), set [Y Balance] on.
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Clip	Luminance range
2	Gain	Key gain
3	Luminance	Luminance

### Adjusting the video signal

You can vary the foreground signal gain, or change the hue. There are separate adjustments for the gain of the overall video signal, and Y and C components.

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Key1 >Type >Chroma Adjust menu (1111.1), set [FRGD CCR] on.
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Video Gain	Overall gain of video signal
2	Y Gain	Y signal gain
3	C Gain	C signal gain
4	Hue	Hue offset amount

## Key Edge Modifications

### Notes

Key edge functions can only be used for keys 1 and 2 (DSK1 and DSK2 for the PGM/PST bank).

To modify the key edge of key 1 on the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the M/E-1 >Key1 >Edge menu (1112).
- 2 Select the edge type (see p. 63) in the <Edge> group.

**Normal:** Unadorned edge

**Border:** Edge with border applied

**Drop Border:** Edge with drop border applied

**Shadow:** Edge with shadow applied

**Outline:** Edge used as outline

**Emboss:** Embossing effect applied to edge

If you select [Normal], skip to step 7.

- 3 Set the border width and other parameters.

**When border or outline is selected:** The setting parameters depend on the key type and whether the separate edge function is on or off. To enable the separate edge function, press [Separate Edge], setting it on.

- When separate edge is off

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Width	Width
3	Density	Density

- When separate edge is on  
The left, right, top, and bottom border or outline widths can be adjusted independently. The separate edge function is only valid when a luminance key, linear key, or chroma key is selected as the key type.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Top	Top edge width
2	Left	Left edge width
3	Right	Right edge width
4	Bottom	Bottom edge width
5	Density	Density

**When drop border or shadow is selected:** The setting parameter values depend on the on/off setting of key drop and the selection of 4H mode/8H mode (☞ p. 63).

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Width	Width
2	Position	Position
3	Density	Density

**When emboss is selected:**

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Width	Width
2	Position	Position
3	Density <sup>a)</sup>	Density

a) The Density adjustment only affects the key edge. This can be adjusted separately from Key Density, and if Key Density is set to 0.00, only the embossed edge effect can be applied.

To make edge fill adjustments, carry out the settings in step 6.

- 4 Press [Edge Matte], and adjust the color parameters for the edge fill signal.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Luminance	Luminance
2	Saturation	Saturation
3	Hue	Hue

When the edge type is outline, in place of the edge fill signal, the selected key fill signal fills the outline, and elsewhere remains as the background.

You can also press the [Matte Adjust] button to display the Matte Adjust menu, and adjust the single-color or two-color combination color matte.

You can select whether to use a single color matte or a two-color combination color matte in the <Edge Matte> group.

For the color mix operation, ☞ “Carrying out a color mix for the key edge fill matte” (p. 72).

- 5 When emboss is selected for the edge type, adjust the color in the <Emboss Fill> group.

To adjust matte 1 and 2, press [Matte1] or [Matte2] respectively, then adjust the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Luminance	Luminance
2	Saturation	Saturation
3	Hue	Hue

- 6 To make the edge soft, press [Soft Edge] to turn it on, then adjust the softness.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Soft	Edge softness

For a normal edge, when [Soft Edge] is enabled, [Key Drop] is kept on.

- 7 To make separate fine adjustments to the positions of the left, right, top, and bottom of the source edge, press [Fine Key], to set it on, and adjust the following parameters.

Parameter group [1/2]

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Top	Key top edge position
2	Left	Key left edge position
3	Right	Key right edge position
4	Bottom	Key bottom edge position

Parameter group [2/2]

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	H Phase	Key horizontal position
2	V Phase	Key vertical position

#### Notes

- In the emboss function, it is not possible to set [Fine Key] on.
- When the edge type is normal, drop border, or shadow, enabling the [Fine Key] function keeps [Key Drop] on.

#### To set the key drop mode

In the Edge >Key Delay Mode menu (1112.4), press [Key Drop].

**On:** Key drop on mode

**Off:** Key drop off mode

**Notes**

In key drop off mode, an edge can only be set below the key if drop border or shadow is selected for the edge type.

**To switch between 4H mode and 8H mode**

In the Edge >Key Delay Mode menu (1112.4), press [8H Mode].

**On:** 8H mode

**Off:** 4H mode

**Notes**

- 4H mode  
The edge width is 0.00 to 4.00 (excluding when key wipe pattern key is selected for key type, and border or outline is selected for the edge type).
- 8H mode  
The edge width varies depending on the edge type.
  - Border or outline (excluding when key wipe pattern is selected for key type): The edge width is 0.00 to 8.00. However, if fine key is turned on, the edge width is 0.00 to 4.00.
  - Drop border or shadow: The edge width is 0.00 to 8.00. However, if the fine key is on, the edge width is 0.00 to 4.00.
  - Emboss: The edge width is 0.00 to 4.00.

**To fix key fill / key source in key drop OFF mode**

- 1 Open the Edge >Key Delay Mode menu (1112.4).
- 2 Press [Frame Delay], setting it to On.

**Notes**

This function uses the resizer, and therefore the expected result of the setting may not be obtained if conditions do not allow the resizer to be used.

**Carrying out a color mix for the key edge fill matte**

When you select Matte for the edge fill of a border, drop border, or shadow, you can create a combination of color 1 and color 2 using a wipe pattern generated by the dedicated pattern generator.

- 1 In the <Edge Fill> group of the M/E-1 >Key1 >Edge menu, select [Matte], then press [Matte Adjust].
- 2 In the <Edge Matte> group, select [Mix Color], turning it on.
- 3 Adjust the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Size	Pattern size
2	Soft	Edge softness of the pattern
3	Pattern	Pattern number <sup>a)</sup>

a) The pattern is the same as the wipe. For details, see “Wipe Pattern List” (p. 264).

To select the pattern, display the Mix Pattern Select menu by pressing [Mix Pattern] in the edge fill Matte Adjust menu.

After selecting one of the patterns (patterns 1 to 24) displayed in the Mix Pattern Select menu, you can adjust the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Size	Pattern size
2	Soft	Edge softness of the pattern

**4** Adjust color 1 and color 2.

To adjust colors 1 and 2, turn on [Color1] or [Color2] respectively, then adjust the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Luminance	Luminance
2	Saturation	Saturation
3	Hue	Hue

**5** If required, set the pattern modifiers.

**When turning [Position] on and setting the pattern position**

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Position H	Horizontal position <sup>a)</sup>
2	Position V	Vertical position <sup>a)</sup>

a) See p. 85.

**When turning [Multi] on and replicating the pattern**

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	H Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern horizontally
2	V Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern vertically
3	Invert Type	Replication layout <sup>a)</sup>

a) See p. 87.

**When turning [Aspect] on and setting the aspect ratio of the pattern**

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Aspect	Aspect ratio <sup>a)</sup>

a) See p. 86.

**When turning [Angle] on in the <Rotation> group and inclining the pattern**

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Angle	Rotation angle of pattern <sup>a)</sup>

a) p. 86.

**When turning [Speed] on in the <Rotation> group and rotating the pattern at a constant rate**

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Speed	Rotation speed of pattern <sup>a)</sup>

a) p. 86

- 6 To interchange color 1 and color 2, press the [Color Invert] button, turning it on.

**Applying the zabton effects**

**Notes**

The zabton function and [Fine Key] ( p. 71) cannot be turned on at the same time.

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Key1 >Edge menu (1112), press [Zabton], turning it on.
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Size	Pattern size
2	Soft	Edge softness of the pattern
3	Density	Density

**Notes**

If in the pattern selection described below you select “Mask Pattern,” and “Box” for the main mask, the “Size” parameter here cannot be adjusted. Set “Size” in the Main Mask menu.

- 3 To adjust the pattern and color, press [Zabton Adjust]. The Zabton Adjust menu appears.
- 4 In the <Zabton Pattern> group, select the pattern.

**Key Wipe:** Use a key wipe.

You can change this pattern by pressing [Pattern Select] to open the menu for key wipe pattern selection (Pattern Select menu), and make adjustments by pressing [Pattern Adjust] to open the menu for pattern adjustment (Wipe Adjust menu).

**Key Edge Pattern:** Use a color mixing pattern for key edge.

You can change this pattern by pressing [Pattern Select] to open the menu for edge color mix dedicated wipe pattern selection (Mix Pattern Select menu), and make adjustments by pressing [Pattern Adjust] to open the menu for pattern adjustment (Matte Adjust menu).

**Mask Pattern:** Use the main mask Box or Pattern.

You can also press [Pattern Select], and in the corresponding pattern adjustment menu, change the pattern.

- 5 To adjust the color, press [Zabton Color] and adjust the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Luminance	Luminance
2	Saturation	Saturation
3	Hue	Hue
4	Density	Density

**Mask**

The mask function can be used to mask off unneeded parts of a key or background, or to remove defects.

**Using a mask**

For example, to perform settings for key 1 on the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the M/E-1 >Key1 >Main Mask menu (1113).
- 2 In the <Mask Type> group, select the mask type.  
**Key Mask:** Masks a part of a key.  
**Bkgd Mask:** Masks a part of a background.
- 3 In the <Mask Source> group, select the mask source.  
**Box:** Signal from the dedicated box generator  
**Pattern:** Signal from the dedicated pattern generator
- 4 Set the mask source parameters.

**When Box is selected**

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Top	Position of top side
2	Left	Position of the left side
3	Right	Position of the right side
4	Bottom	Position of the bottom side
5	Soft	Box softness

### When Pattern is selected

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Size	Pattern size
2	Soft	Edge softness of the pattern
5	Pattern	Pattern number <sup>a)</sup>

a) The pattern is the same as the wipe. See *“Wipe Pattern List”* (☞ p. 264).

To select the pattern, display the Mask Ptn Select menu (1113.1) by pressing the [Mask Ptn Select] button in the Main Mask menu.

After selecting one of the patterns (wipe patterns 1 to 24) displayed in the Mix Pattern Select menu, you can adjust the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Size	Pattern size
2	Soft	Edge softness of the pattern

- To invert the black and white of the mask source, press the [Mask Invert] button, turning it on.
- When a pattern is selected as the mask source, set the pattern modifiers as required (see step 5 of *“Carrying out a color mix for the key edge fill matte”* (☞ p. 72)).

### Key Modify Clear

A simple button operation or a menu operation returns the key settings to the initial status settings. Press [Default Recall] at the lower left of the menu screen, turning it on, then press the corresponding VF button (VF1 to VF4) to return the key settings to their initial status.

For details about initial status, ☞ *“Saving User-Defined Settings”* (p. 214).

### Blink Function

With the blink function, you can obtain the following effects.

**Key blink:** The key is alternately inserted and deleted at regular intervals. You can set the period of blinking, and the proportion of each cycle for which the key is inserted.

**Edge blink:** The key fill and key edge fill are interchanged at regular intervals. You can set the period of blinking, and the proportion of each cycle for which the original state holds.

The blink settings are in the Transition menu for each key.

### Using the blink function

For example, to perform settings for key 1 on the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- Open the M/E-1 >Key1 >Transition menu (1116).
- In the <Blink> group, select [Key Blink] or [Edge Blink] to set it on.
- Set the blink parameters.

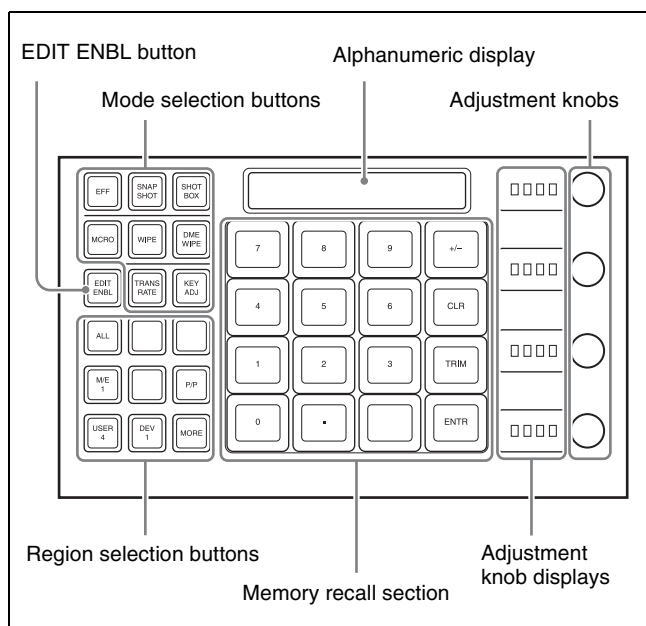
#### When key blink is selected

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Blink Rate	Length of blink cycle
2	Duty	Proportion of cycle for which original state holds

#### When edge blink is selected

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Blink Rate	Length of blink cycle
2	Duty	Proportion of cycle for which key inserted

## Key Adjustments (Flexi Pad)



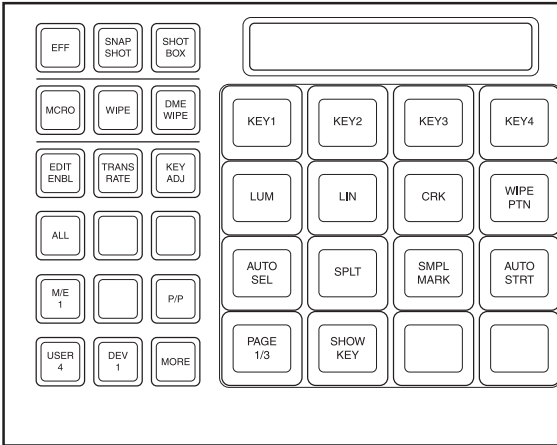
### Selecting the bank and keyer

Before carrying out key adjustment, first select the key adjust mode, then select the switcher bank and keyer. For example, to adjust key 1 on M/E-1, proceed as follows.

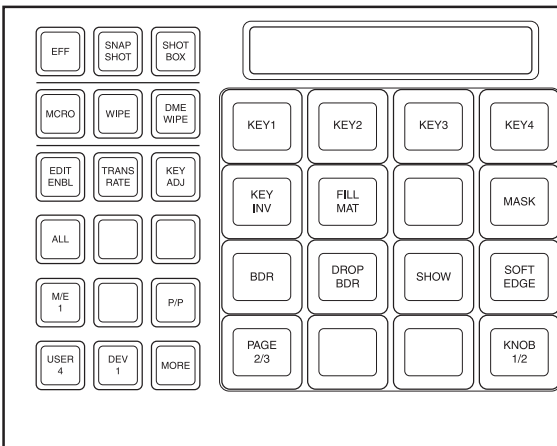
- 1 In the Flexi Pad mode selection buttons, press [KEY ADJ].
- 2 Press the [M/E1] region selection button.
- 3 In the memory recall section, press the [KEY1] button.

The button displays in the memory recall section now appear as shown in the following illustration. Pressing the [PAGE 1/3] > [PAGE 2/3] > [PAGE 3/3] buttons further changes the display as follows, then pressing [PAGE 3/3] returns to the original display shown in the illustration.

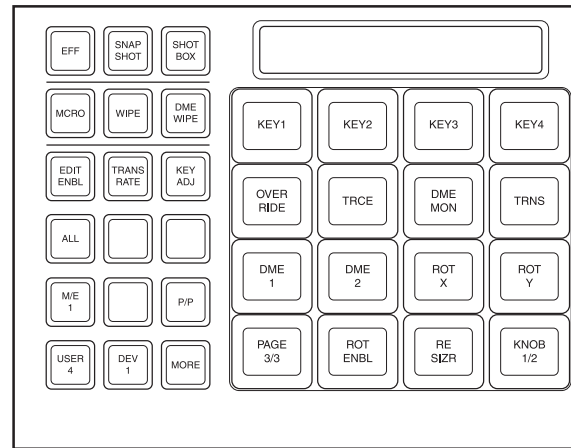
**[PAGE 1/3]**



**[PAGE 2/3]**



**[PAGE 3/3]**



With these buttons in the memory recall section, you can carry out the following key adjustment.

**Selecting the key type**

**[LUM] button:** Selects a luminance key.

**[LIN] button:** Selects a linear key.

**[CRK] button:** Selects a chroma key.

**[WIPE PTN] button:** Selects a key wipe pattern key.

Adjust the parameters for each type with the adjustment knobs.

For details about the parameters, see [“Setting the key type in a menu” \(p. 65\)](#).

**Selecting the key source**

**[AUTO SEL] button:** The signal assigned as a pair with the key fill bus signal for the key row button in the cross-point control block is automatically selected.

**[SPLT] button:** Select a different signal manually. To make the selection, hold down this button, and press the button assigned to the signal you want as key source in the cross-point control block.

You can also use the same signal as the key fill selected on the key fill bus as key source (SELF). Press the [AUTO SEL] button and [SPLT] button simultaneously so that both are off, to select the SELF mode.

**Setting auto chroma key**

**[SMPL MARK] button:** Toggles the sample mark display on and off. When on, the monitor screen shows the foreground video and a white box sample mark.

**[AUTO STRT] button:** Automatically adjusts the chroma key. When the [SMPL MARK] button is off, pressing this does not carry out automatic chroma key adjustment.

You can adjust the display position and size of the sample mark with the adjustment knobs.

For details about these parameters, [☞](#) “Making auto chroma key adjustments” (p. 69).

## Setting the show key function

**[SHOW KEY] button:** When this is pressed, the key source signal to which key processing has been applied is output from the specified output port (show key mode).

For details about setup, [☞](#) “Settings for the Show Key Function” (p. 251).

## Setting the resizer function

**[RE SIZR] button:** Enables and disables the resizer function.

The parameters that can be adjusted with the knobs are on two pages; to access the second page, press the [KNOB 1/2] button.

For details about the parameters, [☞](#) “Menu operations for key shrinking, magnification, rotation and movement” (p. 77).

If you press this button at the same time as any of the [KEY1] to [KEY4] buttons, you can switch the trackball to the resizer setting mode.

**[ROT X] button:** When this is set to on, you can rotate the key on the x-axis.

**[ROT Y] button:** When this is set to on, you can rotate the key on the y-axis.

## Inverting black and white in the key source

**[KEY INV] button:** When this is set to on, black and white in the key source is inverted.

## Selecting the key fill signal

**[FILL MAT] button:** When this is on, the signal generated by the dedicated color matte generator is selected, and when it is off, the signal selected on the key 1 fill bus is selected.

For details about parameters, [☞](#) “Selecting the key fill and key source” (p. 66).

## Selecting the mask source

**[MASK] button:** Selects the mask source (box generated by dedicated generator or pattern) to be selected in the Main Mask menu for each M/E bank.

The parameters that can be adjusted with the adjustment knobs are different for a box or a pattern. The box parameters are on two pages; to access the second page, press the [KNOB 1/2] button.

For details about parameters, [☞](#) “Using a mask” (p. 73).

## Applying modifiers to the key edge

**[BDR] button:** Applies a border to the edge.

**[DROP BDR] button:** Applies a drop border to the edge.

**[SHDW] button:** Applies a shadow to the edge.

For details about parameters, see step 3 in “Key Edge Modifications” ([☞](#) p. 70).

## Setting the degree of edge softening

**[SOFT EDGE] button:** Softens the key edge.

For details about parameters, see step 6 in “Key Edge Modifications” ([☞](#) p. 70).

## Returning the key adjustment values to their defaults

Holding down a key type button ([LUM], [LIN], [CRK], or [WIPE PTN]) recalls the key default values.

## Key modify clear

When the [KEY ADJ] button is held down, holding down the region selection button for the selected region together returns all the key settings of the region to the initial status settings.

When the [KEY ADJ] button is held down, holding down the button for the selected key together returns the key settings to the initial status settings.

For details about initial status, [☞](#) “Saving User-Defined Settings” (p. 214).

---

# Resizer

Resizer allows you to apply effects such as image shrinking, magnification and movement, rotation as well as change of the aspect ratio, to the processed key.

You can use the following operations.

- Two-dimensional transformations of keys ([☞](#) p. 77)
- Key rotation on the x- or y-axis
- Resizer interpolation settings ([☞](#) p. 78)
- Resizer crop/border settings ([☞](#) p. 79)
- Resizer effect settings ([☞](#) p. 80) (mosaic, defocus)

### Notes

- Resizer can only be used for keys 1 and 2 (DSK1 and DSK2 for the PGM/PST bank).
- The image of the key manipulated by resizer has a one-frame delay.
- DME wipes cannot be simultaneously used on keys where resizer is enabled.

## Two-Dimensional Transformations and Rotation of Keys

### Notes

When the screen aspect ratio is 4:3 in HD format, when the resizer is used to shrink a video image, this is applied to the 16:9 screen including the added video on the left and right sides. Use the crop function as required to extract the 4:3 image.

### Menu operations for key shrinking, magnification, rotation and movement

As an example, for key 1 of the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Key1 >Processed Key menu (1115), press [Resizer], turning it on.
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

Parameter group [1/2]

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Location X	Move key horizontally
2	Location Y	Move key vertically
3	Size	Magnify or shrink key

Parameter group [2/2]

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Aspect X	Change aspect ratio horizontally
2	Aspect Y	Change aspect ratio vertically
3	Aspect Ratio	Change aspect ratio horizontally and vertically at the same time

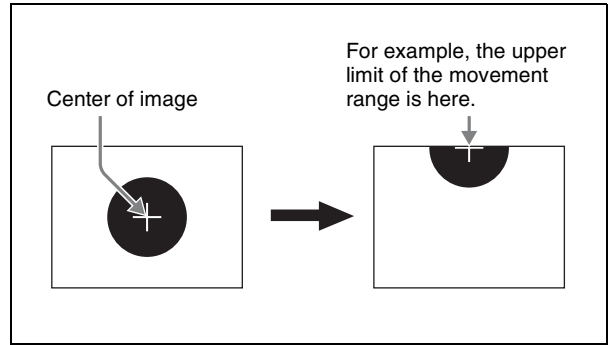
When [Rotation Enable] is turned on, the parameters change as follows.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Location X	Move key horizontally
2	Location Y	Move key vertically
3	Size	Magnify or shrink key
4 <sup>a)</sup>	Rotation X	Rotate key horizontally
4 <sup>b)</sup>	Rotation Y	Rotate key vertically
5	Perspective	Perspective

- a) [X] is turned on in the <Rotation> group of the Rotation menu.  
 b) [Y] is turned on in the <Rotation> group of the Rotation menu.

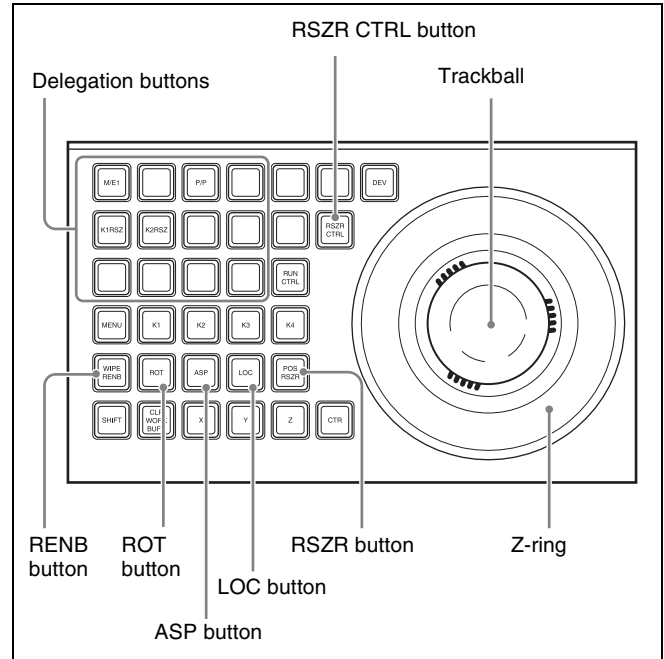
### Notes

When “Rotation Enable” is turned on, the movement range of the center of the image is limited to the top and bottom edges of the image frame.



**Functions that cannot be used with key rotation**  
 When “Rotation Enable” is turned on, aspect ratio parameters (Aspect X, Aspect Y, Aspect Ratio) cannot be adjusted. In addition, defocus cannot be used.

### Device control block operations for key shrinking, magnification, rotation, and movement



- 1 Press the [RSZR CTRL] button, turning it on.
- 2 Use the delegation buttons to select the key to which you want to apply a resizer function.
- 3 Press the [RSZR] button, turning it on.
- 4
  - To change the aspect ratio, turn on the [ASP] button.
  - To shrink, magnify, or move the key, turn on the [LOC] button.
  - To rotate the key, turn on the [RENB] button and then the [ROT] button. To specify the direction of rotation, press [X] or [Y]. To adjust perspective, press [Z].

Hold the ASP, LOC, or ROT button down while carrying out the operation of step 5 to enable fine adjustment (fine mode).

- 5 Use the trackball for the operation.

## Entering parameters

- 1 In the device control block, press the [X], [Y], or [Z] button, turning it on.

The Flexi Pad enters a mode in which you can enter parameters for the selected axis.

- 2 Enter a parameter value with the numeric keypad in the memory recall section.

The number of significant digits after a decimal point is 4.

- 3 Press the [ENTER] button.

### To enter a difference from the current value

You can enter difference values by pressing the [+/-] button, entering the difference from the current value, and pressing the [TRIM] button to confirm. The [+/-] button toggles between “+” (plus) and “-” (minus) each time it is pressed.

## Resetting parameters

Pressing the [CTR] button in the device control block sets the current three-dimensional parameter values to the closest detent points.

To reset three-dimensional parameter values to the defaults for the current transformation operation mode, press the [CTR] button twice in rapid succession.

## Clearing resizer effects

### To clear two-dimensional transform and rotation parameters only and set the initial state

In the device control block, press the [CLR WORK BUFR] button in the operation buttons.

### To clear all resizer parameters, and set the initial state

In the device control block, press the [CLR WORK BUFR] button in the operation buttons, twice in rapid succession.

For the initial state, you can select either the factory default settings or user settings.

For details about the settings, see [“Selecting the State at Start-up” \(p. 214\)](#).

## Resizer Interpolation Settings

For example, to make the interpolation settings for key 1 of the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Key1 >Processed Key menu (1115), press [Resizer], turning it on.

- 2 Press [Resizer Process].

The Resizer Process menu (1115.3) appears.

- 3 In the <Video Field/Frame Mode> group, select the interpolation method for the video signal.

### Notes

The supported signal formats are 480i/59.94, 576i/50, 1080i/59.94, and 1080i/50.

**Adaptive Y/C:** Detect changes in the luminance and chrominance components of the video signal separately, and switch automatically between fields and frames.

**Adaptive Y:** Detect changes in the luminance component of the video signal separately, and switch automatically between fields and frames.

**Field:** Perform interpolation in field units. This gives natural movement, suitable for moving video.

**Frame:** Perform interpolation in frame units. This gives higher image precision, suitable for still pictures.

- 4 When you select Adaptive Y/C or Adaptive Y in step 3, set the following parameter.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Mode	Degree of motion detection

- 5 In the <Key Field/Frame Mode> group, select the interpolation method for the key signal.

### Notes

The supported signal formats are 480i/59.94, 576i/50, 1080i/59.94, and 1080i/50.

**Adaptive:** Detect changes in the luminance component of the key signal separately, and switch automatically between fields and frames.

**Field:** Perform interpolation in field units. This gives natural movement, suitable for moving video.

**Frame:** Perform interpolation in frame units. This gives higher image precision, suitable for still pictures.

- 6 When you select Adaptive in step 5, set the following parameter.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Mode	Degree of motion detection

**7** In the <Filter Mode> group, select the method used to show the picture reduced or expanded.

**Mode1 (standard):** Even when the picture is reduced, add compensation so that it can be seen clearly.

**Mode2 (soft):** Suppress aliasing when expanding or reducing the picture.

**Mode3 (sharp):** Do not suppress aliasing when expanding or reducing the picture.

## Resizer Crop/Border Settings

### Making a crop setting for a key for which resizer is on

For example, to make the crop settings for key 1 of the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1** In the M/E-1 >Key1 >Processed Key menu (1115), press [Resizer], turning it on.
- 2** Press [Border/Crop].  
The Border/Crop menu (1115.2) appears.
- 3** Press [Crop], turning it on.
- 4** Set the following parameters.

Parameter group [1/2]

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	H	Crop positions on left and right sides
2	V	Crop positions on top and bottom sides
3	All	Crop positions on all sides

Parameter group [2/2]

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Top	Crop position on top side
2	Left	Crop position on left side
3	Right	Crop position on right side
4	Bottom	Crop position on bottom side

#### Signs of numeric settings

For H, V, and All settings, the sign (+/-) of the setting need not be considered. For example, in the case of an H setting, the value for Left is automatically regarded as a negative value, and the value for Right as a positive value, to display the image. The following is an example of these settings.

Parameter	Entered value	Setting
H	1.5	Left = -1.50
		Right = 1.50
	-1.5	Left = -1.50
		Right = 1.50

**5** To soften the edges of the image, press [Edge Soft], turning it on, and set the following parameter.

(Edges cannot be softened when the Crop effect is disabled.)

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Soft	Edge softness

#### Notes

If mosaic is enabled, or if defocus is enabled and in the <Defocus Mode> group you select Video/Key, then the crop is disabled.

### Applying a border to a key for which resizer is on

- 1** In the M/E-1 >key1 >Processed Key menu (1115), press [Resizer], turning it on.
- 2** Press [Border/Crop].  
The Border/Crop menu appears.
- 3** Press [Border], turning it on.
- 4** Set the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	H	Simultaneously adjust width of left and right borders
2	V	Simultaneously adjust width of top and bottom borders
3	All	Simultaneously adjust width of all four borders
4	Density	Border density

### To apply color to a border

- 1** In the <Border Mode> group of the Border/Crop menu, press [Flat Color].
- 2** Set the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Luminance	Luminance
2	Saturation	Saturation

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Hue	Hue

### To soften the inner edge of a border

- 1 In the Border/Crop menu, press [Border Soft].
- 2 Set the following parameter.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Inner Soft	Border inner softness

### To apply a beveled light edge

- 1 In the <Border Mode> group of the Border/Crop menu, press [Beveled Light Edge].
- 2 Set the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Top	Position of top side
2	Left	Position of the left side
3	Right	Position of the right side
4	Bottom	Position of the bottom side
5	All	Position of all four sides

- 3 Press [Border Soft].
- 4 Set the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Inner Soft	Border inner softness
2	Bound Soft	Border boundary softness

### To apply a beveled color edge

- 1 In the <Border Mode> group of the Border/Crop menu, press [Beveled Color Edge].
- 2 In the <Color Adjust> group, select the edges for adjustment among the [Top], [Left], [Right], and [Bottom] edges. To select all the four edges, press [All].
- 3 Set the color parameters.  
*For details, see “To apply color to a border” (p. 79).*
- 4 Press [Border Soft].
- 5 Set the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Inner Soft	Border inner softness

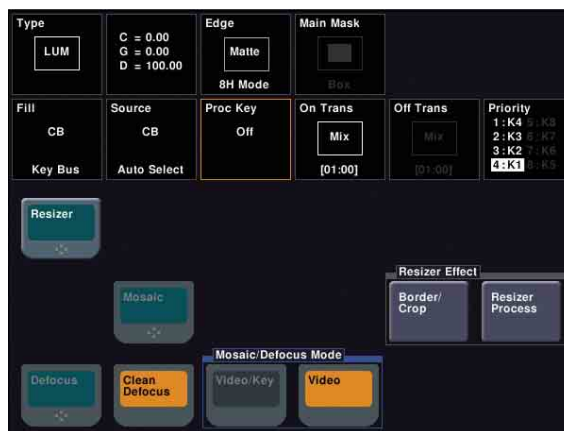
No.	Parameter	Adjustment
2	Bound Soft	Border boundary softness

## Applying Resizer Effects

For example, to make the effect settings for key 1 of the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the M/E-1 >Key1 >Processed Key menu (1115), press [Resizer], turning it on.
- 2 Press [Enhanced Effect].

The Enhanced Effect (1115.4) menu appears.



### Applying a mosaic

- 1 In the Enhanced Effect menu, press [Mosaic], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Size	Size of tiles
2	Aspect	Aspect ratio of tiles

#### Notes

If mosaic is enabled, crop is disabled.

### Defocusing

- 1 In the Enhanced Effect menu, press [Defocus], turning it on.
- 2 In the <Defocus Mode> group, select the signal to which to apply the mosaic effect.

**Video/Key:** Video signal and key signal

**Video:** Video signal only

**3** Set the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	H	Horizontal defocusing
2	V	Vertical defocusing
3	All	Horizontal and vertical defocusing

**Notes**

If defocus is enabled and in the <Defocus Mode> group you select Video/Key, then crop is disabled.

**Off:** Nothing is saved in the register.

**Lit:** Settings are saved in the register.

For a register holding a snapshot, the register name is shown as up to eight characters.

**Notes**

If you save a key snapshot to a button to which settings are already saved, the existing contents of the register will be overwritten.

The button you pressed lights yellow.

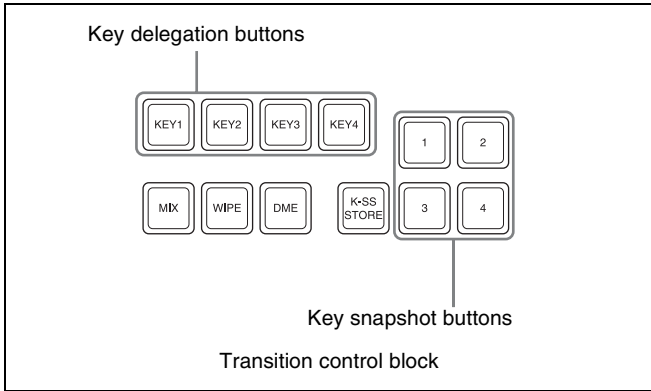
## Key Snapshots

Key settings other than the key on/off status and the key priority can all be instantaneously saved in a dedicated register, for recall when required. A key snapshot comprises three values: a cross-point button number, key memory full mode, and independent key transition, and can be called in any combination.

There are four key snapshot registers for each keyer.

### Key Snapshot Operations

Key snapshot operations are carried out in the transition control block or the Flexi Pad.



### Saving a key snapshot

For example, the following procedure saves the state of the M/E-1 key 1 settings.

- 1 Press the [KEY1] key delegation button in the M/E-1, turning it on.
- 2 Press one of the key snapshot buttons (1 to 4) while holding down the [K-SS STORE] (or KEY SS) button. The color of the key snapshot button indicates the following.

### Recalling a key snapshot

For example, the following procedure recalls the state of the M/E-1 key 1 settings.

- 1 Press the [KEY1] key delegation button in the M/E-1, turning it on.
- 2 Press the key snapshot button (1 to 4) of the register you want to recall.

### Key snapshot operations in the Flexi Pad

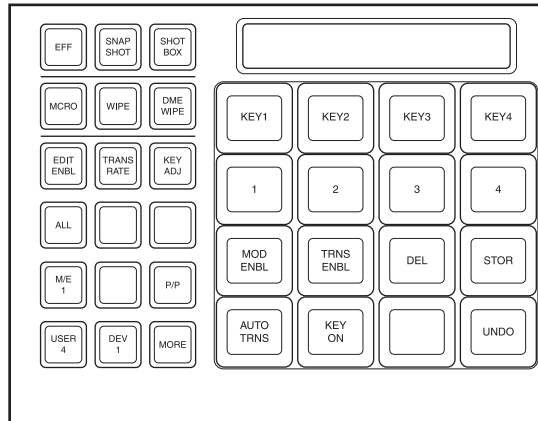
By default, the [KEY SS] key snapshot mode selection button does not appear in the Flexi Pad. To carry out key snapshot saving and recall in this control block, it is first necessary in the Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >Multi Function Module >Mode Sel Assign menu (7321.21) to assign the Key Snapshot mode to a mode selection button.

### To save a key snapshot

For example, to save a key snapshot to register 1 of KEY1 of M/E-1, select the M/E1 region and KEY1, then use the following procedure.

- 1 Press the [KEY SS] button.

The button displays in the memory recall section change as shown in the following illustration.



- 2 In the memory recall section, hold down the [STOR] button, and press the button (any of [1] to [4]) for the register in which you want to save the key snapshot.

### To recall a key snapshot

For example, to recall a key snapshot for M/E-1 key 1 saved in register 1, select the M/E1 region and KEY1, then proceed as follows.

- 1 Press the [KEY SS] button.
- 2 According to the information you want to recall, set the following buttons on/off.

**[MOD ENBL] button:** Recall the key adjustment values and key modifier settings.

**[TRNS ENBL] button:** Recall independent key transition settings.

If both are off, then key memory is enabled, and just the saved key fill and key source signal selections are recalled.

- 3 Press button [1] for the register you want to recall.

The [1] button lights yellow, and the key snapshot is recalled.

To cancel the recall operation, press the [UNDO] button.

### To delete a key snapshot

For example, to delete a key snapshot saved to register 1 of key 1 of M/E-1, select the M/E1 region and KEY1, then use the following procedure.

- 1 Press the [KEY SS] button.
- 2 Holding down the [DEL] button, press the button [1] of the register to which the key snapshot you want to delete is saved.

### To carry out an auto transition execution during key snapshot operation

Press the [AUTO TRNS] button.

### To instantly insert/remove a key

Press the [KEY ON] button.

To remove the key, while the key is inserted press the [KEY ON] button.

## Overview

A wipe is a transition from the current video stream to a new video stream, using a wipe pattern. Changing the background by means of a wipe is referred to as a “background wipe,” and inserting or deleting a key with a wipe is termed a “key wipe.” There are two types of wipe: those that can be selected in a common transition, and those that can be selected in an independent key transition (🔗 p. 87).

## Basic Procedure for Wipe Settings

You carry out wipe setting operations principally using the Wipe menu for each of the switcher banks. This section describes an example on the M/E-1 bank.

### Wipe Pattern Selection

#### Selecting a wipe pattern by a menu operation

- 1 Open the M/E-1 >Wipe >Main Pattern menu (1151).  
*For details about wipe patterns, 🔗 “Wipe Pattern List” (p. 264).*
- 2 Press the button to select the desired pattern.  
The pattern appears on the screen.

### Setting Wipe Modifiers

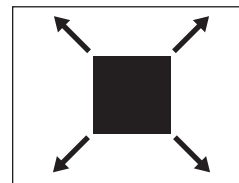
You can apply various modifiers to the wipe pattern: setting the wipe direction, pattern position, etc.

Note that the available modifiers may depend on the pattern you are using (🔗 p. 87).

### Specifying the wipe direction (Direction)

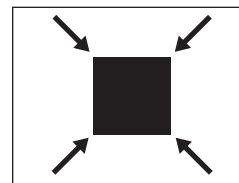
Specify the direction of the wipe effect.

#### Normal



Wipe in the normal direction.

#### Reverse



Wipe in the opposite direction of the normal direction.

#### Normal/reverse

The wipe direction alternates between normal and reverse after each transition.

#### To specify the wipe direction in a menu

- 1 Open the M/E-1 >Wipe >Edge/Direction menu (1154).
- 2 In the <Direction> group, select the wipe direction.

#### To specify the wipe direction with a button in the transition control block

In the transition control block of each switcher bank, press the following direction selection buttons.

**NORM:** Normal  
**NORM/REV:** Normal/reverse  
**REV:** Reverse

### Modifying the wipe pattern edge (Edge)

You can apply a border to the pattern or soften the edges.

**Border**

Applies a border to the pattern.

**Soft**

Softens the pattern edges.

**Soft Border**

Softens the border applied to the pattern.

When a border or soft border is selected, the signal filling the border is called edge fill. For the edge fill, you can use a matte generated by the dedicated color matte generator, or the signal selected on the utility bus. A matte can include color 1 and color 2, and a combination of the two colors (a “color mix”).

- 1 Open the M/E-1 >Wipe >Edge/Direction menu (1154).
- 2 Select the edge type in the <Edge> group.
- 3 Depending on the selection in step 2, set the following parameters.

**When Border is selected**

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Width	Border width

**When Soft (edge) is selected**

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Soft	Edge softness

**When Soft Border is selected**

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Width	Border width
2	Inner Soft	Border inner softness
3	Outer Soft	Border outer softness

- 4 When you selected Border or Soft Border, select the edge fill signal in the <Edge Fill> group.

**Utility 1 Bus:** Signal selected on the utility bus

**Matte:** Signal from the dedicated color matte generator

- 5 Depending on the selection in step 4, carry out the following operation.

**When [Utility 1 Bus] is selected:** Hold down the [UTIL1] button in the 1st row of the cross-point control block, and select the signal in the 2nd row.

**When [Matte] is selected:** In the Edge/Direction menu, press [Matte Adjust] to display the Matte Adjust menu (1154.1), then adjust the single-color or two-color combination color matte. Select whether to use a single-color matte or a two-color combination in the <Edge Matte> group.

**Flat Color:** Adjust color 1 with the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Luminance	Luminance
2	Saturation	Saturation
3	Hue	Hue

**Carrying out a color mix for the edge fill matte**

If you selected [Matte] for the border or soft border edge fill, you can combine color 1 and color 2.

For the combination, you can use not only a normal wipe generator pattern, but also the dedicated color mix pattern.

- 1 In the <Edge Fill> group of the Edge/Direction menu, select [Matte], and press [Matte Adjust].

The Matte Adjust menu (1154.1) appears.

- 2 In the <Edge Matte> group, press [Mix Color], turning it on.

- 3 In the <Mix Pattern> group, make one of the following selections.

**Wipe:** Use the wipe pattern selected for the transition.

**Pattern:** Use the dedicated pattern.

- 4 Depending on the selection in step 3, set the following parameters.

**When Wipe is selected**

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Size	Pattern size
2	Soft	Edge softness

### When Pattern is selected

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Size	Pattern size
2	Soft	Edge softness
3	Pattern	Pattern number <sup>a)</sup>

a) "Wipe Pattern List" (☞ p. 264).

You can also select the pattern in the Matte Adjust menu by pressing [Mix Pattern Select] and selecting the pattern in the Mix Ptn Select menu (1154.2). Press the desired pattern (1 to 24) to select it, and set the Size and Soft parameters.

- 5** If you selected Pattern in step 4, if required, the following modifiers can be added. If a wipe mix was set, skip to step 6.

### When turning [Position] on and setting the pattern position

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Position H	Horizontal position <sup>a)</sup>
2	Position V	Vertical position <sup>a)</sup>

a) ☞ p. 85.

### When turning [Multi] on and using replications of the same pattern

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	H Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern horizontally
2	V Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern vertically
3	Invert Type	Replication layout <sup>a)</sup>

a) ☞ p. 87.

### When turning [Aspect] on and setting the aspect ratio of the pattern

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Aspect	Aspect ratio <sup>a)</sup>

a) ☞ p. 86.

### When turning [Angle] on in the <Rotation> group and slanting the pattern

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Angle	Rotation angle of pattern <sup>a)</sup>

a) ☞ p. 86.

### When turning [Speed] on in the <Rotation> group and rotating the pattern at a constant rate

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Speed	Rotation speed of pattern <sup>a)</sup>

a) ☞ p. 86.

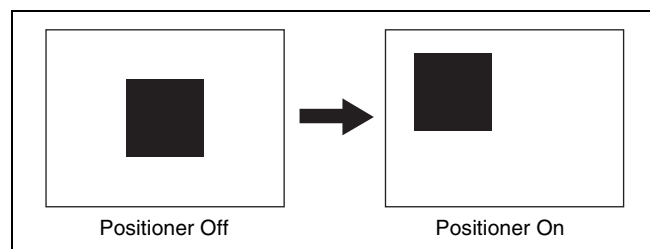
- 6** To adjust colors 1 and 2, turn on [Color1] or [Color2] respectively, then adjust the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Luminance	Luminance
2	Saturation	Saturation
3	Hue	Hue

- 7** To interchange color 1 and color 2, press the [Color Invert] button, turning it on.

### Setting the wipe position (Positioner)

Move the pattern to a desired position.



- 1 Open the M/E-1 >Wipe >Main Modify menu (1155).
- 2 Press [Position] in the <Position> group, turning it on.
- 3 Set the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Position H	Horizontal position <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Negative values move to the left.</li> <li>• Positive values move to the right.</li> </ul>
2	Position V	Vertical position <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Negative values move down.</li> <li>• Positive values move up.</li> </ul>

### To return the pattern position to the center of the screen

In the <Position> group, press [Center].

### To move the pattern from its current position to the center through the course of a transition

In the <Position> group, press [Auto Center], turning it on.

### To set the wipe position using the trackball

You can also set the wipe position using the trackball in the device control block.

- 1 Press the [M/E1] button in the device control block, turning it on.

The buttons in the device control block are assigned to the wipe position setting as follows.

Table 1: Buttons and assigned settings

Button name	Setting
WIPE	Wipe position for common transition

Table 2: Buttons assigned to functions

Button name	Function
POS	Toggle Position On/Off.
X, Y	Fix the operating direction.
CTR	Return the pattern position to the center of the screen.

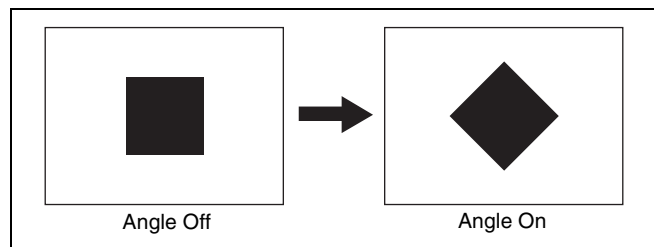
- Press the [WIPE] button, turning it on.
- Press the [POS] button, turning Position on.
- Move the trackball to set the wipe position.

By pressing the [X] button, turning it on, you can restrict movement to the horizontal direction, and by pressing the [Y] button, turning it on, you can restrict movement to the vertical direction.

## Rotating the wipe pattern (Rotation)

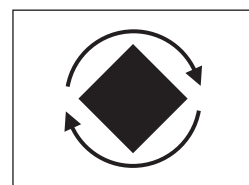
You can rotate the pattern.

### Angle



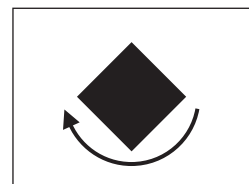
This carries out a wipe with the pattern in a fixed angle.

### Speed



Through the course of the transition the wipe pattern rotates at a fixed specified speed.

### Magnitude



Through the course of the transition the wipe pattern rotates through the specified angle.

- Open the M/E-1 >Wipe >Main Modify menu (1155).

- In the <Rotation> group, select the rotation type.

- Depending on the selection in step 2, set the following parameters.

#### When Angle is selected

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Angle	Angle of pattern rotation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A value of -100.00 corresponds to a rotation of one turn counterclockwise.</li> <li>A value of +100.00 corresponds to a rotation of one turn clockwise.</li> <li>A value of 0.00 corresponds to no rotation.</li> </ul>

#### When Speed is selected

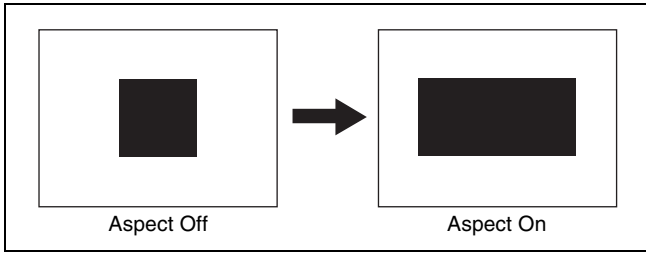
No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Speed	Rotation rate of pattern <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A value of -100.00 corresponds to one counterclockwise rotation per second.</li> <li>A value of +100.00 corresponds to one clockwise rotation per second.</li> <li>A value of 0.00 corresponds to pause.</li> </ul>

#### When Magnitude is selected

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Angle	Angle of pattern at start of transition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A value of -100.00 corresponds to a rotation of one turn counterclockwise.</li> <li>A value of +100.00 corresponds to a rotation of one turn clockwise.</li> <li>A value of 0.00 corresponds to no rotation.</li> </ul>
2	Magnitude	Amount of rotation through course of transition <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A value of -200.00 corresponds to a rotation of two turns counterclockwise.</li> <li>A value of +200.00 corresponds to a rotation of two turns clockwise.</li> <li>A value of 0.00 corresponds to no rotation.</li> </ul>

## Setting the wipe pattern aspect ratio (Aspect ratio)

You can freely change the aspect ratio of the pattern.

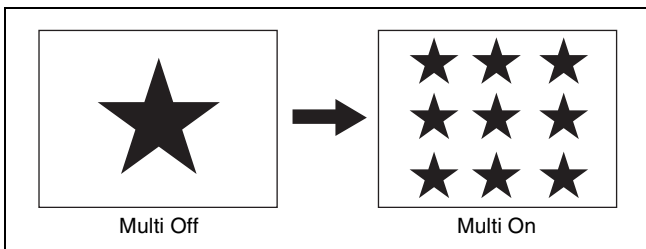


- 1 Open the M/E-1 >Wipe >Main Modify menu (1155).
- 2 Press [Aspect], turning it on.
- 3 Set the following parameter.

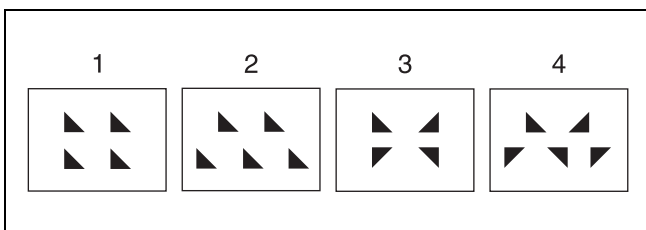
No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Aspect	Aspect ratio <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Negative values expand vertically.</li> <li>• Positive values expand horizontally.</li> </ul>

### Replicating the wipe pattern (Multiplication)

The same pattern can be repeated horizontally and vertically or both, up to 63 times.



The [Invert Type] parameter allows you to select one of the following four replication layouts.



- 1: All replications in the same orientation
- 2: Even-numbered rows staggered
- 3: Even-numbered columns and rows inverted
- 4: Even-numbered columns and rows inverted, and even-numbered rows staggered

- 1 Open the M/E-1 >Wipe >Main Modify menu (1155).
- 2 Press [Multi], turning it on.
- 3 Set the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	H Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern horizontally
2	V Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern vertically
3	Invert Type	Replication layout

### Possible combinations of wipe patterns and modifiers

Modifier	Wipe pattern (pattern number)	
	Available	Not available
Direction	1 to 24	–
Edge	1 to 24	–
Positioner	17, 18, 21 to 24	1 to 16, 19, 20
Rotation	1 to 24	–
Aspect ratio	9 to 16, 19 to 24	1 to 8, 17, 18
Multiplication	1 to 24	–

### Wipe Modify Clear

Press [Default Recall] at the lower left of the menu screen, turning it on, then press the [Wipe] VF5 button to return the wipe settings to their initial status.

For details about initial status, see [“Saving User-Defined Settings” \(p. 214\)](#).

## Wipe Settings for Independent Key Transitions

You carry out independent key transition wipe setting operations using the Wipe Adjust menu for each keyer. This section describes an example using key 1 on the M/E-1 bank.

Open the M/E-1 >Key1 >Transition menu (1116), select [Wipe Adjust], and display the Key1 Wipe Adjust menu (1116.1).

For an overview of independent key transitions, see [“Independent Key Transitions” \(p. 57\)](#).

## Basic Procedure for Independent Key Transition Wipe Settings

### Selecting the independent key transition wipe pattern

You select the independent key wipe pattern from the list of patterns displayed in the menu.

To select a wipe pattern for independent key 1 on the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the Key1 Wipe Adjust menu, select [Pattern Select].  
The Pattern Select menu (1116.2) appears.
- 2 Press the button to select the desired pattern.

## Setting Independent Key Transition Wipe Modifiers

### Available modifiers

You can use the following modifiers with an independent key transition wipe.

However, the available modifiers may depend on the pattern you are using.

- Direction
- Soft edge
- Positioner
- Rotation
- Aspect ratio
- Multiplication

### Setting the wipe direction (Direction)

In the <Direction> group of the Key1 Wipe Adjust menu, make one of the following selections.

**Normal:** Regular direction

**Normal/Reverse:** Alternate between regular and reverse for each transition

**Reverse:** Opposite direction of normal

### Softening the wipe pattern edge (Soft edge)

- 1 In the Key1 Wipe Adjust menu, press [Soft], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameter.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Soft	Edge softness

## Setting the wipe position (Positioner)

There are two methods of setting the wipe position: using the device control block, or in a menu.

### To set the wipe position using the trackball

- 1 Press the [M/E1] button in the device control block, turning it on.

The buttons in the device control block are assigned to the wipe position setting as follows.

Table 1: Buttons and assigned settings

Button name	Setting
K1	Wipe position for independent key 1 transition
K2	Wipe position for independent key 2 transition
K3	Wipe position for independent key 3 transition
K4	Wipe position for independent key 4 transition

Table 2: Buttons assigned to functions

Button name	Function
POS	Toggle Position On/Off.
X, Y	Fix the operating direction.
CTR	Return the pattern position to the center of the screen.

- 2 Press the [K1] button, and select the setting item (key 1).

### Notes

You can also enable simultaneous selection of multiple keys in the Setup menu.

- 3 Press the [POS] button, turning Position on.
- 4 Move the trackball to set the wipe position.

By pressing the [X] button, turning it on, you can restrict movement to the horizontal direction, and by pressing the [Y] button, turning it on, you can restrict movement to the vertical direction.

### To set the wipe position by a menu operation

- 1 In the Key1 Wipe Adjust menu, press [Position], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Position H	Horizontal position <sup>a)</sup>
2	Position V	Vertical position <sup>a)</sup>

a) [☞ p. 85.](#)

### To move the pattern from its current position to the center through the course of a transition

Press [Auto Center], turning it on.

## Rotating the wipe pattern (Rotation)

- 1 In the <Rotation> group of the Key1 Wipe Adjust menu, select the rotation type.

**Angle:** Incline the pattern through a fixed angle.

**Speed:** Rotate at a speed rate.

**Magnitude:** Rotate the pattern through a fixed angle during the course of the transition.

- 2 Depending on the selection in step 1, set the following parameters.

#### When Angle is selected

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Angle	Rotation angle of pattern <sup>a)</sup>

a) [☞ p. 86.](#)

#### When Speed is selected

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Speed	Rotation speed of pattern <sup>a)</sup>

a) [☞ p. 86.](#)

#### When Magnitude is selected

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Angle	Angle of pattern at start of transition <sup>a)</sup>
2	Magnitude	Amount of rotation through course of transition <sup>a)</sup>

a) [☞ p. 86.](#)

## Setting the wipe pattern aspect ratio (Aspect ratio)

- 1 In the Key1 Wipe Adjust menu, press [Aspect], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameter.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Aspect	Aspect ratio <sup>a)</sup>

a) [☞ p. 86.](#)

## Replicating the wipe pattern (Multiplication)

- 1 In the Key1 Wipe Adjust menu, press [Multi], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	H Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern horizontally
2	V Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern vertically
3	Invert Type	Replication layout <sup>a)</sup>

a) [☞ p. 87.](#)

## Wipe Snapshots

You can snapshot and save a wipe pattern together with the current settings of its modifiers and pattern limit in a dedicated register for recall when required. There are 10 wipe snapshot registers on each bank.

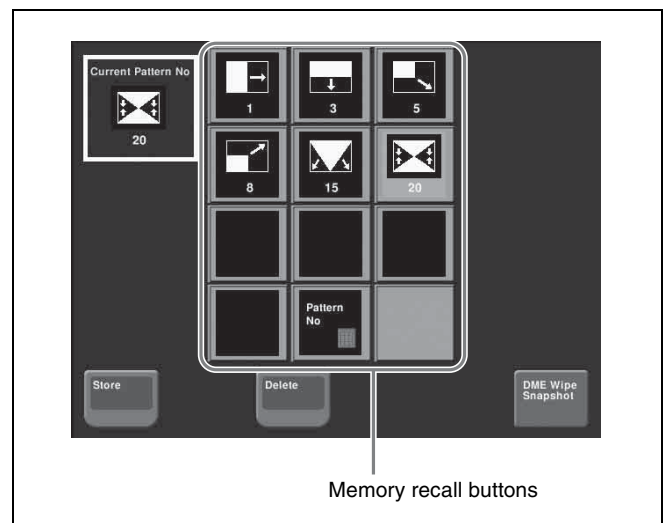
Wipe snapshots can be saved or recalled using the Flexi Pad or a menu operation.

For details about Flexi Pad operations, [☞ “Wipe Pattern Operations in the Flexi Pad” \(p. 90\).](#)

## Wipe Snapshot Operations with the Menus

Use the Wipe Adjust menu in each switcher bank.

When operating from the M/E-1 bank, for example, open the M/E-1 >Wipe >Wipe Snapshot menu (1157).



## Button displays

In the Setup menu, you can select whether the memory recall buttons show the pattern number or register name.

For details, see “Settings for the Flexi Pad and Wipe Snapshot Menus” (p. 237).

## Saving a wipe snapshot from the menu

- 1 Make the wipe settings that you want to save.
- 2 In the Wipe Snapshot menu, press [Store], lighting it orange.
- 3 Press the memory recall button for the register in which you want to save.

### Notes

If you press a button which is already lit, this overwrites the contents of the register.

## Recalling a wipe snapshot from the menu

In the Wipe Snapshot menu, press the memory recall button for the wipe snapshot you want to recall. This recalls the wipe snapshot, and the button you pressed lights orange. In the upper left is shown the currently recalled register name or number.

### Notes

A setting in the Setup menu determines whether register names or pattern numbers appear.

## Deleting a wipe snapshot from the menu

- 1 In the Wipe Snapshot menu, press [Delete].
- 2 Press the memory recall button for the wipe snapshot you want to delete.

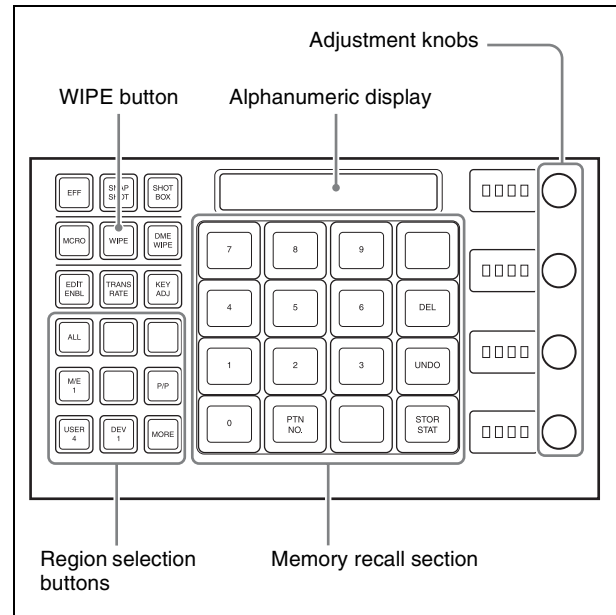
# Wipe Pattern Operations in the Flexi Pad

## Recalling a Wipe Snapshot

To recall a wipe snapshot in the Flexi Pad, use the following operation.

- 1 Press the [WIPE] button in the Flexi Pad.

This switches the memory recall section to wipe snapshot mode.



You can change the indications for buttons [0] to [9] in the memory recall section to pattern images, using the Engineering Setup >Panel >Operation >Flexi Pad Mode menu (7326.3).

- 2 Select the region for the wipe snapshot to be recalled with the region selection buttons.
- 3 Press the button (lit orange) in the memory recall section corresponding to the register in which the desired wipe snapshot is stored.

The button you pressed lights yellow, and this recalls the saved wipe snapshot. The alphanumeric display shows the corresponding pattern number or register name.

## Selecting the Wipe Pattern

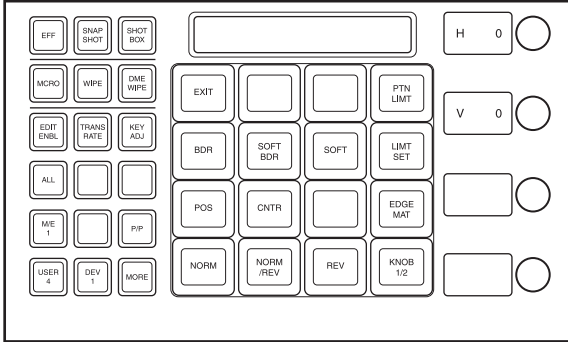
- 1 Press the [WIPE] button, and select the region with the region selection buttons.
- 2 Press the [PTN NO.] button in the memory recall section. The [PTN NO.] button lights green.
- 3 Use the numeric keypad to enter the pattern number consisting of up to three digits, and press the [ENTR] button.

This confirms the input, and the pattern number (see p. 264) appears in the alphanumeric display. The [PTN NO.] button light changes to orange, and the system returns to wipe snapshot mode.

## Editing the Wipe Pattern

By pressing the [EDIT ENBL] button to switch the memory recall section to editing mode, you can edit the selected wipe pattern.

To exit from the editing mode, press the [EDIT ENBL] button again, or press the [EXIT] button.



### Wipe pattern edge setting buttons

**BDR (border):** Applies a border to the wipe pattern.

**SOFT BDR (soft border):** Softens the applied border.

**SOFT (soft edge):** Softens the edge.

**EDGE MAT (edge matte):** Selects whether to fill the edge with a color matte, or insert an image from the utility bus. By default a color matte is selected.

You can adjust the parameters selected with these buttons using the adjustment knobs, when the button is lit green.

#### When border is selected

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	W	Border width
2	L	Luminance
3	S	Saturation
4	H	Hue

#### When soft border is selected

Parameter group [1/2]

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	W	Border width
2	I	Border inner softness
3	O	Border outer softness

Parameter group [2/2]

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	L	Luminance
2	S	Saturation
3	H	Hue

#### When soft edge is selected

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	S	Edge softness

#### When edge matte is selected

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	L	Luminance
2	S	Saturation
3	H	Hue

### Buttons for positioning the wipe pattern

**POS (positioner):** Adjusts the position of the wipe pattern.

**CNTR (center):** Returns the wipe pattern position to the center.

When you press the [POS] button, the alphanumeric display first shows the name of the parameter, “H” or “V,” and then the value of the parameter.

When the [POS] button is lit green, you can adjust the position of the wipe pattern with the adjustment knobs.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	H	Horizontal position
2	V	Vertical position

### Buttons for setting the wipe direction

**NORM (normal):** Sets wipe to normal (forward) direction.

**NORM/REV (normal/reverse):** Sets the wipe direction to alternate between normal and reverse for each transition.

**REV (reverse):** Sets wipe to the opposite direction of normal.

### Buttons for setting the wipe pattern limit

**PTN LIMIT (pattern limit):** Enables setting of the pattern limit using the adjustment knobs.

**LIMIT SET (limit set):** If you change the pattern size with the fader lever then press this button, this sets the current size as the pattern limit.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	P	Pattern limit range

### Other buttons

**EXIT:** Exits the editing mode, and returns the memory recall section to wipe snapshot mode.

**KNOB 1/2:** When the knob adjustments are on two pages, this switches between parameter group [1/2] and parameter group [2/2].

## Wipe modify clear

When the [WIPE] button is held down, holding down the region selection button for the selected region together returns all the wipe settings of the region to the initial status settings.

For details about initial status, [☞ “Saving User-Defined Settings” \(p. 214\)](#).

---

## Saving, Canceling, and Deleting Edited Wipe Patterns

### Saving the edited wipe pattern as a snapshot

Holding down the [WIPE] button, press the button in the memory recall section for the register in which you want to save.

The button you pressed lights yellow.

Buttons for registers in which wipe snapshots are already saved light orange.

### Canceling a saved wipe snapshot

Immediately after saving, hold down the [STOR STAT] button and press the [UNDO] button.

Buttons for registers in which wipe snapshots are already saved light orange.

### Canceling the recall of a wipe snapshot

Press the [UNDO] button.

### Deleting the data of a saved wipe snapshot

Holding down the [DEL] button, press the button for the register in which the wipe snapshot you want to delete is saved.

The register button you pressed turns off.

## Overview

A DME wipe is a wipe transition that uses an image transformation effect to change from one video image to the next.

There are two types of DME wipe: those that can be selected in a common transition, and those that can be selected in an independent key transition (🔗 p. 97). You can use a resizer in a DME wipe (called a “resizer DME wipe”) in a transition on the key selected by a next transition button or in an independent key transition.

### Notes

- Resizer DME wipes can only be set for keys that support resizer/key edge.
- Resizer DME wipes cannot be used on keys where resizer is enabled.
- A setting in the Setup menu is required in order to use DME wipes with a background selected for a next transition. In this case, Key1 cannot be used on the corresponding bank. The setting is configured in the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config menu (7331) (🔗 p. 241).
- When the screen aspect ratio is 4:3 in HD format, the video shrinks to fit on a 16:9 screen, including added video on the left and right sides. Use the crop function as required to extract the 4:3 image.

## Types of DME Wipe Pattern

You can use DME wipe patterns that execute in one-channel mode. DME wipe patterns fall into the following groups.

*For schematic patterns and numbers of each group, 🔗 “DME Wipe Pattern List” (p. 264) and 🔗 “Resizer DME Wipe Pattern List” (p. 265).*

Pattern group	Effect	Pattern numbers	
		Used in backgrounds	Used in keys
Slide	The new video slides in over the old video.	1001 to 1008	7001 to 7008
Squeeze	The new video appears squeezed over the old video, and progressively expands to cover it.	1021 to 1031	7021 to 7031
Door	The new video moves like a door closing, and progressively covers the old video.	1041 to 1044	—
Flip tumble	The old video rotates about an axis and is replaced by the new video. During the transition, the signal from the utility bus of the M/E bank appears as the background.	1101, 1102	—
Frame in-out	Completed in two transitions. In the first transition, the new video appears, then on the second transition the new video goes out and the old video returns.	1201 to 1208, 1221 to 1224	7201 to 7208, 7221 to 7224
Picture-in-picture	Completes in two transitions. In the first transition, the old video shrinks, and the new video appears behind it. In the second transition, the old video expands again until it is its original size.	1251	—

Pattern group	Effect	Pattern numbers	
		Used in backgrounds	Used in keys
Mosaic	In the first half of the transition, a mosaic is gradually applied to the old video, then at the 50% point the inner image changes to the new video. In the second half, the mosaic effect on the new video is gradually reduced, returning to the original image at 100%.	1701	—
Defocus	In the first half of the transition, the old video is gradually defocused, then at the 50% point the inner image changes to the new video. In the second half, the defocusing effect on the new video is gradually reduced, returning to the original image at 100%.	1702	—

## DME Wipe Pattern Variations and Modifiers

You can modify the selected DME wipe pattern in the same way as an ordinary wipe pattern, as follows.

For details about the method of operation, see [“Setting DME Wipe Modifiers” \(p. 95\)](#).

**Direction:** You can set the DME wipe direction to normal, reverse, or alternating normal/reverse (see [p. 95](#)). However, a key transition can only be specified when the following patterns are selected.

**Patterns:** 7204, 7207, 7221 to 7224

### Notes

If pattern number 1201, 1202, 1203, 1205, 1206, 1208, 1251, 1701, or 1702 is selected, direction cannot be used.

**Edge:** You can apply a border or soft border (see [p. 95](#)).

### Notes

If pattern number 1701 or 1702 is selected, edge cannot be used.

**Positioner:** You can move the DME wipe pattern or center of the effect to an arbitrary position. Using the position select function, you can also instantaneously move the pattern.

- 1031, 7031  
When this pattern number is selected, with the progress of the transition the pattern center automatically moves initially from the set position toward the center of the screen (see [p. 96](#)). In other words, the effect obtained is the same as in a normal wipe with the positioner set to [Auto Center].
- 1201 to 1208, 1221 to 1224, 1251, 7201 to 7208, 7221 to 7224

When these pattern numbers are selected, you can set the pattern position when the first transition completes.

**Pattern limit:** You can restrict the range of the transition as desired. However, this is not available for an independent key DME wipe in the transition control block.

For details, see [“Pattern Limits” \(p. 53\)](#).

**Size:** You can set the size of the image. This can only be used when one of the following pattern numbers is selected.

- 1201 to 1208, 1221 to 1224, 1251, 7201 to 7208, 7221 to 7224

**Crop:** You can crop the image. It is also possible in 16:9 mode to crop both sides and convert the image to a 4:3 aspect ratio.

For the execution of the transition, you can select from the following three possibilities.

- Cut
- Last 5%
- Linear

When [Last 5%] is selected, you can set the [Release Transition] as follows.

- Last 30%
- Last 5%
- Off

### Notes

When pattern numbers 1701 and 1702 are selected, crop cannot be used.

## Relation between DME Wipes and Other Effects

The relations between DME wipes and other effects are as follows.

### Relation to ordinary wipes

- DME wipes do not use the wipe generator built into the switcher. Therefore, during the execution of a DME wipe, you can still use a pattern produced by the wipe generator as the source for a pattern key or mask.

- A DME wipe pattern cannot be used as the source for a pattern key or mask.

## Basic Procedure for DME Wipe Settings

You carry out DME wipe setting operations principally using the DME Wipe menu for each bank. This section describes an example on the M/E-1 bank.

For details about independent key transition DME wipe settings, see “DME Wipe Settings for Independent Key Transitions” (p. 97).

### DME Wipe Pattern Selection

#### Notes

For details about patterns that can be selected, see “Types of DME Wipe Pattern” (p. 93). Other patterns cannot be selected, even if displayed on the screen. Also, patterns cannot be used in two-channel mode.

#### Selecting a DME wipe pattern by a menu operation

- 1 Open the M/E-1 >DME Wipe >1ch menu (1161).
- 2 Select the desired DME wipe pattern group with one of the following buttons.
  - **Slide/Squeeze:** Slide and squeeze
  - **Door:** Door
  - **Flip Tumble:** Flip tumble
  - **Frame I/O / P in P:** Frame in/out and picture-in-picture
  - **Mosaic/Defocus:** Mosaic and defocus

The patterns from the selected pattern group appear on the screen.
- 3 Press the button to select the desired pattern number.

### Setting DME Wipe Modifiers

You can apply various modifiers to the DME wipe pattern: setting the DME wipe direction, pattern position, etc.

For an overview of modifiers, see “DME Wipe Pattern Variations and Modifiers” (p. 94).

### Specifying the DME wipe direction (Direction)

You can specify the DME wipe direction (normal/reverse).

#### To specify the DME wipe direction in a menu

- 1 Open the M/E-1 >DME Wipe >Edge/Direction menu (1164).
- 2 In the <Direction> group, specify the DME wipe direction.

**Normal:** Regular direction

**Normal/Reverse:** Alternate between regular and reverse for each transition

**Reverse:** Opposite direction of normal

#### To specify the DME wipe direction with a button in the transition control block

In the transition control block of each switcher bank, press the following direction selection buttons.

**NORM:** Normal

**NORM/REV:** Normal/reverse

**REV:** Reverse

### Modifying the DME wipe pattern edge

- 1 Open the M/E-1 >DME Wipe >Edge/Direction menu (1164).
- 2 Select the edge type in the <Edge> group.
  - Border:** Border
  - Soft Border:** Soft border
- 3 Set the parameters according to the selection in step 2.

#### When Border is selected

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Width	Border width
3	Luminance	Luminance of border color
4	Saturation	Saturation
5	Hue	Hue

#### When Soft Border is selected

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Width	Border width
2	Inner Soft	Border inner softness
3	Luminance	Luminance of border color
4	Saturation	Saturation
5	Hue	Hue

## Setting the DME wipe position (Positioner)

- 1 Open the M/E-1 >DME Wipe >Modify menu (1165).
- 2 Press [Position] in the <Position> group, turning it on.
- 3 Set the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	H	Horizontal position
2	V	Vertical position

### To return the DME wipe pattern position to the center of the screen

In the <Position> group, press [Center].

## Displaying and moving the position of the DME wipe pattern (position select)

- 1 Open the M/E-1 >DME Wipe >Modify menu (1165).

Among the [Top Left], [Top Right], [Bottom Left], and [Bottom Right] buttons in the <Position Select> group, the button that is on indicates the current display position of the DME wipe pattern.

- 2 Press [Position] in the <Position> group, turning it on.
- 3 To move the position of the DME wipe pattern, press the button where you want to move to, turning it on.

The DME wipe pattern displayed on the screen moves to the position of the specified button.

## Setting the DME wipe pattern size (Size)

- 1 Open the M/E-1 >DME Wipe >Modify menu (1165).
- 2 Press [Size], turning it on.
- 3 Set the following parameter.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Size	Effect size <sup>a)</sup>

a) The effect size when [Size] is off is taken as 100.00%.

## Adjusting the DME wipe pattern cropping

### Notes

When pattern numbers 1701 and 1702 are selected, crop cannot be used.

- 1 Open the M/E-1 >DME Wipe >Modify menu (1165).

- 2 In the <Crop Mode> group, press [Crop], turning it on.

- 3 Set the following parameters.

Parameter group [1/2]

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	H	Crop the left and right of the image ("Left" value is displayed)
2	V	Crop the top and bottom of the image ("Top" value is displayed)
3	All	Crop the left, right, top, and bottom of the image ("Left" value is displayed)

Parameter group [2/2]

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Top	Crop the top of the image
2	Left	Crop the left of the image
3	Right	Crop the right of the image
4	Bottom	Crop the bottom of the image

### To crop to 4:3 aspect ratio in 16:9 mode

In the <Crop Mode> group, press [4:3 Crop], turning it on.

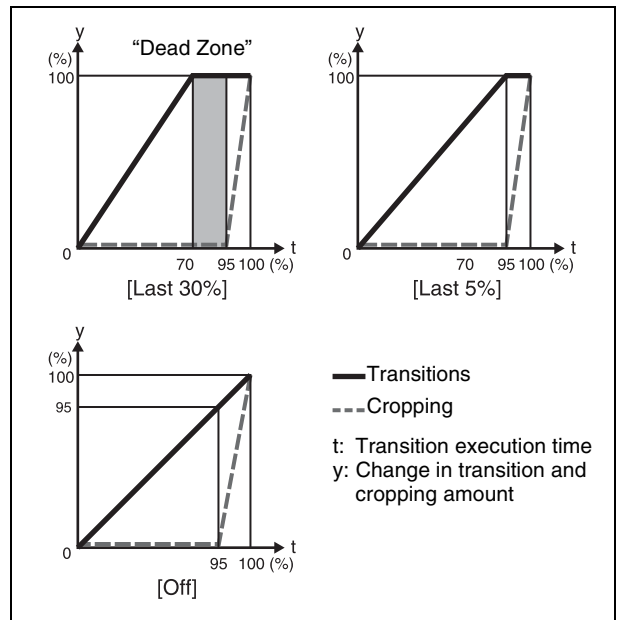
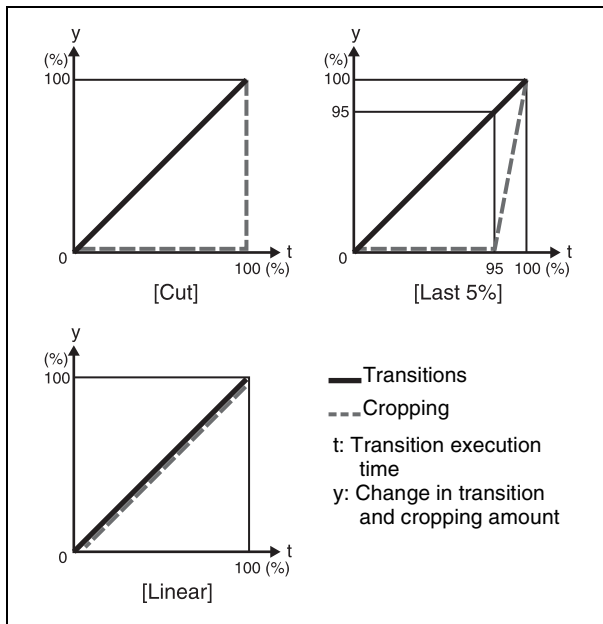
### To set the action when a DME wipe crop transition is executed

- 1 Open the M/E-1 >DME Wipe >Modify menu (1165).
- 2 In the <Crop Mode> group, press [Crop] or [4:3 Crop] (to crop from 16:9 to 4:3 aspect ratio), turning it on.
- 3 In the <Crop Mode> group, press [Remove From Begin].  
The Remove From Begin menu (1165.1) appears.
- 4 In the <Crop Transition> group, select the execution mode for the DME wipe crop transition.

**Cut:** Cut mode. The cropping does not change during the transition, but at the end point of the transition, the cropping is removed (enlarges).

**Last 5%:** The cropping is maintained for the first 95% of the transition, and is progressively removed during the last 5% of the transition (enlarges).

**Linear:** The cropping is removed linearly through the whole course of the transition (enlarges).



### To set the timing of transition completion

When the execution mode for a DME wipe crop transition is set to [Last 5%], you can select the timing of transition completion from 70% ([Last 30%]), 95% ([Last 5%]), and 100% ([Off]).

- 1 Open the M/E-1 >DME Wipe >Modify menu (1165).
- 2 In the <Crop Mode> group, press [Remove From Begin].  
The Remove From Begin menu (1165.1) appears.
- 3 In the <Release Transition> group, select the timing of transition completion.

**Last 30%:** The transition completes at the end of 70% of the transition execution time. The transition has a dead zone from 70% to 95% of the transition time.

**Last 5%:** The transition completes at the end of 95% of the transition execution time. When the transition completes, the cropping is removed during the last 5% (enlarges).

**Off:** The transition completes at the end of the transition execution time. During the last 5% of the transition, the transition and cropping removal proceed together.

## DME Wipe Modify Clear

Press [Default Recall] at the lower left of the menu screen, turning it on, then press the [DME Wipe] VF6 button to return the DME wipe settings to their initial status.

For details about initial status, see [“Saving User-Defined Settings” \(p. 214\)](#).

## DME Wipe Settings for Independent Key Transitions

You can set independent key transition DME wipes in the DME Wipe Adjust menu for each keyer. This section describes an example using key 1 on the M/E-1 bank.

Open the M/E-1 >Key1 >Transition menu (1116), select [DME Wipe Adjust], and display the Key1 DME Wipe Adjust menu (1116.3).

For an overview of independent key transitions, see [“Independent Key Transitions” \(p. 57\)](#).

### DME wipe patterns that can be used in independent key transitions

- Slide (pattern numbers: 7001 to 7008)
- Squeeze (pattern numbers: 7021 to 7031)
- Frame in-out (pattern numbers: 7201 to 7208, 7221 to 7224)

For details about image patterns and numbers, -  
 ☞ “Resizer DME Wipe Pattern List” (p. 265).

## Basic Procedure for Independent Key Transition DME Wipe Settings

### Selecting the independent key transition DME wipe pattern

You select the independent key DME wipe pattern from the list of patterns displayed in the menu.  
 To select an independent key transition DME wipe for key 1 on the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

#### Notes

For details about patterns that can be selected, see “DME wipe patterns that can be used in independent key transitions” (☞ p. 97). Other patterns cannot be selected, even if displayed on the screen. Also, patterns cannot be used in two-channel mode.

- 1 Press [1ch] in the <Pattern Select> group.  
 The 1ch Pattern Select menu (1116.4).
- 2 Select [Resizer Slide/Squeeze] or [Resizer Frame I/O].  
 The selected group pattern appears on the screen.
- 3 Press the button to select the desired pattern.

### Setting Independent Key Transition DME Wipe Modifiers

You can add modifiers such as pattern position and size for an independent key transition DME wipe.

For an overview of modifiers, ☞ “DME Wipe Pattern Variations and Modifiers” (p. 94).

### Setting the DME wipe position (Positioner)

For details about applicable pattern numbers, see “Positioner” in “DME Wipe Pattern Variations and Modifiers” (☞ p. 94).

- 1 In the <Position> group of the Key1 DME Wipe Adjust menu, press [Position], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	H	Horizontal position

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
2	V	Vertical position

To return the pattern position to the center of the screen

In the <Position> group, press [Center].

### Setting the DME wipe pattern size (Size)

For details about applicable pattern numbers, see “Size” in “DME Wipe Pattern Variations and Modifiers” (☞ p. 94).

- 1 In the Key1 DME Wipe Adjust menu, press [Size], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameter.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Size	Effect size <sup>a)</sup>

a) The effect size when [Size] is off is taken as 100.00%.

### Cropping a DME wipe

- 1 In the <Crop Mode> group of the Key1 DME Wipe Adjust menu, press [Crop], turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

Parameter group [1/2]

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	H	Crop the left and right of the image (“Left” value is displayed)
2	V	Crop the top and bottom of the image (“Top” value is displayed)
3	All	Crop the top, bottom, left, and right of the image (“Left” value is displayed)

Parameter group [2/2]

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Top	Crop the top of the image
2	Left	Crop the left of the image
3	Right	Crop the right of the image
4	Bottom	Crop the bottom of the image

To crop to 4:3 aspect ratio in 16:9 mode

In the <Crop Mode> group, press [4:3 Crop], turning it on.

## To set the operation for DME wipe crop transition execution

- 1 In the <Crop Mode> group of the Key1 DME Wipe Adjust menu, press [Crop], turning it on.
- 2 In the <Crop Mode> group, press [Crop] or [4:3 Crop] (to crop from 16:9 to 4:3 aspect ratio), turning it on.
- 3 In the <Crop Mode> group, press [Remove From Begin].

The Remove From Begin menu (1116.7) appears. For subsequent operations, see step 4 in “*To set the action when a DME wipe crop transition is executed*” (☞ p. 96).

## To set the timing of transition completion

- 1 In the <Crop Mode> group of the Key1 DME Wipe Adjust menu, press [Crop], turning it on.
- 2 In the <Crop Mode> group, press [Remove From Begin].

The Remove From Begin menu (1116.7) appears. For subsequent operations, see step 3 in “*To set the timing of transition completion*” (☞ p. 97).

## Applying a border to a DME wipe

In the <Edge> group of the Key1 DME Wipe Adjust menu, press [Border], turning it on.

For subsequent operations, use the same process as in step 3 in “*Modifying the DME wipe pattern edge*” (☞ p. 95).

## Specifying DME wipe direction

For details about the corresponding pattern number, ☞ “*DME Wipe Pattern Variations and Modifiers*” (p. 94).

Select one of the following in the <Direction> group of the DME Wipe Adjust menu for Key1.

**Normal:** Wipes in the normal direction.

**Normal/Reverse:** Switches between normal and reverse for each transition.

**Reverse:** Wipes in the opposite direction to normal.

# DME Wipe Snapshots

You can snapshot and save a DME wipe pattern together with the current settings of its modifiers and pattern limit in a dedicated register for recall when required.

There are 10 DME wipe snapshot registers for each of the switcher banks.

Saving to and recalling these registers can be performed using the Flexi Pad or a menu operation.

For details about Flexi Pad operations, ☞ “*DME Wipe Pattern Operations in the Flexi Pad*” (p. 99).

## DME Wipe Snapshot Operations with the Menus

You can save, recall, and delete in the same way as for wipe snapshots.

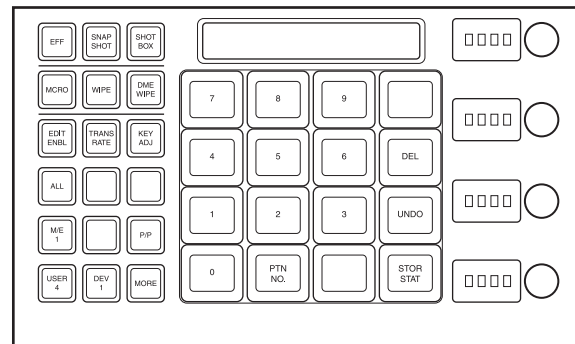
For details about the method of operation, ☞ “*Wipe Snapshot Operations with the Menus*” (p. 89).

# DME Wipe Pattern Operations in the Flexi Pad

## Recalling a DME Wipe Snapshot

The operation of recalling a DME wipe snapshot in the Flexi Pad is the same as the operation of recalling a wipe snapshot (☞ p. 90), except for pressing the [DME WIPE] button to select DME wipe snapshot mode.

You can change the indications for buttons [0] to [9] in the memory recall section to pattern images, using the Engineering Setup >Panel >Operation >Flexi Pad Mode menu (7326.3).



## Selecting the DME Wipe Pattern

The operation of selecting the DME wipe pattern in the Flexi Pad is the same as the operation of selecting a wipe pattern (☞ p. 90), except for pressing the [DME WIPE] button to select DME wipe snapshot mode.

Note, however, that the pattern numbers for DME wipe patterns have four digits ([@ p. 264](#)).

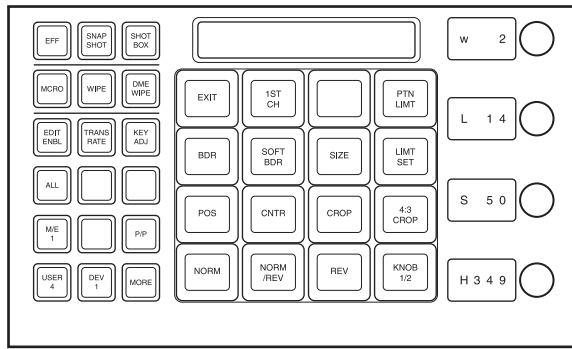
Parameter group [2/2]

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	L	Luminance
2	S	Saturation
3	H	Hue

## Editing the DME Wipe Pattern

By pressing the [EDIT ENBL] button to switch the memory recall section to editing mode, you can edit the selected DME wipe pattern.

To exit from the editing mode, press the [EDIT ENBL] button again, or press the [EXIT] button.



The operation of the following buttons is the same as when editing a wipe pattern.

- [EXIT] button
- [PTN LIMIT], [LIMIT SET] buttons
- [NORM], [NORM/REV], [REV] buttons
- [KNOB 1/2] button

For details about each button operation, [@](#) “Editing the Wipe Pattern” (p. 91).

### DME wipe pattern edge setting buttons

**BDR (border):** Applies a border to the DME wipe pattern.

**SOFT BDR (soft border):** Softens the applied border.

You can adjust the parameters selected with these buttons using the adjustment knobs, when the button is lit green.

#### When border is selected

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	W	Border width
2	L	Luminance
3	S	Saturation
4	H	Hue

#### When soft border is selected

Parameter group [1/2]

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	W	Border width
2	I	Border inner softness

### Buttons for positioning the DME wipe pattern

**POS (positioner):** Adjusts the position of the DME wipe pattern.

**CNTR (center):** Returns the DME wipe pattern position to the center.

When you press the [POS] button, the alphanumeric display first shows the name of the parameter, “H” or “V,” and then the value of the parameter.

When the [POS] button is lit green, you can adjust the position of the pattern with the adjustment knobs.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	H	Horizontal position
2	V	Vertical position
3	H (R)	Relative movement in the horizontal direction
4	V (R)	Relative movement in the vertical direction

### Buttons for setting DME wipe pattern cropping

**CROP:** Adjusts the DME wipe pattern cropping.

**4:3 CROP:** Crops a 16:9 image to 4:3.

When the [CROP] button is lit green, you can set the cropping ratio of the DME wipe pattern with the adjustment knobs.

Parameter group [1/2]

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	H	Crop the left and right of the image
2	V	Crop the top and bottom of the image
3	A	Crop the left, right, top, and bottom of the image

Parameter group [2/2]

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	T	Crop the top of the image
2	L	Crop the left of the image
3	R	Crop the right of the image
4	B	Crop the bottom of the image

### Button for specifying effect size

**SIZE:** Specifies the effect size.

When the [SIZE] button is lit green, you can specify the effect size with the adjustment knobs.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	S	Effect size <sup>a)</sup>

a) The effect size when SIZE is off is taken as 100.

## DME wipe modify clear

With the [DME WIPE] button held down, pressing and holding down the region selection button for the selected region returns the DME wipe settings to their initial status.

For details about initial status, [☞ “Saving User-Defined Settings” \(p. 214\)](#).

---

## Saving, Canceling, and Deleting DME Wipe Snapshots

The operations of saving, canceling, and deleting a DME wipe pattern snapshot you have created are the same as the operations of saving, canceling, and deleting a wipe snapshot ([☞ p. 92](#)).

## Overview

Frame memory is a function whereby a frame of input video can be frozen and written to memory, for further use as material for editing. You can also play recorded frame memory clips (movies).

### Frame capacity


The following tables show the maximum number of images that can be written to the memory.

#### HD system:

Video format	Memory capacity	
	Without ancillary data	With ancillary data
1080i/50	Approx. 1000 frames	Approx. 700 frames
1080i/59.94		Approx. 800 frames
1080PsF/23.976		Approx. 600 frames
1080PsF/24		
720P/50	Approx. 2300 frames	Approx. 1400 frames
720P/59.94		Approx. 1700 frames

#### SD system:

Video format	Memory capacity	
	Without ancillary data	With ancillary data
480i/59.94	Approx. 5600 frames	Approx. 4700 frames
576i/50	Approx. 4800 frames	Approx. 3900 frames

For details about the method of operation,  “Still Image Operations” (p. 103).

## Types of image and terminology used

The following types of image are handled in frame memory.

**Freeze image:** An input image that has been frozen, but not saved to memory.

**Still image:** A freeze frame that has been saved to memory as a file. Each file (still file) holds just one still image.

**Frame memory clip:** A clip consists of a sequence of still images, which appears as a movie on playback. In this manual this is also referred to simply as a “clip.” The files (still files) constituting clips are referred to as a “clip file.”

When the above distinctions are not being made, an image is simply referred to as an “image.”

## Frame memory output

There are eight frame memory channels, FM1 to FM8, and each channel independently allows a freeze image to be saved or recalled.

By allocating FM1 to FM8 to cross-point buttons you can use the still image output or clip output from each channel as input material.

## Correspondence between input and output

There are two buses for capturing frame memory material: the frame memory source bus 1 and the frame memory source bus 2.

These input buses are used by allocation to one of the pairs of output, FM1&2, FM3&4, FM5&6, or FM7&8. You can freeze a frame in each channel separately, or freeze in the two channels simultaneously.

The source buses allocated to FM1 to FM8 are as follows.

Input channel	Frame memory source bus 1	Frame memory source bus 2
Output	FM1	FM2
	FM3	FM4
	FM5	FM6
	FM7	FM8

## Pair mode

By enabling the pair mode, you can link FM1 and FM2, FM3 and FM4, FM5 and FM6, and FM7 and FM8. For example, when a freeze or image processing is carried out on FM1, the same operation is carried out on FM2. The same applies to the other pairs. When a pair of images are captured in pair mode, the image frozen in FM1 (3, 5, or 7) is referred to as the main file, and the other frozen in FM2 (4, 6, or 8) is referred to as the sub file.

## Pair files and single files

A file that can be recalled in pair mode is termed a “pair file.” A pair file can be created by setting pair mode and capturing an image, or by using the coupling function (☞ p. 117) to combine two single files.

A file other than a pair file is termed a “single file.” A single file can be created by switching off pair mode and capturing an image, or by using the separation function (☞ p. 117) to split a pair file.

## Operation modes

The frame memory has the following operation mode.

**V/K mode:** When the pair mode is active, the key signal is automatically selected on frame memory source bus 2. This is convenient for handling the video and key signals together in frame memory. For example, when you select a video signal on frame memory source bus 1, the key signal assigned to it is automatically selected on frame memory source bus 2. You can also use the signal automatically selected on frame memory source bus 2 as a key signal when processing keyframe memory 1.

To change the pair mode or operation mode, use the Frame Memory menu.

## Frame memory folders

Still images and clips can be managed in a maximum of twelve groups.

Such a group is called a “frame memory folder.” Folders can be added or deleted, and can be given a name of up to 8 characters.

### Notes

- When the system is powered off, the folder names are deleted.  
The folder names must be saved onto media.

- The following names cannot be used for folders.  
Flash1, Flash2  
CON, PRN, AUX, CLOCK\$, NUL, COM0, COM1, COM2, COM3, COM4, COM5, COM6, COM7, COM8, COM9  
LPT0, LPT1, LPT2, LPT3, LPT4, LPT5, LPT6, LPT7, LPT8, LPT9  
A folder named “Default” is provided, and this folder cannot be renamed or deleted.
- Still images and clips in different frame memory folders cannot have the same name.

# Still Image Operations

The frame memory function provides the following functions for still image creation and saving.

- Capturing and Saving an Input Image (Store) (☞ p. 106)
- Recalling Still Images (Recall) (☞ p. 107)
- Image Output (☞ p. 108)
- Continuously Capturing Still Images (Record) (☞ p. 109)
- Recalling a Continuous Sequence of Still Images (Animation) (☞ p. 110)

### Notes

During frame memory clip playback (☞ p. 112) of the pair assigned to either of the target FM selection buttons, frame memory operations may not be performed properly. Carry out frame memory operations after stopping clip playback.

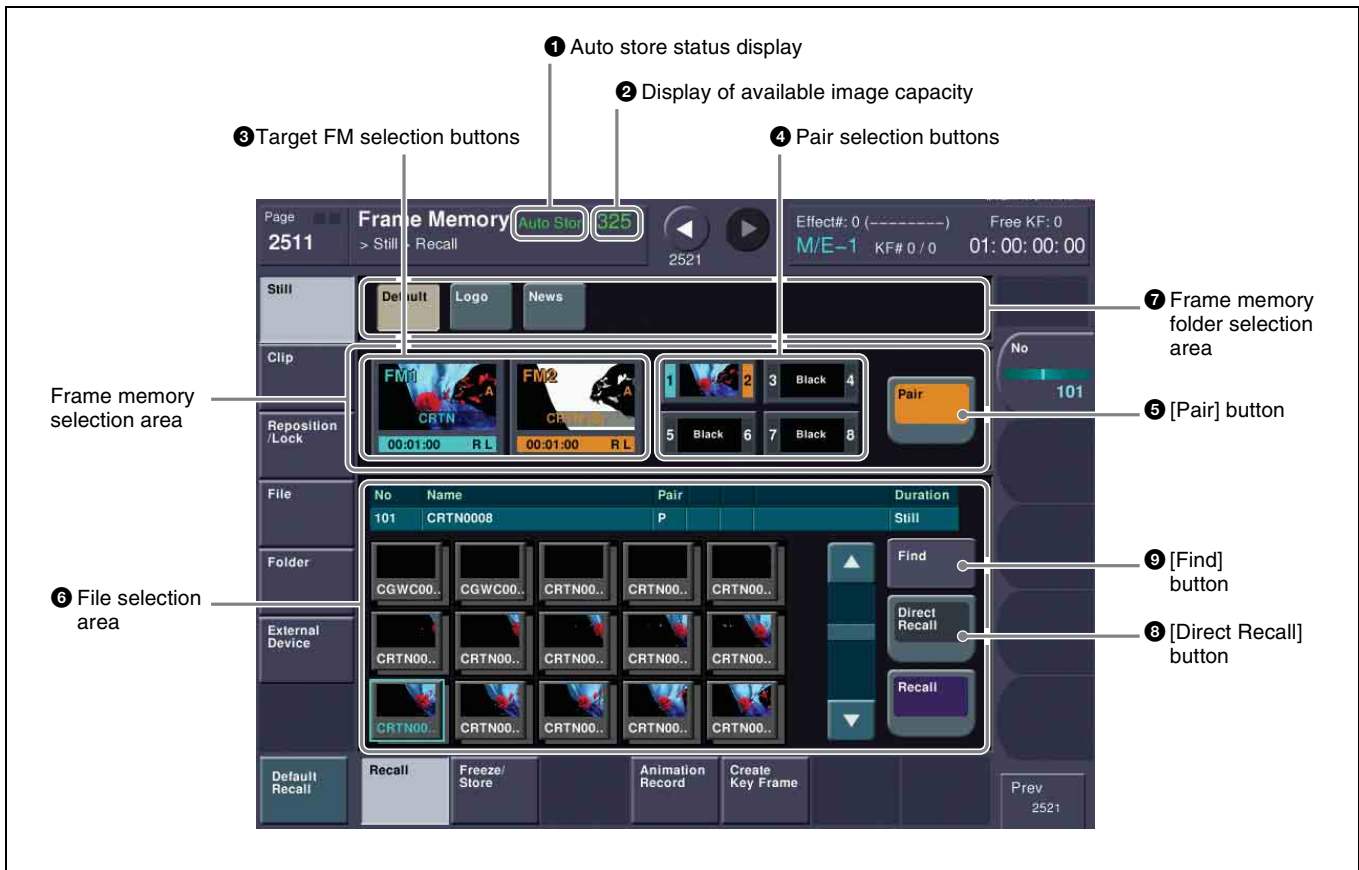
## Preparations

### Allocating the frame memory outputs (FM1 to FM8) to cross-point buttons

To output a frame memory image to a monitor, for example, the output signal from the frame memory (FM1 to FM8) must be allocated to a cross-point button. Carry out this allocation in the Setup menu.

## Interpreting the Frame Memory Menu

The menu screen consists of the following principal parts. The frame memory selection area display is the same for all except the File (excluding Pair Recombination menu), Folder, and External Device menus.



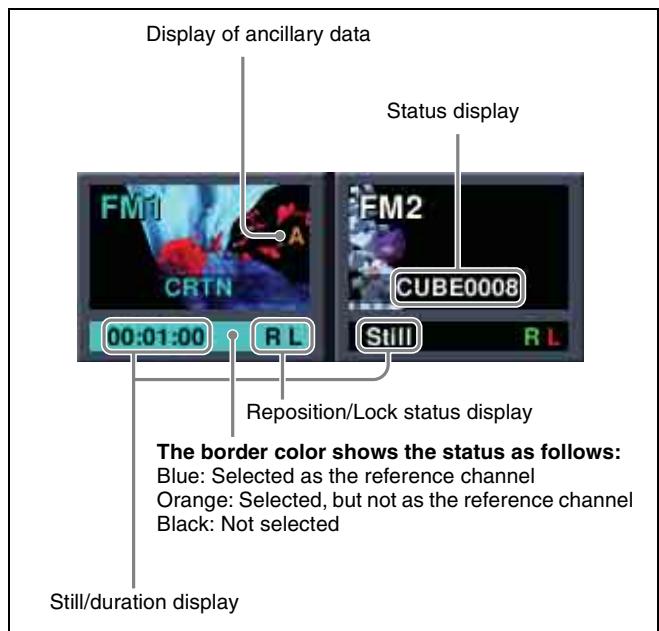
**1 Auto store status display**

Depending on the Setup menu settings, this appears when the auto store function is enabled.

**2 Display of available image capacity**

This shows the remaining number of frames. When no more frames can be stored, “1” or “0” appears in red in pair mode, and “0” appears in red in single mode.

**3 Target FM selection buttons**



Press one of these to select which of the selected outputs (FM1 and FM2 in the example shown) the operation applies to.

The following information appears on the button.

## Status display

**File name (e.g., image001) and thumbnail:** File output in progress

**Black:** Black signal output in progress

**Through:** Input image output in progress

**Freeze:** Freeze in progress

**Record:** Continuous image capture (i.e., recording) in progress

## Still/duration display

When a still image is selected, “Still” is shown. When a clip is selected, a duration indication (e.g., “00:00:10”) is shown.

## Reposition/Lock status display

This shows “R” when the reposition function (☞ p. 108) is on, and “L” when the lock function (☞ p. 109) is on.

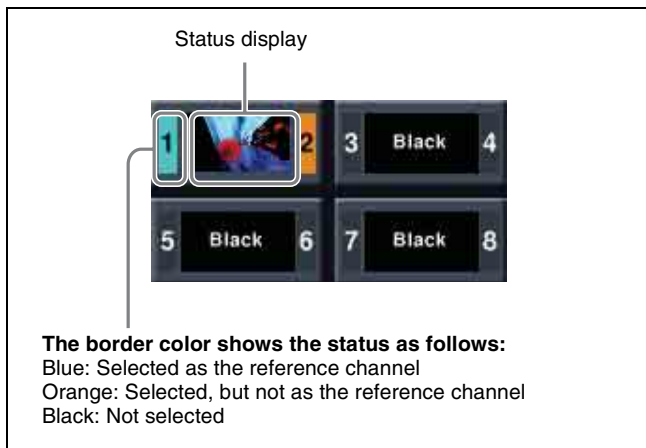
## Ancillary data-attached clip display

For a clip with ancillary data attached, an “A” appears.

## 4 Pair selection buttons

Select the pair to be displayed in the target FM selection buttons.

(In the following figure, the FM1 and FM2 pair is selected.)



The following information appears on the button.

## Status display

For a pair, shows the status of the reference.

**Thumbnail:** File output in progress

**Black:** Black signal output in progress

**Through:** Input image output in progress

**Freeze:** Freeze in progress

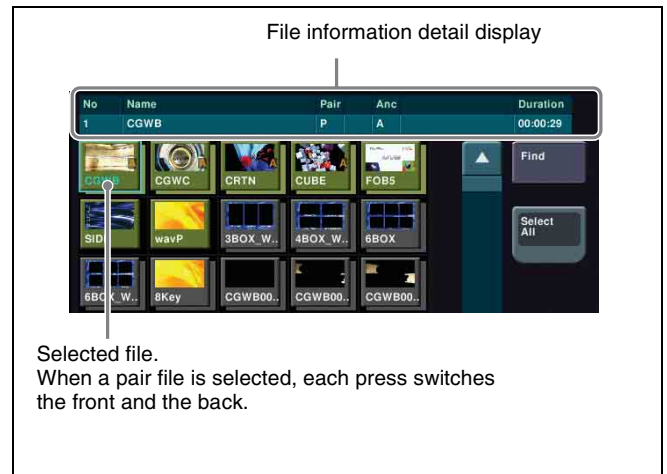
**Record:** Continuous image capture (i.e., recording) in progress

## 5 [Pair] button

Press this button, turning it on, to enable pair mode.

## 6 File selection area

You can select from the displayed still image files or clip files.



## Thumbnail indications

**Still image files and clip files:** Still image files are displayed as gray buttons, and clip files are displayed as yellow buttons.

**Single files and pair files:** Pair files are displayed with a shadow, and single files are displayed with no shadow.

**Selected file:** Pale blue border. When more than one file is selected, only the first is pale blue, and the remainders are orange. If a pair file is selected, each press switches the front and the back.

## File information detail display

For the selected file, this shows the file name, “P” if a pair file, “A” if an ancillary data attached clip, and the duration.

## 7 Frame memory folder selection area

Select the frame memory folder to be displayed.

## 8 [Direct Recall] button

Toggle on and off the direct recall mode in which pressing a thumbnail immediately recalls the file.

## 9 [Find] button

Pressing this button displays a popup window, in which you can enter a file name to carry out a search.

## Selecting an Input Image

For the input image to be saved to frame memory, you can use either the signal selected on one of the two frame memory source buses or a dedicated color matte signal.

When using the signal on frame memory source bus 1 or 2 for the input image, select the signal as described below.

## Selecting the signal on a frame memory source bus

This section describes an example of selecting the signal on frame memory source bus 1.

- 1 In the 1st row of the cross-point control block, press the button to which frame memory source bus 1 is allocated, turning it on.

For details about 1st row bus assignments, see [“Assigning a Bus or Function to 1st Row Buttons”](#) (p. 235).

- 2 In the 2nd row, select the signal you want to use as the input image.

---

## Selecting Outputs and Target Frame Memory

### Selecting outputs (FM) and target frame memory

This section describes an example of selecting FM1&2.

- 1 In the Frame Memory menu, press one of the VF1 to VF4 buttons, and select the required HF button menu.

The current status of frame memory appears [\(see p. 103\)](#).

- 2 From the pair selection buttons, press the buttons corresponding to FM1 and FM2.

This assigns the signals to FM1 and FM2. The FM1 and FM2 output status appears on the target FM selection buttons [\(see p. 104\)](#).

- 3 If required, press [Pair], to select the FM operation mode (pair mode).

**On:** Operate on FM1 (3, 5, 7) and FM2 (4, 6, 8) as a pair.

**Off:** Operate on FM1 (3, 5, 7) and FM2 (4, 6, 8) individually.

For details, see [“Pair mode”](#) (p. 103).

#### Notes

In the Pair Recombination menu, the [Pair] operation is not possible.

- 4 Press the target FM selection button [FM1] or [FM2] [\(see p. 104\)](#) to select the FM to which operations apply.

**When [Pair] is On:** Regardless of whether you press FM1 or FM2, the pair is selected.

**When [Pair] is Off:** One of the targets must be selected. However, in the Clip >Play menu, you can select both FM1 and FM2.

## Selecting a frame memory folder

Press a button in the frame memory folder selection area [\(see p. 105\)](#).

By pressing [More] to switch the display, you can select from a maximum of 12 folders.

Thumbnails of the files within the selected folder appear.

---

## Capturing and Saving an Input Image

As the input material for the frame memory, you can use the signal selected on the frame memory source bus. You can use a mask for this signal.

Allocating a frame memory source bus signal to one of FM1 to FM8, then carrying out a freeze captures a still image in the corresponding frame memory output image, and saves it in temporary memory.

For a freeze, an image can be captured either as a video frame (“frame freeze”) or a video field (“field freeze”).

#### Notes

When the system is powered off, any freeze images written to temporary memory are lost.

### Freezing an image and writing it to memory

To freeze the signal selected as input material, and write it to memory, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the Frame Memory >Still >Freeze/Store menu (2512).
- 2 Select the target frame memory. For the procedure, see [“Selecting outputs \(FM\) and target frame memory”](#) (p. 106).
- 3 To use V/K mode, press [V/K Mode], turning it on.
- 4 Press a button in the frame memory folder selection area to select the folder to hold the freeze image [\(see p. 106\)](#).

#### Notes

The folder selected here is the destination folder for saving the freeze image. After step 5 that follows, it will not be possible to change the selected folder.

An orange bar appears on the selection button for the destination folder.

**5** Press [Freeze Enable], turning it on.

The signals of frame memory source buses 1 and 2 are assigned to the pair of FMs selected in step **2**, and a freeze is now possible.

**6** If necessary, set the mask settings (☞ p. 107) for the selected signal.

**7** Press one of the following in the <Freeze> group to write a freeze image to temporary memory.

**Frame:** Execute frame freeze.

**Field:** Execute field freeze.

**Off:** Release the freeze, and delete the recorded freeze image.

### To return to the state immediately before the freeze after carrying out the freeze

In the <Freeze> group, press [Undo].

#### Notes

- When the system is powered off, any freeze images written to temporary memory are lost.
- If you change the frame memory to use as in step **2** without saving, all the freeze images in temporary memory will be lost. However, if the auto store function is set to on in the Setup menu, freeze images will be automatically saved whenever you change the selected target frame memory.
- For the following signal formats, a field freeze is not possible.  
1080PsF/23.976, 1080PsF/24, 720P/50, 720P/59.94

### Saving a freeze image (Store)

You can use the freeze function to save an image that has been written to temporary memory as a file. You can save a single image to a single file.

A name of up to eight characters can be applied to a file.

#### Notes

When the system is powered off, all the files saved in memory are lost.

To save a captured image as a still image file, use the following procedure in the Frame Memory >Still >Freeze/Store menu (2512)..

**1** Press [Store].

**2** Enter a file name.

#### Notes

The following names cannot be used:

CON, PRN, AUX, CLOCK\$, NUL, COM0, COM1, COM2, COM3, COM4, COM5, COM6, COM7, COM8, COM9  
LPT0, LPT1, LPT2, LPT3, LPT4, LPT5, LPT6, LPT7, LPT8, LPT9

**3** Press [Enter].

This saves the still image file in memory.

The destination folder is the folder selected in step **4** of “Freezing an image and writing it to memory” (☞ p. 106).

If the entered folder name already exists, a message to confirm overwriting appears.

When the system is powered off, all the files saved in memory are lost.

### To carry out a freeze and store simultaneously (Freeze and Store)

Press [Freeze & Store], turning it on.

In this state, if you press [Frame] or [Field], this carries out a freeze, and simultaneously stores a still image file.

### Setting a mask

To apply a mask to the signal selected on a frame memory source bus, use the following procedure in the Frame Memory >Still >Freeze/Store menu (2512).

Masks can be set separately for frame memory source buses 1 and 2. However, this section describes settings for frame memory source bus 1 as an example.

**1** Press [Box Mask], turning it on.

**2** Set the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Top	Position of top side
2	Left	Position of the left side
3	Right	Position of the right side
4	Bottom	Position of the bottom side

**3** To link the masks on frame memory source buses 1 and 2, press [Mask Link], turning it on.

### Recalling Still Images (Recall)

You can recall an image file saved in memory, and allocate it to any of the FM1 to FM8 outputs.

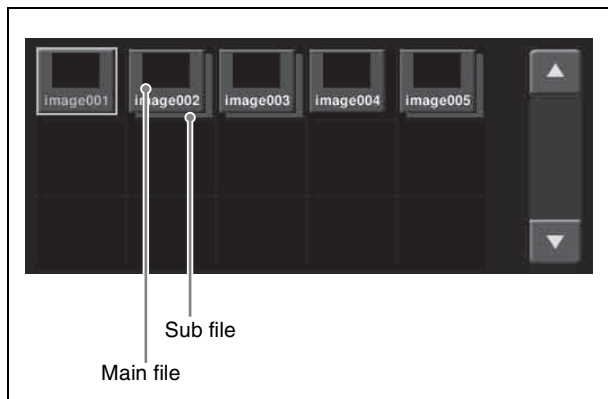
## Recalling a still image

To recall a still image file saved in memory using the thumbnails, and assign it to an FM output, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the Frame Memory >Still >Recall menu (2511).

When [Pair] is on, only pair files (each consisting of a main file and a sub file) are displayed.

When [Pair] is set to Off, both of single files and pair files are shown (see following figure).



- 2 In the frame memory selection area, select the frame memory to be assigned (☞ p. 106).
- 3 If [Direct Recall] is on, press it to turn it off.
- 4 Select the desired folder in the folder selection area.

By pressing [More] to switch the display, you can select from a maximum of 12 folders.

Thumbnails of the files within the selected folder appear.

- 5 Press the thumbnail of the still image you want to recall.
- 6 Press [Recall].

This recalls the still image file, which is assigned to the FM you selected in step 2.

### To recall in direct recall mode

Direct recall means that pressing a thumbnail immediately recalls the file.

In this mode, only the front thumbnail file is recalled.

- 1 In step 6 of “Recalling a still image” (☞ p. 108), instead of pressing [Recall], press [Direct Recall].
- 2 Press the thumbnail for the file you want to recall.

### To display the sub file in front

While direct recall mode is on, press [Sub Display], turning it on.

## To search by file name

- 1 Press [Find].

The Find window appears.



- 2 Press [Find].
- 3 Enter the string you want to search, and press [Enter].  
This starts the search, and the indicator lights. When the search ends, the found files are selected.
- 4 To move through the selected files, press the [< Prev] or [Next >] button.
- 5 Press outside the Find window on the menu screen.

## Image Output

There are two functions related to image output: the reposition function for moving the output image, and the lock function for fixing the output image.

### Moving the output image (reposition function)

For up to two channels of FM1 to FM8 (one from FM1, FM3, FM5, and FM7 and the other from FM2, FM4, FM6, and FM8), you can move the output image with respect to the screen. The area of the screen around the image that has been moved is filled with black.

There are two ways of carrying out this repositioning.

**Normal mode:** Movement in the horizontal direction in two-pixel increments.

**Black and white mode:** Movement in the horizontal direction in one-pixel increments, and for each pixel moved the color is inverted.

### Notes

- It is not possible to save an image moved with the reposition function directly to frame memory.
- If the frame memory save mode is set to “Save with ancillary data” on an HD system, then the reposition function cannot be used.

- 1 Open the Frame Memory >Reposition/Lock >Reposition menu (2531).

In this menu, you can also enable the frame memory V/K mode (☞ p. 106).

**2** In the frame memory selection area, select the FM output (☞ p. 106).

**3** In the <Reposition> group, select the movement mode.

**Normal:** Move in normal mode.

**Black&White:** Move in black & white mode.

**4** Set the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Position H	Horizontal movement <sup>a)</sup>
2	Position V	Vertical movement <sup>a)</sup>

a) ☞ p. 85.

The surroundings of the moved image on the screen are filled with black.

### To center the image

Press [Center] in the <Reposition> group.

### Fixing the output image selection (lock function)

For the output of each of FM1 to FM8, this function fixes the image at the current output. When this lock is enabled, even if the output is recalled in a snapshot or keyframe, the images output to FM1 to FM8 are preserved.

**1** Open the Frame Memory >Reposition/Lock >Lock menu (2532).

**2** In the frame memory selection area, select the FM output (☞ p. 106).

**3** Press [Lock], turning it on.

This fixes the currently selected frame memory output image.

To unlock, and press [Lock] again, turning it off.

## Continuously Capturing Still Images (Record)

You can continuously capture (freeze) a sequence of input video frames, and store the sequence of the still images over a specified time interval.

The name of each image recorded in this way consists of two character strings.

**First character string:** A common name assigned to all the still images captured in the same recording

operation (up to four characters). This string can be specified using a menu before carrying out the capture. The first string is automatically used as the clip name when the images are treated as a frame memory clip.

**Second character string:** A four-digit number (0000 or greater), which is incremented each time a still image is captured.

### Notes

When using the record function to continuously capture frames, it is not possible to use the mask function.

### Continuously freezing input images and writing to memory

**1** Open the Frame Memory >Still >Animation Record menu (2514).

**2** Select the desired frame memory (☞ p. 106).

**3** To use V/K mode, press [V/K Mode], turning it on.

**4** Press a button in the frame memory folder selection area to select the folder to hold the freeze image (☞ p. 106).

### Notes

The folder selected here is the destination folder for saving the freeze image. After step **5** that follows, it will not be possible to change the selected folder. An orange bar appears on the selection button for the destination folder.

**5** Press [Record Enable], turning it on.

The signals of frame memory source buses 1 and 2 are assigned to the pair of FMs selected in step **2**, and the recording function is now possible.

**6** Input the file name if required.

Press [File Name], and enter the first character string (up to four characters) of the file name in the keyboard window.

**7** Set the recording time if required.

Press [Duration], and enter the recording time as a timecode in the numeric keypad window.

If you set the recording time to 0, this uses all frame memory in which storing is possible for recording.

**8** Press [Record] to start recording.

If the recording time is set, recording stops once the time has elapsed.

9 Press [Stop] to stop recording.

Even if the recording time is set, you can still stop recording before the set time has elapsed.

## Recalling a Continuous Sequence of Still Images (Animation)

You can use a continuous sequence of images captured with the record function as keyframes to create an effect. By executing this effect you can recall the continuous sequence (animation).

### Notes

- For example, to create an effect using FM1, FM1 must be assigned to a user region.
- To execute the effect, you must assign the user region to which FM1 is assigned to a region selection button in the Flexi Pad.

For details, see [“Assigning Regions to Region Selection Buttons in the Flexi Pad” \(p. 220\)](#).

In the Frame Memory menu, effect creation follows the image file names. Of the characters in the file names, if files have the same characters except for the last three characters they are treated as an image file group, and the effect is created with the last three (numeric) characters in sequence.

### Notes

When creating the effect in pair mode (see [p. 103](#)), the files used must be main files and sub files with the same last three (numeric) characters in the file name.

To recall a continuous sequence of still images, create an effect in the user region with the still image files as a keyframe, and run the created effect.

### Notes

In 720P systems, you can continuously recall images using the frame memory in units of two frames only.

## Creating an effect with still image files as a keyframe

1 Open the Frame Memory >Still >Create Key Frame menu (2515).

A thumbnail appears for each group of files having the same characters, except for the last three characters, in the file name.

When [Pair] is on, only pair files (each consisting of a main file and a sub file) appear.

When [Pair] is off, both single files and pair files appear.

2 In the frame memory selection area, select the frame memory to be assigned (see [p. 106](#)).

The effect is created in the user region to which the selected frame memory is assigned.

3 Select the desired folder in the folder selection area.

By pressing [More] to switch the display, you can select from a maximum of 12 folders.

Thumbnails of the files within the selected folder appear.

4 Select the register number of the user region.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
5	Register	Effect register number

### Notes

Use the Flexi Pad to search for an open register for the user region.

For details, see [“Recalling a Register” \(p. 150\)](#).

5 Select the thumbnail of the files to be used for the keyframe.

6 If necessary, check the animation effect in the thumbnail display.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Viewer	Current frame position

7 Using the region selection buttons in the Flexi Pad, select the region to which the frame memory output was assigned (User1 to User8).

8 Carry out either of the following.

- To clear the effect register selected in step 4 and create a new effect, press [Create Key Frame].
- To add to the end of the effect register selected in step 4, press [Append Key Frame].

9 Check the message, then press [OK].

If there is an invalid condition for creating the effect, an error message appears.

For details about error messages, see [“Error Messages” \(p. 298\)](#).

The effect is created in the selected user region register.

## Notes

- The effect is built with the selected files, in increasing order of the last three characters of the file name. If you do not want to include some of these files in the effect, first delete or rename them.
- A maximum of 99 keyframes can be included in a single effect.

## Recalling a sequence of still images

Run the effect created in the foregoing procedure. The procedure for doing this is the same as for any other effect.


For details,  “Executing Effects” (p. 161).

---

# Frame Memory Clip Function

## What is a frame memory clip?


Movies can be read into frame memory, and recalled and played back. A movie held in frame memory is called a “frame memory clip.”

A frame memory clip can be named using up to four characters ( p. 109).

## Ancillary data

In a frame memory clip, in addition to the video image, you can also record and play back ancillary data which can be used as embedded audio.

To record the ancillary data, the frame memory saving mode in the Setup menu must be set to “save with ancillary data.”

For details,  “Saving a Frame Memory Clip with Ancillary Data” (p. 216).

## Notes

- With this setting, the saving mode for still images also changes to “save with ancillary data,” but when playing back a still image the ancillary data is never played.
- When you change the saving mode, the frame memory is initialized, and any existing recorded frame memory data is lost.

## Note on transferring ancillary data

Ancillary data is recorded when the frame memory saving mode is set to “save with ancillary data,” and can be saved to the local disk, removable disk, or other external devices, and recalled. However, the ancillary data can only be saved or recalled when all of the following conditions are met.

- The frame memory saving mode is set to “save with ancillary data.”
- Ancillary data is present in the saved or recalled frame memory file.
- The system signal format is the same as the signal format in the file.

When the frame memory saving mode is set to “save with ancillary data,” the following ancillary data status information is added to a frame memory clip.

- Disable:  
In this state the ancillary data is not played. This is the status when the [Ancillary Enable] button in the Frame Memory >Clip >Ancillary Enable menu (2525) is set to Off.
- Enable:  
In this state, ancillary data is present, and can be played back. This is the status when the [Ancillary Enable] button in the Frame Memory >Clip >Ancillary Enable menu (2525) is set to On. This is the status after a clip recording operation.

This status information is saved in a file, and is followed when the file is recalled.

## Frame memory clip settings

For frame memory clips, you can make the following settings using a menu or device control block.


- Start point
- Stop point
- Loop On/Off

The above settings can be saved in a snapshot register as snapshot attributes, and recalled.

---

# Frame Memory Clip Operations



## Notes

During frame memory clip playback ( p. 112) of the pair assigned to either of the target FM selection buttons, frame memory operations may not be performed properly. Carry out frame memory operations after stopping clip playback.

---

## Preparations for Operation

The preparations for using a frame memory clip (hereafter, a “clip”) are the same as for a still image operation.

For details,  “Preparations” (p. 103) and  “Selecting Outputs and Target Frame Memory” (p. 106).

# Recalling Clips

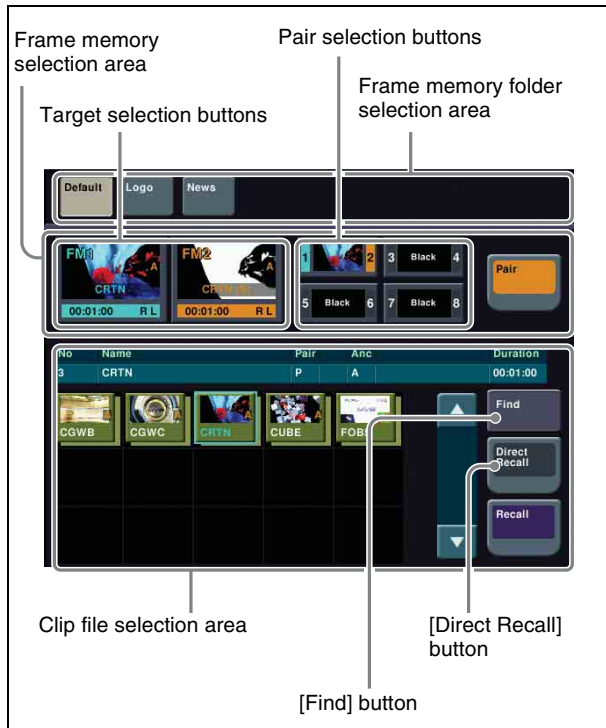
## Recalling a clip

You can recall a clip from each of frame memories 1 to 8.

- 1 Open the Frame Memory >Clip >Recall menu (2521).

When [Pair] is on, only pair files (each consisting of a main file and a sub file) are displayed.

When [Pair] is set to off, both single files and pair files are shown.



- 2 In the frame memory selection area, select the frame memory to be assigned (☞ p. 106).
- 3 If [Direct Recall] is on, press it to turn it off.
- 4 In the frame memory folder selection area, select the desired folder.

By pressing [More] to switch the display, you can select from a maximum of 12 folders.

- 5 Press the thumbnail of the clip you want to recall.
- 6 Press [Recall].

This recalls the clip file, which is assigned to the FM you selected in step 2.

In pair mode, if a clip is selected, the main file is output to FM1, and the sub file to FM2. In single mode, when only one of FM1 and FM2 is selected, the front file on the thumbnail is output.

## To recall in direct recall mode

Direct recall means that pressing a thumbnail immediately recalls the file.

In this mode, only the front thumbnail file is recalled.

- 1 In step 6 of "Recalling a clip" (☞ p. 112), instead of pressing [Recall], press [Direct Recall].
- 2 Press the thumbnail for the file you want to recall.

## To display the sub file in front

While direct recall mode is on, press [Sub Display], turning it on.

## To search the clip file by file name

Press the [Find] button. Perform the same operation as for still images (☞ p. 108).

# Clip Playback

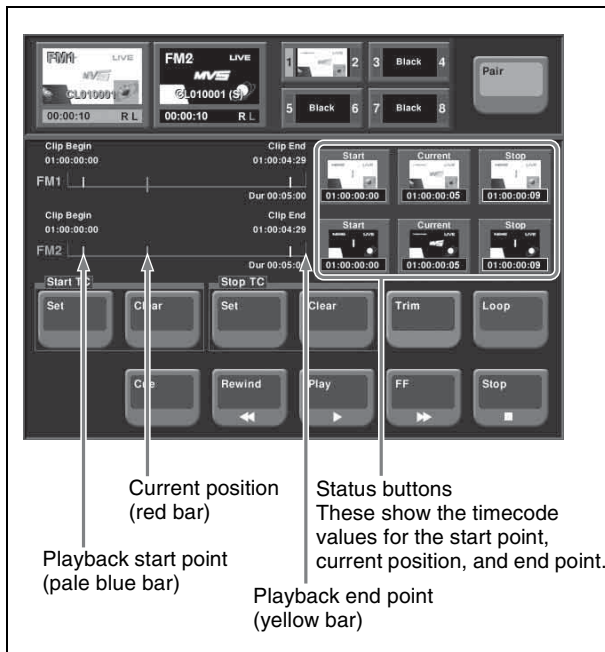
You can play a recalled clip by a menu operation or by using the device control block.

## Notes

With a pair file recalled, it is possible to set [Pair] to off and carry out a single file operation, but if you then set [Pair] to on again, the output of frame memory may be black. In such cases, it is necessary to recall the pair file once more.

## Playing a clip using the menu

- 1 Open the Frame Memory >Clip >Play menu (2522).  
The status of the clip shown in the current target FM selection buttons appears.



**2** When [Pair] is off, press a target FM selection button to select the target.

**3** To set loop playback, press [Loop], turning it on.

**4** Press [Play].

To stop playback, press [Stop].

#### To cue up

Press [Cue].

#### To play the image at the beginning of the clip (Clip Begin)

Press [Rewind].

#### To play the image at the end of the clip (Clip End)

Press [FF].

#### To specify the playback start point

To set the current position as the playback start point, press [Set] in the <Start TC> group. To set to any position, press the [Start] status button, and enter a timecode value from the numeric keypad window.

#### To specify the playback stop point

Start playback, press the [STOP] button to stop playback at the desired position, then press [Set] in the <Stop TC> group. To set to any position, press the [Stop] status button, and enter a timecode value from the numeric keypad window.

#### To change the current position

Press the [Current] status button, and enter a timecode value from the numeric keypad window.

#### To delete the parts of a clip file other than the playback part (trimming)

**1** Set the playback start point and stop point.

**2** Press [Trim].

**3** Check the message, then press [Yes].

#### Using the device control block to play back clips

##### Notes

A frame memory clip must first be recalled with a menu operation.

**1** Press the [DEV] button, and select the frame memory clip for playback (FM1 CLIP to FM8 CLIP).

If the pair mode is on, both main and subsidiary FMs light.

**2** Press the [PLAY] button, turning it on.

To stop playback, press [STOP] or any of the [SHTL], [JOG], [CUE], [REW], [FF], and [ALL STOP] buttons.

*For details about the buttons in the device control block, see “Device Control Block” (p. 26) and “Buttons used when the VTR/disk recorder/frame memory operation mode is enabled” (p. 135).*

#### To specify the playback start point

To make the current position the playback start point, press the [START TC] button.

#### To specify the playback stop point

Start playback, press the [STOP] button to stop playback at the desired position, then press the [STOP TC] button.

#### To apply a loop to a frame memory clip

Press the [FM LOOP] button.

#### To carry out the variable speed playback

Press any of the [SHTL], [JOG], and [VAR] buttons, then turn the Z-ring. The image changes in the forward direction when you turn the Z-ring clockwise, and in the reverse direction when you turn it counterclockwise.

**When you pressed the [JOG] button:** Playback is at a speed corresponding to the turning speed of the Z-ring.

**When you pressed the [SHTL] button:** Playback is at a speed corresponding to the rotation angle of the Z-ring.

**When you pressed the [VAR] button:** Playback is at a speed corresponding to the rotation angle of the Z-ring, in the range -1 to +3 times normal speed.

---

## Clip Creation

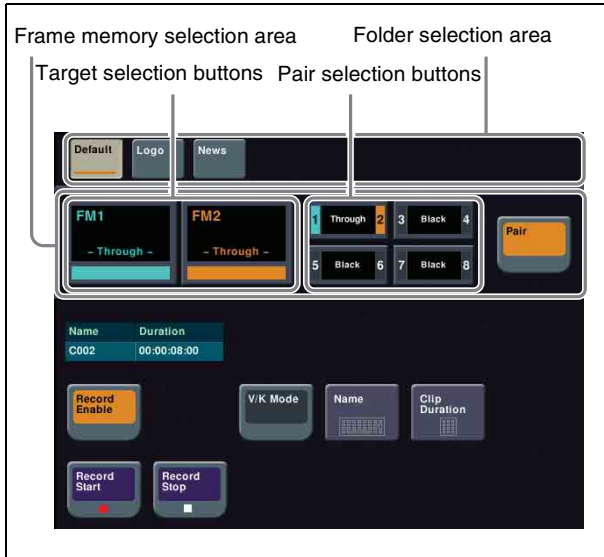
You save a movie as a clip.

### Notes

If the number of frame memory clips exceeds 100 single files (50 pair files), an error appears.

### Using the menu to record clips

- 1 Open the Frame Memory >Clip >Record menu (2523).



- 2 When [Pair] is off, press a target FM selection button to select the target.
- 3 In the folder selection area, select the folder containing the clip to be recorded.
- 4 Press [Record Enable], turning it on.
- 5 To set the clip name, press [Name].  
Input the clip name, and press [Enter].
- 6 To start recording, press [Record Start].
- 7 To end recording, press [Record Stop].

### To set the clip duration

Press [Clip Duration], enter a timecode value or number of frames, and press [Enter].

---

## Creating and Handling Frame Memory Folders

You can create, rename, and delete frame memory folders.

### Creating a new folder

- 1 Open the Frame Memory >Folder menu (2551).
- 2 Select [New].
- 3 Enter a folder name and press [Enter].

### Changing the folder name

- 1 Select the folder in the Frame Memory >Folder menu (2551).
- 2 Press [Rename].
- 3 Enter the new folder name and press [Enter].

### Notes

The following names cannot be used for folders:  
Default, Flash1, Flash2

CON, PRN, AUX, CLOCK\$, NUL, COM0, COM1, COM2, COM3, COM4, COM5, COM6, COM7, COM8, COM9  
LPT0, LPT1, LPT2, LPT3, LPT4, LPT5, LPT6, LPT7, LPT8, LPT9

### Deleting a folder

- 1 Select the folder in the Frame Memory >Folder menu (2551).  
To select all folders, press [All].
- 2 Press [Delete].
- 3 Check the message, then press [Yes].

### Notes

The “Default” folder cannot be deleted.

---

## Clip Output

As with still image operation, you can use the reposition and lock functions.

For details about the method of operation, see [“Image Output” \(p. 108\)](#).

## Recording and Playback of Ancillary Data

### Preparations

To record ancillary data, it is first necessary in the Setup menu to select “save with ancillary data” as the frame memory saving mode.

For details, [☞ “Saving a Frame Memory Clip with Ancillary Data” \(p. 216\)](#).

### Recording ancillary data

To record in a frame memory clip, use the Frame Memory >Clip >Record menu (2523).

For details about the method of operation, [☞ “Clip Creation” \(p. 114\)](#).

### To check ancillary data during recording

If the ancillary data to be recorded is embedded audio, by first setting the signal output to through mode, you can listen while recording.

For details about the through mode setting, [☞ “Making Vertical Blanking Interval Adjustment and Through Mode Settings” \(p. 247\)](#).

#### Notes

When [Freeze Enable] or [Record Enable] is pressed, turning them on/off, noise may occur. Also, with these buttons in the on state, selecting the signal on the frame memory source bus may result in noise.

### Playing back ancillary data

You can play ancillary data recorded in a frame memory clip by normal playback or an auto transition of the clip transition.

To play the ancillary data, you must use the following procedure to enable playback of the ancillary data.

For details about playback operations, [☞ “Clip Playback” \(p. 112\)](#).

#### Notes

- After recording a frame memory clip, the ancillary data state is enabled for playback.
- To play back the clip, set the signal output to through mode.

For details about the through mode setting, [☞ “Making Vertical Blanking Interval Adjustment and Through Mode Settings” \(p. 247\)](#).

- When the reposition function is on, ancillary data cannot be played back.
- Switching the reposition function between on and off may cause noise.

- Only the AUX bus and edit preview bus can output ancillary data.
- Carrying out file operations on a frame memory clip may result in the ancillary data being discontinuous, or in noise occurring. However, if the first or last frame of the clip is deleted, noise will not occur.
- The audio sampling frequency is always 48 kHz.
- When you play back the recorded embedded audio, depending on the device to be used, noise may occur at the playback start point and end point. For details about devices that are used for playback, contact your Sony service or sales representative.

- 1 Open the Frame Memory >Clip >Ancillary Enable menu (2525).
- 2 Select the frame memory folder and file to be played back.
- 3 Press [Ancillary Enable], turning it on.

## Clip Transition Operations

Linked to a mix (dissolve) or wipe transition, a frame memory clip (movie) is played back.

The following restrictions apply to the use of a clip transition.

- Key frame capture is not possible.
- It is not possible to apply a pattern limit.
- Transitions executed in two strokes, such as a preset color mix with the stroke mode set to Normal, or a DME wipe with a picture-in-picture pattern, will not execute correctly.
- It is not possible to vary the transition rate of a clip transition.
- Transition preview cannot be used.
- No instantaneous state of a clip transition can be saved as a snapshot.
- When recalling a snapshot including a clip transition during execution of another clip transition, the follow-up transition does not operate properly. Be sure to complete the transition before recalling a snapshot.

#### Notes

When a clip transition is selected as the transition type, if one of the wipe direction selection buttons in the transition control block is lit, it indicates the direction of clip playback.

## Setting a clip transition

This section describes a clip transition using FM1&2 Clip on the M/E-1 bank as an example.

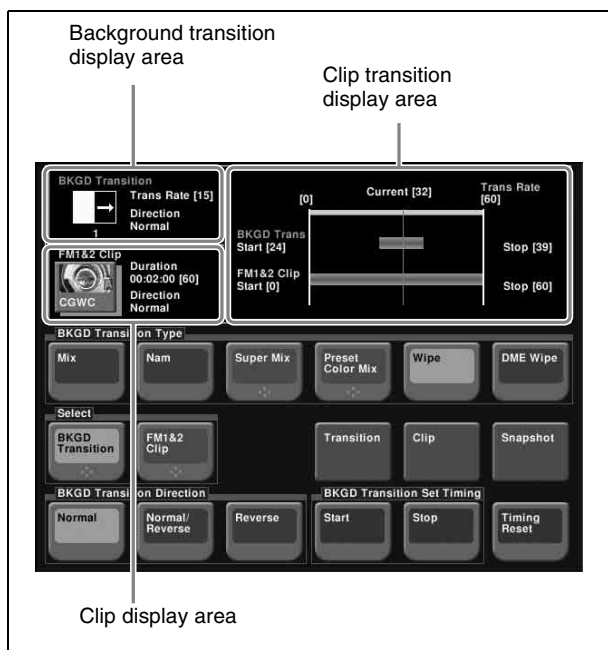
### Notes

To use a clip transition effectively, the image from the frame memory clip being played back during the clip transition should be applied to the M/E-1 program output. For example, inserting a key using frame memory output 1 and frame memory output 2.

**1** In the M/E-1 >Misc >Transition menu (1171), and select “FM1&2 Clip” in the <Transition Type> group.

**2** Press [Clip Transition].

The Clip Transition menu (1176) appears.



**3** Press [Clip].

The status area shows a list of clips.

**4** Select the clip to use in the clip transition.

**5** Return to the Clip Transition menu, and in the <BKGD Transition Type> group, select the background transition type.

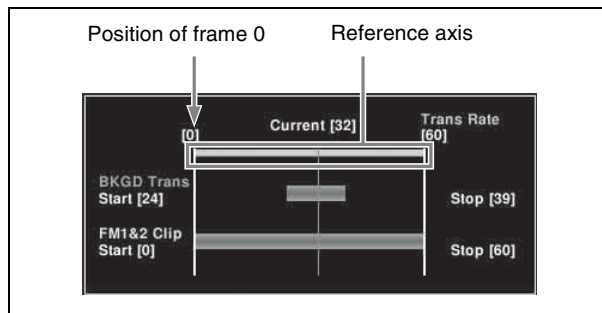
### Notes

For details about the background transition selected here, see the various adjustments in the M/E-1 >Misc >Transition menu.

**6** In the <Select> group, press [BKGD Transition].

**7** Use either of the following methods to set the background transition start point independently of the clip playback timing.

- Move the fader lever to the desired position, and in the <BKGD Transition Set Timing> group, press [Start].
- Set the number of frames in the [BKGD Trans Start] parameter. (The left end of the reference axis (see following figure) is the position of frame 0.)



**8** Using either of the following methods, set the end point of the background transition.

- Move the fader lever to the desired position, and in the <BKGD Transition Set Timing> group, press [Stop].
- Set the number of frames in the [BKGD Trans Stop] parameter.

**9** If [Wipe] or [DME Wipe] is selected in the <BKGD Transition Type> group, in the <BKGD Transition Direction> group, select the background transition direction.

**10** In the <Select> group, press [FM1&2 Clip].

**11** Using either of the following methods, set the start point of the clip.

- Move the fader lever to the desired start point, and in the <Clip Transition Set Timing> group, press [Start].
- Set the number of frames in the [Clip Start] parameter. (The left end of the reference axis (see previous figure) is the position of frame 0.)

### Notes

It is not possible to set the clip end point.

**12** In the <Clip Transition Direction> group, select the playback direction of the clip.

### To reset the start point and end point

Press [Timing Reset].

The background transition start point and end point, and the clip start point are all reset.

# Image Data Management

You can carry out the following operations on the files that were created when images were saved.

- Pair File Processing (🔗 p. 117)
- Moving Files (🔗 p. 117)
- Deleting Files (🔗 p. 117)
- Renaming Files (🔗 p. 118)

## Notes

During frame memory clip playback (🔗 p. 112) of the pair assigned to either of the target FM selection buttons, frame memory operations may not be performed properly. Carry out frame memory operations after stopping clip playback.

## Pair File Processing

You can create a pair file from two single files. In the reverse direction, you can split a pair file into two single files.

**Couple:** You can create a pair file from two single still image files or clip files.

**Separate:** You can also separate a pair file into two single still image files or clip files.

## Creating a pair file from two single files

### Notes

Carrying out the following operation automatically switches [Pair] to on.

This section describes FM1 and FM2 as an example.

- 1 In the Frame Memory >Still >Recall menu (2511) or Frame Memory >Clip >Recall menu (2521), recall the two single files you want to convert to a pair file, to FM1 and FM2.
- 2 Open the Frame Memory >File >Pair Recombination menu (2541).
- 3 Press [Couple].

## Splitting a pair file into two single files

### Notes

Carrying out the following operation automatically switches [Pair] to off.

This section describes FM1 and FM2 as an example.

- 1 In the Frame Memory >Still >Recall menu (2511) or Frame Memory >Clip >Recall menu (2521), recall the pair file.
- 2 Select the folder in which the file to be moved is stored.
- 3 Open the Frame Memory >File >Pair Recombination menu (2541).
- 4 Press [Separate].

## Moving Files

- 1 Open the Frame Memory >File >Move menu (2544).  
The status area shows files to be moved in the upper area, and destination files in the lower area.
- 2 Select the folder and file to be moved.
- 3 Select the destination folder and file.
- 4 Press [Move].

## Deleting Files

- 1 Open the Frame Memory >File >Delete menu (2545).  
In the status area, regardless of whether pair mode is on or off, all of the saved files appear as thumbnails.
- 2 Select the folder which contains the file to be deleted.
- 3 Select the file to be deleted.  
To select all folders, press [Select All], turning it on. When a clip thumbnail is selected, the still image files making up the clip are also selected for deletion.
- 4 If necessary, check the contents of the frame memory clip in the thumbnail display.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Viewer	For a movie, the current frame position. For a still image, no effect.

- 5 Press [Delete].
- 6 Check the message, then press [Yes].

---

## Renaming Files

- 1 Open the Frame Memory >File >Rename menu (2546).

In the status area, regardless of whether pair mode is on or off, all of the saved files appear as thumbnails.

- 2 Select the file to be renamed.
- 3 If necessary, check the contents of the frame memory clip in the thumbnail display.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Viewer	For a movie, the current frame position. For a still image, no effect.

- 4 Press [Rename].
- 5 Enter the new file name and press [Enter].

### Notes

The following names cannot be used:  
CON, PRN, AUX, CLOCK\$, NUL, COM0, COM1, COM2, COM3, COM4, COM5, COM6, COM7, COM8, COM9  
LPT0, LPT1, LPT2, LPT3, LPT4, LPT5, LPT6, LPT7, LPT8, LPT9

---

## Using an External HDD

You can connect an HDD to the USB port of the switcher processor, to carry out the following operations.

**Format:** Format the HDD.

**Backup:** Batch save files from frame memory to the HDD.

**Restore:** Restore frame memory from files saved on the HDD.

Since image data saved in memory is lost when the system is powered off, using an external HDD allows required data to be preserved.

### Notes

- Only one HDD can be connected to a single switcher processor.
- While the HDD is being accessed, frame memory operations are not possible. This applies to all operations for frame memory, including frame memory recall by a snapshot operation.
- During frame memory clip playback (🔍 p. 112) of the pair assigned to either of the target FM selection buttons, frame memory operations may not be performed

properly.

Carry out frame memory operations after stopping clip playback.

*For details about HDDs that can be connected, contact your Sony service or sales representative.*

---

## HDD Formatting

When you connect an HDD for the first time, it is necessary to format the HDD. This partitions the HDD, creating 15 logical areas (FMHDD1 to FMHDD15).

- 1 Open the Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Format menu (2561).

### To get the HDD information

Press [Refresh Status].

The Device item shows the product information for the HDD.

- 2 Press [Format].

### Notes

Carrying out formatting erases any existing data on the HDD.

- 3 Check the message, then press [Yes].

HDD formatting starts.

- 4 Check the message, then press [OK].

---

## Saving Files

You can save all of the files from frame memory to the external HDD.

### Notes

When performing this operation for the first time, format the HDD beforehand (🔍 p. 118).

- 1 Open the Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore menu (2562).

For each partition, a list of the directory names and number of files appears.

### To get the HDD information

Press [Refresh Status].

The Device item shows the product information for the HDD, and the names of directories.

- 2 Select a logical drive (FMHDD1 to FMHDD15).

**3** In the <Backup> group, perform one of the following.

- To replace the existing data, press [Replace].
- To save in addition to the existing data, press [Append].

#### Notes

When you execute [Replace], all of the saved files in the logical drive are erased immediately before the saving operations.

**4** Check the message, then press [Yes].

This starts the file saving operation. If there is no directory, a directory is automatically created, and the files are saved within it.

**5** Check the message, then press [OK].

#### To rename a directory

Select a directory in the list, and press [Rename].

In the keyboard window, enter the new directory name, and press [Enter]. The name of a directory is limited to eight characters.

#### Notes

The following names cannot be used:

CON, PRN, AUX, CLOCK\$, NUL, COM0, COM1, COM2, COM3, COM4, COM5, COM6, COM7, COM8, COM9  
LPT0, LPT1, LPT2, LPT3, LPT4, LPT5, LPT6, LPT7, LPT8, LPT9

## Recalling Files

You can recall all of the saved files on the HDD into frame memory.

**1** Carry out steps **1** and **2** of “Saving Files” (🔗 p. 118).

#### Notes

It is not possible to select a partition (FMHDD1 to FMHDD15) of an HDD in which no file is saved.

**2** In the <Restore> group, perform one of the following.

- To replace the existing data with the recalled data, press [Replace].
- To add the recalled data to the existing data, press [Append].

#### Notes

When you execute [Replace], any existing data in frame memory is lost immediately before the recalling operations.

**3** Check the message, then press [Yes].

This starts the file recall operation.

**4** Check the message, then press [OK].

## Managing Images Using a DDR/VTR

### Using a DDR/VTR for High-speed Backup and Restoring

You can save all files currently held in frame memory as a single backup data set, by high-speed recording on video tape or other medium.

To restore the folder structure, it is necessary to save the automatically generated file list (of file name, length of clip, and so on) in memory.

#### Notes

At the beginning of this backup data a red or blue image is automatically inserted when the data is created. Do not delete this image, as it is required for restoring the data.

### High-speed recording of backup data to DDR or VTR

#### Notes

Before starting the backup, it is necessary to select the FM output to record on an AUX bus, for example, and input the AUX output to the DDR/VTR.

**1** Open the Frame Memory >External Device >Backup to DDR/VTR menu (2564).

**2** To save with ancillary data, output the frame memory output signal to the AUX bus.

**3** Press [Backup Enable], turning it on.

**4** Press [Backup Start].

**5** Start recording on the external device, and immediately after that press [Yes].

This starts the backup, and when completed a message appears.

**6** Stop the recording on the external device, and press the [OK] button.

**7** To save the file list in memory, press [File >File Name Data].

The File >Frame Mem >File Name Data menu (7153) appears.

The name of the file that is saved is fixed (FM\_Bkup).

For details, see “[Overview of File Operations](#)” (p. 200).

## Restoring backup data from DDR or VTR

### Notes

Before starting the restore operation, it is necessary to select the DDR/VTR output on the FM input bus.

**1** Open the Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR menu (2565).

**2** Press [File >File Name Data], to read the file list from the File >Frame Mem >File Name Data menu (7153).

For details, see “[Overview of File Operations](#)” (p. 200).

**3** To restore the ancillary data, select any of FM1, FM3, and FM5.

**4** Press [Restore Enable], turning it on.

**5** In the <Restore Type> group, select either of the following.

**Replace:** Replace the existing frame memory data.

**Append:** Add to the existing frame memory data.

**6** Press [Restore Start].

**7** Start playback on the external device, and immediately after that press [Yes].

### Notes

Make sure that the red or blue image inserted at the beginning when the backup was made is included. If this image is not found, the clip or still image will not be played back correctly.

This starts the restore operation, and when completed a message appears.

**8** Stop the playback on the external device, and press the [OK] button.

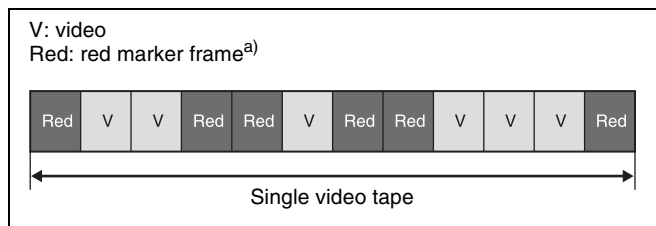
## Extracting Images from a Video Tape

By recording a clip or still image stored on a video tape as a single clip (single file) under certain rules, you can automatically extract an image from the clip, and save as a separate frame memory file.

### Relation between recorded state of video tape and files after extraction

The extraction is carried out according to the following rules.

#### Example 1: When only video signal clips and a still images are recorded (single files)

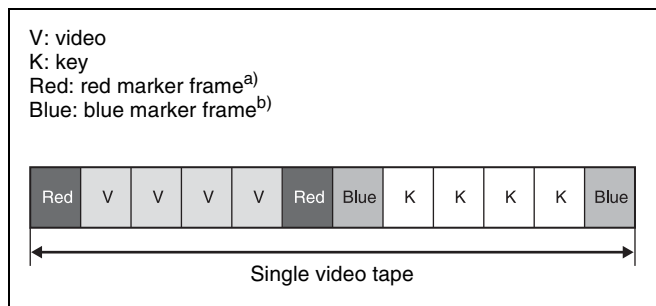


Result of extraction:

Each section surrounded by red marker frames is extracted as a clip (main file). If the red markers surround a single frame, then it is extracted as a still image.

In the case above, two clip files (main files) and one still image file are extracted.

#### Example 2: When a video signal clip is followed by a key signal clip with the same number of frames (pair file)



Result of extraction:

The section surrounded by red marker frames is extracted as the main file, and the section surrounded by blue marker frames is extracted as the sub file.

In the case above, one clip file (pair file) is extracted.

a) A red marker frame is a monochrome frame with the RGB signal levels at 100%, 0%, 0% respectively.

b) A blue marker frame is a monochrome frame with the RGB signal levels at 0%, 0%, 100% respectively.

## Notes

For extraction as a pair file, the main file and sub file must have the same number of frames.

- 1 In the Frame Memory >Clip >Record menu (2523), record the tape image as a clip ([☞ p. 114](#)).
- 2 Open the Frame Memory >File >Auto Extraction menu (2542).
- 3 Select a clip (single file) recorded from the tape.
- 4 Press [Extraction Start].
- 5 Check the message, then press [Yes].

This starts the extraction, analyzes the currently selected single clip, and automatically extracts a movie (Clip) or still image (Still). When there is key data, a pair file is created.

### To check the details of the images (still image/clip)

Set and check the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	No	File number
3	Viewer	Timecode for selected image

# Color Backgrounds, Copy and Swap, and Other Settings

## Chapter

# 8

## Color Background

The dedicated generators generate color signals, and these can be used as color backgrounds in video effects.

### Color background selection

There are two color backgrounds, color background 1 and color background 2, which you use by assigning to cross-point buttons.

### Color mix

The color generators can output the result of combining two colors (color 1 and color 2).

Using a pattern from a dedicated pattern generator, color 1 and color 2 can be combined in the boundary region, forming a color gradation. This is referred to as “color mix.” You can also apply modifiers to the selected pattern.

When the color mix function is not used, the result is a flat color, and color 1 is always output.

You carry out color background settings in the Color Bkgd menu.

This section describes settings for color background 1 as an example.

## Basic Color Background Setting Operations

### Setting a single-color matte (Flat Color)

If you are not using the color mix function to combine two colors, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the Color Bkgd >Color Bkgd1 menu (2210), press [Flat Color] in the <Matte> group, turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Luminance	Luminance
2	Saturation	Saturation

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Hue	Hue

### Setting a color mix

To combine color 1 and color 2, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the Color Bkgd >Color Bkgd1 menu (2210), press [Mix Color] in the <Matte> group, turning it on.
- 2 Set the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Size	Pattern size
2	Soft	Edge softness of the pattern
5	Pattern	Pattern number <sup>a)</sup>

a) The patterns are the same as for a wipe (☞ “Wipe Pattern List” (p. 264)).

For the pattern selection, you can also press [Mix Pattern Select] in the Color Bkgd1 menu, then use the Mix Ptn Select menu (2210.1).

Press the desired pattern (1 to 24) to select it, and set the Size and Soft parameters.

- 3 To adjust colors 1 and 2, turn on [Color1] or [Color2] respectively, then adjust the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Luminance	Luminance
2	Saturation	Saturation
3	Hue	Hue

- 4 If required, set the pattern modifiers.

### When turning [Position] on and setting the pattern position

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Position H	Horizontal position <sup>a)</sup>
2	Position V	Vertical position <sup>a)</sup>

a) ☞ p. 85.

### When turning [Multi] on and using replications of the same pattern

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	H Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern horizontally
2	V Multi	Number of repetitions of pattern vertically
3	Invert Type	Replication layout <sup>a)</sup>

a) [p. 87](#).

### When turning [Aspect] on and setting the aspect ratio of the pattern

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Aspect	Aspect ratio <sup>a)</sup>

a) [p. 86](#).

### When turning [Pairing] on and making a wipe pattern like a Venetian blind

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Width	Width

### When turning [Angle] on in the <Rotation> group and slanting the pattern

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Angle	Rotation angle of pattern <sup>a)</sup>

a) [p. 86](#).

### When turning [Speed] on in the <Rotation> group and rotating the pattern at a constant rate

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Speed	Rotation speed of pattern <sup>a)</sup>

a) [p. 86](#).

### When selecting [H] (horizontal) or [V] (vertical) in the <Modulation> group and applying waviness to the pattern

#### Notes

When using 1080PsF mode in an HD system, the modulation function is not available.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Amplitude	Amplitude of modulation
2	Frequency	Frequency of modulation
3	Speed	Speed of waves <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Negative values create waves in the down, left, and counterclockwise directions.</li> <li>Positive values create waves in the up, right, and clockwise directions.</li> </ul>

**5** To interchange color 1 and color 2, press the [Color Invert] button, turning it on.

## Copy and Swap

### Overview of Copy and Swap

You can copy or swap the settings among the switcher banks or between keyers.

The following settings can be copied or swapped.

- Overall settings for the M/E and PGM/PST banks
- Keyer settings
- Wipe settings in a transition control block
- Independent key wipe settings in a transition control block
- DME wipe settings in a transition control block
- Independent key DME wipe settings in a transition control block
- Matte color settings (color 1, color 2, and how to compose them)
- Color settings
- Format converter input settings (copy only)
- Format converter output settings (copy only)

You can carry out keyer copy operations by a simple button operation.

### M/E copy and M/E swap

You can copy and swap the overall bank settings among the switcher banks.

Target bank	Target data
M/E-1 PGM/PST	Bank settings excluding the following data items: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Setup data</li> <li>• Snapshots</li> <li>• Keyframe effects</li> <li>• Key snapshots</li> <li>• Key memory</li> </ul>

### Keyer copy and keyer swap

You can carry out copy and swap operations among the following keyers.

Target bank	Target keyer	Target data
M/E-1	Keys 1 to 4	Key settings excluding the following data items: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Setup data</li> <li>• Key snapshots</li> <li>• Key memory</li> </ul>
PGM/PST	Downstream keys 1 to 4	

## Wipe copy and wipe swap

You can copy and swap the wipe settings among the banks as follows.

Target bank	Target data
M/E -1 PGM/PST	Wipe settings. However, it is not possible to carry out copy or swap involving independent key transition wipe settings.

## Wipe copy and wipe swap in the independent key transition control block

You can copy and swap the wipe settings among the following keys.

Target bank	Target key	Target data
M/E -1	Keys 1 to 4	Wipe settings in the independent key transition control block.
PGM/PST	Downstream keys 1 to 4	

## DME wipe copy and DME wipe swap

You can copy and swap the DME wipe settings among the banks as follows.

Target bank	Target data
M/E -1 PGM/PST	DME wipe settings. However, it is not possible to carry out copy or swap involving independent key transition DME wipe settings.

## DME wipe copy and DME wipe swap in the independent key transition control block

You can copy and swap the DME wipe settings among the following keys.

Target bank	Target key	Target data
M/E -1	Keys 1 to 2	DME wipe settings in the independent key transition control block.
PGM/PST	Downstream keys 1 to 2	

## Matte data copy and swap

You can copy or swap the matte data among the following color generators.

Target bank	Target keyer and data
M/E-1 PGM/PST	Keys 1 to 4 and downstream keys 1 to 4 in each bank • Matte data for key fill • Matte data for key edge fill <sup>a)</sup>
	Matte data for wipe border edge
Color background	• Matte data for color background 1 • Matte data for color background 2

a) Only among keyers that support resizer and key edge.

## Color data copy and swap

You can copy or swap the color data among the following color generators.

Target bank	Target keyer and data
M/E -1 PGM/PST	Keys 1 to 4 and downstream keys 1 to 4 in each block • Colors 1 and 2 for key fill • Colors 1 and 2 for key edge fill <sup>a)</sup> • “Zabton” color data <sup>a)</sup>
	Colors 1 and 2 for wipe border
	Color data for preset color mix
Color background	• Colors 1 and 2 for color background 1 • Colors 1 and 2 for color background 2

a) Only among keyers that support resizer and key edge.

## Copying format converter data

You can copy data between format converter inputs. Similarly, you can copy format converter data between outputs.

### Notes

The copy source and destination data must be in the same signal format.

## Copy and Swap Operations

### Copy and Swap Using Menus

Copy and swap operations are performed using the Copy/Swap menu.

Select the following targets for operation in the Copy/Swap >Copy/Swap menu. (For format converter operations, use the Copy/Swap >Copy menu.)

This section describes copy and swap operations for wipe data as an example.

- M/E: Copying and swapping M/E data
- Key: Copying and swapping key data
- Wipe: Copying and swapping wipe data
- DME Wipe: Copying and swapping DME wipe data
- Matte: Copying and swapping matte data
- Color: Copying and swapping color data
- Format Converter: Copying format converter data

For an overview of copy and swap operations, see [“Overview of Copy and Swap” \(p. 123\)](#).

### Copy and swap menu operations

To copy or swap wipe data, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the Copy/Swap >Copy/Swap >Wipe menu (3113).

The status area shows lists for the copy/swap source on the left, and the copy/swap destination on the right.

- 2 In the <Data Select> group, select either of the following.

**Wipe:** Applies operations to wipes in the transition control block.

**Key Wipe:** Applies operations to wipes in the independent key transition control block.

- 3 Select the copy/swap source data and copy/swap destination data ([☞ p. 123](#)).
- 4 Press [Copy] to copy, or press [Swap] to swap.

### To undo a copy or swap

Press [Undo] to return to the state before the copy or swap was carried out.

## Copying using button operations

You can copy keyer data using the key delegation buttons in the transition control block.

### Basic button operation

The basic button operation is to hold down the copy source button, then press the destination button.

You can undo the last operation using [Undo] in the menu ([☞ p. 125](#)).

### To copy from M/E-1 key 1 to PGM/PST key 2

While holding down the [KEY1] transition control block button in the M/E-1 bank, press the [DSK2] transition control block button in the PGM/PST bank.

---

## Misc Menu Operations

In the Misc menu, you can carry out the following operations.

- Enabling or disabling control from an external device.
- Enabling or disabling side flags for each background bus of each of the switcher banks.

*For details about the side flag function, [☞ “Side Flags” \(p. 128\)](#).*

- Switching the safe title function on or off for each switcher output.
- Displaying the transition rate, independent key transition rate, and fade-to-black transition rate for each of the switcher banks, and changing the settings.

---

## Port Settings for Control from an External Device

### Enabling or disabling control from an external device

- 1 Open the Misc >Enable >Port Enable menu (3211).

The status area shows the setting status of each of the following ports.

- Switcher Remote S1 to Remote S2 ports (RS-422A, D-sub 9-pin)
- Switcher GPI port (parallel, 25-pin)

- 2 In the <Switcher> group, press on the name of the port for which you want to disable control from an external device, turning it off.

To re-enable control for the port, press on its name again.

#### Notes

For AUX bus operations from the Remote S1 to Remote S2 ports of the switcher, the setting (Enable/Disable/Manual) in the Setup menu takes precedence. The settings made in the Port Enable menu only apply when the setting is set to “Manual.”

*For details, [☞ “Enabling or Disabling AUX Bus Control” \(p. 256\)](#).*

---

## Safe Title Settings

### Turning the safe title function on/off

- 1 Open the Misc >Safe Title menu (3221).

- 2 Select the signal to set.

You can select from Outputs 1 to 12.

#### Notes

- Outputs 13 to 32 cannot be set.
- It is not possible to change the setting for the output for which the safe title is set off in a Setup menu.
- The safe title function cannot be used for output signals for which through mode is set to Enable in a Setup menu.

*For details, [☞ “Signal Output Settings” \(p. 246\)](#).*

- 3 Press [Safe Title], turning it on or off.

## Displaying a List of Transition Rates and Changing the Settings

In the Misc >Transition >Key/ME/FTB menu (3231), for each bank you can display a list of the M/E (or PGM/PST) transition rates and independent key (or DSK) transition rates, and change the settings.

These settings are linked to the other transition rate setting operations.

You can also display and set the fade-to-black transition rate.

### Menu display

The display of the independent key transition rate in the Misc >Transition Key/ME/FTB menu (3231) depends on the selection in the <Key Transition> group of the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Transition menu (7334) for each of the switcher banks.

**When [Same] (On direction and Off direction settings are the same) is selected in the <Key Transition> group:** Only “Key” (or “DSK” in the PGM/PST bank) appears.

**When [Independ] (On direction and Off direction settings are independent) is selected in the <Key Transition> group:** “Key(On)” and “Key(Off)” each appear. In the PGM/PST bank, “DSK(On)” and “DSK(Off)” appear.

For details, see “Settings Relating to Video Switching” (p. 250).

### Setting the transition rate

#### To set the M/E transition rate

For example, to make the settings for the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the status area if the Misc >Transition Key/ME/FTB menu (3231), press [M/E-1].
- 2 In the <Transition Rate> group, press [Transition].
- 3 Set the number of frames.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Transition Rate	Transition rate

#### Notes

When a clip transition is selected as the transition type, it is not possible to change the transition rate in this menu.

#### To set the independent key transition rate

For example, to make the settings for keys 1 to 4 in the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the status area if the Misc >Transition >Key/ME/FTB menu (3231), press [M/E-1].
- 2 In the <Transition Rate> group, press [Key K1-K4]. To insert (on) or remove (off) keys individually, press [Key(On) K1-K4] or [Key(Off) K1-K4].
- 3 Set the number of frames.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Key1 Trans Rate	Key 1 transition rate
2	Key2 Trans Rate	Key 2 transition rate
3	Key3 Trans Rate	Key 3 transition rate
4	Key4 Trans Rate	Key 4 transition rate

### Setting the fade-to-black transition rate

- 1 In the Misc >Transition >Key/ME/FTB menu (3231), press [FTB].
- 2 Set the number of frames.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Transition Rate	Transition rate

## AUX Menu Operations

### AUX Bus Settings

In the AUX menu, you can make color corrector settings for an AUX bus.

#### Setting the AUX bus color corrector

In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Key/Wipe/FM/CCR >CCR menu (7335.3), you can make settings for an AUX bus for which color correction is enabled.

- 1 In the Aux >Aux Bus menu (2311), select the AUX bus to which the settings apply.
- 2 In the <CCR> group, press [CCR], turning it on.
- 3 Make the following settings, as required.

**To set video processes:** Turn on [Video Process] in the <Video Process> group.

**To set primary color correction:** Turn on [Primary CCR] in the <Primary CCR> group, and select the item to set in the <Primary CCR Adjust> group.

**To set an RGB clip:** Turn on [RGB Clip] in the <RGB Clip> group, and select the item to set in the <RGB Clip Adjust> group.

#### 4 Set the parameters.

For details about the parameters, see “Configuring the Color Corrector” (p. 242).

#### To disable color correction

In the <CCR> group, press [CCR], turning it off.

#### To return the parameters to their default settings

Press [Unity].

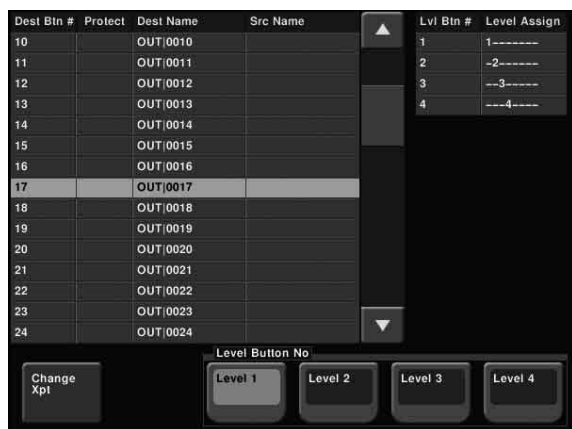
## Router Control Menu Operations

You can control router switching in the Router Control menu.

### Checking the List of Inputs for Each Destination

Open the Router >Router Control >Router Control menu (5111).

A list of destination assignments appears on the left side of the status area.



If in the Engineering Setup >Panel >Router Remote >RTR Mode Setting menu (7323.1), [Inhibit] is set to On for a destination, the corresponding line appears in gray. Also, if [PROT] (protect) is set to ON for a source, using a BKS-R3xxx or R1xxx series Router remote control, a padlock icon appears.

The right side of the status area shows the level assignment status to the Level 1 to Level 4 buttons.

### Selecting the level

In the <Level Button No> group at the lower right in the above illustration, press the level for switching.

### Switching the Source for Each Destination

You can switch the source for each destination with a menu operation.

For the assignment of destinations and sources to buttons, use the Engineering Setup >Panel >Router Remote >RTR Mode Setting menu (7323.1).

For details, see “Router Remote Control Settings” (p. 226).

- 1 In the Router >Router Control >Router Control menu (5111), press [Change Xpt].

The Change Xpt menu (5111.1) appears.

Destination Select buttons appear in groups of 16.

Source Select buttons appear by group (maximum 24 buttons).

- 2 Press one of the Destination Select buttons, to select the destination for which you want to switch the source.

#### To change the group

Press one of the [1-16], [17-32], [33-48], and [49-64] buttons.

- 3 Press one of the Source Select buttons, to select the source you want to switch.

#### To change the group

Press one of the [1-24], [25-48], ... [97-120], and [121-128] buttons.

## Side Flags

### Overview

The term “side flags” refers to the areas to left and right of an image with aspect ratio 4:3 embedded within a 16:9 frame, when these areas are filled with a separate image selected from the utility bus.

You can adjust the width of the side flag area.

### Side Flag Settings

#### Input source aspect ratio, auto side flags, and auto crop settings

##### Aspect ratio 4:3 setting

Set the input signal to aspect ratio 4:3. If set to 16:9, the side flags are disabled.

##### Auto side flag setting

This function automatically applies side flags when a 4:3 signal is selected in the cross-point control block.

##### Auto crop setting

When carrying out a DME wipe, this function automatically crops the image during transition to 4:3.

##### Adjusting the width of the side flag area

You can set the left and right sides separately.

*For details about the above setting, see “Setting the Side Flag Video Material and Operation” (p. 241).*

#### Enabling and disabling side flags with a menu operation

You can enable or disable side flags for the backgrounds (A and B) of each of the M/E and PGM/PST banks. As an example, to enable side flags for background B row on the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the Misc >Enable >Side Flags menu (3213).

The status area shows the buttons for Bkgd A and Bkgd B for each of the banks.

- 2 In the <M/E-1 Side Flags> group, press [Bkgd B].

#### To display a menu for the aspect ratio 4:3, auto side flags, and auto crop settings

Press [Setup >SWER Side Flags].

#### To display a menu for assigning the side flags on/off function to a cross-point button

Press [Side Flags Button Assign].

#### Enabling and disabling side flags with a button operation

For example, to enable side flags for the background B row of the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the Setup menu, assign the rightmost cross-point button to the [SIDE FLAG] button beforehand.

*For details about the assignment, see “Assigning a Cross-Point Button to Enable/Disable Side Flags” (p. 226).*

- 2 Press the [SIDE FLAG] button at the right end of the background B row of the M/E-1 bank.

The button you pressed lights amber, and this enables the side flags.

#### Notes

- The operations of enabling or disabling the side flags by menu operation and by control panel button operation are linked.
- When the auto side flags are on, selecting 4:3 video material automatically lights the [SIDE FLAG] button, but if you press this button, turning it off, the side flags are temporarily disabled. However, when you select different 4:3 video material, the [SIDE FLAG] button automatically lights once again, enabling the side flags.

## Creating an image with side flags

For example, to create an image with side flags in the background B row of the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the 1st row of the cross-point control block of the M/E-1 bank, hold down the [UTIL] button, and in the 2nd row, select the signal (utility bus signal) you want to insert in the side flag areas.
- 2 In the background B row, press the cross-point button corresponding to the 4:3 video material.

At this point, if auto side flags are on, this automatically adds side flags to the 4:3 video material.

For details, [☞ “Setting the Side Flag Video Material and Operation” \(p. 241\)](#).

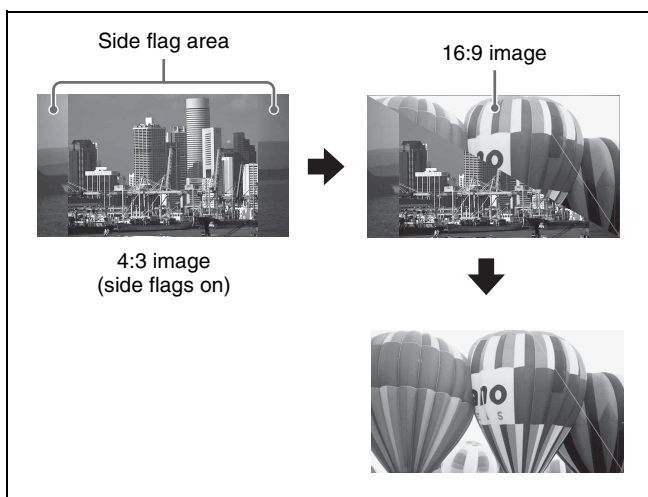
- 3 Use either of the following methods to turn the side flags on.
  - Use the Misc >Enable >Side Flags menu (3213) ([☞ p. 128](#)).
  - Use a cross-point button operation ([☞ p. 128](#)).

This adds side flags to the 4:3 video material.

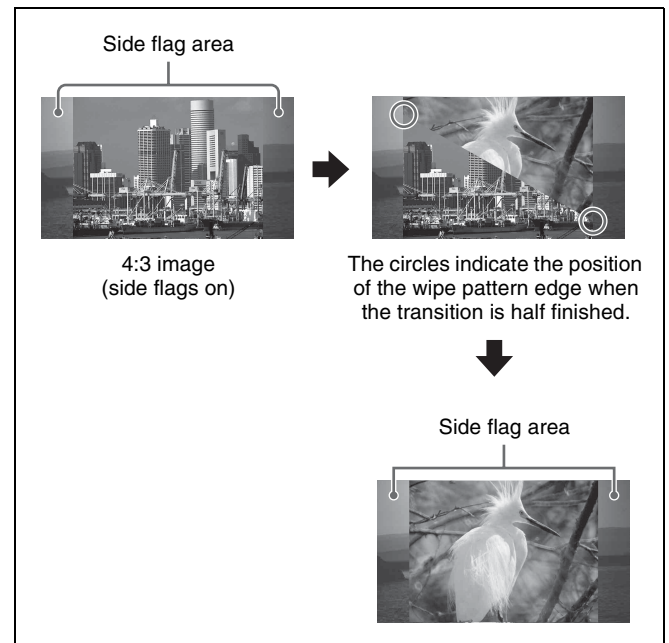
## Wipe Action on Images with Side Flags

When a wipe is carried out on an image with side flags, all wipe patterns can be used. The following show the action in a wipe.

### Wipe from a 4:3 image to a 16:9 image



### Wipe from a 4:3 image to another 4:3 image (when side flags are on for both images)



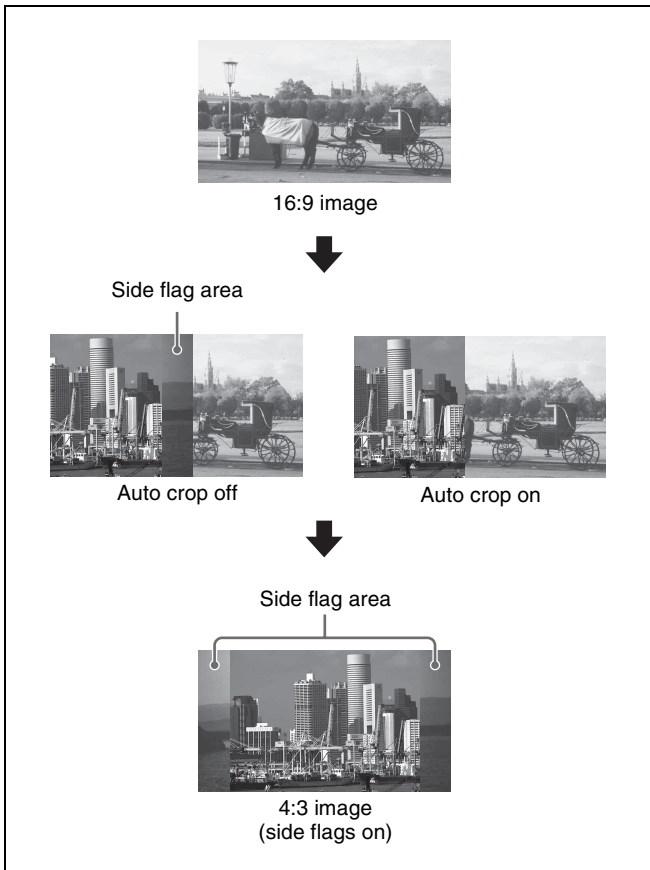
## DME Wipe Action for an Image with Side Flags

When a DME wipe is carried out on an image with side flags, all wipe patterns can be used. Depending on the on/off setting of [Auto Crop] in the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config menu (7331), the appearance of the 4:3 image changes.

The following show the action in a DME wipe.

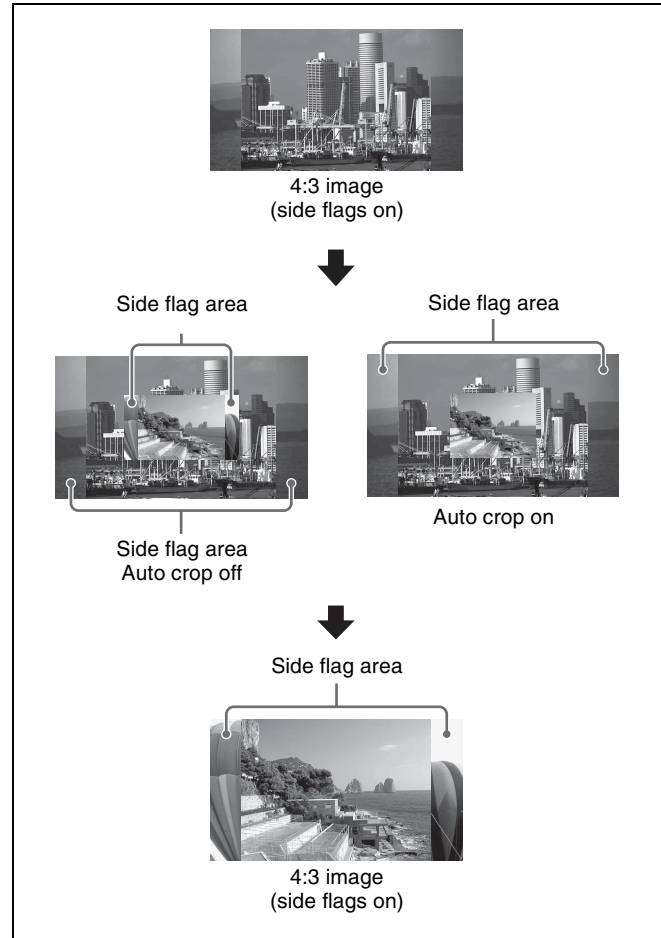
### DME wipe from a 4:3 image to a 16:9 image

Wipe action using slide (No. 1001)



### DME wipe from a 4:3 image to another 4:3 image (when side flags are on for both images)

Wipe action using squeeze (No. 1031)



## Control of External Devices

In this system, you can operate while controlling the following types of external devices.

- Devices supporting P-Bus (Peripheral II protocol)
- GPI devices
- VTRs
- Disk recorders (video disk communications protocol)
- Extended VTRs (Abekas A53 protocol)

*For details about the devices that can be connected, consult your Sony representative.*

### Notes

- To operate P-Bus devices, VTRs, Extended VTRs, and disk recorders, the following settings are required for the Remote 1 to Remote 4 ports on the rear panel of the switcher processor.
  - Device type setting
  - Device name

*For details, see “Serial Port Settings” (p. 232) and “Making Detailed Settings on the External Device Connected to the Serial Port” (p. 232).*
- When using a disk recorder or Extended VTR, always use the Device >DDR/VTR >File List menu (5333) to recall the file (see p. 142).

## Shared Functions for External Device Control

### Keyframe functions

There are 250 registers, numbered 1 to 250, holding external device control data as keyframe data (see p. 145) (only 99 registers for the GPI timeline).

The following are the keyframe functions that can be used.

- RECALL (1-250), STORE (1-250), empty register search, AUTO SAVE, RECALL MODE (RECALL, RECALL & REWIND)

- EDIT ENABLE, EDIT UNDO
- CONST DUR, EFF DUR, KF DUR, DELAY, PAUSE, INSERT BEFORE, INSERT AFTER, MODIFY, DELETE, COPY, PASTE BEFORE, PASTE AFTER, FROM TO, ALL
- PREV KF, NEXT KF, GOTO TC, GOTO KF, RUN, REWIND, FF, STOP NEXT KF, NORMAL, JOG, KF FADER

### Notes

- Actions set in a keyframe are executed only when the keyframe effect is executed in the normal direction. Take care when executing simultaneously with a switcher or keyframe effect, since the actions are not executed in the reverse direction.
- The following keyframe functions cannot be used.
  - KF LOOP, EFFECT LOOP, REVERSE, NORMAL/REVERSE
  - PATH

### Saving to registers

Set the data for controlling external devices in the Device menu. You can save the set data in keyframe, snapshot, or shotbox registers (see p. 144). You can manipulate data by recalling the register in which it is saved and using the Flexi Pad.

### Register editing functions

You can carry out the following operations on the registers in which the data for controlling external devices is saved.

- Copy
- Move
- Swap
- Merge (this cannot be carried out for registers containing VTR, disk recorder, or Extended VTR control data.)
- Lock
- Name

### File-related functions

You can save and recall files as effects data using the File menu.

# Control of P-Bus Devices

You can control P-Bus (Peripheral II protocol) devices from this system through the switcher Remote 1 to Remote 4 ports.

## P-Bus device control modes

There are two modes of P-Bus device control, as follows.

**Trigger:** Operating a previously specified button outputs the command for an action assigned to that button.

**Timeline:** Carrying out a keyframe effect under the control of the control panel controls external devices.

In the Setup menu, select which of Trigger mode and Timeline mode to use.

You can set the following actions (set what action command is output to which device) in either mode.

- Store
- Recall
- Trigger

## Creating and Editing the P-Bus Timeline

At a keyframe point on the P-Bus timeline, you can set an action. At any single keyframe point you can set actions for a maximum of 24 devices.

For details about keyframe creation and editing operations, see “[Creating and Editing Keyframes](#)” (p. 153).

For the action setting (or P-Bus timeline editing), use the Device menu.

You can save the data set in the Device menu in keyframe effect registers. Recalling the register starts execution of the keyframe effect, and when this reaches the keyframe point at which actions are set, action commands are output to external devices through the 9-pin serial port assigned to P-Bus.

### Notes

Using the P-Bus timeline function requires the P-Bus control mode to be set to [Timeline]. Make this setting in the Engineering Setup >Panel >Device Interface menu (7325) ([p. 232](#)).

## Setting an action

- 1 Open the Device >P-Bus Timeline >P-Bus Timeline menu (5321).

Two lists appear in the status area. The left list displays the combinations of devices and actions. The settings in this list will be saved as keyframe point data. The right list is for selecting the action.

- 2 Select the ID (0 to 23) of the device you want to set.
- 3 Select the action.

You can select from 2 (Store), 3 (Recall), and 4 (Trigger).

- 4 Set the register number or trigger number.

The indication for the 3rd parameter changes to reflect the selection of Store, Recall, or Trigger.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Store No	Register number for Store
3	Recall No	Register number for Recall
3	Trigger No	Trigger number

- 5 Press [Set].

Repeat steps 2 to 5 if setting other devices.

## Testing an action command

Press [Test Fire].

The action command is output from the switcher Remote 1 to Remote 4 ports.

## Clearing an action setting

### To clear the setting for separate devices

Select the device, select action 1 (Off), then press [Set].

### To clear the action settings for all devices in a single operation

Press [All Off].

## Setting the action for a rewind operation

On the P-Bus timeline, when the [REWIND] button in the Flexi Pad is pressed, the action set for the first keyframe is not executed; when the [RUN] button is pressed, then the first keyframe action is executed.

To execute an action when the [REWIND] button is pressed, it is necessary to set this action (Rewind Action). To carry out this setting, press [Rewind Action] in the Device >P-Bus Timeline >P-Bus Timeline menu (5321) to recall the Rewind Action menu (5321.1). In this setting screen, use the same setting method as in the screen for setting an action on the P-Bus timeline.

Alternatively, you can select the reverse arrangement, whereby when the [REWIND] button is pressed, this executes the action set for the first keyframe, and when the [RUN] button is pressed the first keyframe action is not

executed. In this case, the Rewind Action setting is still valid.

For details, [☞ “Setting the First Keyframe When a Rewind is Executed” \(p. 236\)](#).

## Carrying out a Direct Store

You can carry out a Learn with the register number specified for the device selected in the menu.

- 1 In the Device >P-Bus Timeline >P-Bus Timeline menu (5321), select the device ID.
- 2 Press [Direct Store].
- 3 Enter the register number (1 to 250) for which you want to carry out the Learn.
- 4 Press [Enter].

## P-Bus Trigger

“P-Bus trigger” is a function whereby a button operation in the Flexi Pad outputs an action command to a P-Bus device.

### Notes

To use the P-Bus trigger function, the P-Bus control mode must be set to [Trigger]. Make this setting in the Engineering Setup >Panel >Device Interface menu (7325).

For details, [☞ “Setting the Control Mode for P-Bus Devices” \(p. 232\)](#).

### Action command for an operation in the Flexi Pad

- RCLL: Recall
- STOR: Store

This recalls the register specified in the numeric keypad control block, and a Recall or Store is carried out, according to the setting.

- RUN: Trigger 1
- REWIND: Trigger 4
- >> NEXT: Trigger 7
- << PREV: Trigger 8

## Outputting an action command

As an example, to output a Recall, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the Flexi Pad, press the [EFF] button, turning it on.
- 2 Select [PBUS] using the region selection buttons.
- 3 Enter the number of the register (1 to 250) to be recalled with the numeric keypad buttons.

- 4 Press the [ENTR] button.

# Control of GPI Devices

You can control GPI devices from this system, through the GPI output port of the switcher.

### Notes

If using a switcher GPI output port, a controllable output port must be assigned using the control panel. Make this setting in the Engineering Setup >Panel >Device Interface >Tally/GPI Output Config menu (7325.12).

For details, [☞ “Assigning a Parallel Output Port” \(p. 232\)](#).

## GPI timeline

For a keyframe effect controlled from the control panel, the GPI timeline allows you to set an action (setting a trigger output from a particular GPI output port) at a keyframe point on the GPI timeline. At any keyframe point, you can make a maximum of eight GPI output port settings.

### GPI timeline actions

- Switcher GPI output port

The data set in the Device menu are saved in a keyframe effect register. When you recall this register and start execution of the keyframe effect, and advance the effect to the keyframe point for which the GPI output is set, a trigger pulse is output to the external device from the specified GPI output port.

## GPI Timeline Creation and Editing

This section describes how to set GPI output ports to be registered at a keyframe point, and how to carry out creation and editing of the GPI timeline.

For details about keyframe creation and editing operations, [☞ “Creating and Editing Keyframes” \(p. 153\)](#).

### GPI output port settings

Set the GPI output port number of the switcher which outputs GPI pulses at a keyframe point on the GPI timeline.

Use the following procedure to change the settings.

- 1 Open the Device >GPI Timeline >GPI Timeline menu (5311).

Two lists appear in the status area.

The “GPI Output” list on the left shows the relation between ports 1 to 8 for the GPI timeline and the trigger pulse output destination ports. The settings in this list will be saved as keyframe point data.

The “GPI Port” list on the right is for selecting the GPI trigger pulse output destination.

- 2 Select the GPI timeline port.
- 3 Select the trigger pulse output destination.

You can select 2 (SCU).

- 4 Set the port number.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	SCU Port No	SCU GPI port number <sup>a)</sup>

a) Switcher GPI output port configured in the Setup menu for control from the control panel.

#### Notes

For the output port you have set here, be sure to set the trigger type to “Rising Edge,” “Falling Edge” or “Any Edge.”

For details, [☞ “Making Control Panel GPI Output Settings” \(p. 231\)](#).

- 5 Press [Set].

Repeat steps 2 to 5 if setting other GPI timeline ports.

### Test firing the trigger

Press [Test Fire].

This outputs a pulse from the selected output port.

### Clearing output port settings

#### To clear the setting for each port

- 1 In the list on the left of the status area, select the GPI output port.
- 2 In the list on the right, select “Off.”
- 3 Press [Set].

#### To clear the settings for all ports

Press [All Off].

### Setting the action for a rewind operation

On the GPI timeline, when the [REWIND] button in the Flexi Pad is pressed, the action set for the first keyframe is

not executed; when the [RUN] button is pressed, then the first keyframe action is executed.

To execute an action when the [REWIND] button is pressed, it is necessary to set this action (Rewind Action). To carry out this setting, press [Rewind Action] in the Device >GPI Timeline >GPI Timeline menu (5311) to recall the Rewind Action menu (5311.1). In this setting screen, use the same setting method as in the screen for setting an action on the GPI timeline.

Alternatively, you can select the reverse arrangement, whereby when the [REWIND] button is pressed, this executes the action set for the first keyframe, and when the [RUN] button is pressed the first keyframe action is not executed. In this case, the Rewind Action setting is still valid.

For details about the setting operation, [☞ “Setting the First Keyframe When a Rewind is Executed” \(p. 236\)](#).

## Control of VTRs, Extended VTRs, and Disk Recorders

In this system, for up to 12 VTRs, disk recorders or Extended VTRs connected to a switcher, you can carry out the following manual operations and timeline settings.

- Controlling manually from the device control block
  - VTR, disk recorder or Extended VTR selection
  - Tape and disk transport control
  - Start point, stop point, and start delay time settings
  - VTR/disk recorder recording
  - Loop/recue setting
- Saving a start point, stop point, start delay time, variable speed and so on in a data register, then recalling the register to control automatically from the Flexi Pad (Cueup & Play and VTR/disk recorder/Extended VTR timeline).

To control a VTR, Extended VTR, or disk recorder in this system, the following settings are required.

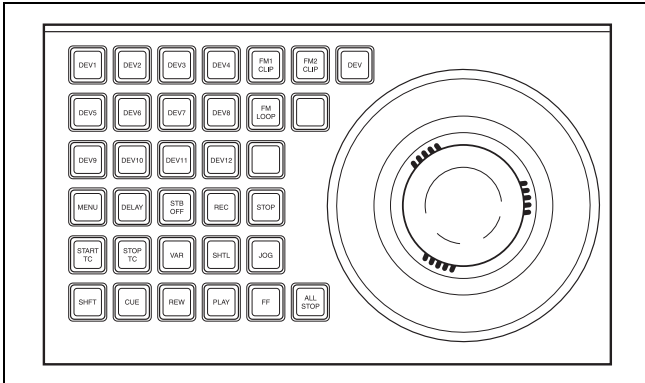
- **Button assignment:** For a VTR, Extended VTR, or disk recorder connected to the switcher Remote 1 to Remote 4 ports, assign a button in the device control block.
- **Timecode source:** When using a VTR, specify a reference signal used for determining the tape position.

For details, [☞ “Associating a Port with a Device Selection Button” \(p. 232\)](#), [☞ “Serial Port Settings” \(p. 232\)](#) and [☞ “Making Detailed Settings on the External Device Connected to the Serial Port” \(p. 232\)](#).

## Controlling the Tape/Disk Transport

### To switch to VTR/disk recorder/frame memory operation mode

To control a VTR/Extended VTR/disk recorder with the device control block, press the [DEV] button in the device control block, turning it on, to switch the device control block to the VTR/disk recorder/frame memory operation mode. The button assignment changes as follows (the [SHIFT] button is disabled in VTR/disk recorder/frame memory operation mode).



### Buttons used when the VTR/disk recorder/frame memory operation mode is enabled

Button	Operation
DELAY	Press this button, turning it on, to enter a delay value from the Flexi Pad.
STB (standby) OFF	Press this button to switch to standby off mode. This button cannot be used for frame memory clip operations.
REC (record)	Press this button at the same time as the [PLAY] button to start recording. This button cannot be used for frame memory clip operations.
STOP	Press this button to stop the tape, disk or frame memory clip.
START TC (start timecode) STOP TC (stop timecode)	Press these buttons to set the timecode of the start and stop points to the current time at those points. When the device the operation applies to is a VTR/disk recorder, the start/stop point updated by the setting of the [MENU] button is as follows. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the [MENU] button is On: Point on the timeline</li> <li>When the [MENU] button is Off: Point for cue-up and play</li> </ul>

Button	Operation
VAR (variable speed play)	Press this button and turn the Z-ring to play or rewind the tape, disk or frame memory clip at a variable speed (-1 to +3 times normal playback speed) and direction proportional to the rotation angle of the Z-ring.
SHTL (shuttle)	Press this button and turn the Z-ring to play or rewind the tape, disk or frame memory clip at a variable speed and direction proportional to the rotation angle of the Z-ring.
JOG	Press this button and turn the Z-ring to frame advance the tape, disk or frame memory clip at a speed and direction proportional to the rotation of the Z-ring.
CUE	Press this button to cue-up the start point of the tape, disk or frame memory clip.
REW (rewind)	Press this button to rewind the tape, disk or frame memory clip.
PLAY	Press this button to play the tape, disk or frame memory clip.
FF (fast forward)	Press this button to fast forward the tape, disk or frame memory clip.
ALL STOP	Press this button to stop all tape, disk or frame memory clip operations.

### Selecting a VTR/Extended VTR/disk recorder

To select the VTR/Extended VTR/disk recorder, press the corresponding device buttons, turning them on, in the device control block. You can turn on more than one button at the same time.

For details about frame memory clip operations, see [“Frame Memory Clip Operations” \(p. 111\)](#).

### Controlling the tape/disk transport

Using the buttons in the device control block, you can control the tape transport or the disk transport. You can operate a VTR, Extended VTR, or disk recorder from the transition control block, when configured in the Setup menu.

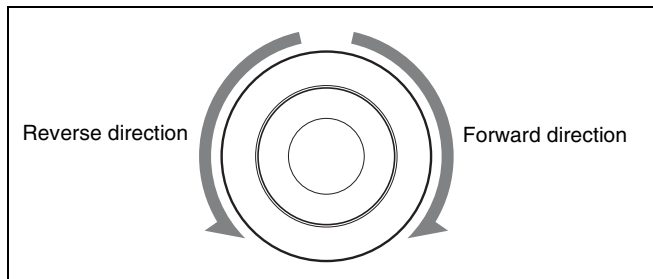
For details about the setting operation, see [“Setting Transition Control Block Button Assignments” \(p. 221\)](#).

### Variable-speed playback modes

With the device control block, you can play back the material on an external device at variable speed. Turning the Z-ring in the device control block controls the direction and speed of playback in response to the direction and angle of rotation. There are three operation modes: jog, shuttle, and variable.

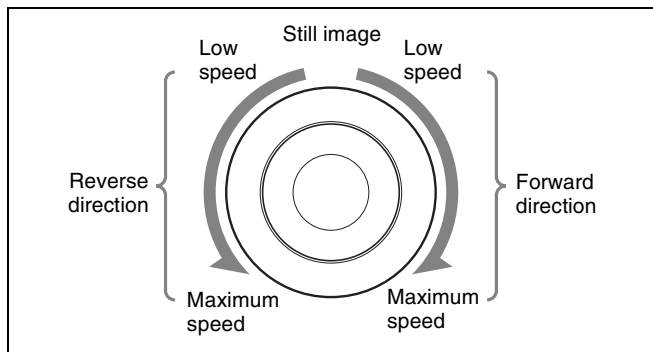
### Jog mode

Pressing the [JOG] button, lighting it amber, changes the Z-ring to jog mode. In this mode, you can advance material frame by frame at a speed proportional to the rotation angle of the Z-ring. To show a still image, stop turning the Z-ring.



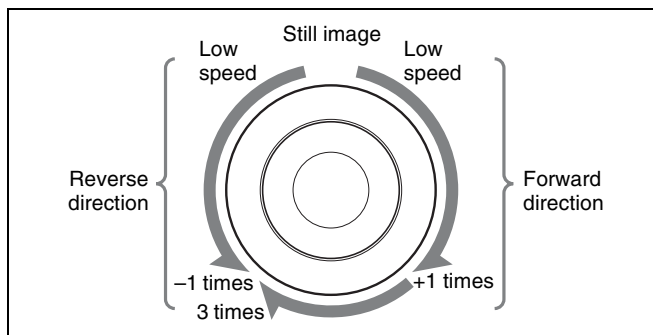
### Shuttle mode

Pressing the [SHTL] button, lighting it amber, changes the Z-ring to shuttle mode. In this mode, the playback speed varies in steps according to the rotation angle of the Z-ring, up to a maximum of 50 times normal.



### Variable mode

Pressing the [VAR] button, lighting it amber, changes the Z-ring to variable mode. In this mode, the playback speed varies according to the rotation angle of the Z-ring from -1 to +3 times normal speed.



To disable the Z-ring and cancel variable mode, press the [STOP] button. Alternatively, pressing any of the [REW], [PLAY], [FF], [STB OFF], and [ALL STOP] editing buttons cancels variable mode.

## Recording to VTRs and disk recorders

You can record to the VTR or disk recorder selected in the device control block.

### Notes

- Recording is not possible if the VTR or disk recorder is not set to Recorder.
- The disk recorder type must be specified to use the video disk communications protocol ([p. 232](#)).
- When using a disk recorder, recording is not possible unless a new file name is specified.

For details about file name settings, see [“Creating new files” \(p. 142\)](#).

- Using the buttons of the device control block, select the VTR or disk recorder to which you want to record.

You can select more than one button.

The first button pressed lights green as the reference device, and subsequently pressed buttons light amber.

- While holding down the [REC] button in the device control block, press the [PLAY] button.

Recording starts. During recording, the [REC] button lights red and the [PLAY] button lights amber.

### Notes

Note the following points about recording to a disk recorder.

- The maximum length of time that can be recorded in one operation is 30 minutes.
- If you want to record to a different file than the file used in the previous recording, use the Device >DDR/VTR >File List menu (5333) to create a new file.
- If you resume recording without executing [Unload] from the Device >DDR/VTR >File List menu, recording starts at the position in the same file where recording was interrupted.

### To stop recording

Press the [STOP] button or the [ALL STOP] button in the device control block.

## Checking VTR/Disk Recorder/ Extended VTR Information

You can check the following information using the Device >DDR/VTR >Cueup & Play menu (5331).

**DEV (device name):** DEV1 to DEV12 represent respectively device 1 to device 12.

**Reg (register):** Number of the register to which settings apply.

**Status:** Status of each device.

Operating status display	When VTR is used	When video disk communications or Extended VTR is used
XXXX	Communications with the device are being carried out normally, but status information is not received.	Not communicating, or communicating but the device type cannot be read.
Local	The REMOTE/LOCAL switch of the device is set to LOCAL.	Port is not open.
Tape Out	No tape is loaded.	No file loaded.
Rec	Recording.	Recording. <sup>a)</sup>
Cue>	Cueing up in the forward direction.	—
Cue<	Cueing up in the reverse direction.	—
Eject	Ejecting cassette.	—
Stb Off	Stopped in standby off mode.	—
Stop	Stopped in standby on mode.	Stopped.
Play	Playing.	Playing.
FF	Fast forwarding.	—
Rewind	Rewinding.	—
Shtl>	Playing in the forward direction in shuttle mode.	—
Shtl<	Playing in the reverse direction in shuttle mode.	—
Var>	Playing in the forward direction in variable mode.	Playing in the forward direction in variable mode.
Var<	Playing in the reverse direction in variable mode.	Playing in the reverse direction in variable mode.
Jog>	Playing in the forward direction in jog mode.	Playing in the forward direction in jog mode.
Jog<	Playing in the reverse direction in jog mode.	Playing in the reverse direction in jog mode.
Still	Playing still image.	—

a) Not supported by Extended VTR.

- Current:** Shows timecode for current device position.
- Start TC:** Shows timecode for start point set on device.
- Stop TC:** Shows timecode for stop point set on device.
- Variable:** Shows the variable speed set for each device.
- Delay:** Shows start delay time set on device.
- Mode:** Shows operation mode (Loop or Recue) set for each device.

## Cueup & Play

You can use the device control block or Device menu to save Cueup & Play settings (start point timecode, stop point timecode, start delay time, and so on) for a VTR, disk recorder or Extended VTR in an effect register. By recalling this register, you can operate the following buttons in the Flexi Pad to automatically control the VTR, disk recorder or Extended VTR.

**[REWIND] button:** Cue up to the start point timecode

**[RUN] button:** Play

With this function you can also stop the VTR, disk recorder or Extended VTR used for playback at the stop point timecode recalled from the same register.

### Disk recorder (video disk communications protocol) operation when loop /recue is set

**When loop is set:** Plays repeatedly between the start point and stop point.

**When recue is set:** Automatically cues up the start point when play reaches the stop point.

#### Notes

- In an effect register set on the VTR/disk recorder timeline, Cueup & Play settings are not possible. To add Cueup & Play settings to such a register, first clear the VTR/disk recorder timeline setting before carrying out the operation.
- When using a disk recorder with Cueup & Play, if you carry out the following sequence of operations, the system may freeze on the frame of the start point. Press the [RUN] button to play to a point close to the end of a file, stop playback, then press the [RUN] button once more.  
In such cases, first recall a different register, then carry out the following sequence:  
Recall the original register again, press the [REWIND] button, then press the [RUN] button.

### Making and saving settings relating to Cueup & Play

- 1** In the Flexi Pad, press the [EFF] button, turning it on.
- 2** Press the button corresponding to the region you want to select, turning it on.

You can select more than one button.

*For details about the method of region selection, see “Selecting regions in the Flexi Pad” (p. 150).*

- 3** Enter the number of the register to be recalled with the numeric keypad buttons.

To search for an empty register, instead of entering a number, press the [.] (period) button.

The entered register number or corresponding register number appears in the alphanumeric display. If the number is followed by a letter “e” or “E,” this indicates the following.

**e:** Indicates the selected register is empty for the regions selected in step 2.

**E:** Indicates that the corresponding register is empty in all selectable regions.

**4** Press the [ENTR] button.

This recalls the register you specified in step 3.

**5** When using the device control block, press the [DEV] button, turning it on.

### Notes

Check that the [MENU] button is not lit. If it is lit, press to turn it off.

**6** With the buttons in the device control block, select the VTR, Extended VTR, or disk recorder for which you want to make the setting.

You can select more than one button.

The first button pressed lights green as the reference device, and subsequently pressed buttons light amber.

**7** Set the start point.

- Using the [START TC] button: Play the VTR, Extended VTR or disk recorder by control from the device control block. Find the desired start point, and press the [START TC] button at that position. Each time you press the button the start point timecode is overwritten.
- Setting with the Cueup & Play menu: Set the start point, stop point, and start delay duration (☞ p. 138).

**8** Set the stop point.

Setting the start point and stop point automatically determines the duration.

- Using the [STOP TC] button: Play the VTR, Extended VTR or disk recorder by control from the device control block. Find the desired stop point, and press the [STOP TC] button at that point. Each time you press the button the stop point timecode is overwritten.
- Setting with the Cueup & Play menu: Set the start point, stop point, and start delay duration (☞ p. 138).

**9** To set a start delay time, press the [DELAY] button in the device control block, and enter a value in the Flexi

Pad. Alternatively, make the setting in the Cueup & Play menu.

If no setting is required, continue to step 10.

**10** Press the [STOR] button in the Flexi Pad.

**11** Enter the register number to save with the numeric keypad buttons.

When overwriting the settings in the register recalled in step 3, entering a number is not required.

**12** Press the [ENTR] button.

### Automatically running cue up and play

By recalling a register in which you have saved setting data for Cueup & Play, you can control the VTR/Extended VTR/disk recorder automatically in the same way as when automatically executing a keyframe effect.

**1** In the Flexi Pad, press the [EFF] button, turning it on.

**2** Press the button corresponding to the region you want to select, turning it on.

You can select more than one button.

**3** Enter the number of the register to be recalled with the numeric keypad buttons.

**4** Press the [REWIND] button.

The VTR/Extended VTR/disk recorder automatically advances to the timecode value set as the start point. While the VTR/Extended VTR/disk recorder is operating, the [ALL STOP] button in the device control block flashes amber, and when the start point is reached lights green.

If the operating VTR/Extended VTR/disk recorder is selected as the reference region in the device control block, the [CUE] button also flashes and lights in the same way as the [ALL STOP] button. Also, when the start point is reached, the [STOP] button lights amber.

**5** Press the [RUN] button.

The VTR/Extended VTR/disk recorder is now controlled according to the keyframe data.

### Setting the start point, stop point, and start delay time in a menu

**1** Open the Device >DDR/VTR >Cueup & Play menu (5331).

The status area shows the device number, register number, status information, current time, start point, stop point, and start delay time.

- 2 Select the device.
- 3 Carry out any of the following operations as required.
  - To set the start point, press [Set] in the <Start TC> group.
  - To set the stop point, press [Set] in the <Stop TC> group.
  - To set the start delay time, press [Set] in the <Delay> group.
- 4 Set the timecode value for the start point, stop point, or start delay time.

**Notes**

You can enter a start delay time in the range that depends on the signal format as follows:  
00:00 to 59:nn, where nn = (number of frames per second) – 1 frame.

- 5 Press [Enter].

**To clear the start point, stop point, and start delay time settings in a menu**

Select the device, then press [Clear] in the <Start TC> group, <Stop TC> group, <Delay> group, as required.

**Selecting Loop or Recue as the playback mode**

You can set the device operation mode to loop or recue.

**Loop:** Plays from the start point of a file to the stop point, then repeats playback from the start point.

**Recue:** Plays from the start point of a file to the stop point, then returns to the start point and stops.

**Notes**

- Loop and recue functions are only available when using the video disk communications protocol.
- To use the loop or recue function, it is necessary to enable the function in the Setup menu.

For details, see [“Serial Port Settings” \(p. 232\)](#) and [“Making Detailed Settings on the External Device Connected to the Serial Port” \(p. 232\)](#).

- 1 Open the Device >DDR/VTR >Cueup & Play menu (5331).

The status area shows the device number, register number, status information, current time, start point, stop point, start delay time, and playback mode.

- 2 Select the device.
- 3 In the <Mode> group, press [Loop] or [Recue], turning it on.

**VTR/Disk Recorder/Extended VTR Timeline**

For a keyframe effect controlled from the control panel, the timeline allows you to set a VTR, disk recorder or Extended VTR action at a keyframe point on the timeline.

**Timeline actions**

- Start
- Stop
- Cue up
- Variable speed

**Notes**

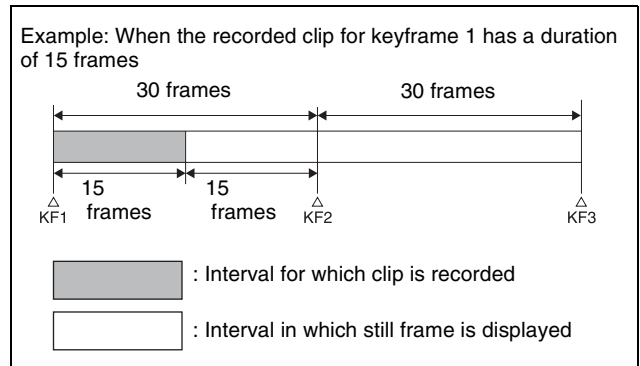
- The timeline does not support loop and recue.
- For a disk recorder, the maximum number of files for a single register is eight.

You can save the data set in the Device menu in keyframe effect registers. When you recall this register and start execution of the keyframe effect, and advance the effect to the keyframe point for which the action is set, an action command is output to the external device through the 9-pin serial port assigned to the VTR, disk recorder or Extended VTR.

**Notes**

When executing a timeline using a disk recorder or Extended VTR, note the following points.

- It is not possible to use loop and recue on the timeline.
- When carrying out keyframe settings, be sure to recall the file for operation first.
- If the duration of the recorded video clip is less than the keyframe duration, after playback to the end of the clip, the remainder of the keyframe duration is filled with a still of the last frame of the clip (see figure below).



In this example, when keyframe 1 is executed, the first 15 frames consist of clip playback and the remaining 15 frames show the 15th frame as a still image.

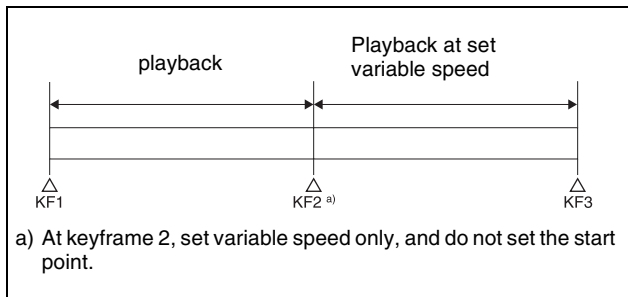
When executing the timeline using a disk recorder, also take note of the following points.

- Set the keyframe duration to at least 30 frames.
- From pressing the [RUN] button to the time when the effect actually starts execution may take around one second.

In order that pressing the [RUN] button after [REWIND] make the effect start execution as soon as possible, set cueing up of the file for operation as rewind operation<sup>1)</sup>. In the first keyframe<sup>2)</sup> to be executed with [RUN], for the cued-up file, do not set the start point, but set only the start command.

- 1) If the setting when the [REWIND] button is pressed is for the first keyframe to be executed, then the first keyframe is executed, and otherwise the setting for the Rewind Action is carried out.
- 2) If the setting when the [REWIND] button is pressed is for the first keyframe to be executed, then the second keyframe is executed, and otherwise the first keyframe is executed.

- To execute an effect, be sure to carry out a Rewind. For example, when the start command only is set for a keyframe, playback starts from the current position, in the same way as with a VTR (no automatic cue-up).
- During file playback, to play the next keyframe at variable speed, for the next keyframe set variable speed only, and do not set the start point (see figure below).



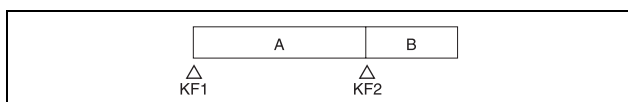
- When using a disk recorder with the VTR/disk recorder timeline, if you carry out the following sequence of operations, the system may freeze on the frame of the start point.

Press the [RUN] button to play to a point close to the end of a file, stop playback, then press the [RUN] button once more.

In such cases, first recall a different register, then carry out the following sequence:

Recall the original register again, press the [REWIND] button, then press the [RUN] button.

- Some operating limitations apply when the video disk communications protocol is used. These are explained with reference to the following figure, which illustrates creation of a timeline that plays from the video of file A to the video of file B.



- Operation with no problems:

KF1 action setting	Operating status of file A	KF2 action setting
Start	Playback	Start

- Black video or still image appears momentarily when play switches from file A to file B:

KF1 action setting	Operating status of file A	KF2 action setting
Start	Playback	Cueup
Variable Speed set	Playback at variable speed	Cueup
Cueup	Cueup	Cueup

- Partial operating limitation:

KF1 action setting	Operating status of file A	KF2 action setting
Start	Playback	Variable Speed set <sup>a)</sup>
Variable Speed set	Playback at variable speed	Variable Speed set <sup>a)</sup>
Cueup	Cueup	Variable Speed set <sup>a)</sup>

- a) Failure to operate when variable speed is set to minus value. However, operates when the file B action is set to Start, and then variable speed is set to minus after file B starts playing.

- Play does not switch from file A to file B:

KF1 action setting	Operating status of file A	KF2 action setting
Variable Speed set	Playback at variable speed	Start
Cueup	Cueup	Start

If play continues to show video of file A without switching to file B, a Stop action is required in file A in order to switch to file B.

## VTR/disk recorder/Extended VTR timeline editing

This section describes how to set an action at a keyframe point, and how to edit the timeline.

For details about keyframe creation and editing operations, see [“Creating and Editing Keyframes” \(p. 153\)](#).

### To set an action in the menu

- 1 Open the Device >DDR/VTR >Timeline menu (5332).

Two lists appear in the status area. The upper list shows the device number, register number, keyframe number, and action type (start point, stop point, and variable speed) set for the keyframe.

The lower list is used for setting the action for the device selected above. The list shows the port name, current file, current time, status information, start point, stop point, variable speed, and file name (for a disk recorder or Extended VTR).

- 2 Select the device.
- 3 To set the name of a file when using an Extended VTR or disk recorder, recall the file using the Device >DDR/VTR >File List menu (5333).

#### Notes

- There is a limit of eight disk recorder files that can set on a single timeline.
- If you have not set the file name when using an Extended VTR, the file recalled in the Extended VTR when the keyframe point is passed is the subject of the action.

When not using an Extended VTR or disk recorder, or when the file name has not been set for an Extended VTR, skip to step 4.

- 4 In the <Action> group, select the action.

**Cueup:** Outputs a command to cue up to the currently displayed start point.

**Start:** Outputs a Play command.

#### Notes

When the stop point and variable speed are both set, the variable speed setting takes priority.

**Stop:** Outputs a Stop command.

#### Notes

Before executing the Stop command, if the timecode for the set stop point has been reached, or on an Extended VTR or disk recorder if the end of the file has been reached, then at that point the device stops.

- 5 If setting a start point, in the <Start TC> group, press the [Set] button.

If not setting a start point, skip to step 8.

#### Notes

For a disk recorder on which the start point is not set, the file recalled in the disk recorder when the keyframe point is passed is the subject of the action.

- 6 Set the start point as a timecode value.
- 7 Press [Enter].

- 8 If setting a stop point, in the <Stop TC> group, press the [Set] button.

If not setting a stop point, skip to step 11.

- 9 Set the stop point as a timecode value.

- 10 Press [Enter].

- 11 If setting a variable speed, in the <Variable Speed> group, carry out either of the following.

- Press [Fit].  
Without setting a speed value, this automatically carries out playback according to automatically calculated values for the duration and keyframe duration to fit the set start point and stop point.
- Press the [Set] button, and adjust the parameter.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
2	Variable	Variable speed

Repeat steps 2 to 11 if setting other devices.

### To carry out start point and stop point settings and cueing up operations in the device control block

With the following buttons in the device control block, you can set the start point or stop point of a keyframe point on the timeline, or carry out a cueing up operation.

#### Notes

Check that the [MENU] button is lit amber. If it is not lit, press it, turning it on.

**[START TC] button:** Sets the start point of the keyframe point to the current time.

**[STOP TC] button:** Sets the stop point of the keyframe point to the current time.

**[CUE] button:** Cues up to the start point set for the keyframe point.

### To test an action command output

Select the desired device from the upper list in the status area, and press [Test Fire].

The action command is output from the switcher Remote 1 to Remote 4 ports.

### To clear the start point, stop point, and variable speed settings

Select the device from the upper list in the status area, then press [Clear] in the <Start TC> group, <Stop TC> group, <Variable Speed> group, as required.

### To set the action for a rewind operation

On the VTR/disk recorder/Extended VTR timeline, when the [REWIND] button in the Flexi Pad is pressed the action set for the first keyframe is not executed; when the [RUN]

button is pressed, then the first keyframe action is executed.

To execute an action when the [REWIND] button is pressed, it is necessary to set this action (Rewind Action). To carry out this setting, in the Device >DDR/VTR >Timeline menu (5332), press [Rewind Action] to recall the Rewind Action menu (5332.1). In this setting screen, use the same setting method as in the screen for setting an action on the VTR/disk recorder timeline.

Alternatively, you can select the reverse arrangement, whereby when the [REWIND] button is pressed, this executes the action set for the first keyframe, and when the [RUN] button is pressed the first keyframe action is not executed. In this case, the Rewind Action setting is still valid.

For details about the setting operation, see [“Setting the First Keyframe When a Rewind is Executed” \(p. 236\)](#).

## Disk Recorder/Extended VTR File Operations

Material held on a disk recorder/Extended VTR is managed in units of files. You can recall a file to play it back.

### Recalling a file

Before playback and similar operations on a disk recorder/Extended VTR, it is first necessary to display a list of the files.

In the recalled list of files, select the file you want to play back, and open the file.

### File list sharing

You can connect multiple switcher Remote 1 to Remote 4 ports to a single disk recorder/Extended VTR.

You can share the recalled list of files between serial ports connected to the same disk recorder/Extended VTR.

For details about file name settings, see [“Sharing disk recorder/extended VTR file lists” \(p. 232\)](#).

### Refreshing (recalling) the disk recorder/Extended VTR file list

- 1 Open the Device >DDR/VTR >File List menu (5333).

Two lists appear in the status area.

The upper list shows the selected device name, and the currently selected file name (register number), and set file name.

The lower list shows a list of files for the selected device in the upper list. In this list is shown the file name (register number) set when the material was recorded, the length of the file data (timecode value), and the file update information.

### Notes

- File update information is not shown when using the video disk communications protocol.
- When using an Extended VTR, the length of file data and file update information are not shown. For Extended VTR, the register number is shown as the file name.

- 2 Select the device.

- 3 Press the [File List Update] button.

### File list sharing

You can share the recalled file list across serial ports connected to the same disk recorder ([p. 232](#)).

### Sorting files in the list

Select either [File Name], [File No], or [Update] in the <Sort> group after step 2 above.

**File Name:** Sorts in alphabetical order of file name.

**File No:** Sorts in ascending file number order.

**Update:** Sorts in file update date order, newest first.

### Notes

- Files cannot be sorted by the file update date and time when using the video disk communications protocol.
- When using an Extended VTR, it is not possible to sort files.

### Loading Files

### Notes

Files cannot be recalled when the disk recorder is set to Recorder.

- 1 Open the Device >DDR/VTR >File List menu (5333).

- 2 Select the device.

- 3 Select the file you want to recall.

- 4 Press [Load].

### Creating new files

A file name must be specified to record to a new file on a disk recorder.

### Notes

- New files cannot be created when the disk recorder is set to Player or Recorder/Player.
- In the case of Extended VTRs, new files cannot be created.

- 1 Open the Device >DDR/VTR >File List menu (5333).
- 2 Press [New File].
- 3 Enter a file name and press [Enter].

You can enter up to eight characters (Fixed 8 Character mode) or 23 characters (Variable Length mode).

*For details about the file name character count mode in the video disk communications protocol, see [“Making Detailed Settings on the External Device Connected to the Serial Port”](#) (p. 232).*

#### **When the loaded file is not a target for recording**

- 1 Open the Device >DDR/VTR >File List menu (5333).
- 2 Press [Unload].

## Regions

The term “region” refers to a functional block of the system.

When saving or recalling snapshot registers and effect registers, or creating or editing effects, you first select the region to which the operation applies. You can also select multiple regions simultaneously.

### Classification of the regions

The regions are classified as follows.

- Master region
- The following 32 regions
  - Switcher: M/E-1, PGM/PST, User1 to User8
  - External devices: P-Bus, Router, Device 1 to Device 12, GPI, Macro

Only the regions assigned to the region selection buttons of the Flexi Pad and the memory recall buttons can be selected simultaneously (☞ p. 220).

### Regions applicable to keyframe operations

All the regions above except Router.

### Regions applicable to snapshot operations

Seventeen regions comprising the regions above, less the external device regions P-Bus, Device 1 to Device 12, GPI, and Macro.

### “User” regions

You can optionally assign the following regions to the regions User1 to User8 (☞ p. 241). The User regions shown in parenthesis are the default assignments.

- Color backgrounds 1 and 2 (User1)
- AUX1 to AUX24 (User2)
- Frame Memory 1 to 8 (User4)

### Notes on saving or recalling a frame memory still image for or by a snapshot/keyframe

- The saving and recalling of frame memory images for snapshots and keyframes is restricted to the still images or clips on the eight frame memory outputs. The settings made for frame memory images in the Freeze menu or other menus do not apply to snapshots or keyframes.

- To reproduce a frame memory still image or a clip of them by recalling a snapshot or keyframe, you must have the same images that were present in the frame memory when you saved the snapshot or keyframe. Therefore, when saving a snapshot or keyframe using frame memory, you must also save the images to a storage media such as the local disk.

### Reference region

When multiple regions are selected, only one region appears in the displays for menu and numeric keypad operations. This is called the “reference region.”

The reference region is determined according to the following precedence.

M/E-1 >PGM/PST >User1 >User2 >User3 >User4  
>User5 >User6 >User7 >User8 >Device1 >Device2  
>Device3 >Device4 >Device5 >Device6 >Device7  
>Device8 >Device9 >Device10 >Device11 >Device12  
>P-Bus >GPI >Router >Macro

### Master region

The regions saved in a master snapshot register or master timeline register and the register numbers saved in such regions can be recalled at a time as the master region. The master region can be saved or recalled using the Flexi Pad.

## Registers

A register is an area of memory in a device which holds a snapshot (☞ p. 167), keyframe, macro (☞ p. 180), and so on.

### Keyframe effect registers

#### Dedicated effect registers

There are 99 dedicated registers for keyframe effects in each region, numbered 1 to 99.

#### P-Bus and Device registers

There are 250 registers for P-Bus and Device1 to Device12 in each region, numbered 1 to 250.

## Work register

This is a temporary register used when editing keyframes. When you recall an effect, it is read from the effect register into the work register, and when you save, the contents of the work register are written to the effect register.

## Master timeline registers

There are 99 master timeline registers, numbered 1 to 99, for each control panel. They store keyframe effect regions and the register numbers saved in the regions.

## Snapshot registers

These are registers for snapshots, and there are 99, numbered 1 to 99 for each region.

## Master snapshot registers

There are 99 master timeline registers, numbered 1 to 99, for each control panel. They store snapshot regions and the register numbers saved in the regions.

---

# Overview of Keyframes

A keyframe represents an instantaneous state of an image, which can be saved and recalled for reuse.

---

## Effects

By arranging a number of keyframes on the time axis, and interpolating between successive keyframes, you can create a result in which there is a continuous change from each keyframe to the next. This result is called an effect. You can save the sequence of keyframes representing a single effect in a register ([⌘ p. 144](#)). Then by recalling this register, you can replay the same effect.

---

## Saving and Recalling Effects

To create a new effect, first recall an empty register, then create the keyframes one at a time in this register. To run an effect, it is also necessary to set the time and the path. To edit an existing effect, recall the register holding the effect, then make the changes.

When you have finished creating or editing the effect, save it in the recalled register or another specified register.

### Auto save function

When you recall an effect, the currently recalled effect is automatically saved in a register. This is called the auto save function. You can disable this function in a Setup menu.

---

## Effect Attributes

An individual effect may also have attached special conditions relating to switcher operation when the effect is recalled. These conditions are called “attributes” of the effect, and can be added when the keyframe effect is saved or recalled.

### Types of attribute

**Effect dissolve:** The transition from the state before the effect recall to the state at the effect start point is carried out smoothly, by a dissolve. The dissolve duration can be set in the Effect menu.

### Temporary attributes

When a keyframe is recalled, independently of the attributes held in the register, you temporarily enable or disable attributes. These are called “temporary attributes.” These temporary attributes are set when the keyframe effect is recalled.

---

## Effect Editing

For editing operations such as to insert, delete, or modify a keyframe, it is necessary to stop the effect at the corresponding point on the time axis. This is termed an “edit point.”

You can edit either on a keyframe within the effect, or at any point between keyframes.

**Insert:** Inserts the current image as a keyframe. Inserting a keyframe in an existing effect may change the duration of the effect ([⌘ p. 146](#)).

**Modify:** Modifies a keyframe. You can modify a single keyframe or a range of keyframes in the effect together.

**Delete:** Deletes a keyframe. You can delete a single keyframe or a range of keyframes in the effect together.

Deleting keyframes from an effect reduces the duration of the effect ([⌘ p. 147](#)).

After deleting a keyframe, you can reinsert the keyframe with a paste operation.

**Copy:** Copies a keyframe. You can copy a single keyframe or a range of keyframes in the effect together.

**Paste:** Pastes the keyframe last copied or deleted anywhere within the effect.

**Pause:** You can set a pause on a particular keyframe, so that when the effect is run it pauses on this keyframe. You can make this setting on any number of keyframes. To restart the paused effect, repeat the operation to run the effect.

**KF Loop:** Executes the effect the specified number of times through the keyframes in the specified range.

**Undo an edit operation:** Undoes the effect of the last operation to insert, modify, delete, or paste a keyframe.

## Duration modes

In keyframe editing, there are two duration modes; switch between them in the Flexi Pad (☞ p. 158).

**Variable duration mode:** In this mode, inserting or deleting a keyframe increases or reduces the duration.

**Constant duration mode:** In this mode, inserting or deleting a keyframe does not change the duration. This is useful for keyframe editing of an effect with a fixed duration.

In the variable and constant duration modes, the keyframes to which a modify operation applies, and the effect of a paste operation are different.

## Difference in keyframes to which a modify operation applies

Effect position	Variable duration mode	Constant duration mode
<b>On a keyframe</b>	Applies to currently selected keyframe	Applies to currently selected keyframe
<b>Between two keyframes</b>	Applies to previous keyframe	Modify operation not possible <sup>a)</sup>

a) A new keyframe is inserted at the effect position.

## Difference in the effect of a paste operation

**Variable duration mode:** The copied keyframe is inserted at the specified position.

**Constant duration mode:** The copied keyframe is written over the specified position.

## Time Settings

### Keyframe duration and effect duration

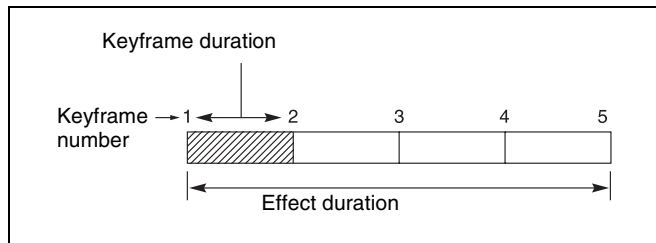
You can determine the execution time of an effect by setting either the keyframe duration or the effect duration.

**Keyframe duration:** This is the time from the keyframe to the next keyframe. You can set this time in the Flexi Pad (☞ p. 159).

In constant duration mode (☞ p. 146), it is not possible to change the keyframe duration setting.

**Effect duration:** This is the total execution time of the effect, from the first keyframe to the last. You can set this time in the Flexi Pad (☞ p. 159).

When you change the effect duration, the keyframe duration for each keyframe in the effect is automatically recalculated proportionally.



Keyframe duration and effect duration

The effect duration may also be changed by inserting or deleting keyframes.

## Changes in the effect duration caused by inserting a keyframe

- When the effect is stopped on a keyframe, inserting a keyframe increases the effect duration by the duration of the inserted keyframe.
- When the effect is stopped between two keyframes, inserting a keyframe does not change the effect duration.

### Notes

In constant duration mode (☞ p. 146), the duration of the current keyframe is reduced to zero, and the new keyframe is inserted with the previous duration of the current keyframe. Thus the effect duration does not change.

Insertion position	Change in effect duration
Insertion before the first keyframe	
Insertion between two keyframes	
Insertion at an existing keyframe	
Insertion at the last keyframe	

Keyframe insertion position and the change in effect duration

## Changes in the effect duration caused by deleting a keyframe

- When the effect is stopped on a keyframe, a delete operation deletes the keyframe, and reduces the effect duration by the duration of the deleted keyframe.
- When the effect is stopped between two keyframes, a delete operation deletes the preceding keyframe, and reduces the effect duration by the duration of the deleted keyframe.

### Notes

In constant duration mode ([p. 146](#)), the duration of the keyframe before the deleted keyframe is increased by the duration of the deleted keyframe. Thus the effect duration does not change.

Deletion position	Change in effect duration
Deletion of the first keyframe	
Deletion of an intermediate keyframe	
Deletion between two keyframes	
Deletion of the last keyframe	

Keyframe deletion position and the change in effect duration

## Delay setting

You can set the delay from the time of executing an operation to run the effect, and the effect actually starting (that is, the delay until the first keyframe). You make this setting in the Flexi Pad.

Note that changing the delay does not alter the duration of the effect.

## Paths

The term “path” refers to the specification of how interpolation is carried out from one keyframe to the next. Images are interpolated from an edit point to the next one according to the path setting.

For details about the path setting procedure, see [“Path Setting” \(p. 159\)](#).

## Switcher path settings

Carry out path settings in the Key Frame menu. For each menu, the following settings are available.

### M/E-1 and P/P menus

Item	Paths that can be set
<b>M/E-1, P/P All</b>	For each M/E and PGM/PST, path settings for the following items are made simultaneously.
<b>Key1 to Key4</b>	Overall path settings for items relating to keys 1 to 4 are made simultaneously.
<b>Key1 All to Key4 All</b>	Overall path settings for items relating to keys 1 to 4 are made simultaneously.
<b>Source</b>	Key source path for keys 1 to 4
<b>Fill</b>	Key fill path for keys 1 to 4
<b>Proc</b>	Proc path for keys 1 to 4
<b>Trans</b>	Transition path for keys 1 to 4
<b>Bkgd/Util</b>	Overall path settings for items relating to the background and utility buses are made simultaneously.
<b>Bkgd/Util All</b>	Overall path settings for items relating to the background and utility buses are made simultaneously.
<b>Bkgd A</b>	Path for background A
<b>Bkgd B</b>	Path for background B
<b>Util 1</b>	Path for utility
<b>Wipe/DME Wipe</b>	Overall path settings for items relating to wipes and DME wipes are made simultaneously.
<b>Wipe/DME Wipe All</b>	Overall path settings for items relating to wipes and DME wipes are made simultaneously.
<b>Wipe</b>	Path for wipes
<b>DME Wipe</b>	Path for DME wipes
<b>Trans</b>	-
	Transition path for each M/E and PGM/PST bank

### User1 to User8 menus

The items that can be adjusted depend on the settings in the Setup menu.






For details, see [“Setting User Regions” \(p. 241\)](#).

Item	Paths that can be set
<b>User1 All to User8 All</b>	Overall path settings for the following items for each “User” are made simultaneously.
<b>FM Still Store</b>	Overall path settings for frame memory freeze image output are made simultaneously.
<b>FM Still Store All</b>	Overall path settings for frame memory freeze image output are made simultaneously.
<b>FM Still Store 1 to 8</b>	Paths for frame memory freeze image outputs 1 to 8
<b>Aux</b>	Overall path settings for AUX buses are made simultaneously.
<b>Aux All</b>	Overall path settings for AUX buses are made simultaneously.
<b>Aux 1 to 24</b>	Paths for Aux 1 to 24





Item	Paths that can be set
<b>Color Bkgd</b>	Overall path settings for color backgrounds are made simultaneously.
<b>Color Bkgd All</b>	
<b>Color Bkgd 1</b>	Paths for color background 1
<b>Color Bkgd 2</b>	Paths for color background 2

## Types of path



### Path types for Curve

-  **OFF:** Executing the effect causes no change.
-  **Step:** There is no interpolation between keyframes, so that the effect parameters are updated each time a keyframe is passed.
-  **Linear:** Linear interpolation between keyframes, resulting in constant speed movement.
-  **S-Curve:** The rate of change accelerates and decelerates before and after a keyframe, so that the rate of change is maximum midway between two keyframes.
-  **Spline:** The effect follows a smooth curved path from each keyframe to the next.

### Path types for Hue

-  **CW:** The hue changes in a clockwise direction as seen on a Vectorscope.
-  **CCW:** The hue changes in a counterclockwise direction as seen on a Vectorscope.
-  **Short:** The hue changes in whichever of the clockwise and counterclockwise directions is shorter.
-  **Long:** The hue changes in whichever of the clockwise and counterclockwise directions is longer.

### Path types for Xpt

-  **Xpt Hold off:** When replaying a keyframe, change the inputs to the settings saved in memory.
-  **Xpt Hold on:** When replaying a keyframe, do not change the inputs.

## Effect Execution

By means of the [RUN] button in the Flexi Pad, you can play an effect as a continuously varying image. This is referred to as effect execution.

### Range of execution

Each time the [RUN] button is pressed, the range of execution of the effect is from timecode 01:00:00:00 or the current time (the position at which the current effect is stopped) to the end point of the effect. However, if there is a pause set on a keyframe, the execution range is up to that point. Pressing the [RUN] button again resumes the effect, which then runs to the next pause point or the end of the effect.

## Run mode setting

You can select from the following run modes for when the effect is executed.

**DIRECTION:** Specifies the effect execution direction.

**STOP NEXT KF:** Runs the effect, and stops at the next keyframe.

**EFFECT LOOP:** Repeats the effect in an endless loop. You make these settings in the Flexi Pad.

For details, [☞ “Setting the Run Mode” \(p. 161\)](#).

## Master Timelines

You can save the regions selected for a keyframe effect and the register numbers saved in the regions in a master timeline register so that operation can be applied to two or more regions at a time.

Master timeline registers can be saved or recalled using the Flexi Pad or a menu operation.

For details, [☞ “Creating and Saving a Master Timeline” \(p. 162\)](#).

## Sequence of Keyframe Operations

The following table shows the principal operations involved in the sequence from creating keyframes to executing an effect. For details about each operation, see the page number in parenthesis.

Recalling a register ([☞ p. 150](#))

To create a new effect, recall an empty register; to edit an effect, open the register containing it.



Specifying the region and edit points ([☞ p. 152](#))

Select the region in which editing applies, and set the edit points.



Creating and editing keyframes ([☞ p. 153](#))

Create the keyframes that make up the effect, using operations to create, insert, modify, or delete keyframes.



Time settings ([☞ p. 159](#))

Set the overall duration of the effect or the duration of each keyframe.



Path setting ([☞ p. 159](#))

Set the type of interpolation used between successive keyframes.



Executing effects ([☞ p. 161](#))

This provides a smooth effect, based on the time and path settings.



Saving effects ([☞ p. 162](#))

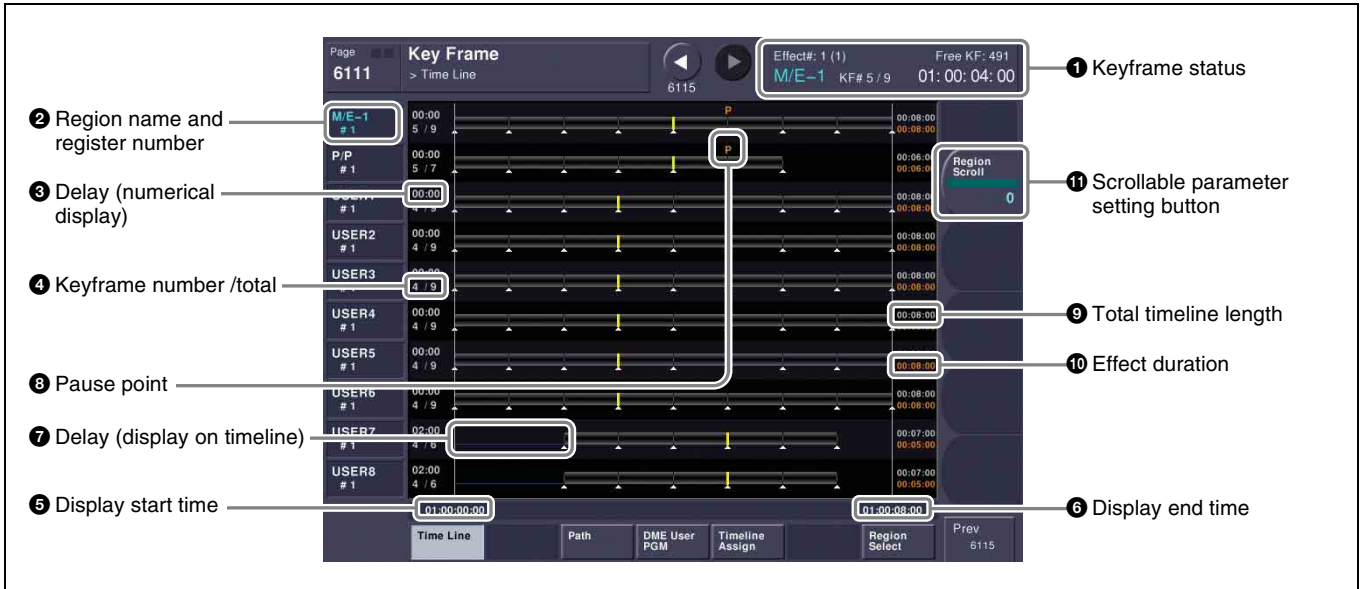
Save a completed effect in a register.

# Displaying the Timeline Menu

By displaying the Key Frame >Time Line menu (6111), you can view keyframe effects on the timeline for each region, and the associated information.

## Interpreting the Timeline Menu

The menu screen consists of the following principal parts.



### 1 Keyframe status

This shows the region name, register number, register name, number of remaining keyframes, current position and timecode with regard to the reference region.

### 2 Region name and register number

This shows the region name and the number of the register recalled in this region. The display color indicates the region selection as follows.

- Blue:** Reference region
- White:** Selected region
- Gray:** Not selected region

### 3 Delay (numerical display)

This shows the delay between carrying out an effect operation, and the start of the actual effect.

### 4 Keyframe number / total

This shows the number of the keyframe at the cursor position, and the total number of keyframes in the register.

### 5 Display start time

This shows the timecode value for the timeline display start point.

### 6 Display end time

This shows the timecode value for the timeline display end point.

### 7 Delay (display on timeline)

When a delay is set, the interval is shown by a blue line.

### 8 Pause point

A “P” appears where a pause is set.

### 9 Total timeline length

The total time of delays and effect duration appears in white.

### 10 Effect duration

The total duration of the effect appears in orange.

### 11 Scrollable parameter setting button

This button is used when scrolling the screen. When the target region timeline is not displayed on the screen, place the cursor over the parameter setting button and turn the mouse scroll wheel.

## Settings in the Timeline Menu

### Selecting the region to be displayed

The Timeline menu shows a timeline for each region, but you can also restrict the regions to be shown.

### Recalling the Timeline Assign menu

- 1 Open the Key Frame >Timeline Assign menu (6115).

The right of the status area shows a list of the regions (including the global region) assigned to the region selection buttons in the Flexi Pad. The left shows the regions in order of precedence, and whether each region is shown on the Timeline menu.

### Deciding which regions appear on the timeline

In the Timeline Assign menu, press [Active Region], toggling it on or off.

**On:** The regions for which the region selection buttons in the Flexi Pad are lit are shown in the precedence order (☞ *p. 150*) set in this menu, followed by the regions for which the buttons are off, in the same order.

**Off:** The regions appear according to the precedence order (☞ *p. 150*) and display on/off setting (☞ *p. 150*) set in this menu.

### Deciding the precedence order for timeline display

To change the precedence order, insert and delete regions in the list, in the desired order.

- 1 In the Timeline Assign menu, select the desired precedence order position and the region you want to insert.

- 2 In the <Priority> group, press [Insert].

This inserts the selected region before the specified precedence order.

If the inserted region is already present in a different precedence order, it is deleted from that precedence order.

- 3 To delete a region from the precedence order, select the precedence assigned to the region.

- 4 In the <Priority> group, press [Delete].

This deletes the selected region from the precedence order list.

## Setting the display of regions in the Timeline menu on or off

When [Active Region] is off, to select which regions are displayed in the Timeline menu, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the Timeline Assign menu, select the region.
- 2 For no display, press [Display], turning it off. To display, press once more, turning it on.

When [Active Region] is off, regions with the “Display Off” setting are not displayed in the Timeline menu.

### To return to the default precedence order and timeline menu display settings

Press [Default] in the <Priority> group.

## Recalling a Register

Use the Flexi Pad to recall a register. For each region there are 99 registers dedicated to keyframes, numbered from 1 to 99.

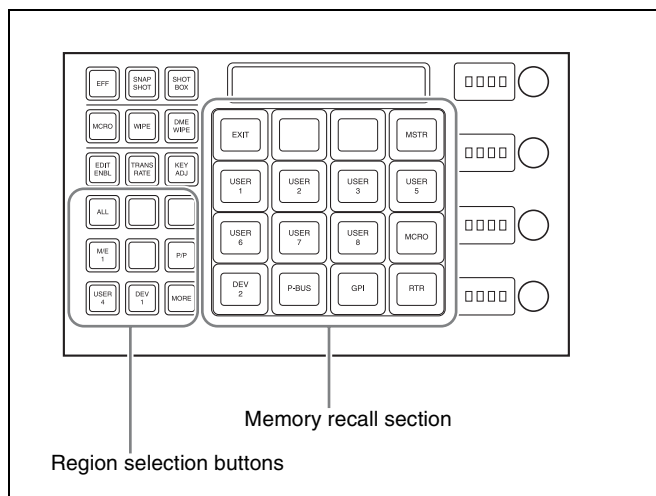
For details about regions and registers, ☞ “Regions” (*p. 144*) and ☞ “Registers” (*p. 144*).

### Selecting regions in the Flexi Pad

Press a region selection button or a button in the memory recall section to select a region.

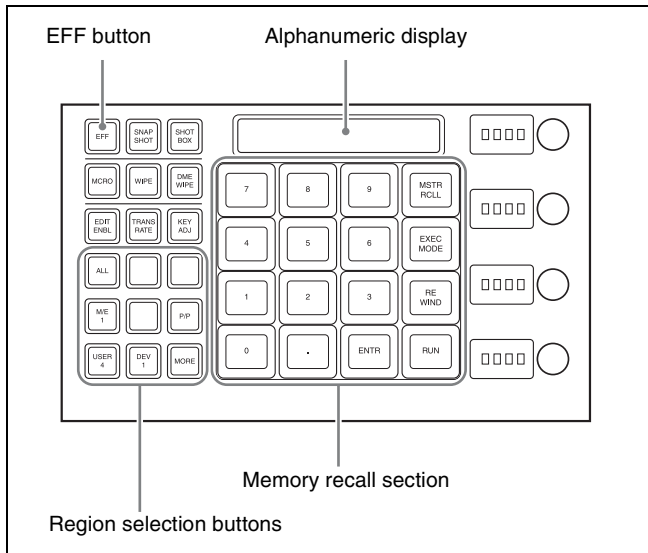
If using buttons in the memory recall section, press the [MORE] button to display the region selection buttons in the memory recall section.

For details about assigning region selection buttons in the Flexi Pad, ☞ “Assigning Regions to Region Selection Buttons in the Flexi Pad” (*p. 220*).



Pressing the [MORE] button or the [EXIT] button in the memory recall section restores the memory recall section to the previous screen.

## Recalling a register from the Flexi Pad



- 1 In the Flexi Pad, press the [EFF] button, turning it on.
- 2 Press the button corresponding to the region you want to select, turning it on.

You can select more than one button.

- [M/E1], [P/P]: Selects the M/E-1 and PGM/PST regions, respectively.
- [USER 1] to [USER 8]: Selects the User regions.
- [PBUS]: Selects P-Bus.
- [GPI]: Selects GPI.
- [MCRO]: Selects Macro.
- [DEV 1] to [DEV 12]: Selects devices.
- [ALL]: Selects all regions.
- [MSTR]: Selects the master timeline ([“Creating and Saving a Master Timeline in the Flexi Pad” \(p. 162\)](#)).

For details about the method of region selection, [“Selecting regions in the Flexi Pad” \(p. 150\)](#).

### Notes

The regions that can be selected simultaneously are those assigned to the region selection buttons and the memory recall section buttons ([p. 220](#)). When [MSTR] and other regions are selected simultaneously, the master timeline takes precedence.

The first button pressed is lit green as the reference region. Subsequently pressed buttons turn amber for the region select buttons and yellow for the memory recall section buttons.

Pressing one of the amber or yellow lit buttons, while holding down the [EFF] button, turns the button green to indicate its corresponding region as the new reference region.

For details about the precedence order for becoming the reference region, [“Reference region” \(p. 144\)](#).

The alphanumeric display shows the name of the reference region and the number of the register previously recalled for that region.

- 3 Enter the number of the register to be recalled with the numeric keypad buttons.

To search for an empty register, instead of entering a number, press the [.] (period) button. To search for an empty register common to all currently selectable regions, press the [.] button again.

To search for an empty register in the 100 range, press [1], [0], [0], [.] (period) in this order.

To search for an empty register in the 200 range, press [2], [0], [0], [.] (period) in that order.

The entered register number or corresponding register number appears in the alphanumeric display. If the number is followed by a letter “e” or “E,” this indicates the following.

- e: Indicates the selected register is empty for the regions selected in step 2.
- E: Indicates that the corresponding register is empty in all selectable regions.

- 4 Press the [ENTR] button.

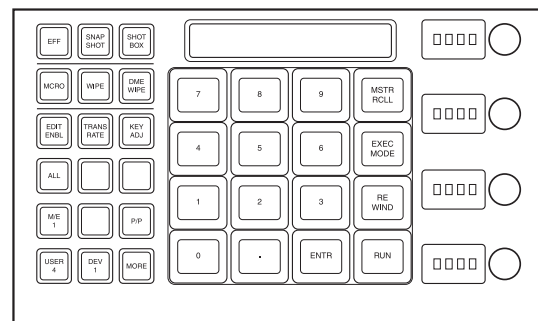
This recalls the specified register.

When the master timeline is recalled, the region selection buttons light according to the saved region information.

### To recall the master timeline

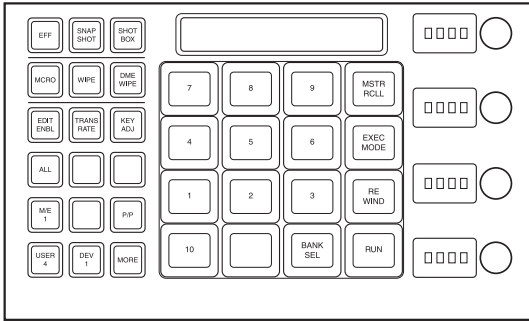
- 1 In the Flexi Pad, press the [EFF] button, turning it on.

This switches the memory recall section to effect operation mode.



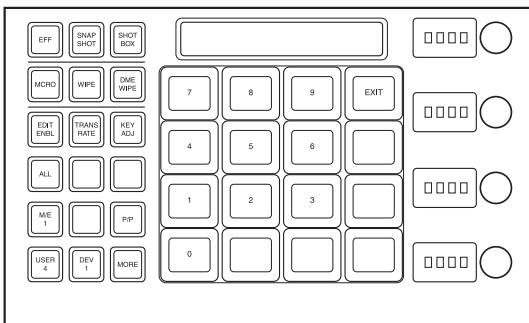
- 2 Press the [MSTR RCLL] button.

This switches the memory recall section to the master timeline recall mode.



**3** Press the [BANK SEL] button.

This switches the memory recall section to the bank selection mode.



**4** Press the number of the desired bank.

This selects the bank, and the buttons in the memory recall section show the register states as follows.

- Lit yellow:** Last recalled register
- Lit orange:** Register containing data
- Off:** Register in which nothing is saved

**5** Press the number of the desired register.

The button you pressed lights yellow, and the master timeline is recalled. The alphanumeric display shows the selected register number.

## Specifying the Region and Edit Points

### Selecting the Region in which Editing Applies

#### Selecting by control panel

Select the region in which the editing is applied by the effect consisting of keyframes, using the region selection buttons in the Flexi Pad.

For details about the method of region selection, see [“Selecting regions in the Flexi Pad” \(p. 150\)](#).

#### Selecting by menus

This is convenient for selecting some of the regions assigned to the Flexi Pad, or changing the reference region.

#### Notes

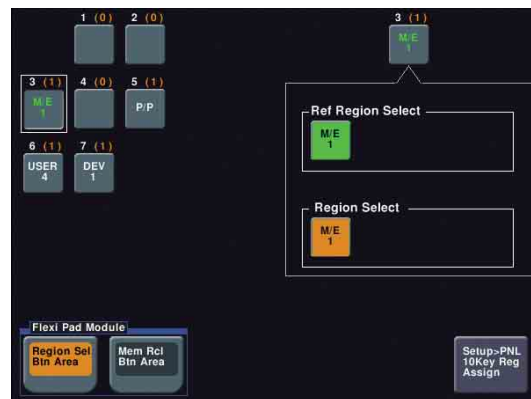
The function of region selection buttons in the Flexi Pad is linked to the menu. If you carry out region selection by pressing a region selection button, then all the regions assigned to that button are selected.

**1** Open the Key Frame >Region Select menu (6117).

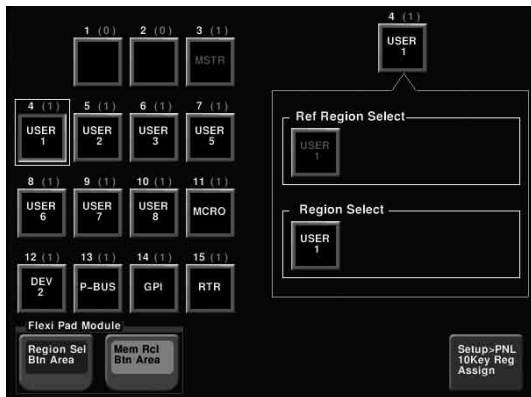
On the left of the status area, region selection buttons appear.

You can switch the display of regions between those assigned to the region selection buttons in the Flexi Pad or the memory recall buttons by pressing the [Region Sel Btn Area] or [Mem Rcl Btn Area] button, respectively, in the <Flexi Pad Module> group.

#### Selection screen for regions assigned to region selection buttons



## Selection screen for regions assigned to buttons in the memory recall section



Depending on the region selection state, the following indications appear.

**Green text:** Indicates that the assigned regions include the reference region.

**Orange text:** Indicates that one of the assigned regions is selected.

**White text:** Indicates that no assigned region is selected.

When any one or more of the regions assigned to the region selection buttons is not selected, a red bar appears within the button indication.

- 2 Press a button indication on the left of the status area, to select the button you want to assign.

The regions currently assigned to the button you pressed appear on the right side of the status area.

- 3 In the <Region Select> group, press the button for the region you want to select, turning it on.

- 4 In the <Ref Region Select> group, press the button indication you want to make the reference region.

The button you pressed lights green.

## Specifying an Edit Point

Use one of the following operations in the Flexi Pad.

For details about Flexi Pad operations, see [“Keyframe Creation and Editing in the Flexi Pad” \(p. 153\)](#).

- To move the edit point to the keyframe immediately after the current time (the position at which the effect is currently stopped), press the [>>> NEXT] button.
- To move the edit point to the keyframe immediately before the current time, press the [<< PREV] button.
- To move the edit point to a keyframe specified by number, press the [GOTO KF] button, then enter the keyframe number with the numeric keypad, and press the [ENTR] button to confirm.

- To move the edit point to a specified timecode, press the [GOTO TC] button, then enter the timecode value, and press the [ENTR] button to confirm.

### To enter a difference value

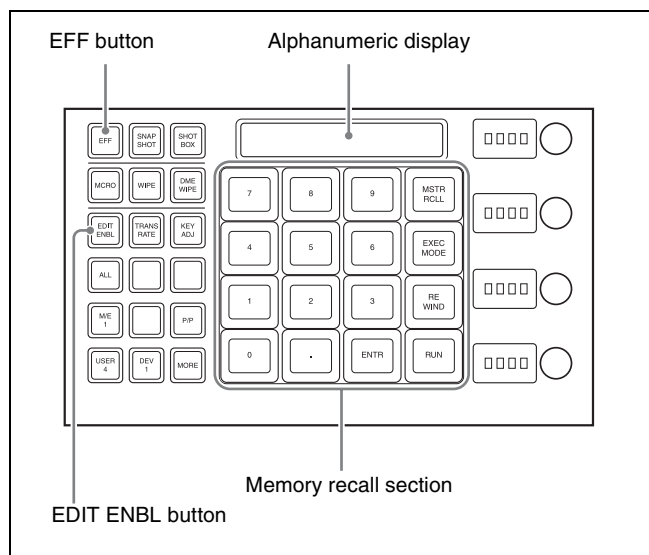
When moving to a point specified with the [GOTO KF] button or [GOTO TC] button, you can also enter the difference from the current keyframe number or timecode value.

Press the [+/-] button, and enter the difference, then press the [TRIM] button. Each time you press the [+/-] button, it toggles between plus (+) and minus (-).

## Creating and Editing Keyframes

### Keyframe Creation and Editing in the Flexi Pad

In the Flexi Pad, press the [EFF] button to switch to effect operation mode, then press the [EDIT ENBL] button. The [EDIT ENBL] button lights up, and the memory recall section switches to effect editing mode.



In effect editing mode, the memory recall section is composed of two pages. You use the buttons displayed on each page to create and edit keyframes.

## Page 1 button display



- When the [PAGE 1/2] button is pressed, the display switches to page 2.

## Page 2 button display



- When the [PAGE 2/2] button is pressed, the display switches to page 1.

## Creation

### Creating new keyframes

To create new keyframes, recall an empty register and then use the following procedure to create and insert each new keyframe.

- 1 Press the [EFF] button, then press the [EDIT ENBL] button, turning it on.

This switches the memory recall section to effect editing mode.

- 2 Create the image you want to be the first keyframe.

- 3 Press the [INS] button.

This takes the current image as the first keyframe. You can make a setting in the Setup menu so that when you recall an empty register, the system state at that point is automatically captured as the first keyframe.

- 4 Create the image you want to be the next keyframe.

- 5 Press the [INS] button.

This inserts the current image as the second keyframe after the first keyframe.

Repeat steps **4** and **5** to create the required number of keyframes.

### To insert a new keyframe before an existing keyframe

Hold down the [SHFT] button and press the [INS] button, to insert a new keyframe before the current keyframe.

## Insertion

### Inserting keyframes

To insert a keyframe in an existing effect, use the following procedure.

- 1 Press the [EFF] button, then press the [EDIT ENBL] button, turning it on.
- 2 Stop the effect at the desired edit point.
- 3 Create the image for the keyframe you want to insert.
- 4 Press the [INS] button.

When the edit point is on a keyframe, to insert the new keyframe before the existing keyframe, hold down the [SHFT] button and press the [INS] button. This inserts the current image as the new keyframe. Inserting a keyframe may change the total duration of the effect.

For details, [☞ “Time Settings” \(p. 146\)](#).

## Modification

### Modifying keyframes

- 1 Press the [EFF] button, then press the [EDIT ENBL] button, turning it on.

- 2 Stop the effect at the desired edit point.

When the edit point is on a keyframe, this is what you modify. If the edit point is between two keyframes, the previous keyframe is what you modify.

#### Notes

In constant duration mode ([☞ p. 146](#)), modification is only possible when the edit point is on a keyframe.

- 3 Using image transformations or adding special effects, modify the keyframe.
- 4 Press the [MOD] button.

### Modifying more than one keyframe simultaneously

You can modify a number of keyframes simultaneously. There are three different operating procedures.

- Modifying from the edit point to a particular keyframe
- Modifying all keyframes in the effect
- Modifying the keyframes in a specified range

The different procedures for these cases are now described.

#### To modify from the edit point to a particular keyframe

- 1 Press the [EFF] button, then press the [EDIT ENBL] button, turning it on.
- 2 Stop the effect at the first keyframe of the range to be modified.
- 3 Carry out the necessary modifications.
- 4 Press the [FROM TO] button.

This switches the memory recall section to numeric keypad entry mode. The alphanumeric display shows the current keyframe number and the indication “TO.”

- 5 Enter the number of the last keyframe to be modified from the numeric keypad and press the [ENTR] button to confirm.

The [FROM TO] button lights green.

- 6 Press the [MOD] button. Alternatively, hold down the [SHFT] button and press the [MOD] button.

*For the difference in the result, see “Differences in the changes when a number of keyframes are modified” (p. 155).*

#### To modify all keyframes in the effect

- 1 Press the [EFF] button, then press the [EDIT ENBL] button, turning it on.
- 2 Carry out the necessary modifications on any keyframe.
- 3 Press the [ALL] button, turning it on green.

- 4 Press the [MOD] button. Alternatively, hold down the [SHFT] button and press the [MOD] button.

*For the difference in the result, see “Differences in the changes when a number of keyframes are modified” (p. 155).*

#### To modify the keyframes in a specified range

- 1 Press the [EFF] button, then press the [EDIT ENBL] button, turning it on.
- 2 Stop the effect at any keyframe within the range to be modified.
- 3 Carry out the necessary modifications.
- 4 Press the [FROM TO] button.

This switches the memory recall section to numeric keypad entry mode. The alphanumeric display shows the current keyframe number and the indication “TO.”

- 5 Carry out the following operations.
  - To set the first keyframe in the range to be modified, press the [CLR] button, then enter the keyframe number using the numeric keypad buttons, and press the [ENTR] button to confirm.
  - To set the last keyframe in the range to be modified, enter the keyframe number using the numeric keypad, and press the [ENTR] button to confirm.

The [FROM TO] button lights green.

- 6 Press the [MOD] button. Alternatively, hold down the [SHFT] button and press the [MOD] button.

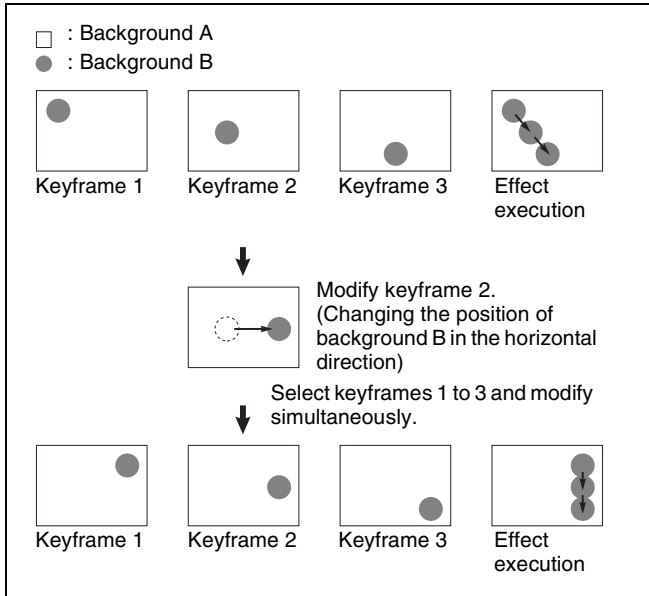
*For the difference in the result, see “Differences in the changes when a number of keyframes are modified” (p. 155).*

### Differences in the changes when a number of keyframes are modified

When you select a number of keyframes to modify, and press the [MOD] button alone or in combination with the [SHFT] button, the result of the operation differs as shown below.

#### Modifying the keyframes by pressing the [MOD] button alone

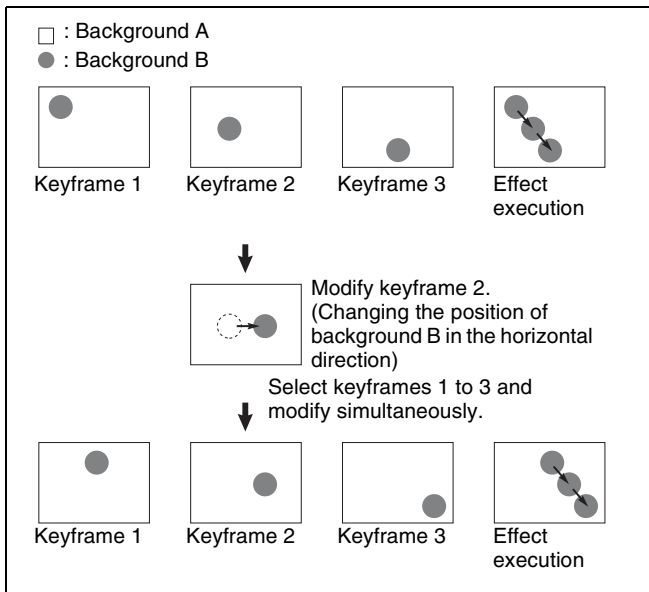
The modified parameter values are taken as absolute values, and applied to all of the selected keyframes.

**Result:**

The horizontal position of background B in keyframes 1 and 3 is now the same as that in keyframe 2. In all keyframes, the vertical position remains unchanged as the parameter is not changed.

**Modifying the keyframes by holding down the [SHIFT] button and pressing the [MOD] button**

The modified parameter values are taken as relative values, which modify all of the selected keyframes.

**Result:**

Background B of keyframes 1 and 3 is moved in the horizontal direction by the same amount as in keyframe 2.

## Deletion

### Deleting keyframes

**1** Press the [EFF] button, then press the [EDIT ENBL] button, turning it on.

**2** Stop the effect at the desired edit point.

When the edit point is on a keyframe, this is what you delete. If the edit point is between two keyframes, the previous keyframe is what you delete.

**3** To delete a number of keyframes in a single operation, press the [FROM TO] button or the [ALL] button.

If you press the [FROM TO] button, specify the keyframe range.

*For details about how to specify a range of keyframes, see “Modifying more than one keyframe simultaneously” (p. 155).*

**4** Press the [DEL] button.

This deletes the keyframe.

Deleting a keyframe reduces the total duration of the effect.

In constant duration mode (see p. 146), however, the duration does not change.

*For details, see “Changes in the effect duration caused by deleting a keyframe” (p. 147).*

## Movement

### Moving keyframes

**1** Press the [EFF] button, then press the [EDIT ENBL] button, turning it on.

**2** Stop the effect at the edit point you want to move.

**3** To move a number of keyframes in a single operation, press the [FROM TO] button and specify the keyframe range.

*For details about how to specify a range of keyframes, see “Modifying more than one keyframe simultaneously” (p. 155).*

**4** Press the [DEL] button.

This deletes the specified keyframe and stores it in the paste buffer.

- 5 Move the edit point to the position to which you want to move the keyframe.
- 6 Press the [PSTE] button.

This inserts the keyframe you have moved after the current keyframe.

In constant duration mode, the moved keyframe overwrites the edit point.

### To insert the moved keyframe before a keyframe

Hold down the [SHFT] button, and press the [PSTE] button to insert the moved keyframe before the current keyframe.

---

## Copying

### Copying keyframes

- 1 Press the [EFF] button, then press the [EDIT ENBL] button, turning it on.
- 2 Stop the effect at the edit point you want to copy.
- 3 To copy a number of keyframes in a single operation, press the [FROM TO] button or the [ALL] button.

If you press the [FROM TO] button, specify the keyframe range.

*For details about how to specify a range of keyframes, see “Modifying more than one keyframe simultaneously” (p. 155).*

- 4 Press the [COPY] button.  
This copies the specified keyframe and stores it in the paste buffer.
- 5 Move the edit point to the position where you want to insert the copied keyframe.
- 6 Press the [PSTE] button.  
This inserts the keyframe you have copied after the current keyframe.  
In constant duration mode, the copied keyframe overwrites the edit point.

### To insert the copied keyframe before a keyframe

Hold down the [SHFT] button, and press the [PSTE] button to insert the copied keyframe before the current keyframe.

---

## Pause

To apply a pause to a keyframe, use the following procedure.

- 1 Press the [EFF] button, then press the [EDIT ENBL] button, turning it on.
- 2 Stop the effect on the keyframe to which you want to apply a pause.
- 3 Press the [PAUS] button.

---

## Keyframe Loop (Repeated Execution of a Specified Range)

By setting the range of the loop within the effect, and the number of loop executions, you can execute the loop range repeatedly.

### Notes

It is only possible to set one keyframe loop for each region.

### Creating a new keyframe loop

To specify the loop range and loop count, carry out the following procedure.

- 1 Press the [EFF] button, then press the [EDIT ENBL] button, turning it on.
- 2 Stop the effect on the keyframe you want to make the first of the loop range (start point). (Here, by way of example, keyframe 2 is taken as the start point.)
- 3 Press the [KF LOOP] button.

This switches the memory recall section to numeric keypad entry mode.

The alphanumeric display shows the start point keyframe number.

FM 2 TO

The example shown means “from (keyframe) 2 to...,” where the end keyframe is to follow.

- 4 Use the numeric keypad to enter the number of the last keyframe in the loop range (end point). (Here, by way of example, keyframe 5 is the end point.)

FM 2 TO 5

- 5 Press the [ENTR] button to confirm the entry.

The display changes as follows, prompting you to enter the loop count.

COUNT

- 6** Enter the loop count. (Here, by way of example, “15” is entered.)

To specify a loop count, enter a number in the range 1 to 99.

To specify an endless loop, enter “0” (zero).

COUNT 15

- 7** Press the [ENTR] button to confirm the entry.

The start point, end point, and loop count that you have set are reflected in the Timeline menu. If you enter the loop count as “0” (endless loop), the count is shown as “inf” (infinity).

- 8** Press the [EXIT] button.

The [KF LOOP] button lights green.

### To change the keyframe loop settings

While the [KF LOOP] button is lit green, press it, turning it orange, and then change the loop range and count using the same procedure as in “*Creating a new keyframe loop*” (☞ p. 157).

### Executing a keyframe loop

Press the [RUN] button.

The set loop range is executed repeatedly for the set loop count number of times.

The total loop count and the number of loops remaining are displayed in the timeline menu. (If the loop count is infinite (inf), the remaining number is not shown.)

If the [REV] button is lit, the loop is played in the reverse order.

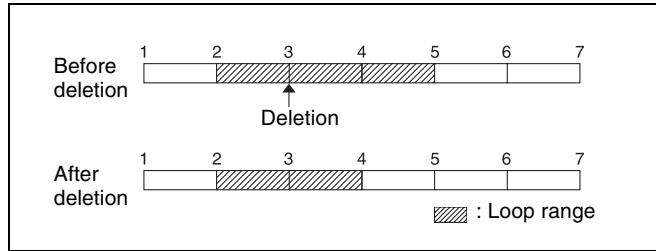
### Canceling keyframe loop execution

Press the [REWIND] button.

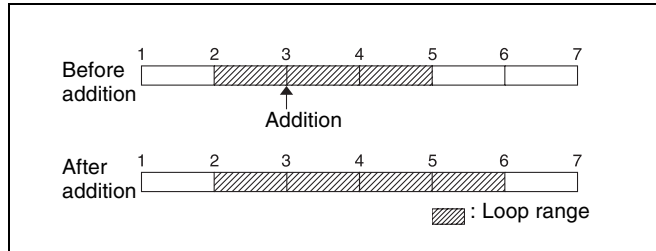
### Changes to the loop range caused by keyframe insertion/deletion

When a keyframe is inserted or deleted within the loop range, the loop range also changes. The following are examples.

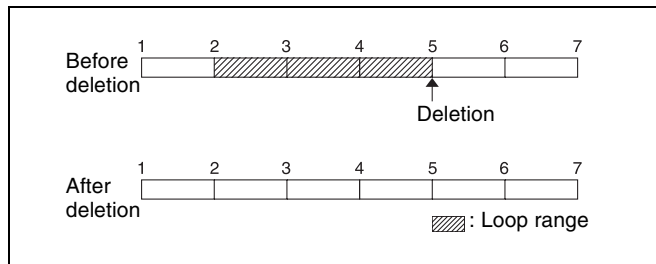
Example 1: If keyframe 3 is deleted, the loop end point moves forward as follows.



Example 2: If keyframe 3 is added, the end point keyframe number moves back.



Example 3: If the keyframe at the end of the loop range (the end point) is deleted, the keyframe loop settings are all cleared, as follows. The same occurs if the first keyframe in the loop range (the start point) is deleted.



## Undoing an Edit Operation

To undo a keyframe insert, modify, delete, or paste operation immediately after execution, press the [UNDO] button.

## Duration Mode Setting

There are two keyframe duration modes: variable duration mode, and constant duration mode in which the effect duration is fixed (☞ p. 146).

- To select variable duration mode, turn the [CNST DUR] button off.
- To select constant duration mode, turn the [CNST DUR] button on.

# Time Settings

You can determine the execution time of an effect by setting either the keyframe duration or the effect duration (☞ p. 146).

You make these settings in the Flexi Pad.

For details about Flexi Pad operations, ☞ “Keyframe Creation and Editing in the Flexi Pad” (p. 153).

## Setting the Keyframe Duration

- 1 Press the [EFF] button, then press the [EDIT ENBL] button, turning it on.
- 2 Stop the effect on the keyframe for which you want to set the duration.  
  
The time from this keyframe to the following keyframe is what you set.
- 3 Press the [KF DUR] button, turning it on.  
  
The alphanumeric display shows “KF DUR” followed by the duration of the current keyframe (seconds:frames).
- 4 Use the numeric keypad to enter the desired timecode value as a maximum of four digits.  
  
For example, to set 9 seconds and 20 frames, enter 920.  
You can also use the [TRIM] button to enter a difference value (☞ p. 153).
- 5 Press the [ENTR] button to confirm the entry.

### Notes

In addition to the above operation, the keyframe duration may also be automatically changed as a result of changing the effect duration.

For details, ☞ “Time Settings” (p. 146).

## Setting the Effect Duration

- 1 Press the [EFF] button, then press the [EDIT ENBL] button, turning it on.
- 2 Press the [EFF DUR] button, turning it on.  
  
The alphanumeric display shows “DUR” followed by the effect duration (minutes:seconds:frames).

- 3 Use the numeric keypad to enter the desired timecode value as a maximum of six digits.

For example, to set 3 minutes 7 seconds and 15 frames, enter 30715.

You can also use the [TRIM] button to enter a difference value (☞ p. 153).

- 4 Press the [ENTR] button.

### Notes

In addition to the above operation, the effect duration may also be changed as a result of inserting or deleting keyframes.

For details, ☞ “Time Settings” (p. 146).

## Delay Setting

- 1 Press the [EFF] button, then press the [EDIT ENBL] button, turning it on.
- 2 Press the [DLY] button, turning it on.  
  
The alphanumeric display shows “DELAY” followed by the current delay (minutes:seconds:frames).
- 3 Use the numeric keypad to enter the desired timecode value as a maximum of four digits.  
  
You can also use the [TRIM] button to enter a difference value (☞ p. 153).
- 4 Press the [ENTR] button to confirm the entry.

## Path Setting

The term “path” (☞ p. 147) refers to the specification of how interpolation is carried out from one keyframe to the next.

You set keyframe paths in the Key Frame >Path menu (6113).

## Basic Procedure for Path Settings

### Selecting the category

From the buttons in the function button area, select the category for which you want to make the setting.

**1st row:** Path settings for the switcher M/E-1 bank and PGM/PST bank

**2nd and 3rd rows:** Path settings for User1 to User8

A path cannot be set, even if a category is selected, using the [M/E-2] button on the 1st row or buttons on the 4th row.

## Making switcher path settings

This section describes an example using key 1 on the M/E-1 bank.

The area for the VF buttons shows the names of items.

A ► sign by a button indicates that pressing it opens a more detailed setting menu.

The status area shows the settings for Xpt, Hue, and Curve. However, depending on the item, these parameters may or may not be present.

### Notes

Whenever you set a path or modify its setting, be sure to press the [MOD] button in the Flexi Pad. The setting does not become effective unless the [MOD] button is pressed.



## Changing the path type for Curve

- 1 In the Key Frame >Path menu (6113), press [M/E-1].

The M/E-1 menu (6113.1) appears.

- 2 Press the Curve path type indication for the [Key1] item that you want to change.

A path selection window appears.

- 3 Press the indication for the desired path type, to select it.



**OFF:** Executing the effect causes no change.



**Step:** There is no interpolation between keyframes, so that the effect parameters are updated each time a keyframe is passed.



**Linear:** Linear interpolation between keyframes, resulting in constant speed movement.



**S-Curve:** The rate of change accelerates and decelerates before and after a keyframe, so that the rate of change is maximum midway between two keyframes.



**Spline:** The effect follows a smooth curved path from each keyframe to the next.

The status area reflects the selected path type.

At this point, depending on the setting for Curve, the effect for Hue and Xpt is also affected as shown in the following table. In the menu, the Hue and Xpt settings do not change, but the path type indication is dimmed out.

Curve setting	Hue change	Xpt change
OFF	Does not change	Hold
Stop	Changes as with the Step setting	Is not affected

- 4 If you selected [Spline] as the path type, set the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Tens	Spline interpolation tension
2	Bias	Spline interpolation bias
3	Cont	Spline interpolation continuity

## Changing the path type for Hue

- 1 In the Key Frame >Path >M/E-1 (6113.1), press the [Hue] path type indicator for [Key1].

A path selection window appears.

- 2 Press the indication for the desired path type, to select it.



**CW:** The hue changes in a clockwise direction as seen on a Vectorscope.



**CCW:** The hue changes in a counterclockwise direction as seen on a Vectorscope.



**Short:** The hue changes in whichever of the clockwise and counterclockwise directions is shorter.



**Long:** The hue changes in whichever of the clockwise and counterclockwise directions is longer.

## Changing the path type for Xpt

- 1 In the Key Frame >Path >M/E-1 (6113.1), press the [Xpt] path type indicator for [Key1].

A path selection window appears.

- 2 Press the indication for the desired path type, to select it.

**Xpt Hold off:** When replaying a keyframe, change the inputs to the settings saved in memory.

**Xpt Hold on:** When replaying a keyframe, do not change the inputs.

## Executing Effects

By means of the [RUN] button in the Flexi Pad, you can play an effect as a continuously varying image. This is referred to as effect execution (☞ p. 148).

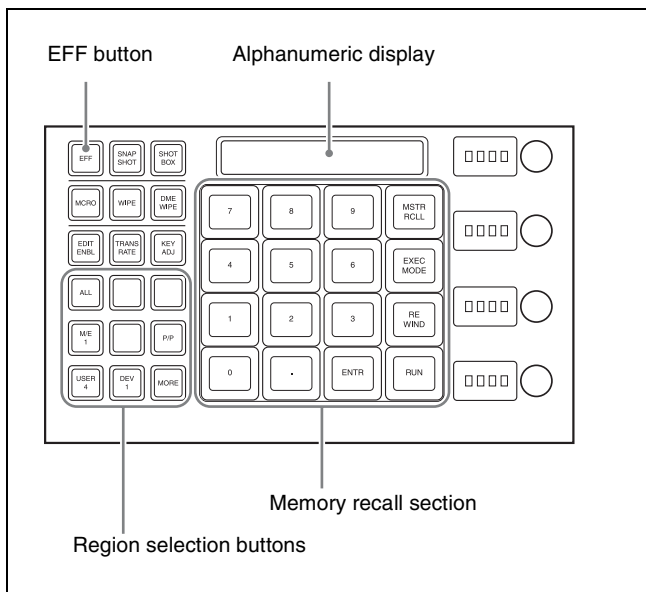
It is also possible to execute an effect from the device control block.

### Executing an Effect in the Flexi Pad

In the Flexi Pad, press the [EFF] button to switch to effect operation mode.

The [REWIND] button and [RUN] button are displayed in the memory recall section.

In addition, the alphanumeric display shows the number of the last recalled register.



You use the [REWIND] button and [RUN] button in the memory recall section to execute effects.

By pressing the [EXEC MODE] button to switch the memory recall section to run mode setting mode, you can set the operation mode when executing effects.

### Executing an effect automatically

**1** Press the region selection button corresponding to the region for which you want to execute, turning it on (☞ p. 151).

**2** Enter the number of the register in which the effect you want to execute is saved, and press the [ENTR] button.

This recalls the effect saved in the register.

**3** Press the [RUN] button.

The [RUN] button lights green and the effect is executed automatically.

### Executing an effect manually

In step **3** of the procedure in “*Executing an effect automatically*” (☞ p. 161), operate the fader lever in the transition control block.

### To use the transition control block fader lever as a keyframe fader

You can also assign the [KF] button functions to a transition type selection button in the transition control block (☞ p. 221).

Press the [KF] button, turning it on, to execute a keyframe effect with the fader lever.

#### Notes

- It is not possible for the [KF] button to be on for multiple banks (M/E or PGM/PST) at the same time. If you press the [KF] button in more than one bank, only the last button pressed remains on.
- If a macro is assigned to the transition control block fader lever, then while in use as a keyframe fader the macro is not executed.

### Moving to the first keyframe of the effect

Press the [REWIND] button.

### Setting the Run Mode

By pressing the [EXEC MODE] button to switch the memory recall section to run mode setting mode, you can set the operation mode when executing effects.

### Specifying the effect execution direction

To specify the effect execution direction, press the [NORM] button or the [REV] button, turning it on. To execute the effect so as to obtain the effects of the [NORM] and [REV] buttons alternately, press the [NORM/REV] button, turning it on.

**When the [NORM] button is lit:** The effect is executed in the direction from the first keyframe to the last keyframe.

**When the [REV] button is lit:** The effect is executed in the direction from the last keyframe to the first keyframe.

**When the [NORM/REV] button is lit:** Each time the effect is executed, the direction reverses.

## Executing an effect up to the next keyframe

- 1 Press the [STOP NEXT] button, turning it on.
- 2 Press the [RUN] button.  
This executes the effect as far as the next keyframe. When the [REV] button is lit, it is executed as far as the previous keyframe.

## Repeating an effect

- 1 Press the [EFF LOOP] button, turning it on.
- 2 Press the [RUN] button.  
This executes the effect repeatedly, from the first keyframe to the last keyframe. When the [REV] button is lit, the effect is executed in the reverse direction.
- 3 To stop the repeating effect, press the [EFF LOOP] button, turning it off, or press the [REWIND] button.

## Saving Effects

When you recall an effect, the currently recalled effect is automatically saved in a register. This is called the auto save function.

You can disable the auto save function in a Setup menu. By means of the following operation, you can also specify a register and save an effect in it.

### Saving an effect in a specified register

You make register settings in the Flexi Pad.

- 1 Press the [EFF] button, turning it on.  
This switches the memory recall section to effect operation mode.
- 2 Press the region selection button corresponding to the region for which you want to save the register, turning it on (☞ p. 151).
- 3 Press the [EDIT ENBL] button, turning it on.  
This switches the memory recall section to effect editing mode.

- 4 Press the [STOR] button.

- 5 Enter the register number to save with the numeric keypad buttons.

To search for an empty register, instead of entering a number, press the [.] (period) button. To search for an empty register common to all currently selectable regions, press the [.] button again.

To search for an empty register in the 100 range, press [1], [0], [0], [.] (period) in this order.

To search for an empty register in the 200 range, press [2], [0], [0], [.] (period) in that order.

The entered register number or corresponding register number appears in the alphanumeric display. If the number is followed by a letter “e” or “E,” this indicates the following.

**e:** Indicates the selected register is empty for the regions selected in step 2.

**E:** Indicates that the corresponding register is empty in all selectable regions.

- 6 Press the [ENTR] button.

This saves the effect in the specified register.

## Creating and Saving a Master Timeline

### Creating and Saving a Master Timeline in the Flexi Pad

#### Creating and saving a master timeline

You can save region information (information on any regions, including the register numbers associated with the regions) referred to as a master timeline in a dedicated register. By recalling that register, you can manipulate the regions and registers together.

#### Creating and saving a master timeline

- 1 Press the [EFF] button, turning it on.  
This switches the memory recall section to effect operation mode.
- 2 Recall the register number of the effect you want to save on the master timeline for each region (☞ p. 151).
- 3 Press the buttons for the regions you want to save on the master timeline, turning them on.

- 4** Press the region selection button [MSTR], turning it on.  
The display shows the number of the register last used for master timeline register operation.
- 5** Press the [EDIT ENBL] button, turning it on.  
This switches the memory recall section to effect editing mode.
- 6** Press the [STOR] button.
- 7** With the numeric keypad buttons, enter the number of the register in which you want to save the master timeline.  
To search for an empty register, instead of entering a number, press the [.] (period) button.  
The entered register number or corresponding register number appears in the alphanumeric display. If the number is followed by a letter “E,” the register is empty.
- 8** Press the [ENTR] button.  
The regions selected in step **3** and the register numbers recalled in those regions are saved in the master timeline register.

**Notes**

Saving the master timeline does not carry out a save of effects. Save the effects for each region first, then carry out the master timeline save.

**Changing a master timeline**

As an example, if you want to change the M/E-1 register from Effect 11 to Effect 15, use the following procedure.

- 1** Recall the master timeline register you want to change ([☞ p. 151](#)).  
This simultaneously recalls M/E-1 register 11 and P/P register 11, and the [M/E-1] and [P/P] region selection buttons light.
- 2** Press the region selection button [MSTR], turning it off.
- 3** Turn on only the button for the region you want to change (here, [M/E-1]), and recall the desired register (here, Effect 15).  
This recalls M/E-1 register 15, while on P/P register 11 remains selected.

- 4** Press the buttons for the regions you want to save on the master timeline (here, [M/E-1] and [P/P]), turning them on.
- 5** Press the region selection button [MSTR], turning it on.  
The alphanumeric display shows the register number last used for master timeline operation.
- 6** Press the [EDIT ENBL] button, turning it on.  
This switches the memory recall section to effect editing mode.
- 7** Press the [STOR] button.
- 8** With the numeric keypad buttons, enter the number of the register in which you want to save the master timeline, and press the [ENTR] button.  
This saves M/E-1 register 15 and P/P register 11 in the master timeline register.

---

**Creating and Saving a Master Timeline with the Menu**

- 1** Open the Effect >Master Timeline >Store menu (6211).  
The status area shows the master timeline register names, register lock status, register number for each region, and so on.
- 2** If necessary, press one of the following buttons in the status area to change the region display.  
**M/E, P/P:** Indicates assignment of M/E-1 (ME1), P/P (P/P).  
**User:** Shows the allocations for User 1 (USR1) to User 8 (USR8).  
**DEV1-8:** Indicates assignments for Device 1 (DEV1) to Device 8 (DEV8).  
**DEV9-12:** indicates assignments for Device9 (DEV9) to Device12 (DEV12).  
**Misc:** Indicates assignment for P-Bus (PBUS), GPI (GPI), and Macro (MCRO).
- 3** Select the register in which you want to save the master timeline.
- 4** Press [Edit].  
The Edit menu (6211.1) appears.  
You can also use the [Master Reg] parameter to select the master timeline register in this menu.  
The status area shows the status of each region in this master timeline.

**5** Select a region.

You can select more than one region.

To select all regions, press [ALL]. To select all switcher-related regions (M/E, P/P, User), press [SWR ALL].

**6** Press [Assign], turning it on.

If the selected register is locked, a confirmation message appears asking whether or not to cancel the operation. Press [OK] to return to the previous menu display without carrying out the registration.

If the operation is carried out, the region selected in step **5** is registered on the master timeline, and the parameters are now valid.

**7** Select the number of the effect register.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Effect Reg	Effect register number

**8** Repeat steps **5** to **7** as required to set all regions and register numbers to be saved on the master timeline.**9** In the <Store> group, press [Store].**To return to the state before saving the master timeline content**

In the <Store> group, press [Undo].

## Register Operations in the Menus

Using the Effect menu, you can carry out the following effect register operations.

- Effect Attribute Settings (☞ p. 164)
- Effect Status Display (☞ p. 164)
- Effect Register Editing (☞ p. 164)

Here, the menu for dedicated effect registers 1 to 99 is described as an example.

For registers for P-Bus and Device1 to Device12, carry out similar operations using VF6 (DEV/PBUS Effect 1-250).

### Effect Attribute Settings

#### Applying effect dissolve

To apply the “effect dissolve” attribute to a keyframe effect, use the following procedure.

**1** Open the Effect >Effect 1-99 >Attribute menu (6221).**2** Press the region display in the upper part of the list, and in the selection window select the region.

You can select more than one region.

To select all regions, press [ALL].

**3** Press [OK].**4** Select a register.

To select all registers, press [ALL].

**5** Press [Effect Dissolve], turning it on.**6** Set the duration.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
4	Eff Diss Duration	Dissolve duration

### Setting the duration for a temporary attribute

Set the following parameter to set the duration for a temporary attribute in the Flexi Pad.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
5	Temp Dur	Temporary attribute dissolve duration

### Effect Status Display

The Effect >Effect 1-99 menu displays the following information.

**Region name:** The selected region name appears in the upper part of the list.

**Register number**

**Register name**

**Write-protected status:** When the register is write-protected, a letter “L” appears.

**Empty status:** When the register is empty, a letter “E” appears.

### Effect Register Editing

You can carry out the following editing on effect registers and master timeline registers.

- **Lock:** Write-protect the contents of the register.
- **Copy:** Copy the contents of one register to another register.
- **Merge:** Merges the data of two registers. It is not possible to merge master timeline registers.
- **Move:** Move the contents of one register to another register.
- **Swap:** Swap the contents of two registers.
- **Delete:** Delete the contents of a register.

- **Name:** Attach a name to a register.

## Write-protecting the contents of the effect register

### Notes

It is not possible to write-protect an empty register.

- 1 Open the Effect >Effect 1-99 >Lock menu (6222).
- 2 Press the region display in the upper part of the list, and in the selection window select the region.  
  
You can select more than one region.  
To select all regions, press [ALL].
- 3 Press [OK].
- 4 Select a register.  
  
To select all registers, press [ALL].
- 5 Press [Lock], turning it on.

### To release the lock

Select the register you want to unlock, and press [Lock], turning it off.

## Copying, moving, and swapping data between effect registers

This section describes the procedure for copying, as an example. You can move or swap data using the similar procedure.

- 1 Open the Effect >Effect 1-99 >Copy/Merge menu (6223).  
  
The left side of the status area shows the register number of the copy source, and the right side shows the register number of the copy destination.
- 2 Press the region display in the upper part of the list, and in the selection window select the region.  
  
You can select more than one region.  
To select all regions, press [ALL].  
  
**Operation between regions**  
Operation between regions is possible in the following cases.
  - Between M/E-1 and P/P regions
  - Between two of the User1 to 8 regions having the same configuration
- 3 Press [OK].
- 4 Select the source and destination registers.

To select all registers, press [ALL].

- 5 To copy without transferring the name, in the Copy group, press [W/o Name], turning it on.
- 6 In the <Copy> group, press [Copy].  
  
This carries out the copy.  
If, for example, the copy destination register is write-protected or the same register is specified both as the copy source and destination registers, a confirmation message appears.  
Press [OK] to cancel the copy.

## Merging effect registers

- 1 Open the Effect >Effect 1-99 >Copy/Merge menu (6223).  
  
The left side of the status area shows a list for the register to be placed at the back when merged. The right side shows a list for the register to be placed at the front when merged.
- 2 Press the region display in the upper part of the list, and in the selection window select the region.  
  
You can select more than one region.  
To select all regions, press [ALL].
- 3 Press [OK].
- 4 Select the register to be at the back and the register to be at the front after the merge.
- 5 Press [Merge].

## Deleting data from effect registers

- 1 Open the Effect >Effect 1-99 >Delete menu (6226).
- 2 Press the region display in the upper part of the list, and in the selection window select the region.  
  
You can select more than one region.  
To select all regions, press [ALL].
- 3 Press [OK].
- 4 Select a register.  
  
To select all registers, press [ALL].
- 5 Press [Delete].

## Attaching a name to an effect register

- 1 Open the Effect >Effect 1-99 >Rename menu (6227).
- 2 Press the region display in the upper part of the list, and in the selection window select the region.  
  
You can select more than one region.  
To select all regions, press [ALL].
- 3 Press [OK].
- 4 Select a register.
- 5 Press [Rename].
- 6 Enter a name of not more than 8 characters, and press [Enter].

### Notes

The following names cannot be used:  
CON, PRN, AUX, CLOCK\$, NUL, COM0, COM1,  
COM2, COM3, COM4, COM5, COM6,  
COM7, COM8, COM9  
LPT0, LPT1, LPT2, LPT3, LPT4, LPT5, LPT6, LPT7,  
LPT8, LPT9

## Displaying a List of Effect Registers for Editing

You can display a list of effect registers including status information (whether data is present and so on), then carry out lock, copy, delete, and rename operations.

### Displaying the list of effect registers with status information

Press the menu title button at the top left of the Effect menu.

The Effect >Status menu (6200) appears.

The status area shows a list of effect registers (1 to 99).

### Register name display

For the same number, the register name for the M/E-1 region takes precedence.

If there is no data for the M/E-1 region, then the register name appears in the sequence P/P > User 1 to 8 > Device 1 to 12 > P-Bus > GPI > Macro.

### Indication colors

Each register has a color-coded border, indicating its status.

**Selected register:** Pale blue border

**Register containing data:** Orange inner border. If, however, there are one or more locked regions, the display is in red.

## Write-protecting the contents of the register (lock function)

(This applies to all regions.)

- 1 In the Effect >Status menu (6200), select the register.
- 2 Press [Lock].  
  
The register is locked, and the background of the register indication appears in red.

### To release the lock

Press [Lock] once more, turning the contents of the frame to orange.

## Copying the contents of a register

(This applies to all regions.)

- 1 In the Effect >Status menu (6200), select the copy source register.
- 2 In the <Copy> group, press [From \_\_ ].
- 3 Select the copy destination register.
- 4 In the <Copy> group, press [To \_\_ ].

## Deleting the contents of a register

(This applies to all regions.)

- 1 In the Effect >Status menu (6200), select the register.
- 2 Press [Delete].

## Renaming a register

(This applies to all regions.)

- 1 In the Effect >Status menu (6200), select the register.
- 2 Press [Rename].
- 3 Enter a name of not more than 8 characters, and press [Enter].

## Overview

The term “snapshot” refers to a function whereby the various settings required to apply a particular effect to an image are saved in memory as a set of data, for recall as required, to recover the original state.

Use the following to operate the snapshot.

- Flexi Pad (🔗 p. 168)
- Menu (🔗 p. 171)

### Notes

If the M/E bank has the Inhibit setting (🔗 p. 219), it is not possible to recall a snapshot on that M/E bank.

## Snapshot Types

Snapshots are divided as follows.

### Snapshots applying to a particular region (functional block of the switcher)

The term “snapshot” alone usually refers to this type of snapshot. This only applies to regions assigned to region selection buttons in the Flexi Pad.

*For details about a region, 🔗 “Regions” (p. 144).*

**Master snapshot:** This applies to the selected regions and the register numbers saved in the regions.

A master snapshot can be saved and recalled using the Flexi Pad.

### Snapshots applying only to particular functions

This type of snapshot includes the following.

**Key snapshot:** This includes the key on/off state and all key settings other than key priority for each keyer (🔗 p. 81).

**Wipe snapshot:** This includes the wipe settings of each of the banks (🔗 p. 89).

**DME wipe snapshot:** This includes the DME wipe settings of each of the banks (🔗 p. 99).

The rest of this section describes the snapshots that apply to a particular region or regions.

## Snapshot Attributes

An individual snapshot may also have attached special conditions relating to switcher operation when the snapshot is recalled.

These conditions are called “attributes” of the snapshot, and can be applied when the snapshot is saved or recalled.

### Types of attribute

There are seven snapshot attributes, as follows.

**Xpt Hold (cross-point hold):** When the snapshot is recalled, the cross-point button selection remains unchanged. This can be set independently for each bus.

**Key Disable:** When the snapshot is recalled, the key settings remain unchanged. This can be set independently for each keyer. A Setup menu allows you to select whether or not the key on/off state should also remain unchanged.

*For details about the setting operation, 🔗 “Setting the operation mode of the key bus [XPT HOLD] button” (p. 251).*

**Effect Dissolve:** The transition from the state before the snapshot recall to the snapshot settings is carried out smoothly, by a dissolve. The dissolve duration can be set in the Snapshot menu.

**Auto Transition:** An auto transition starts the instant the snapshot is recalled. The auto transition setting is valid only for M/E-1 and PGM/PST.

### Notes

If both effect dissolve and auto transition are selected as attributes, the auto transition takes precedence.

**GPI Output:** A GPI output is sent to the allocated GPI port the instant the snapshot is recalled. The trigger type depends on the switcher GPI output settings made in the Setup menu.

For details, see “Interfacing with External Devices” (p. 254).

**Clip Event:** Recall a frame memory clip immediately after the snapshot is recalled.

**Auto Play:** Play a frame memory clip immediately after the snapshot is recalled.

### Table of available attributes

The attributes that can be used depend on the region, as follows.

Yes: Can be used No: Cannot be used

Attribute	Region	
	M/E-1, PGM/PST	User 1 to 8
<b>Cross-point hold</b>	Yes	Yes
<b>Key disable</b>	Yes	No
<b>Effect dissolve</b>	Yes	Yes
<b>Auto transition</b>	Yes	No
<b>GPI outputs</b>	Yes	Yes
<b>Clip event</b>	No	Yes
<b>Auto play</b>	No	Yes

### Attribute display

You can view the attributes of a snapshot in the Snapshot menu (see p. 171).

### Temporary attributes

When recalling a snapshot, you can temporarily apply attributes distinct from the attributes set for each register. These are called “temporary attributes.”

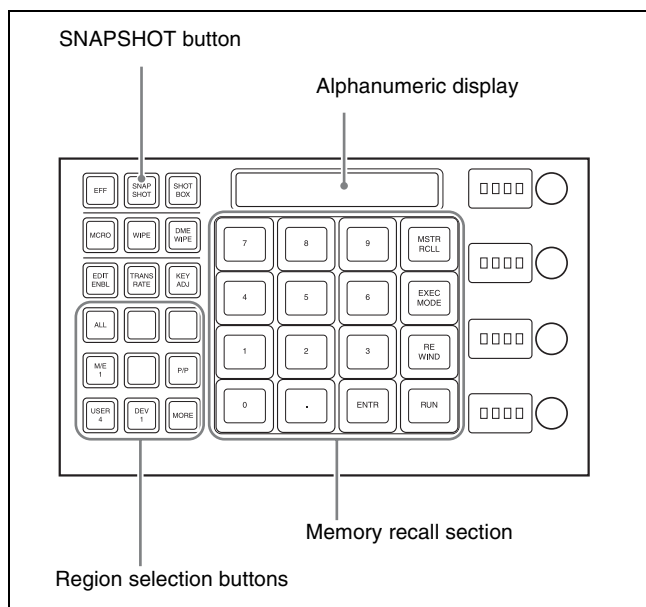
You can set temporary attributes when recalling a snapshot.

### Bus override

If you recall a snapshot while holding down an A or B bus button, the selection of the signal on the A or B bus does not change when the snapshot is recalled. This function is called “bus override.”

This function is effective when cross-point hold is off, and you want to temporarily maintain the cross-point setting. When cross-point hold is on, the above operation is not necessary.

## Snapshot Operations in the Flexi Pad



## Banks and Registers

In order to support 99 registers, the Flexi Pad handles the registers in groups. These groups are called “banks,” and there are ten banks, numbered from 0 to 9.

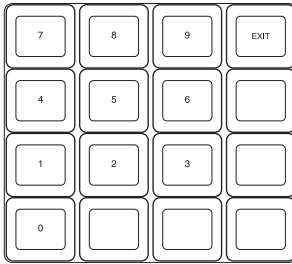
The correspondence between banks and registers is shown in the following table.

Bank number	Register numbers
<b>Bank 0</b>	1 to 10
<b>Bank 1</b>	11 to 20
<b>Bank 2</b>	21 to 30
<b>Bank 3</b>	31 to 40
<b>Bank 4</b>	41 to 50
<b>Bank 5</b>	51 to 60
<b>Bank 6</b>	61 to 70
<b>Bank 7</b>	71 to 80
<b>Bank 8</b>	81 to 90
<b>Bank 9</b>	91 to 99

### Selecting banks in the Flexi Pad

You press buttons in the memory recall section to select banks.

Pressing the [BANK SEL] button changes the memory recall section display as follows, and then press a button in the range [0] to [9].



This selects the bank, and the buttons in the memory recall section show the register states as follows.

**Lit yellow:** Last recalled register

**Lit orange:** Register containing a snapshot

**Off:** Register in which nothing is saved.

If you press the [SNAPSHOT] or [EFF] button on the Flexi Pad, you can change the memory recall button indicators to the register names using the Engineering Setup >Panel >Operation >Flexi Pad Mode menu (7326.3).

## Saving and Recalling Snapshots

### Saving a snapshot

As an example, to save a snapshot on the M/E-1 bank, proceed as follows.

- 1 In the M/E-1 bank, make the settings for the state you want to save as a snapshot.
- 2 In the Flexi Pad, press the [SNAPSHOT] button, turning it on.  
  
This switches the memory recall section to snapshot operation mode.  
The alphanumeric display shows the number of the last recalled register on the bank.
- 3 Press the region selection button corresponding to the region for which you want to save, turning it on.

You can select more than one button.

*For details about the method of region selection, see “Selecting regions in the Flexi Pad” (p. 150).*

#### Notes

The regions that can be selected simultaneously are those assigned to the region selection buttons and the memory recall section buttons (see p. 220).

The first button pressed is lit green as the reference region. Subsequently pressed buttons are lit amber for the region select buttons and yellow for the memory recall section buttons.

Pressing one of the amber or yellow lit buttons, while holding down the [SNAPSHOT] button, turns the

button green to indicate its corresponding region as the new reference region.

*For details about the precedence order for becoming the reference region, see “Reference region” (p. 144).*

The alphanumeric display shows the name of the reference region and the number of the register last recalled for that region.

- 4 Press the [BANK SEL] button, and select the desired bank with the register you want to save.

*For details about the method of bank selection, see “Banks and Registers” (p. 168).*

- 5 Hold down the [SNAPSHOT] button, and press the button in the memory recall section corresponding to the register in which you want to save.

#### Notes

If you press a button which is lit orange or yellow, this overwrites the contents of the corresponding register. The button you pressed is lit yellow, and this completes saving.

### To enter the number of the register to save using the numeric keypad

After step 3 in “Saving a snapshot” (see p. 169), press the [10 KEY] button in the memory recall section. This switches the memory recall section to the numeric keypad input mode, and after pressing the [STOR] button, lighting it yellow, you can enter the desired register number from the numeric keypad. The number you entered appears in the alphanumeric display.

To find an empty register, press the [.] (period) button without entering a number, and the number of an empty register appears in the alphanumeric display. Confirm the displayed number by pressing the [ENTR] button. This saves the data in the specified register.

### To cancel a snapshot save operation

Hold down the [STOR STAT] button and press the [UNDO] button.  
The color of the [STOR STAT] button changes to yellow.

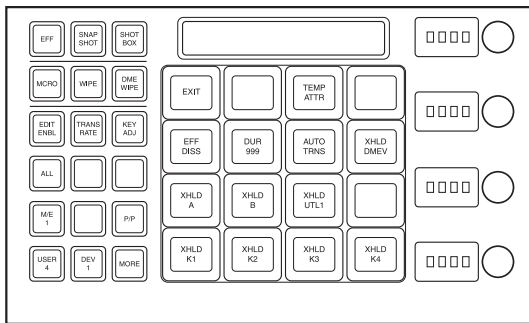
### Applying attributes

- 1 Press the [EDIT ENBL] button, turning it on.

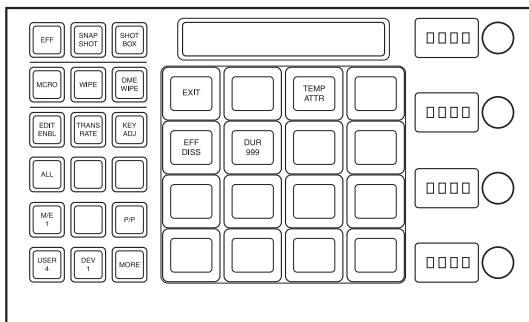
The button display in the memory recall section changes as shown below.

To cancel applying attributes, press the [EDIT ENBL] button once more, or press the [EXIT] button.

- When the reference region is M/E-1 or P/P



- When the reference region is other than M/E-1 or P/P, and effect dissolve settings are possible



- 2 Apply attributes (☞ p. 167) with the following buttons.

**[TEMP ATTR] button:** Set a temporary attribute. Set this to Off when setting an attribute.

**[EFF DISS] button:** Apply the effect dissolve attribute.

**[DUR xxx] button:** Set the effect dissolve duration (where “xxx” is the currently set value). When you press this button, the memory recall section switches to numeric keypad input mode, and you can enter the setting value.

**[AUTO TRNS] button:** Apply the auto transition attribute.

**[XHLD xxx] button:** Apply the bus cross-point hold attribute (where “xxx” is the applicable bus).

## Recalling a snapshot

As an example, to recall a snapshot on the M/E-1 bank, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the Flexi Pad, press the [SNAPSHOT] button, turning it on.

This switches the memory recall section to snapshot operation mode.

The alphanumeric display shows the number of the last recalled register on the bank.

- 2 Press the region selection button corresponding to the region you want to recall, turning it on.

You can select more than one button.

For details about the method of region selection, ☞ “Selecting regions in the Flexi Pad” (p. 150).

### Notes

The regions that can be selected simultaneously are those assigned to the region selection buttons and the memory recall section buttons (☞ p. 220).

It is not possible to select [MSTR] and other regions simultaneously. If selected simultaneously, the master snapshot takes precedence.

The first button pressed is lit green as the reference region. Subsequently pressed buttons turn amber for the region select buttons and yellow for the memory recall section buttons.

Pressing one of the amber or yellow lit buttons, while holding down the [SNAPSHOT] button, turns the button green to indicate its corresponding region as the new reference region.

For details about the precedence order for becoming the reference region, ☞ “Reference region” (p. 144).

The alphanumeric display shows the name of the reference region and the number of the register previously recalled for that region.

- 3 Press the [BANK SEL] button, and select the desired bank with the register you want to recall.

For details about the method of bank selection, ☞ “Banks and Registers” (p. 168).

- 4 To apply a temporary attribute (☞ p. 167), press the [EDIT ENBL] button and then press the [TEMP ATTR] button; you can now select the temporary attribute with the following buttons.

**[EFF DISS] button:** Effect dissolve.

**[DUR xxx] button:** Effect dissolve duration (where “xxx” is the currently set value).

**[AUTO TRNS] button:** Auto transition.

**[XHLD xxx] button:** Bus cross-point hold (where “xxx” is the applicable bus).

To apply a temporary attribute with the cross-point control block buttons, press the following buttons, turning them on.

Temporary attribute to be applied	Button to press
A/B bus cross-point hold	[XPT HOLD] button in the background A/B bus
Key cross-point hold	[XPT HOLD] button in the key bus <sup>a)</sup>
Key disable	[XPT HOLD] button in the key bus <sup>b)</sup>

- a) When Xpt Hold mode is selected in the Setup menu.
- b) When Key Disable mode is selected in the Setup menu.

For details about the operation mode of the [XPT HOLD] button, see “Setting the operation mode of the key bus [XPT HOLD] button” (p. 251).

#### Notes

- The cross-point hold and key disable settings are maintained until you next press the [XPT HOLD] button.
- Applying temporary attributes does not affect the contents of the register.
- It is not possible to apply temporary attributes to a master snapshot.

- 5 Press the button in the memory recall section corresponding to the register you want to recall.

The button you pressed is lit yellow, and this recalls the snapshot.

The alphanumeric display shows the selected register number.

#### To enter the number of the register to be recalled using the numeric keypad

After step 1 in “Recalling a snapshot” (see p. 170), press the [10 KEY] button in the memory recall section. This switches the memory recall section to the numeric keypad input mode, and after pressing the [RCLL] button, lighting it yellow, you can enter the desired register number from the numeric keypad. Confirm the displayed number by pressing the [ENTR] button.

#### To cancel a snapshot recall operation

Press the [UNDO] button.

#### Notes

It is not possible to cancel recalling a master snapshot.

#### Creating and saving a master snapshot

To create and save a master snapshot, refer to the operations in “Creating and Saving a Master Timeline in the Flexi Pad” (see p. 162). Note, however, that in place of the [EFF] button in the Flexi Pad, the [SNAPSHOT] button is used.

#### Deleting a snapshot

As an example, to delete a snapshot on the M/E-1 bank, proceed as follows.

- 1 Press the [SNAPSHOT] button in the Flexi Pad, then press the region select button to select [M/E1] only.

This switches the memory recall section to snapshot operation mode.

The alphanumeric display shows the number of the last recalled register on the bank.

- 2 Press the [BANK SEL] button, and select the bank for the register with the saved snapshot you want to delete.

For details about the method of bank selection, see “Banks and Registers” (p. 168).

- 3 Hold down the [DEL] button, and press the button in the memory recall section corresponding to the applicable register.

The button you pressed goes off, and this deletes the snapshot.

## Snapshot Operations in the Menu

### Operations in the Snapshot menu

You use the Snapshot menu to make snapshot settings. The Snapshot menu displays the status of each register, and is used to perform operations, such as to set snapshot attributes or copy/delete snapshot registers.

### Operations in the Misc >Snapshot Menu

You can limit the snapshot setting to the M/E or PGM/PST bank.

## Selecting a Region or Reference Region in a Menu

During snapshot operations, you can select a region in the menu. This is convenient for selecting some of the regions assigned to the Flexi Pad, or changing the reference region.

For details about the operations, see “Selecting by menus” (p. 152).

## Setting Snapshot Attributes

### Applying snapshot attributes

- 1 Open the Snapshot >Snapshot >Attribute menu (6321).

The status area shows the region names, register numbers and status, and attribute settings.

- 2 Press the region display in the upper part of the list, and in the selection window select the region.


You can select more than one region.  
To select all regions, press [ALL].

- 3 Press [OK].
- 4 Select a register.

To select all levels, press [ALL].

- 5 In the <Attribute> group, press the buttons for the attributes you want to apply, turning them on.

Carry out the following procedures for each of the attributes.

For details about attributes and available attributes,  “Snapshot Attributes” (p. 167).

### To apply cross-point hold attributes

#### Notes

Applying the key disable attribute (so the key state is not reflected) to cross-point hold requires a setting in the Setup menu.

For details,  “Selecting the Bank to Make the Settings” (p. 251).

- 1 Press [Xpt Hold].  
The Xpt Hold (6321.1) menu appears.  
The status area shows a list of the currently selected regions and bus names.
- 2 Select a bus.  
When the region is set to RTR (Router), select a destination.  
To select one or more buses/destinations, press [Plural] and then select. To select all buses/destinations, press [ALL].
- 3 If the region is set to RTR (Router), press [RTR Level Select].  
If RTR (Router) is not selected, skip to step 5.  
A window appears for selecting the router level.
- 4 Press the level for which you want to set the cross-point hold, turning it on, and press [OK].  
To select all levels, press [ALL].
- 5 Press [ON].  
This enables cross-point hold on the selected bus or buses.

### To apply the effect dissolve attribute

- 1 Press [Effect Dissolve], turning it on.
- 2 Set the dissolve duration.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Eff Diss Duration	Dissolve duration

### To set the duration for a dissolve set as a temporary attribute effect

Set the following parameter to set the duration for a dissolve set as a temporary attribute effect in the Flexi Pad.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
5	Temp Dur	Temporary attribute dissolve duration

### To apply the auto transition attribute

Press [Auto Transition], turning it on.

### To apply the GPI output attribute


- 1 Press [GPI Output], turning it on.
- 2 Set the port number.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
4	GPI Out Port	GPI output port number

### To apply the clip event attribute

#### Notes

The following operating procedure can be used only for the frame memory channels assigned to a user region.

For details about the assignment,  “Setting User Regions” (p. 241).

- 1 Press [Clip Event].  
The Clip Event menu (6321.2) appears.
- 2 In the <Frame Memory Select> group, press the desired button.  
On the left of the status area, the name and content of the selected region (for example, USER1) are shown. On the right, the content of the clip of the current frame memory is shown.
- 3 Press [Clip Event], turning it on.  
The clip event attribute is applied.
- 4 To select the clip of the current frame memory, press [Set].

- To play the clip as soon as it is recalled, press [Auto Play], turning it on.

## Snapshot Status Display

The Snapshot >Snapshot >Attribute menu (6321) displays the following information.

**Region name:** The selected region name appears in the upper part of the list.

**Register number**

**Register name**

**Write-protected status:** When the register is write-protected, a letter “L” appears.

**Empty status:** When the register is empty, an “E” (for “empty”) appears.

**Attribute settings:** The attributes set for a register are shown by the following character codes.

- When the cross-point hold is set

Displayed character string	Attributes set
A, B	Cross-point hold is set for the A or B background bus.
1, 2, 3, 4	Cross-point hold is set for one of the key 1 to 4 buses.
U1	Cross-point hold is set for the utility bus.
Aux	Cross-point hold is set for one of the AUX buses.
Fm1, Fm2	Cross-point hold is set for one of the frame memory 1 and 2 buses.
RTR	Cross-point hold is set for the Router region.

- When an effect dissolve is set

Displayed character string	Attributes set
Duration value	The effect dissolve attribute is set, with the displayed duration.

- When an auto transition is set

Displayed character string	Attributes set
T	Auto transition is set.

- When a GPI output is set

Displayed character string	Attributes set
Port number	GPI output is set for the port of the displayed number.

- When a clip event is set

Displayed character string	Attributes set
On	Clip event is set.

## Setting Key Snapshot Attributes

### Applying key snapshot attributes

- Open the Snapshot >Key Snapshot >Attribute menu (6351).

The status area shows the region names, register numbers, and whether the registers are locked or not.

- Press the region display in the upper part of the list, and in the selection window select the region.

You can select more than one region.

- Press [OK].

- Select a register.

- In the <Recall Mode> group, set the state for save and recall operations.

**XPT:** Only the key material selection data is saved or recalled.

**Modifier:** Only the key modifier settings are saved or recalled.

**Transition:** Only the independent key transition settings are saved or recalled.

## Creating and Saving a Master Snapshot

To save a master snapshot, recall the Snapshot >Master Snapshot >Store menu (6311) and refer to the operation in “*Creating and Saving a Master Timeline with the Menu*” (☞ p. 163).

### Recalling the Store menu

- Open the Snapshot >Master Snapshot >Store menu (6311).

The status area shows the master snapshot register names, register lock status, register number for each region, and so on.

- If required, press the following buttons in the status area to change the region display.

**M/E, P/P:** Indicates assignment of M/E-1 (ME1), P/P (P/P).

**User:** Indicates the User1 (USR1) to User8 (USR8) assignments.

**Misc:** Indicates the Router (RTR) assignment.

## Editing Snapshot Registers

You can carry out the following editing on snapshot registers.

(You can use similar procedures also on master snapshot, wipe snapshot, DME wipe snapshot and key snapshot registers.)

- **Lock:** Write-protect the contents of the register.
- **Copy:** Copy the contents of one register to another register.
- **Move:** Move the contents of one register to another register.
- **Swap:** Swap the contents of two registers.
- **Delete:** Delete the contents of a register.
- **Name:** Attach a name to a register.

For details about snapshot register operations, see “[Effect Register Editing](#)” (p. 164).

## Displaying a List of Snapshot Registers for Editing

You can display a list of snapshot registers including status information (whether data is present and so on), then carry out lock, copy, delete, and rename operations.

### Displaying the list of snapshot registers with status information

Press the menu title button at the top left of the Snapshot menu.

The Snapshot >Status menu (6300) appears.

The status area shows a list of snapshot registers (1 to 99).

For details about lock, copy, delete, and rename operations, see “[Displaying a List of Effect Registers for Editing](#)” (p. 166).

### Register name display

For the same number, the register name for the M/E-1 region takes precedence.

If there is no data for the M/E-1 region, then the register name appears in the sequence P/P >User 1 to 8 >RTR.

## Operations in the Misc >Snapshot Menu

To limit the snapshot setting to the M/E or PGM/PST bank, use the Misc menu for each bank.

This section describes an example on the M/E-1 bank.

### Recalling a snapshot

- 1 Open the M/E-1 >Misc >Snapshot menu (1177).



- 2 As required, press [Bank Sel] to change the bank.

- 3 Press the button for the number or name you want to recall.

This recalls the snapshot, and the button you pressed lights green.

### Saving a snapshot

- 1 Open the M/E-1 >Misc >Snapshot menu (1177).

- 2 Set the state you want to save as a snapshot.

- 3 Press [Store].

- 4 As required, press [Bank Sel] to change the bank.

- 5 Press the button for the number or name you want to save.

### Applying attributes

To apply an attribute to the snapshot represented by a lit-green memory recall button, use the following procedure.

- 1 To apply the cross-point hold attribute, in the <Attribute Xpt Hold> group select the appropriate bus.

#### Notes

A setting in the Setup menu determines whether key disable is applied to cross-point hold or not.

For details, see “[Selecting the Bank to Make the Settings](#)” (p. 251).

- 2 Select the following attributes in the <Attribute> group as required.

**Effect Dissolve:** Apply effect dissolve.

**Auto Transition:** Apply auto transition.

**GPI Output:** Apply GPI output. When selected, set the GPI number.

## Deleting a snapshot

- 1** Open the M/E-1 >Misc >Snapshot menu (1177) and press [Delete].
- 2** As required, press [Bank Sel] to change the bank.
- 3** Press the button for the number or name you want to delete.

## Renaming a snapshot register

- 1** Open the M/E-1 >Misc >Snapshot menu (1177) and press [Rename].
- 2** As required, press [Bank Sel] to change the bank.
- 3** Press the number or name button for the name you want to change.
- 4** Enter the new name, and press [Enter].

### Utility Execution

The utility function refers to a function whereby you can assign an arbitrary action or a shortcut for frequently used menu to a particular button, then instantly recall the action or menu by pressing the button. The functions you can assign include menu shortcuts, enabling/disabling functions (recalling utility commands), and recalling (shotbox registers or macro registers). You can execute the utility functions from the cross-point control block.

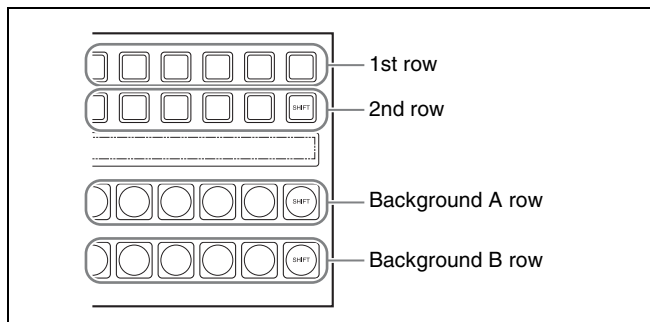
### Executing a Utility with Cross-Point Buttons in the 2nd Row

You can use the bank 2nd row for utility/shotbox operations.

#### Notes

To use this function, you must first assign the utility/shotbox function switch button [UTIL/SBOX] to the 1st row.

For details about the assignment, see *“Assigning a Bus or Function to 1st Row Buttons”* (p. 235).



You can assign any action to the cross-point buttons.

For details about the assignment, see *“Assigning a Function to 2nd Row Cross-Point Buttons”* (p. 229).

### To execute the assigned action

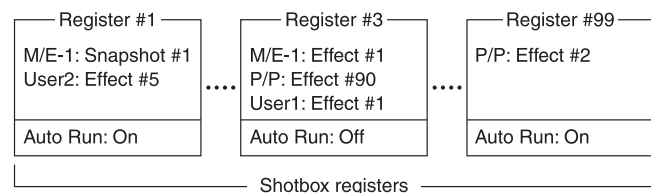
When the action is executing a shotbox register, follow the procedure in *“Executing a Shotbox Function with Cross-Point Buttons in the 2nd Row”* (see p. 179).

- 1 Press the [UTIL/SBOX] assigned to the 1st row, turning it on.
- 2 Press the cross-point button to which the desired action is assigned.

### Shotbox

The term “shotbox” refers to a function whereby for each specified region any snapshot or keyframe effect can be recalled simultaneously.

The simultaneous recall setting data such as region names, snapshot numbers and keyframe effect numbers are stored in “registers.” There are 99 registers for each control panel.



The previous figure shows schematically the settings in the 99 shotbox registers.

Each register may contain any combination of the regions to which the register applies, with the snapshots or effects to be recalled.

The Auto Run function is an attribute which can be set for each register. When this is set to On, an effect recalled by a shotbox operation is automatically run.

- When register 1 is executed, this recalls M/E-1 snapshot 1 and User2 effect 5. For register 1, auto run is On, and therefore the User2 effect is run as soon as it has been recalled.
- When register 3 is executed, M/E-1 effect 1, P/P effect 90, and User1 effect 1 are recalled. For register 3, auto run is OFF, and therefore to run the recalled effects, press the [RUN] button in the Flexi Pad.

---

# Shotbox Register Creation

You can create (save) shotbox registers using the Flexi Pad or from the menu.

---

## Creating a Shotbox Register in the Flexi Pad

- 1** In the Flexi Pad, press the [SNAPSHOT] button, turning it on.  
  
This switches the memory recall section to snapshot operation mode.
- 2** Specify the register number of the snapshot you want to save in a shotbox register, and then recall it for each region.  
  
*For details about the procedure for recalling a snapshot, see “Recalling a snapshot” (p. 170).*
- 3** Press the [SHOTBOX] button, turning it on.  
  
This switches the memory recall section to shotbox operation mode.
- 4** Press the [EDIT ENBL] button, turning it on.  
  
This switches the memory recall section to shotbox editing mode.
- 5** Press the [STOR] button.  
  
The [SNAPSHOT] button lights green.  
If not lit, press the [SNAPSHOT] button to turn it on.

### Notes

In shotbox editing mode, when you press the [STOR] button, the [SNAPSHOT] button or [EFF] button lights, to indicate that snapshot data will be saved in the shotbox register, or that effect data will be saved.

- 6** Press the region selection button corresponding to the snapshot region you want to save, turning it on.
- 7** Enter the shotbox register number to save with the numeric keypad buttons.  
  
To search for an empty register, instead of entering a number, press the [.] (period) button.  
The entered register number or corresponding register number appears in the alphanumeric display. If the

number is followed by a letter “E,” the register is empty.

- 8** Press the [ENTR] button.  
  
This saves the region you turned on in step **6**, and the register number you recalled for that region as a snapshot setting in a shotbox register, and the [STORE] button changes color to orange. At the same time, the [RCLL] button lights yellow.
- 9** Press the [EFF] button, turning it on.
- 10** Specify the register numbers to recall the keyframe effects for each region that you want to save in the shotbox register.  
  
*For details about the procedure for recalling a keyframe effect, see “Recalling a register from the Flexi Pad” (p. 151).*
- 11** Referring to steps **3** to **6**, carry out the procedure to save the recalled keyframe effect data.  
In step **5**, however, press the [EFF] button instead of [SNAPSHOT] button, lighting it on.
- 12** Enter the shotbox register number specified in step **7** using the numeric keypad buttons.
- 13** Press the [ENTR] button.  
  
This saves the snapshot data, followed by the keyframe effect data, in the specified shotbox register, and the [STOR] button changes color to orange. At the same time, the [RCLL] button lights yellow.

### To change the contents of a shotbox register

After recalling the shotbox register you want to change, refer to “*Creating a Shotbox Register in the Flexi Pad*” (p. 177) and change the contents of the shotbox register, and save.

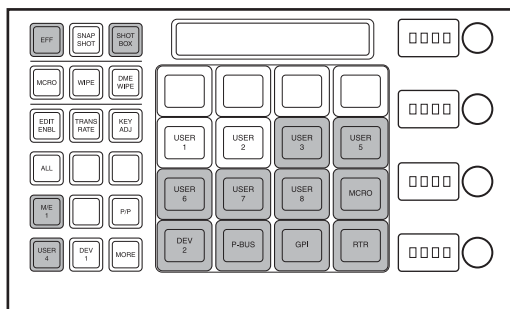
### To check the region saved in a shotbox register

After step **5** in “*Creating a Shotbox Register in the Flexi Pad*” (p. 177), press the following buttons to continue.

**To check the snapshot region:** [SNAPSHOT] button

**To check the keyframe effect region:** [EFF] button

The buttons in the memory recall section change as follows. For buttons corresponding to regions with stored data, region select buttons are lit amber and memory recall section buttons are lit yellow.



### To recall an assigned effect and simultaneously execute it

Press the [AUTO RUN] button, lighting it green, then save the shotbox register.

## Creating a Shotbox Register using the Menus

- 1 Open the Shotbox >Register >Store/Recall menu (6411).

In the status area, the settings for each register appear as follows.

**Region settings:** Appear as “Sxxx” when a snapshot is allocated, and as “Exxx” when an effect is allocated (where xxx is the register number). The register name also appears. If nothing is allocated, nothing appears in the display.

**Register lock setting:** When the register is write-protected, an “L” (for “lock”) appears.

**Empty status:** When the register is empty, an “E” (for “empty”) appears.

**Auto run setting:** When this is enabled, so that an effect is executed simultaneously with recall, “AR” appears.

**Shotbox register name:** This shows the shotbox register name.

- 2 If necessary, press one of the following buttons in the status area to change the region display.

**M/E, P/P:** Indicates assignment of M/E-1 (ME1), P/P (P/P).

**User:** Shows the allocations for User 1 (USR1) to User 8 (USR8).

**DEV1-8:** Shows the allocations for Device 1 (DEV1) to Device 8 (DEV8).

**DEV9-12:** Shows the allocations for Device 9 (DEV9) to Device 12 (DEV12).

**Misc:** Shows the allocations for P-Bus (PBUS), GPI (GPI), Router (RTR), and Macro (MCRO).

- 3 Select a register.

- 4 Press [Edit].

The Edit menu (6411.1) appears.

You can also use the [Shotbox Reg] parameter to select the register in this menu.

In the status area, the shotbox register status for each region appears.

- 5 Select a region.

You can select more than one region.

To select all regions, press [ALL]. To select all switcher-related regions (M/E, P/P, User), press [SWR ALL].

- 6 In the <Assign> group, select the snapshot or effect to be allocated to the region.

**Snapshot:** Allocate a snapshot.

**Effect:** Allocate a keyframe effect.

If the selected register is locked, a confirmation message appears asking whether or not to cancel the operation. Press [OK] to return to the previous menu display without carrying out the registration.

If the operation is carried out, the region selected in step 5 is registered in the shotbox, and the parameters are now valid.

- 7 Depending on the selection in step 6, set the following parameters.

#### When a snapshot is selected

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Snapshot	Snapshot register number

#### When an effect is selected

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Effect	Keyframe effect register number

- 8 To run the allocated effect as soon as it is recalled, press [Auto Run], turning it on.

- 9 Repeat steps 5 to 8 as required.

- 10 In the <Store> group, press [Store] to save the setting.

#### To return to the state before saving the setting

In the <Store> group, press [Undo].

#### To execute the settings to check them

Press [Recall] to execute the shotbox.

---

# Shotbox Execution

You can recall (and run) shotbox registers from the following control blocks.

This section describes the various methods of operation.

- Flexi Pad (☞ p. 179)
- Cross-point control block (☞ p. 176)

---

## Executing a Shotbox in the Flexi Pad

- 1 In the Flexi Pad, press the [SHOTBOX] button, turning it on.

This switches the memory recall section to shotbox operation mode.

The alphanumeric display shows the number of the last recalled register.

- 2 Using any of the following methods, select the bank.

**To select bank 0:** Press the [BANK0] button.

**To select bank 1:** Press the [BANK1] button.

**To select any of banks 0 to 9:** Press the [BANK SEL] button, then press the desired bank button (any of [0] to [9]).

*For details about the correspondence between banks and registers, ☞ “Banks and Registers” (p. 168).*

This selects the bank, and the buttons in the memory recall section show the register states as follows.

**Lit yellow:** Last executed register

**Lit orange:** Register containing shotbox settings

**Off:** Register in which nothing is saved

- 3 Press the button in the memory recall section corresponding to the register you want to run.

The selected button lights yellow, and the shotbox register is run.

The alphanumeric display shows the selected register number.

If the selected shotbox register has auto run set, on recall the effect is immediately executed.

**When auto run is not set for the recalled register**

Simply recalling the register does not run the effect. To do this, press the [RUN] button.

---

## Executing a Shotbox Function with Cross-Point Buttons in the 2nd Row

You can use the bank 2nd row for utility/shotbox operations.

### Notes

To use this function, you must first assign the utility/shotbox function switch button [UTIL/SBOX] to the 1st row.

*For details about the assignment, ☞ “Assigning a Bus or Function to 1st Row Buttons” (p. 235).*

You can assign any shotbox register to the cross-point buttons.

*For details about the assignment, ☞ “Assigning a Function to 2nd Row Cross-Point Buttons” (p. 229).*

- 1 Press the [UTIL/SBOX] assigned to the 1st row, turning it on.
- 2 Press the cross-point button to which the desired shotbox is assigned.

---

## Shotbox Register Editing

You can carry out the following editing on shotbox registers.

- **Lock:** Write-protect the contents of the register.
- **Copy:** Copy the contents of one register to another register.
- **Move:** Move the contents of one register to another register.
- **Swap:** Swap the contents of two registers.
- **Delete:** Delete the contents of a register.
- **Name:** Attach a name to a register.

The procedures for shotbox register editing are similar to the procedures described in “Effect Register Editing” (☞ p. 164).

Unlike in effect register editing, however, it is not necessary to specify a region in shotbox register editing.

## Macros

### Overview

The term “macro” refers to the function whereby a sequence of signal selections and other operations on the control panel is saved as data in memory, so that it can be recalled as required to automatically execute the same sequence of operations.

To record menu operations in memory, use a menu macro (☞ p. 194).

### Macro registers

The area of memory that holds a macro is termed a “macro register.” For each control panel there are 250 macro registers, numbered 1 to 250.

### Events

The individual control panel operations constituting a macro are termed “events.” One macro can contain a maximum of 99 events.

The following table shows the operations for each control block of the control panel that can be saved as events in a macro.

Control block	Event
Cross-point control block	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cross-point selection</li> <li>• Recalling a function assigned to a 2nd row key button</li> </ul>
Transition control block	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto transition and cut for the transition execution section</li> <li>• Auto transition and key on/off for independent key transition<sup>a)</sup></li> <li>• Next transition setting</li> <li>• Transition type selection</li> <li>• Pattern limit on/off</li> <li>• Key snapshot recall</li> <li>• VTR/disk recorder/Extended VTR / frame memory clip playback, stop, cue-up<sup>b)</sup></li> </ul>

Control block	Event
Flexi Pad	Recalling the following data <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Effects</li> <li>• Snapshots</li> <li>• Shotbox</li> <li>• Wipe snapshots</li> <li>• DME wipe snapshots</li> <li>• Key snapshots</li> </ul> Following operations <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Selection of effect execution, rewind, fast forward, execution direction</li> <li>• Auto transition and key on/off for independent key transition<sup>a)</sup></li> <li>• Pattern limit on/off</li> </ul>
Device control block	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• VTR/disk recorder/Extended VTR / frame memory clip playback, stop, fast forward, rewind, cue-up, start point setting</li> <li>• VTR/disk recorder record</li> <li>• Frame memory clip loop setting</li> </ul>
Menu screen	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disk recorder/Extended VTR file recalling</li> <li>• Execution of a menu macro</li> <li>• Frame memory clip recalling</li> </ul>

a) In the case of an event that inserts or deletes a key, the key state at the time of event registration (inserted or not inserted) is also saved in the macro. When the macro is executed, the event is only replayed if the key state matches the saved state. (Example: For a macro with an event that inserts/deletes a key, when the macro is executed, if the key was inserted it is deleted, but otherwise nothing occurs as concerns keying.)

b) Function valid only when [PLAY], [STOP], and [CUE] have been set in the Setup menu.

## Macro Creation and Editing

You can create or edit a macro by recalling a macro register.

To create a new macro, recall an empty macro register, and create the desired sequence of events (by executing the sequence of operations on the control panel that you want to save as events in the macro).

To add an event to an existing macro, recall the register holding the macro, and create the event you want to add.

## Notes

While editing a macro, it is not possible to execute another macro.

## Creating a macro

### To include all information associated with an operation when registering a macro event

When registering an auto transition operation as an event, you can register the auto transition event to include the transition rate and background A/B bus selection status.

When registering an effect execution, rewind, or fast forward as an event, you can also save the region to which this applies.

Assign [UTIL/SBOX] to the 1st row in the cross-point control block and the following functions to the 2nd row beforehand.

For details about assignments, see [“Assigning a Bus or Function to 1st Row Buttons” \(p. 235\)](#) and [“Assigning a Function to 2nd Row Cross-Point Buttons” \(p. 229\)](#).

To use this capability, press the button assigned with [UTIL/SBOX] in the 1st row, then press the button with the assigned function to use in the 2nd row, turning it on.

**Macro AT with Rate (Macro Auto Trans Event with/without Rate):** When registering an auto transition macro event in the transition control block, include the transition rate.

**Macro AT with A/B Bus (Macro Auto Trans Event with/without A/B Bus):** When registering an auto transition macro event in the transition control block, include the background A/B bus cross-point.

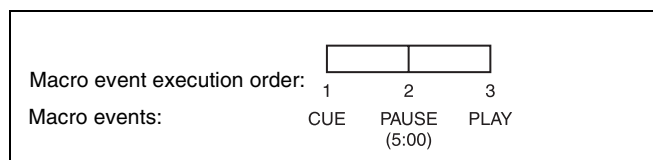
**Macro TL with Region (Macro Timeline with Region):** When registering an effect execution, rewind, or fast forward as a macro event, save the affected region together in the macro.

### Events requiring adjustment when creating a macro

The following events require time for execution to complete, and therefore when executed within a macro sequence, a pause event must be inserted to adjust the timing.

- Rewinding effects involving external device control
- VTR/disk recorder/Extended VTR cue-up

For example, create a macro to cue up a VTR and then play back as follows.



### Auto insert mode on/off setting

You can switch on or off the mode (auto insert mode) in which at the same time that a control panel operation is carried out, the event is automatically saved in a macro.

## Editing a macro

You can carry out the following macro editing operations.

### Event insertion

Insert the control panel operation as an event in a macro.

### Event modification

Modify any event. You can modify all events within a macro, or events within a specified range in a single operation.

### Event deletion

Delete any one event. You can delete all events within a macro, or events within a specified range in a single operation. You can then paste the deleted event using the paste function.

### Event copy

Copy any one event. You can copy all events within a macro, or events within a specified range in a single operation.

### Event paste

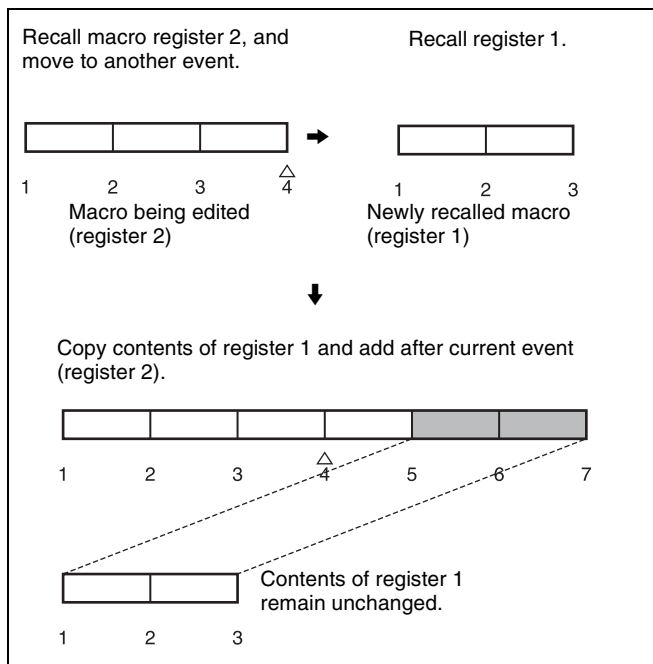
Paste a copied or deleted event at a desired position within a macro.

### Undoing an edit operation

You can undo the last event insertion, modification, deletion, or paste operation.

### Macro merging

During macro editing, you can recall and copy another register to merge it with the macro being edited. For example, while editing macro register 2 you can recall and copy register 1 to merge it as shown in the following figure.



## Macro Execution

To execute a macro, recall the register in which the macro is held. Simultaneous with the register recall, all events stored in the macro are played back (executed) in sequence without pause.

## Pausing and restarting macro execution

It is also possible to execute a macro in the following ways.

### Pause event

To adjust the execution timing of a particular event (to delay the start of execution of the event by a particular time interval), you can store a special event which pauses macro execution. This event is called a “pause event.” When you store a pause event, you can set the interval for which the macro is paused (the pause length) to any value in the range 1 to 999 frames. When the set time has elapsed, the macro is automatically executed.

### Pause zero event

By including a pause event with the time set to zero, you can make macro execution pause at the pause event.

### Step execution (requires a Setup menu setting)

By selecting step execution mode in the Setup menu, you can make macro execution pause every time an event is executed.

### Take operation

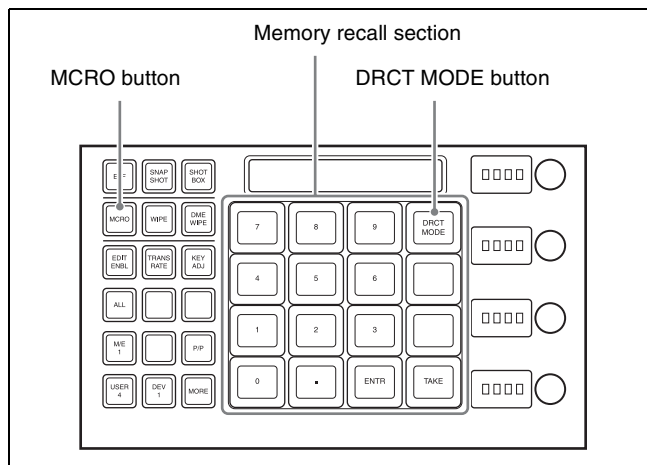
When a paused macro is restarted, this is referred to as a “Take” operation.

## Macro take operation using a GPI input

You can carry out a macro take operation using a GPI input on the control panel.

For details about GPI input settings, see [“Making Control Panel GPI Input Settings”](#) (p. 230).

## Macro Operations in the Flexi Pad



## Recalling a Macro Register and Executing a Macro

A macro operation is performed by recalling a macro register.

You can edit a macro by recalling an empty register. Recalling a register holding a macro executes the macro immediately.

To recall a macro register, use the following procedure.

### Recalling by entering a register number

- 1 Press the [MCRO] button, turning it on.

This switches the memory recall section to macro mode.

- 2 Enter the number of the register (1 to 250) to be recalled with the numeric keypad buttons.

To search for an empty register, instead of entering a number, press the [.] (period) button.

The entered register number or corresponding register number appears in the alphanumeric display. If the number is followed by a letter “E,” the register is empty.

**3** Press the [ENTR] button.

**Notes**

- It is not possible to execute more than one macro at a time.
- If the same register is recalled again during macro execution or when the macro is paused, the following operation depends on a setting in the Setup menu.  
*For details, see “Setting the Macro Execution Mode” (p. 238).*
- Individual events stored in a macro are executed according to the settings in the Setup menu. If you change the settings in the Setup menu, a saved macro may not have the expected effect.
- During macro execution, if you switch the control panel to macro editing mode, the macro being executed stops.
- During macro editing it is not possible to execute a macro.
- If you recall a macro from the Flexi Pad while executing another macro using a button with a macro attachment, the operation depends on a setting in the Setup menu.  
*For details, see “Setting the Macro Execution Mode” (p. 238).*

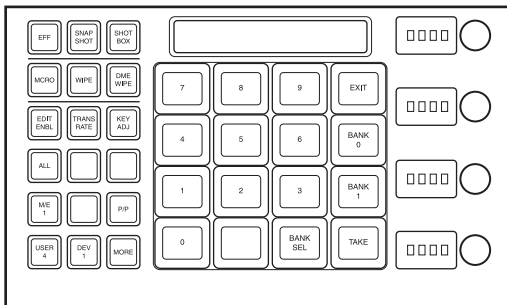
**Recalling using a button in the memory recall section**

The buttons in the memory recall section can operate registers 1 to 99. The 99 registers are grouped in banks 0 to 9.

*For details about the correspondence between banks and registers, see “Banks and Registers” (p. 168).*

**1** Press the [MCRO] button and then press the [DRCT MODE] button in the memory recall section.

The memory recall section changes to direct recall mode, enabling macros to be recalled using the buttons.



**2** Use one of the following operations to select the bank.

- To select bank 0:** Press the [BANK0] button.
- To select bank 1:** Press the [BANK1] button.

**To select any of banks 0 to 9:** Press the [BANK SEL] button, then press the desired bank button (any of [0] to [9]).

This selects the bank, and the buttons in the memory recall section show the macro register state as follows.

- Lit yellow:** Last recalled register
- Lit orange:** Register containing macro data
- Off:** Register in which nothing is saved

**3** Press the button in the memory recall section corresponding to the register to recall.

The button you pressed lights yellow, and the macro held in the corresponding register is recalled and executed.

The button you pressed flashes yellow as the macro execution starts, and returns to constantly lit yellow when the execution ends. The alphanumeric display shows the selected register number.

**Macro execution modes**

You can execute a macro in normal execution mode or step execution mode.

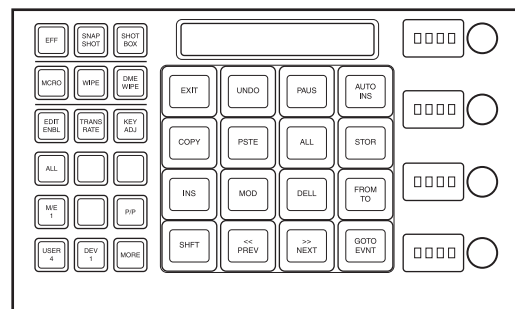
**Normal execution mode:** In this mode the macro events are automatically executed in sequence. However, if there is a pause event set at some point, execution pauses at that point. Then pressing the [TAKE] button in the memory recall section resumes execution.

**Step execution mode:** The macro events are executed one at a time with pauses in between. Execute the events in sequence by repeatedly pressing the [TAKE] button.

You can select normal execution mode or step execution mode by a selection in the Setup menu (see p. 238).

**Creating and Editing a Macro**

To create or edit a macro, recall a register and then press the [EDIT ENBL] button in macro operating mode. The [MCRO] button and [EDIT ENBL] button light red, and the memory recall section switches to macro editing mode.



## Switching auto insert mode on/off

In auto insert mode, when creating or editing a macro, an operation carried out on the control panel is automatically registered as an event.

When this mode is off, it is necessary to press the [INS] button in the memory recall section for each operation to register an event.

To switch auto insert mode on or off, press the [AUTO INS] button.

## Creating a new macro

- 1 Recall an empty register ([☞ p. 182](#)).
- 2 Press the [MCRO] button and then press the [EDIT ENBL] button.  
  
This switches the memory recall section to macro editing mode.
- 3 If required, press the [AUTO INS] button to toggle the auto insert mode on or off.
- 4 Create the events (carry out the control panel operations to be registered as events in the macro).

You can include pause events ([☞ p. 186](#)).

*For details about events that can be registered, ☞ “Events” (p. 180).*

When auto insert mode ([☞ p. 184](#)) is on, execution of a control panel operation automatically registers an event in the macro.

When auto insert mode is off, proceed to step 5.

### Notes

- During macro editing, if you press any of the mode selection buttons in the Flexi Pad other than the [MCRO] button ([WIPE] button, [DME WIPE] button, and so on), the executed operation is also registered as an event. In this case, the [MCRO] button stays lit red.
  - Even during macro editing, you can carry out keyframe operations using the following buttons: [EFF LOOP], [STOP NEXT], [NORM], [REV], [NORM/REV], [REWIND], [RUN]
  - During macro editing, if you press a button for which a macro attachment is set, the outcome is as described in *“To merge a macro for which a macro attachment is set”* ([☞ p. 184](#)).
- 5 When auto insert mode is off, press the [INS] button to register the event.
  - 6 Repeat steps 4 and 5 to register the required events in the macro.

This registers the events in the macro, in the order the operations were carried out on the control panel.

- 7 Press the [STOR] button.
- 8 Enter the register number to save with the numeric keypad buttons.

There is no need to enter a number if saving into the register recalled in step 1.

- 9 Press the [ENTR] button.

This saves the created macro in the register, and editing ends. The [MCRO] button lights amber.

## To merge a macro for which a macro attachment is set

While creating/editing a macro, if you press a button for which a macro attachment is set, the macro in the register assigned to the button is recalled, and the following occurs.

- When auto insert mode is on, it is merged with the macro being edited. However, the macro assigned to the button is not executed.
- When auto insert mode is off, it is stored in the paste buffer. Pressing the [PSTE] button merges it with the macro being edited.

## Specifying an edit point

- 1 Recall the register for the macro (1 to 250) you want to edit ([☞ p. 182](#)).
- 2 Press the [EDIT ENBL] button, turning it on.  
  
This switches the memory recall section to macro editing mode.
- 3 Using any of the following methods, specify the edit point.

- To move the edit point to the event immediately following the current macro event, press the [>>> NEXT] button.
- To move the edit point to the event immediately preceding the current macro event, press the [<< PREV] button.
- To move to an edit point by specifying an event number (the number showing the position of the event in the macro execution sequence), press the [GO TO EVNT] button, then enter the event number and confirm with the [ENTR] button.

## Inserting an event

- 1 Specify the edit point ([☞ p. 184](#)).

- 2** If required, press the [AUTO INS] button to toggle the auto insert mode on or off.
- 3** Create the event.  
When auto insert mode (☞ p. 184) is on, the event is automatically added to the macro.  
When auto insert mode is off, proceed to step 4.
- 4** When auto insert mode is off, press the [INS] button.
- 5** Repeat steps 3 and 4 to insert the required events in the macro.

### Modifying a single event

- 1** Specify the edit point (☞ p. 184).
- 2** If the [AUTO INS] button is lit, press it to turn off the insert mode.
- 3** Create the event.
- 4** Press the [MOD] button.

### Modifying a particular range of events

- 1** Carry out steps 1 to 3 of the procedure in “*Modifying a single event*” (☞ p. 185).
- 2** Press the [FROM TO] button.  
This switches the memory recall section to numeric keypad entry mode.  
The alphanumeric display shows the current event number and the indication “TO.”
- 3** Carry out the following operations.
  - To set the first event in the range to be modified, press the [CLR] button, then enter the event number using the numeric keypad buttons, and press the [ENTR] button to confirm.
  - To set the last event in the range to be modified, enter the event number using the numeric keypad, and press the [ENTR] button to confirm.

The [FROM TO] button lights green.

- 4** Press the [MOD] button.

### Modifying all events at the same time

- 1** Carry out steps 1 to 3 of the procedure in “*Modifying a single event*” (☞ p. 185).
- 2** Press the [ALL] button, turning it on green.

- 3** Press the [MOD] button.

### Deleting an event

- 1** Specify the edit point (☞ p. 184).
- 2** To delete a number of events in a single operation, press the [FROM TO] button or the [ALL] button.  
If you press the [FROM TO] button, specify the event range.  
*For how to specify a range of events, ☞ “Modifying a particular range of events” (p. 185).*
- 3** Press the [DEL] button.

### Moving events

- 1** Specify the edit point for the start of the range to be moved (☞ p. 184).
- 2** To move a number of events in a single operation, press the [FROM TO] button and specify the event range.  
*For how to specify a range of events, ☞ “Modifying a particular range of events” (p. 185).*
- 3** Press the [DEL] button.  
This deletes the specified events from the macro, and stores them in the paste buffer.
- 4** Move to the edit point which is the destination within the macro to which you want to move the events.
- 5** To insert the move target events after the edit point, press the [PSTE] button.  
To insert the move target events before the edit point, hold down the [SHFT] button and press the [PSTE] button.

### Copying events

- 1** Specify the edit point for the start of the range to be copied.
- 2** To copy a number of events in a single operation, press the [FROM TO] button or the [ALL] button.  
If you press the [FROM TO] button, specify the event range.  
*For how to specify a range of events, ☞ “Modifying a particular range of events” (p. 185).*

**3** Press the [COPY] button.

This copies the specified events and stores it in the paste buffer.

**4** Move to the edit point which is the destination within the macro to which you want to copy the events.

**5** To insert the copied events after the edit point, press the [PSTE] button.  
To insert the copied events before the edit point, hold down the [SHFT] button and press the [PSTE] button.

### Inserting a pause event

**1** Press the [PAUS] button.

**2** If required, press the [AUTO INS] button to toggle the auto insert mode on or off.

**3** Enter the pause duration (0 or 1 to 999 (frames)).

**4** Press the [ENTR] button.

If auto insert mode (☞ p. 184) is on, this sets the pause duration, and inserts the pause event.  
If auto insert mode is off, continue to step 5.

**5** If auto insert mode is off, press the [INS] button to insert the pause event.

### Undoing a macro edit operation

To undo an event insert, modify, delete, or paste operation immediately after execution, press the [UNDO] button.

## Editing Macros using Menus

Using any of the menus in the following table, you can edit macro registers and macro events.

Menu	Function	Operations
Register menu (macro register editing)	Carry out macro register editing.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Locking a register</li> <li>Copying a register</li> <li>Deleting a register</li> <li>Naming a register</li> </ul>
On Line Edit menu (online editing of macro events)	Edit events in a macro register, using the control panel and menus.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Inserting an event</li> <li>Deleting an event</li> <li>Modifying an event</li> </ul>

Menu	Function	Operations
Off Line Edit menu (offline editing of macro events)	Edit events in a macro register, local disk, or removable disk using the menus.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Inserting an event</li> <li>Adding an event</li> <li>Deleting an event</li> <li>Creating a new macro</li> </ul>

### Macro Register Editing

You can display the current state of a macro register using the Macro >Register menu.

For details about the display, “Effect Status Display” (☞ p. 164). However, region names are not displayed.

The operations for macro register editing are the same as those for effect register editing (☞ p. 164).

However, it is not necessary to select a region in macro register editing.

### Online Editing of Macro Events

You use the On Line Edit menu to carry out online editing of macro events.

In the On Line Edit menu, you can check the control panel operating sequence in the menu. You can also carry out editing using the control panel and menu.

#### To display the On Line Edit menu

**1** Recall the macro register (1 to 250) you want to edit with the control panel, and select the macro editing mode.<sup>1)</sup>

1) The Flexi Pad switches to macro editing mode (☞ “Creating and Editing a Macro” (p. 183)).

**2** In any of the following menus, select the same register as the register recalled in step 1, and press [On Line Edit].

- Macro >Register >Lock menu (5412)
- Macro >Register >Delete menu (5416)
- Macro >Register >Rename menu (5417)
- File >Shotbox, Macro >Macro >File Edit menu (7142.1)

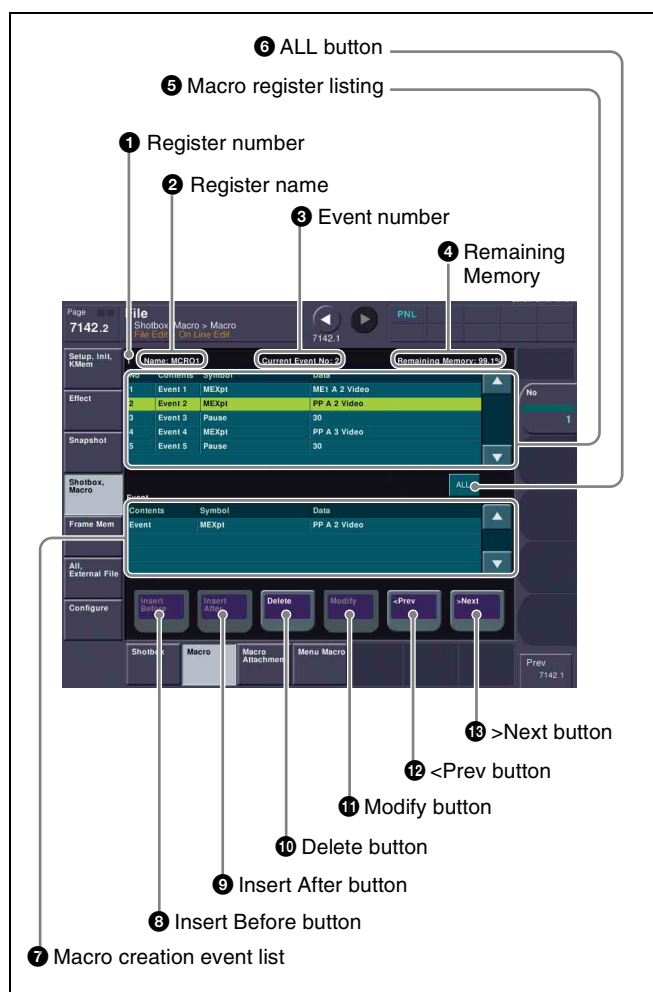
The On Line Edit menu (7142.2) appears, and you can now carry out online editing of the events held in the recalled register. Meanwhile, the control block of the control panel operated in step 1 is assigned to control editing operations.

#### Notes

In the following cases, [On Line Edit] is disabled, and it is not possible to display the On Line Edit menu.

- When the recalled register and the register selected in the menu are different.
- When a device other than [Register] is selected ([Local Disk] or [Removable Disk]) in the File >Shotbox, Macro >Macro >File Edit menu.
- If the recalled register is locked.

## On Line Edit menu



### 1 Register number

Shows the number of the register (1 to 250) being edited.

### 2 Register name

Shows the name of the register being edited.

### 3 Event number

Shows the current event number. When the [FROM TO] button in the Flexi Pad is pressed to select a range of events, this appears as a range, “From X To Y.” The event number reflects the position of the cursor in the macro register listing.

### 4 Remaining Memory

Shows the percentage of memory still available for recording events.

### 5 Macro register listing

When a macro is stored in the register, this shows a list of the macro events. Each macro event consists of the following components, which you can check in the list.

- **Contents:** Identifies this as an Event statement, Continue statement, or event number
- **Symbol:** Type of event (ASCII character string)
- **Data:** Event details in the form of parameters and data

For details about the event components, see “[Macro File Editing Rules](#)” (p. 289).

The cursor shows the current event in the list, in reverse video. You can use the [No] parameter to scroll the list, without changing the cursor position.

Depending on the switcher status, the cursor color changes as follows.

- **Yellow:** Macro editing mode
- **Gray:** When the editing mode is exited by a control panel operation
- **Blue:** During macro execution

### 6 ALL button

Selects all events in the macro register listing.

### 7 Macro creation event list

Shows the event being created or executed in the control panel.

### 8 Insert Before button

Inserts a created event immediately before the selected event in the macro register listing.

### 9 Insert After button

Inserts a created event immediately after the selected event in the macro register listing.

### 10 Delete button

Deletes the selected event in the macro register listing.

### 11 Modify button

Replaces the selected event in the macro register listing with a created event.

### 12 <Prev button

Moves the cursor to the event immediately before the selected event in the macro register listing.

### 13 >Next button

Moves the cursor to the event immediately after the selected event in the macro register listing.

## Carrying out online editing of macro events

### Notes

It is not possible to save editing results using the On Line Menu. Carry out the necessary control panel operations to save the edited register.

### To insert an event

**1** On the control panel, if auto insert mode is on, switch it off.

**2** On the control panel, create a macro event.

The created event appears in the macro creation event list.

*For details about the display, see “Macro File Editing Rules” (p. 289).*

**3** In the macro register listing, press [<Prev] or [>Next] to select the position where you want to insert the created event.

**4** Select any of the following.

**To insert before the event selected in the list:** Press [Insert Before].

**To insert after the event selected in the list:** Press [Insert After].

This inserts the created event either before or after the specified event.

### Notes

In the following cases, [Insert Before] and [Insert After] are disabled, and it is not possible to insert the event.

- If the memory or register is full.
- The size of the created macro event is larger than the memory or register space available.
- When multiple events are selected.
- When the number of events has reached 99.
- When not in macro editing mode.<sup>1)</sup>

1) While a macro is being executed on the control panel, when macro saving has been executed, or when the [EXIT] button in the Flexi Pad has been pressed

**5** Operate the control panel to save the editing result.

### To delete an event

**1** In the macro register listing, press [<Prev] or [>Next] to select the event you want to delete.

To select all events in the register, press [All].

**2** Press [Delete].

### Notes

If not in macro editing mode,<sup>1)</sup> [Delete] is disabled, and it is not possible to delete the selected event.

1) While a macro is being executed on the control panel, when macro saving has been executed, or when the [EXIT] button in the Flexi Pad has been pressed

**3** Operate the control panel to save the editing result.

### To modify an event

**1** On the control panel, if auto insert mode is on, switch it off.

**2** In the macro register listing, press [<Prev] or [>Next] to select the event you want to modify.

**3** On the control panel, create a macro event.

The modified event appears in the macro creation event list.

*For details about the display, see “Macro File Editing Rules” (p. 289).*

**4** Press [Modify].

### Notes

If not in macro editing mode,<sup>1)</sup> [Modify] is disabled, and it is not possible to modify the event.

1) While a macro is being executed on the control panel, when macro saving has been executed, or when the [EXIT] button in the Flexi Pad has been pressed

**5** Operate the control panel to save the editing result.

---

## Offline Editing of Macro Events

You use the Off Line Edit menu to carry out offline editing of macro events.

In the Off Line Edit menu, you can carry out editing in the menu only, unrelated to operation of the control panel.

### To display the Off Line Edit menu

In any of the following menus, select the register or device holding the macro you want to edit, and press [Off Line Edit].

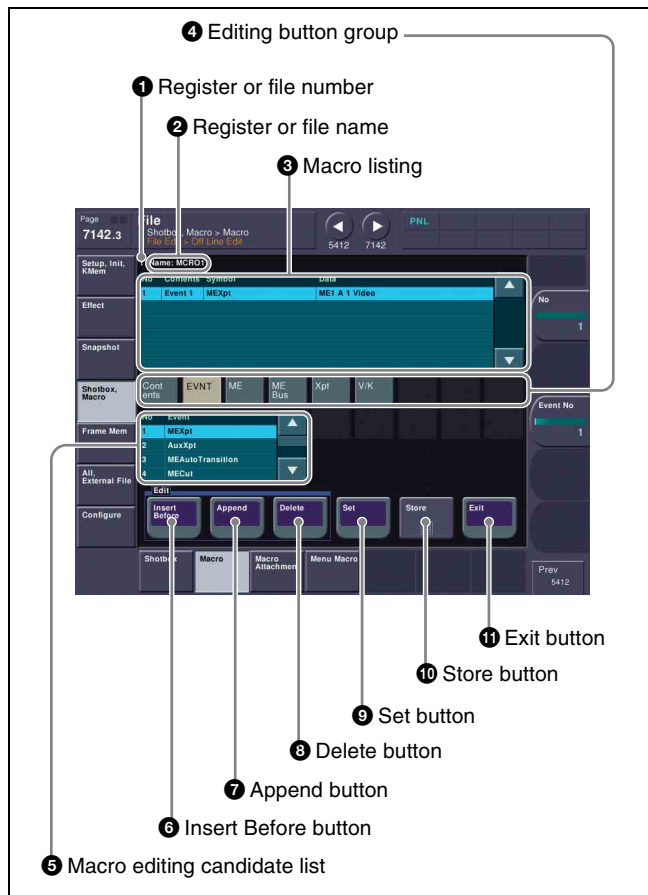
- Macro >Register >Lock menu (5412)
- Macro >Register >Delete menu (5416)
- Macro >Register >Rename menu (5417)
- File >Shotbox, Macro >Macro >File Edit menu (7142.1)

The Off Line Edit menu (7142.3) appears, and the selected macro register or macro file is recalled, enabling offline editing.

## Notes

If the selected register is locked, [Off Line Edit] is disabled, and it is not possible to display the Off Line Edit menu.

## Off Line Edit menu



### 1 Register or file number

Shows the number of the register or file being edited.

### 2 Register or file name

Shows the name of the register or file being edited.

### 3 Macro listing

Lists the macro events that are saved in the register or file. The cursor moves to the selected event. Each macro event consists of the following components, which you can check in the list.

- **Contents:** Event statement, Continue statement, comment (#), or event number, as selected in the editing button group [Contents]
- **Symbol:** Event type (ASCII character string), as selected in the editing button group [EVNT]

- **Data:** Parameters and data as set in the editing button group

For details about the event components, see [“Macro File Editing Rules” \(p. 289\)](#).

### 4 Editing button group

This row of buttons shows the components of an event. To carry out event editing: (1) press an editing button, then (2) select an item from the list of macro editing candidates, and repeat this process as required.

### 5 Macro editing candidate list

Shows the list of editing candidates for the selection from the editing button group.

### 6 Insert Before button

Inserts immediately before the event selected in the macro listing.

### 7 Append button

Adds an empty row at the end of the macro listing.

### 8 Delete button

Deletes the event selected in the macro listing.

### 9 Set button

Reflects the item selected in the macro editing candidate list, in the macro listing and editing buttons.

### 10 Store button

Saves the results of the macro register or macro file editing.

### 11 Exit button

Closes the Off Line Edit menu without saving the results of the macro register or macro file editing, and returns to the File Edit menu.

## Carrying out offline editing of macro events

### To insert an event

- 1 In the macro listing, select the event at the position where you want to insert, and select one of the following.

**To insert before the event selected in the list:** Press [Insert Before].

**To insert at the end of the list:** Press [Append].

A blank row is added at the end of the macro listing.

- 2 Press [Contents] in the editing button group.

The following event types appear in the macro editing candidate list.

- **Event:** Event
- **Continue:** Event continuation
- **#:** Comment

For details about the items, see [“Macro File Syntax” \(p. 289\)](#).

- 3 Select the desired item from the macro editing candidate list, and press [Set].

The selected item appears at the event insertion position in the macro listing, as an event component. Additionally, in the leftmost blank position of the editing button group (to the right of [Contents]), a button appears, corresponding to the item in the macro editing candidate list. For example, if “Event” is selected, an [EVNT] button appears.



- 4 In the editing button group, press the button that has just appeared.

The item corresponding to the button appears in the macro editing candidate list. If you press the [EVNT] button, the symbol indicating the event contents appears ([p. 290](#)).

- 5 Select the desired item from the macro editing candidate list, and press [Set].

At the event insertion position of the macro listing, the selected item is added as an event component. Additionally, in the next blank position of the editing button group, a button appears, corresponding to the item in the macro editing candidate list. For example, if “MEAutoTransition” is selected, a button for the parameters and data for the MEAutoTransition appears.



- 6 Repeat steps 4 and 5, to edit the event components.

At the event insertion position of the macro listing, the item is added as an event component. To add further events, repeat steps 1 to 6.

- 7 Press [Store].

- 8 Enter the register number as required, and press [Enter].

The current macro is stored in the register. The menu screen switches to the menu that was on the screen immediately before the offline editing.

## To delete an event

- 1 In the macro listing, select the event you want to delete.

- 2 Press [Delete].

This deletes the selected event.

If a deleted Event statement is followed by a Continue statement, the Continue statement is converted to an Event statement.

- 3 Press [Store].

## To create a new macro

- 1 From the list in any of the following menus, select an empty register or file, and press [Off Line Edit].

- Macro >Register >Lock menu (5412)
- Macro >Register >Delete menu (5416)
- Macro >Register >Rename menu (5417)
- File >Shotbox, Macro >Macro >File Edit menu (7142.1)

The Off Line Edit menu (7142.3) appears.

- 2 Carry out steps 2 to 7 of the procedure in [“To insert an event” \(p. 189\)](#) to create an event.

## To close the Off Line Edit menu without saving the editing results

Press [Exit].

# Macro Attachment Assigning

Macro attachment is a function whereby a macro register is assigned to a control panel button or a particular position of a fader lever, linking the execution of the button function or a fader lever operation with a macro execution.

## Setting a macro attachment to a button

Select one of the following three linking modes to make the macro attachment.

**Pre-macro:** Mode in which the button function is executed after macro execution has completed

**Post-macro:** Mode in which the macro is executed after carrying out the button function

**Macro only:** Mode in which the button function is not executed, and the macro only is executed

The linking mode selection is performed in the cross-point control block of the PGM/PST bank or M/E bank. For pre-

macro mode and post-macro mode, assign the function to the 1st row, and make the selection by pressing the button. For macro-only mode, press the pre-macro and post-macro selection buttons simultaneously to make a selection. You can assign any one of the 250 macro registers to a button.

For a button whose function is switched by delegation, you can make a separate macro attachment for each function. For each control panel, you can make up to 1000 macro attachment settings.

The macro attachment setting is possible for the following bus buttons.

Block	Button
Cross-point control block	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Background A row cross-point buttons</li> <li>Background B row cross-point buttons</li> <li>Cross-point buttons of the bus assigned to the 2nd row.</li> <li>2nd row buttons assigned by the utility/shotbox function<sup>a)</sup></li> <li>Buttons set to "Inhibit"</li> </ul>
Device control block	Buttons assigned the function of the VTR/disk recorder/frame memory operating mode [PLAY], [CUE], [STOP], and [START TC] buttons
Transition control block	Fader and buttons assigned the following functions <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Next transition selection</li> <li>Transition type selection</li> <li>Wipe direction selection</li> <li>Auto transition, cuts</li> <li>Device control (CUE, PLAY, STOP)</li> <li>Pattern limit On/Off</li> <li>Independent key transition type selection</li> <li>Independent key transition auto transition, cuts<sup>b)</sup></li> </ul>
Flexi Pad	[AUTO TRNS] <sup>b)</sup> , [KEY ON] <sup>b)</sup> , [RUN], [REWIND], [NORM], [REV], and [NORM/REV] buttons

a) Shotbox recall, macro recall, some utility commands (Inhibit Set, Inhibit All Clear, K-SS Store, and macro operating commands) cannot be set to assigned buttons.

b) In the case of an event that inserts or deletes a key with an independent key transition, the state (inserted or not inserted) prior to event registration is also saved in the macro. When the macro is executed, the event is only replayed if the key state matches the saved state. (Example: For a macro with an event that inserts/deletes a key, when the macro is executed, if the key was inserted it is deleted, but otherwise nothing occurs as concerns keying.)

**Notes**

- After setting a macro attachment to a button for which you can perform function replacement or function assignment, if you change the function assignment to the button, the macro attachment setting may disappear.
- After setting a macro attachment to a cross-point button in the cross-point control block, if you change the function assignment to the button, the macro attachment setting disappears.

**Enabling and disabling macro attachment**

You can temporarily disable the macro attachment settings. When a macro attachment is disabled, pressing the button does not cause execution of the assigned macro. You can enable and disable macro attachments for the PGM/PST bank and M/E banks individually.

**Setting and Canceling a Macro Attachment**

**Setting a macro attachment to a button**

This section describes an example of setting a macro attachment to a background A row cross-point button.

For details about buttons that can have a macro attachment, see “Setting a macro attachment to a button” (p. 190).

**Notes**

The [PRE MCRO] and [POST MCRO] functions must be assigned to buttons in the 1st row of the cross-point control block. The assignment is carried out in the Engineering Setup >Panel >Operation >Key/AUX/Function Assign menu (7326.13) (see p. 235).

- 1 Recall the macro register (1 to 250) that you want to assign to the button (see p. 182).
- 2 To set in pre macro mode, hold down the [PRE MCRO] button assigned to the 1st row in the cross-point control block, and to set in post macro mode, hold down the [POST MCRO] button, and then press the desired button in the background A row.

The cross-point button you pressed flashes amber, and the register you recalled in step 1 is assigned to the button.

**If you make both pre macro and post macro settings for the same button**

The later setting is valid.

**To set a macro attachment without changing cross-points**

When you set a macro attachment to a cross-point button, you can make the setting without changing the bus cross-points. Carry out this selection in the Engineering Setup >Panel >Operation >Macro menu (7326.6) (see p. 238).

**To make a macro attachment setting in macro only mode**

To make a macro attachment in macro only mode, use the following procedure.

- 1 Recall the macro register (1 to 250) that you want to assign to the button (☞ p. 182).
- 2 Press and hold the [PRE MCRO] button and the [POST MCRO] button assigned in the 1st row of the cross-point control block simultaneously, and then press the desired button in background A row.

The cross-point button you pressed flashes green, and the register you recalled in step 1 is assigned to the button.

### To check macro attachment settings

Hold down the [PRE MCRO] button or [POST MCRO] button assigned to the 1st row in the cross-point control block. While it is held down, buttons for which macro attachments are set flash as follows.

#### While the [PRE MCRO] button is held down:

- Buttons set in pre macro mode: flash amber
- Buttons set in macro only mode: flash green

#### While the [POST MCRO] button is held down:

- Buttons set in post macro mode: flash amber
- Buttons set in macro only mode: flash green

## Setting a macro attachment to a fader lever

You can set a macro attachment to any particular position of a fader lever in the transition control block.

### Notes

In macro-only mode it is not possible to set a macro attachment.

- 1 Recall the macro register (1 to 250) that you want to assign to the fader lever (☞ p. 182).
- 2 Move the fader lever to the position where you want to set the macro attachment.
- 3 Hold down the [PRE MCRO] button or [POST MCRO] button<sup>1)</sup> assigned to the 1st row in the cross-point control block, and press the [PRIOR SET] button in the control block containing the fader lever operated in step 2.

1) Only when setting a macro attachment to the start point or end point of fader lever operation, use [PRE MCRO] and [POST MCRO] in distinction, as follows.

**To set the operation start point (0%):** Hold down [PRE MCRO] for the operation.

**To set the operation end point (100%):** Hold down [POST MCRO] for the operation.

This assigns the register recalled in step 1 to the fader lever position selected in step 2.

### To check a macro attachment setting

Hold down the [PRE MCRO] button or [POST MCRO] button assigned to the 1st row in the cross-point control block. While it is held down, the fader lever position where

the macro attachment is set appears in the following places.

- **Fader status indicator in the transition execution section:** An arrow appears where the macro attachment is set.
- **Transition rate indication in the transition execution section:** This shows the fader lever position where the macro attachment is set, as a percentage value. (Fader lever start position as 0%, end position 100%)

## Removing macro attachment settings

### To cancel a macro attachment to a button

Hold down the [PRE MCRO] button or [POST MCRO] button assigned to the 1st row in the cross-point control block, and press the flashing button in the background A row. The button for which the macro attachment is set stops flashing and goes off, and this removes the setting.

### To cancel a macro attachment to a fader lever

Hold down the [PRE MCRO] button or [POST MCRO] button assigned to the 1st row in the cross-point control block, and press the [PRIOR SET] button in the control block containing the fader lever having the macro attachment set.

### To delete individual macro attachment settings

You can delete individual settings of a macro attachment assigned to a button.

- 1 Open the Macro >Attachment menu (5421).
- 2 Select the macro attachment settings you want to delete.
- 3 Press [Delete].
- 4 Check the message, then press [Yes].

### To delete all macro attachment settings in a single operation

- 1 Open the Macro >Attachment menu (5421).
- 2 Press [All Clear].
- 3 Check the message, then press [Yes].

## Switching the macro attachment assignment mode (button number mode/ pair number mode)

When assigning a macro attachment to a cross-point button, you can select the mode as either by button number or by pair number (video and key).

## Notes

If you change the mode using the following procedure, all macro attachment data relating to cross-point buttons is lost.

- 1 Open the Macro >Attachment menu (5421).
- 2 In the <Xpt Attachment Mode> group, select one of the following.

**Button Mode:** Button number mode. Assign an attachment combination of bus and button numbers.

**Pair Mode:** Pair number mode. Assign an attachment combination of bus and pair numbers.

- 3 Check the message, then press [Yes].

## Notes

- In pair number mode, carry out operations as follows.
  - When a single pair number is assigned to multiple cross-point buttons, pressing any of them executes the macros of all cross-point buttons to which the same pair number is assigned. Further, if you delete any of these assignments, this deletes all assignments to the same pair number.
  - If you reassign a pair number to a different cross-point button, the attachment settings are also transferred to the new cross-point button.
- When macro attachment data is loaded to overwrite existing data, this also changes the button number mode or pair number mode setting.

## Displaying the Macro Attachment List

In the Macro >Attachment menu (5421), you can display the macro attachment list to check the macro attachment settings.

The macro attachment list includes the following columns.

- **Block:** Shows the names of control panel blocks.
- **Button:** Shows the names of macro attachment assigned buttons (of up to 30 characters).
- **Reg:** Shows the names of assigned registers.
- **Name:** Shows the names of macro registers.
- **Mode:** Shows the names of macro modes (Pre/Post/Only/---<sup>1)</sup>).

Above the list is shown the names of the block and macro attachment assigned button currently selected in the list.

1) When no macro mode is set

For details about the macro modes, [☞ “Setting a macro attachment to a button” \(p. 190\).](#)

For details about the macro attachment listing, [☞ “About the Macro Attachment List Display” \(p. 295\).](#)

## Moving within the list from one block to another

You can move quickly from the current block to another block to check the settings for that block by pressing the following buttons in the <Block Select> group.

- **P/P:** Move to a block in the PGM/PST bank.
- **M/E-1:** Move to a block in the M/E-1 bank.
- **Other:** Move to a block in a location other than the PGM/PST bank or M/E-1 bank

## Executing a Macro by Macro Attachment

### Notes

For execution on the M/E or PGM/PST bank, use the [MCRO ATTCH ENBL] button assigned to the 1st row in the cross-point control block. To execute a macro according to a macro attachment set elsewhere, assign [MCRO ATTCH ENBL] to the 2nd row using the utility/shotbox function of the cross-point control block, then use that button.

## Executing a macro assigned to a button

- 1 Depending on the location of the button you want to use, press the [MCRO ATTCH ENBL] button, turning it on.
- 2 Press the desired button for which a macro attachment has been set.

This recalls the macro register assigned to the button, and the macro is executed as follows, according to the operation mode.

**Pre-macro mode:** The macro is executed first, and then the button function is executed.

**Post-macro mode:** The button function is executed first, and then the macro is executed.

**Macro only mode:** The button function is not executed, and the macro only is executed.

During macro execution, the button you pressed flashes.

### Notes

- It is not possible to execute more than one macro at a time. Therefore, even if you simultaneously press multiple buttons for which macro attachments are set, only one macro is executed.
- If a button is pressed twice during macro execution or when the macro is stopped, or if another macro is recalled, the following operation (stop or continue) depends on a setting in the Setup menu.

For details, [☞ “Setting the Macro Execution Mode” \(p. 238\)](#).

- Individual events stored in a macro are executed according to the settings in the Setup menu. If you change the settings in the Setup menu, a saved macro may not have the expected effect.
- During macro execution, if you switch the control panel to macro editing mode, the macro being executed stops.
- During macro editing, pressing a button for which a macro attachment is set does not execute the macro.

### To disable macro attachment settings

Depending on the location of the button you want to disable, press the [MCRO ATTCH ENBL] button, turning it off.

In this state, pressing a button for which a macro attachment is set does not execute the macro.

### Executing a macro assigned to a fader lever

- 1 In the cross-point control block for the fader lever on which you want to execute the macro, press the [MCRO ATTCH ENBL] button assigned to the 1st row, turning it on.
- 2 Move the fader lever from the start position to the end position.

When the fader lever passes the position at which the macro attachment is set, the macro register is recalled, and the macro is executed.

#### Notes

- Unless you move the fader lever to the end position (completing the travel), it is not possible to execute the macro again.
- When the preset color mix stroke mode is Normal, the first lever operation executes the macro, but the second lever operation does not.

For details about switching stroke mode, [☞ “Setting a preset color mix” \(p. 250\)](#).

- If a button is pressed twice during macro execution or when the macro is stopped, or if another macro is recalled, the following operation (stop or continue) depends on a setting in the Setup menu ([☞ p. 238](#)).
- Individual events stored in a macro are executed according to the settings in the Setup menu. If you change the settings in the Setup menu, a saved macro may not have the expected effect.
- During macro execution, if you switch the control panel to macro editing mode, the macro being executed stops.
- During macro editing, even if you operate a fader lever with a macro attachment set, the macro is not executed.

### To disable a macro attachment setting

In the cross-point control block for the fader lever on which you want to disable the macro, press the [MCRO ATTCH ENBL] button assigned to the 1st row, turning it off.

In this state, operating a fader lever with a macro attachment set does not execute the macro.

## Menu Macros

The term “menu macro” refers to the function whereby a sequence of menu operations is saved as data in memory, so that it can be recalled as required to automatically execute the same sequence of operations.

Using any of the menus in the following table, you can edit menu macro registers and menu macro events.

Menu	Function	Operations
Menu Macro Register menu (menu macro register editing)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Carry out menu macro register editing.</li> <li>• Recall a menu macro register and execute a menu macro.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Recalling a register and executing a menu macro</li> <li>• Locking a register</li> <li>• Copying a register</li> <li>• Deleting a register</li> <li>• Naming a register</li> </ul>
Menu Macro Edit menu (editing of menu macro events)	Edit events in a menu macro register.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inserting an event</li> <li>• Deleting an event</li> <li>• Modifying an event</li> </ul>

### Menu macro registers

The area of memory that holds a menu macro is termed a “menu macro register.” For each control panel there are 99 menu macro registers, numbered 1 to 99. You can edit these in the Menu Macro Register menu.

### Menu macro events

The events that can be recorded in a menu macro are operations carried out in a menu.

For menu operations which are not recorded in menu macros, [☞ “Menu Operations Not Recorded in a Menu Macro” \(p. 296\)](#).

## Recalling a Menu Macro Register and Executing a Menu Macro

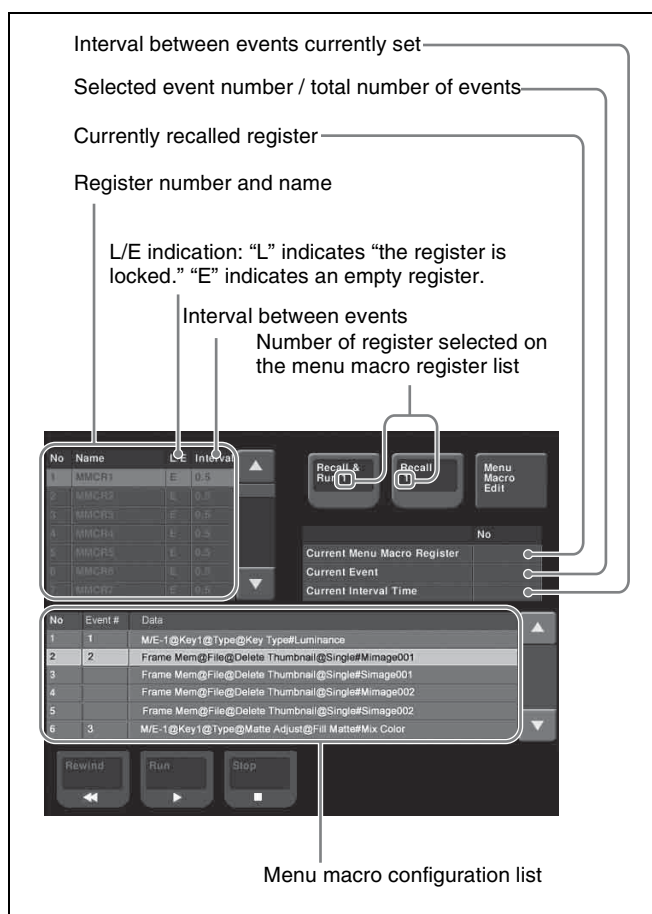
Menu macro operation is carried out by recalling a menu macro register.

## Notes

- Menu macros and macros recalled with a control panel button operate independently. Therefore, to synchronize these, adjustment of the execution timing is required.
- Events saved in a menu macro are executed according to the settings in setup, and therefore if you change the setup settings, it may not be possible to replay an event.
- When two menu macros are recalled successively, the later coming macro is ignored as far as the first macro is being executed.

## Recalling a Menu Macro Register

- 1 Open the Macro >Menu Macro Register >Recall & Run menu (5431).



- 2 Select a register.
- 3 Press [Recall & Run x] or [Recall x] (“x” is the number of the register selected in the menu macro register list).

To execute the menu macro at the same time as recalling the register, press [Recall & Run x].  
To recall the register only, press [Recall x].

## Executing a menu macro

In the Macro >Menu Macro Register >Recall & Run menu (5431), check that you are not in macro editing mode, then use the following procedure.

- 1 Select the opening event to execute.
- 2 Press [Run].

### To stop execution of a macro

Press [Stop].

### To move to the start of a menu macro event

Press [Rewind].

## Recalling a menu macro register from a macro register

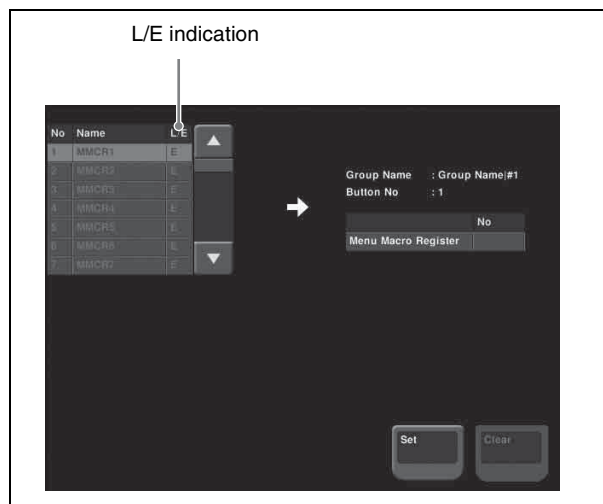
Menu macro recall and execution operations can be saved as events in a control panel macro, and then recalled. If with the control panel in macro editing mode you execute a menu macro, then this operation is recorded as an event.

For details about recalling operations, see “Macro Operations in the Flexi Pad” (p. 182) and “Editing Macros using Menus” (p. 186).

## Registering a Menu Macro in the Shortcut Menu

- 1 In the Home >Favorites >Button Edit menu (0023), select a button to register.
- 2 Press [MenuMacro Set].

The Menu Macro Set menu (0023.1) appears.  
The L/E indications have the following meanings.  
**L:** The register is locked.  
**E:** The register is empty.



**3** In the list on the left, select the button number to be assigned.

**4** Press [Set].

### Executing a menu macro from the shortcut menu

- 1** Open the Home > Favorites > Shortcut menu (0021).
- 2** Press the group name button.
- 3** Press the button to which the menu macro is assigned.

### To stop a menu macro during execution

Press [MenuMacro Stop].

## Creating and Editing a Menu Macro

### Notes

It is not possible to execute a menu macro during editing. To run the macro, first press the [Store] button to end editing.

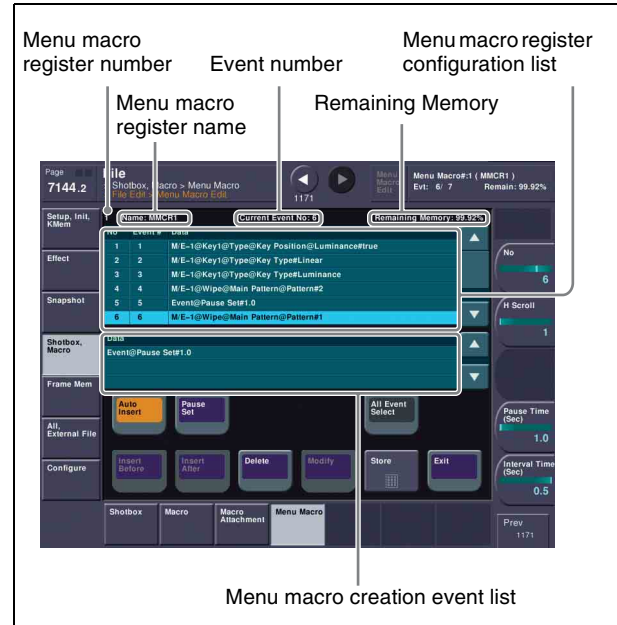
### Creating a new menu macro

**1** In the Macro > Menu Macro Register > Recall & Run menu (5431), select an empty register in the menu macro register list.

*For details about the method of operation, see “Recalling a Menu Macro Register” (p. 195).*

**2** Press [Menu Macro Edit].

The Menu Macro Edit menu (7144.2) appears. The menu macro register is recalled, and the system is now in menu macro editing mode.



**3** If required, press the [Auto Insert] button to toggle the auto insert mode on or off.

In the auto insert mode, when you carry out a menu operation, this is automatically recorded as an event in the menu macro.

**4** Create an event (carry out the menu operation you want to record as an event in the menu macro).

*For details about menus that can be recorded, see “Menu macro events” (p. 194).*

When auto insert mode is on, carrying out a menu operation automatically saves the event in a menu macro.

When auto insert mode is off, proceed to step **5**.

**5** When auto insert mode is off, press [Insert Before] or [Insert After] to save the event.

**6** Repeat steps **4** and **5** to register the required events in the menu macro.

**7** Set the event execution interval.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
5	Interval Time (Sec)	Event interval (seconds)

The settings are applied to each menu macro register.

**8** Press the [Store] button.

**9** Enter the menu macro register number as required, and press [Enter].

The menu macro is saved with the specified number.

The menu returns to the state in step 1.

### To set a pause duration

During menu macro editing, use the following procedure.

- 1 Enter the pause duration.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
4	Pause Time (Sec)	Pause duration (seconds)

- 2 Press [Pause Set].

When auto insert mode is on, this sets the pause duration, and inserts the pause event.

When auto insert mode is off, use the same operations as in step 5 of “Creating a new menu macro” (p. 196) to save the event.

### Editing a menu macro

- 1 In the Macro >Menu Macro Register >Recall & Run menu (5431), select the target register in the menu macro register list (p. 195).

- 2 Press [Menu Macro Edit].

The Menu Macro Edit menu (7144.2) appears. The menu macro register is recalled, and the system is now in menu macro editing mode.

- 3 Select an event.

- 4 If required, turn [Auto Insert] on or off.

- 5 Carry out the editing operations.

**When auto insert mode is on:** Carrying out a menu operation automatically inserts after the selected event.

**When auto insert mode is off:** Perform one of the following.

- To overwrite the selected event, carry out the new menu operation, then press the [Modify] button.
- To insert an event before the selected event, carry out the new menu operation, then press [Insert Before].
- To insert an event after the selected event, carry out the new menu operation, then press [Insert After].

#### To delete the selected event

Press [Delete].

To delete all events, select [All Event Select] and press [Delete].

- 6 Set the event execution interval using the same operation as step 7 of “Creating a new menu macro” (p. 196).

- 7 Save the register using the same operation as steps 8 and 9 of “Creating a new menu macro” (p. 196).

### To exit the Menu Macro Edit menu without saving the results of editing

Press [Exit].

### To scroll the event display using the menu macro listing

Select the event to display, and then use the [H Scroll] parameter to scroll the characters in the “Data” field.

### About the menu macro editing mode display

If you switch to another menu while in menu macro editing mode, the display is as shown below.

#### Screen when the keyframe status is displayed

The keyframe status section appears as follows.

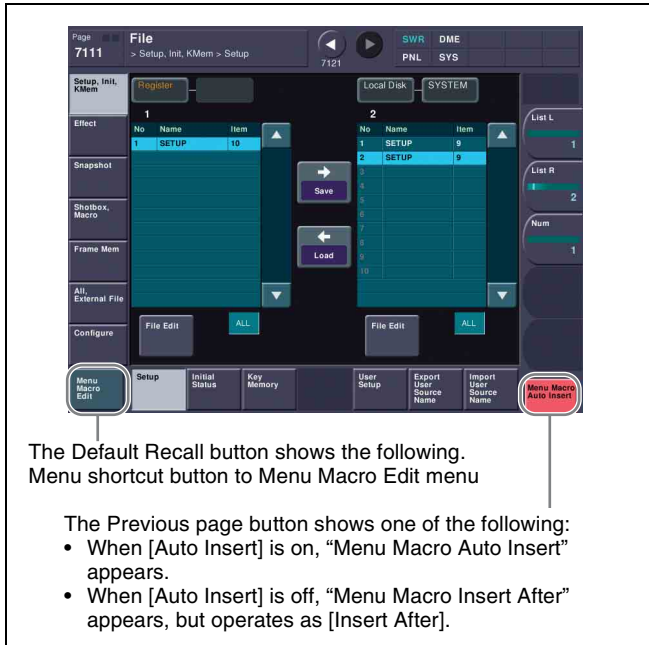
- Menu macro register number
- Menu macro register name
- Current event number / total number of events
- Remaining memory

Menu shortcut button to Menu Macro Edit menu

The Previous page button shows one of the following:

- When [Auto Insert] is on, “Menu Macro Auto Insert” appears.
- When [Auto Insert] is off, “Menu Macro Insert After” appears, but operates as [Insert After].

## Screen when the keyframe status is not displayed



The Default Recall button shows the following.  
Menu shortcut button to Menu Macro Edit menu

- The Previous page button shows one of the following:
- When [Auto Insert] is on, "Menu Macro Auto Insert" appears.
  - When [Auto Insert] is off, "Menu Macro Insert After" appears, but operates as [Insert After].

## Menu Macro Register Editing

You can display the current state of a menu macro register using the Menu Macro Register menu.

For details about the display, "*Effect Status Display*" (☞ p. 164). However, region names are not displayed. In the Menu Macro Register menu, you can do the following editing operations on menu macro registers.

- **Lock:** Write-protect the contents of the menu macro register.
- **Copy:** Copy the contents of one menu macro register to another menu macro register.
- **Delete:** Delete the contents of a menu macro register.
- **Name:** Attach a name to a menu macro register.

The operations for menu macro register editing are the same as those for effect register editing (☞ p. 164). However, it is not necessary to select a region in macro register editing.

## Macro Timeline

By recording macro recall and execute action on a timeline, in the same way as for key frames in an effect, you can automatically execute them in a sequence. This timeline is called a "macro timeline," and one macro timeline can have up to 99 macros being executed simultaneously in parallel.

There are 99 registers in the Macro region that can be recorded on the macro timeline, numbered 1 to 99. These

registers are distinct from the registers where individual macros are stored.

### Notes

If you use a macro timeline to superimpose more than one macro, the macros may not be executed according to the timing information registered in the timeline.

## Available key frame functions

The following lists the key frame functions that can be used on the macro timeline.

- RECALL (1-99), STORE (1-99), empty register search, AUTO SAVE, RECALL MODE (RECALL, RECALL & REWIND)
- EDIT ENABLE, EDIT UNDO
- CONST DUR, EFF DUR, KF DUR, DELAY, PAUSE, INSERT BEFORE, INSERT AFTER, MODIFY, DELETE, COPY, PASTE BEFORE, PASTE AFTER, FROM TO, ALL
- PREV KF, NEXT KF, GOTO TC, GOTO KF, RUN, REWIND, FF, STOP NEXT KF, NORMAL, JOG, KF FADER

The following keyframe functions cannot be used.

- KF LOOP, EFFECT LOOP, REVERSE, NORMAL/ REVERSE
- PATH

## Saving to a register

Set the recall and execute actions for the macros to be registered in the timeline using the Macro >Timeline >Timeline menu (5441) (☞ p. 199). The setting data can be saved in a register as key frame data. You can manipulate this data by recalling the register in which it is saved and using the Flexi Pad.

### Notes

Actions set in a keyframe are executed only when the keyframe effect is executed in the normal direction. Take care when executing simultaneously with a switcher keyframe effect, since the actions are not executed in the reverse direction.

## Forcibly ending a macro timeline

- If the timeline has completed but a macro is still executing, press the [REWIND] or [RUN] button in the Flexi Pad to forcibly end the macro timeline.
- In a macro timeline, since a take operation is not possible, if a macro included in the timeline has a pause event with a pause time of zero, the remainder of the timeline after the pause is ignored, and the macro timeline ends at that point.

## Register editing functions

You can use the following editing functions on a register in which a macro timeline is stored.

- Copy
- Move
- Swap
- Merge
- Lock
- Name
- Delete

## File-related functions

You can save and recall a created macro timeline as effect data, in the File menu.

Timeline operations are carried out on a macro timeline in the same way as for normal effects.

*For details about timeline operations, see “Keyframes” (p. 144).*

### Notes

When using a macro timeline, note the following.

- To use a macro timeline, the Macro region must be assigned to a region selection button in the Flexi Pad.

*For details about the region assignment, see “Assigning Regions to Region Selection Buttons in the Flexi Pad” (p. 220).*

- On a macro timeline, only macro recall and execution actions are stored. The data for a macro to be recalled on the macro timeline is not held on the timeline. It is necessary to create the macro data first.
- A macro timeline can be saved and recalled on the master timeline or a shotbox register, but cannot be saved as a snapshot.

---

## Creating and Editing a Macro Timeline

This section describes how to set actions, and add keyframe points. Note that path settings are not needed on the macro timeline.

*For details about keyframe operations, see “Creating and Editing Keyframes” (p. 153).*

## Registering a keyframe

The register operations use the Macro >Timeline >Timeline menu (5441) and the [INS] button in the Flexi Pad.

- 1 In the Flexi Pad, press the [EFF] button, then press the [EDIT ENBL] button.

This switches the memory recall section to effect editing mode.

- 2 Open the Macro >Timeline >Timeline menu (5441).

- 3 Select one of the actions (Recall, Take, Take All, No Action) that appear on the right.

If you selected Recall or Take, select the number of the macro register.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Reg No	Selection of macro register

- 4 Press the [Set] button.

The selected action appears in the Action column on the left.

- 5 Press the [INS] button in the Flexi Pad.

This creates keyframe 1 on the macro timeline.

## To set the action for a rewind operation

On the macro timeline, when the [REWIND] button in the Flexi Pad is pressed, the action set for the first keyframe is not executed; when the [RUN] button is pressed, then the first keyframe action is executed.

To execute an action when the [REWIND] button is pressed, it is necessary to set this action (Rewind Action).

To carry out this setting, press [Rewind Action] in the Macro >Timeline >Timeline menu (5441) to recall the Rewind Action menu (5441.1). In this setting screen, use the same setting method as in the screen for setting an action on the macro timeline.

Alternatively, you can select the reverse arrangement, whereby when the [REWIND] button is pressed, this executes the action set for the first keyframe, and when the [RUN] button is pressed the first keyframe action is not executed. In this case, the Rewind Action setting is still valid.

*For details about the setting operation, see “Setting the First Keyframe When a Rewind is Executed” (p. 236).*

## Overview of File Operations

You can save register data, including setup information and snapshot information, as a file on a local disk or removable disk, and recall it as required.

You can operate on individual files or registers, or together in a batch.

Regarding frame memory, it is possible to capture image data stored in an external device into frame memory. You can also convert the format of image data in frame memory into a different format and save it in an external device.

### Local disks and removable disks

A “local disk” refers to an internal flash memory drive in a control panel. A “removable disk” refers to generic USB-compatible external storage devices connected to the system.

### Files that can be manipulated

The following files can be saved and recalled.

- Operation mode setup data for system as a whole and individual devices
- Device status data for system startup
- Key memory setting data
- Keyframe effect setting data
- Snapshot setting data
- Wipe snapshot setting data
- DME wipe snapshot setting data
- Key snapshot setting data
- Shotbox setting data
- Macro setting data
- Macro attachment data
- Menu macro setting data
- Frame memory image data
- List of files automatically created in a frame memory file backup to DDR/VTR (single data set)
- User setup setting data
- User source name setting data

### File operations

You can carry out the following file operations.

#### When operating on individual files or registers

**Save:** Saves the data in a register to a local disk or removable disk.

**Load:** Loads a file from a local disk or removable disk.

**Copy:** Copies a file within a directory or from one directory to another. When a remote panel is used, this function applies to it, too.

**Rename:** Renames a file on a local disk or removable disk.

**Delete:** Deletes a file from a local disk or removable disk.

#### When operating on files or registers in a batch

The Save, Load, Copy and Delete operations above are available.

#### Notes on transferring multiple frame memory files together to removable disk

- Transferring all of the files within frame memory together fails if the capacity of the removable disk is too small to hold all of the images.

In this case, replace with a larger capacity removable disk, or delete files until saving is possible.

The following table roughly shows the relation between removable disk capacity and number of files that can be saved.

Removable disk capacity	Number of files that can be saved	
	SD system	HD system (except 720P)
256 MB	214	46

When transferring to a local disk, make sure there is ample capacity, so that problems such as this do not occur.

- If you cancel the operation during a data transfer between frame memory and a local disk or removable disk, then an image which was not completely transferred will not be reproducible. Avoid canceling such operations.
- When loading a file from a local disk or removable disk, if [Freeze Enable] in the Freeze menu is on, the loaded file may sometimes be overwritten by the frame memory input image.

To avoid this when loading a file, ensure that [Freeze Enable] is turned off.

### Importing or exporting files to or from frame memory

**Import:** Imports a file in a different format from a local disk or removable disk into frame memory after changing its format.

**Export:** Exports a file in a register to a local disk or removable disk after changing its format.

You can import TIFF, BMP, and TARGA files as follows into frame memory.

File type	Format	File name	Notes
TIFF file	RGB uncompressed format	Maximum eight characters, plus extension .tif required	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Layers cannot be used.</li> <li>If an alpha channel is present, two files are created as a pair.</li> </ul>
BMP file	Windows 24-bit format	Maximum eight characters, plus extension .bmp required	-
TARGA file	RGB uncompressed/compressed format	Maximum eight characters, plus extension .tga required	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Layers cannot be used.</li> <li>If an alpha channel is present, two files are created as a pair.</li> </ul>
PNG file	RGB compressed format	Maximum eight characters, plus extension .png required	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Layers cannot be used.</li> <li>If an alpha channel is present, two files are created as a pair.</li> </ul>

#### Notes

This functionality has been tested and confirmed to work with TIFF files created by Photoshop, but it may not be possible to use TIFF files created with some other software.

### About import image size

Pay attention to the following, depending on the signal format which you use.

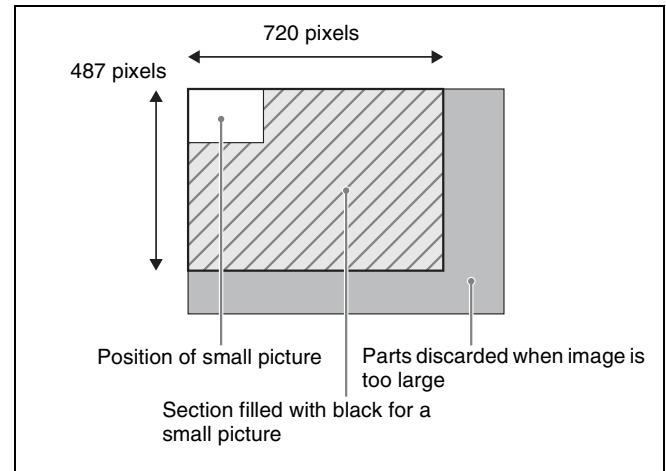
### SDTV (480i)

Images 720 × 487 pixels in size are exactly the size which fills the full screen.

The following figure shows how an import image is processed when the 480i/59.94 format is used.

Images are placed with the upper left of the screen as the origin.

When an image is smaller than the screen, the remainder of the screen is filled with black. When it is larger, parts which extend beyond the screen are discarded.



No pixel ratio conversion is performed when images are imported for the SDTV format.

When the signal format is 480i/59.94, if you create an image with a size of 720 × 540 on a computer and then import it just as it is, the image will be too tall. To maintain the shape of the image, first create it as a 720 × 540 image and then use computer software tools to compress the vertical dimension to 487 pixels before importing it.

### HDTV (1080i)

Images 1920 × 1080 pixels in size are exactly the size which fills the full screen.

Like SDTV, images are placed with the upper left of the screen as the origin.

When an image is smaller or larger than the screen, processing is the same as for SDTV.

Since the pixel ratio of the HDTV format is 1:1, files created on computers are imported in their original shapes. The following table shows the image sizes which exactly fill the full screen for the various signal formats.

Signal format	Image size (H × V)
480i/59.94	720 × 487
576i/50	720 × 576
1080i/50	1920 × 1080
1080i/59.94	
1080PsF/23.976	
1080PsF/24	
720P/50	1280 × 720
720P/59.94	

## Importing 720P movie material

To import movie material in 720P format, it is necessary to treat each frame as a separate image file.

## Directory operations

You can create a new directory on a local disk or removable disk, rename, or delete a directory (🔗 p. 208).

## Copying files between different unit IDs

Switcher files within a local disk or removable disk are managed by unit ID.

To copy files between different unit IDs, use the Unit ID Copy menu (🔗 p. 209).

## Saving data recalled by autoload

At power on, you can automatically recall data previously stored on the local disk. (Autoload function)

The following data can be loaded by the autoload function.

- Keyframe effect setting data
- Snapshot setting data
- Wipe snapshot setting data
- DME wipe snapshot setting data
- Key snapshot setting data
- Shotbox setting data
- Macro setting data
- Macro attachment data
- Frame memory image data

To use the autoload function, the data required must first be saved (🔗 p. 209).

For details, 🔗 “Setting Automatic Loading of Register Data at Power On (Autoload Function)” (p. 214).

## Locking file recall operations

For each of the following categories, in setup you can apply a lock on recalling files (🔗 p. 218).

Setup, Initial Status, Key Memory, Effect, Snapshot, Wipe Snapshot, DME Wipe Snapshot, Key Snapshot, Shotbox, Macro, Macro Attachment, Menu Macro, User Setup

A locked file cannot be downloaded from the File menu.

## Errors when transferring files

If an error occurs when transferring files, an error message appears in the Error Information menu (9900).

In that case, save the data or recall the file again. If the error message persists, contact your Sony dealer.

# Operations on Individual Files

You can save or load the contents of an individual file or register.

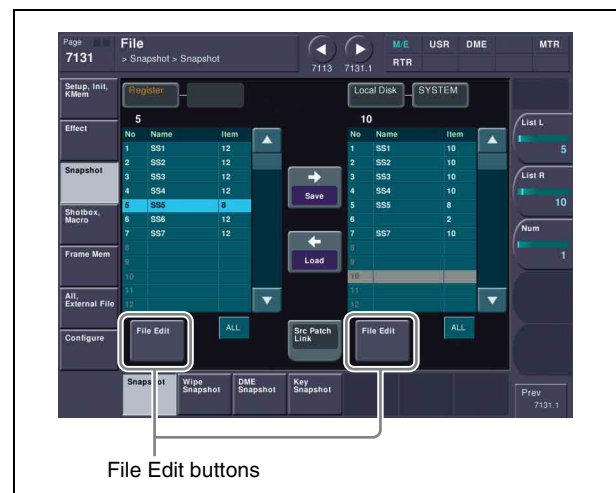
The following description refers to the example of carrying out operations on snapshot files, but the procedure is similar in the other menus.

## Viewing Detailed File Information

As an example, to view detailed snapshot file information, carry out the following procedure.

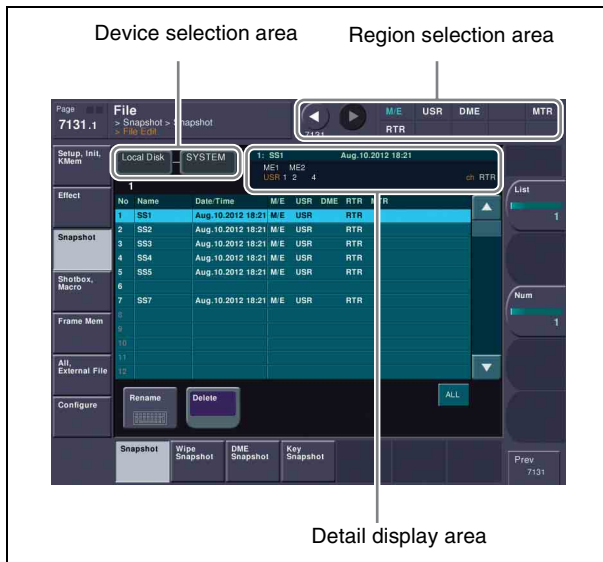
- 1 Open the File > Snapshot > Snapshot menu (7131).

The status area shows the device status, and a list of files present on the device.



- 2 Press [File Edit].

The file details appear (reference region file name, creation date, regions including data) in table form.



Selecting a particular file displays more detailed information about that file in the detail display area at the top right of the file list.

In the Frame Memory menu, the following item is also shown.

**Pair:** In the case of a pair file, “P” is shown.

## Selecting Regions

You can carry out a file operation on a number of regions simultaneously. However, a region selection is not required for the following files.

- Key memory
- Shotbox
- Macro
- Macro attachment
- Frame memory
- Setup
- Initial status
- User setup
- User source name

In the above list, for setup and initial status, you can similarly separate the files to be operated on by device in a way similar to the region selection.

### To make a region selection

- 1 Press the region selection area at the top right of the screen (see previous figure).

The region selection window appears.

- 2 Press the region names you do not want to select, turning them off.

“ME2” and “DME 1ch” to “DME 8ch” regions are disabled, even if selected.

- 3 Press [OK].

## Selecting a Device for Operations

To carry out file operations, you need to specify the device holding the data (or file), as one of the following: register, local disk, removable disk, and so on. You can then further select a directory.

### Notes

- Files saved on a local disk may be lost if the local disk fails. Always keep separate backup copies of important files on a removable disk.
- Format a removable disk before using it for the first time (☞ p. 216).

As an example, to select a removable disk, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the File menu, press the device selection indication above the file list.

A pull-down menu appears.

- 2 Press [Removable Disk].

A list of directories on the removable disk appears. (Maximum 40 per page)

The maximum number of directories is 120 on a removable disk, or 200 on a local disk.

- 3 As required, press the ◀ or ▶ button, to switch directory pages.

- 4 Press the name of the directory you want to use.

## Saving Files

As an example, to save snapshot register data on a local disk or removable disk, use the following procedure.

### Notes

For key snapshots, snapshots, and effects, you cannot perform the following operation when [Src Patch Link] is lit on the menu screen (☞ p. 262).

- 1 Open the File > Snapshot > Snapshot menu (7131).
- 2 In the device selection area on the left, select [Register].
- 3 In the device selection area on the right, select [Local Disk] or [Removable Disk], then select a directory.

- 4 Select the data to be saved, and the file in which to save it.

You can select more than one file.

- 5 Press [→ Save].

This saves the selected register data in the specified location.

If there is already data in the specified location, a confirmation message appears.

Select “Yes” to overwrite the data.

## Saving frame memory files

Between steps **3** and **4** of the procedure in “Saving Files” above, do as follows.

- 1 To select the frame memory folder, press [Default] in the device selection in the list on the left.
- 2 Press the required folder name in the pull-down menu.
- 3 Carry out the same operations as in steps **1** and **2** on the list on the right.
- 4 Select the type of data to be displayed.
  - To display still image files, press [Still].
  - To display clip files, press [Clip].
  - To display all types of file, press [All].

---

## Loading Files

As an example, to load a snapshot file from a local disk or removable disk to a register, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the File >Snapshot >Snapshot menu (7131).
- 2 In the device selection area on the left, select [Register].
- 3 In the device selection area on the right, select where the file is held ([Local Disk] or [Removable Disk]), and then specify a directory.
- 4 Select the register to which you want to load, and the file to be loaded.
- 5 Press [← Load].

This loads the contents of the selected file from the specified location. (Setup data is first loaded.)

## Loading frame memory files

Between steps **3** and **4** of the procedure in “Loading Files” above, do as follows.

- 1 To select the frame memory folder, press [Default] in the device selection in the list on the left.
- 2 Press the required folder name in the pull-down menu.
- 3 Carry out the same operations as in steps **1** and **2** on the list on the right.
- 4 Select the type of data to be displayed.
  - To display still image files, press [Still].
  - To display clip files, press [Clip].
  - To display all types of file, press [All].

---

## Copying Files

You can copy files either within a directory or between directories on a local disk or removable disk.

As an example, to copy a snapshot file from a removable disk to a local disk, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the File >Snapshot >Snapshot menu (7131).
- 2 In the device selection area on the left, specify the location of the file to be copied (in this case [Removable Disk] and a directory).
- 3 In the device selection area on the right, select the destination of the copied file (in this case [Local Disk] and a directory).
- 4 Select the source and destination files.
- 5 Press [→ Copy].

This copies the selected file or files to the specified destination.

If there is already data in the specified location, a confirmation message appears.

Select “Yes” to overwrite the data.

## Copying frame memory files

Between steps **3** and **4** of the procedure in “Copying Files” above, do as follows.

- 1 To select the frame memory folder, press [Default] in the device selection in the list on the left.
- 2 Press the required folder name in the pull-down menu.
- 3 Carry out the same operations as in steps **1** and **2** on the list on the right.
- 4 Select the type of data to be displayed.
  - To display still image files, press [Still].

- To display clip files, press [Clip].
- To display all types of file, press [All].

## Renaming Files

You can rename a file or register on a local disk or removable disk.

As an example, to rename a snapshot file, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the File >Snapshot >Snapshot menu (7131).
- 2 Press [File Edit].  
A detailed list appears. Here too, you can select a device or specify a directory.
- 3 Select the file to be renamed.
- 4 Press [Rename].
- 5 Enter a name of up to eight characters, and press [Enter].

### Notes

- Within the switcher, the names for Initial Status and Setup data are fixed.  
You can change the file names on a local disk or removable disk, but the next time they are reloaded they will revert to the default names.
- The following names cannot be used.  
CON, PRN, AUX, CLOCK\$, NUL  
COM0, COM1, COM2, COM3, COM4, COM5,  
COM6, COM7, COM8, COM9  
LPT0, LPT1, LPT2, LPT3, LPT4, LPT5, LPT6,  
LPT7, LPT8, LPT9

## Renaming frame memory files

- 1 Open the File >Frame Mem >Frame Memory menu (7151).
- 2 Press [File Edit].
- 3 Select the type of data to be displayed.
  - To display still image files, press [Still].
  - To display clip files, press [Clip].
  - To display all types of file, press [All].
- 4 Select the file to be renamed.  
(If you selected [Clip] in step 3, you cannot select multiple files.)
- 5 Press [Rename].

- 6 Depending on the selections in steps 3 and 4, enter a name as follows and press [Enter].

- If you selected a single file with [Still] or [All]: Enter a name of not more than eight characters.
- If you selected more than one file with [Still] or [All]: Enter a name of not more than four characters.
- If you selected [Clip]: Enter a name of not more than four characters.

### Notes

If you select [Register] in the operation device selection block and select and rename multiple files using [Still] or [All], the still images are converted to a clip.

## Deleting Files

You can delete data from a local disk or removable disk, and snapshot or effect data from a register. As an example, to delete a snapshot file, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the File >Snapshot >Snapshot menu (7131).
- 2 Press [File Edit].  
A detailed list appears. Here too, you can select a device or specify a directory.
- 3 Select the file to be deleted.
- 4 Press [Delete].
- 5 Check the message, then press [Yes].

## Deleting frame memory files

Between steps 2 and 3 of the procedure in “Deleting Files” above, do as follows.

- 1 To select the frame memory folder, press [Default] in the device selection in the list.
- 2 Press the required folder name in the pull-down menu.
- 3 Select the type of data to be displayed.
  - To display still image files, press [Still].
  - To display clip files, press [Clip].
  - To display all types of file, press [All].

## Creating a frame memory folder on the device (local disk or removable disk)

- 1 Open the File >Frame Mem >Frame Memory menu (7152).

- 2 In the pull-down menu of the device selection section, select [Local Disk] or [Removable Disk], and then specify the directory.
- 3 Press [New].
- 4 Enter a name of up to eight characters, and press [Enter].

#### Notes

- The following names cannot be used.  
Default, Flash1, Flash2  
CON, PRN, AUX, CLOCK\$, NUL, COM0, COM1, COM2, COM3, COM4, COM5, COM6, COM7, COM8, COM9, LPT0, LPT1, LPT2, LPT3, LPT4, LPT5, LPT6, LPT7, LPT8, LPT9
- It is not possible to create 12 or more directories in the frame memory folder.

#### To rename a frame memory folder

- 1 Select a folder.
- 2 Press [Rename].
- 3 Enter a name of up to eight characters, and press [Enter].

#### To delete a frame memory folder

- 1 Select a folder.
- 2 Press [Delete].
- 3 Check the message, then press [Yes].

## Saving the List of Frame Memory Files to a Local Disk or Removable Disk

If you save all files currently held in frame memory as a single backup data set, by high-speed recording on video tape or other medium, is created a file of file list data that is needed for successful frame memory file restore operation. It is necessary to save this file on a local disk or removable disk.

- 1 Open the File >Frame Mem >File Name Data menu (7153).
- 2 In the operating device selection section on the left or right, select [Register].

The register name “FM\_Bkup” appears. In the device selection section on the opposite side, the destination for saving automatically appears.

- 3 As the destination for saving select [Local Disk] or [Removable Disk], then specify the directory.
- 4 Select the destination file for saving.
- 5
  - To save to disk, press [Save].
  - To load from disk, press [Load].

#### To view details of files

Press [File Edit].

A list of the saved file names appears. You can manipulate these files like any other files.

## File Batch Operations

You can batch process all files or registers.

### Batch Saving Files

To save the data of all registers to a local disk or removable disk, use the following procedure.

#### Notes

- Files saved on a local disk may be lost if the local disk fails. Always keep separate backup copies of important files on a removable disk.
- Format a removable disk before using it for the first time ([☞ p. 216](#)).
- You cannot perform the following operation when [Src Patch Link] is lit on the menu screen ([☞ p. 262](#)).

- 1 Open the File >All, External File >All menu (7161).
- 2 In the device selection area of the All menu, select the destination for saving the files ([Local Disk] or [Removable Disk] and directory).
- 3 If there are registers you do not want to save, in the <Category> group, exclude them from the operation. To select all registers, press [All Select] ([☞ “Files that can be manipulated” \(p. 200\)](#)).

#### Notes

The frame memory is not selected when you press [All Select]. To apply the setting to frame memory, press [Frame Memory], turning it on. When frame memory is selected, it is not possible to apply settings to the <Category> group data.

- 4 Press [→ Save].
- 5 Check the message, then press [Yes].

---

## Batch Loading Files

To batch load files from a local disk or removable disk, use the following procedure.

### Notes

It is not possible to recall a file from a category for which recall operations are locked (☞ p. 218).

- 1 Open the File >All, External File >All menu (7161).
- 2 In the device selection area, select the location where the files are saved ([Local Disk] or [Removable Disk], and the directory).
- 3 If there are files you do not want to load, in the <Category> group, exclude them from the operation. To select all files, press [All Select] (☞ “Files that can be manipulated” (p. 200)).

### Notes

- The frame memory is not selected when you press [All Select]. To apply the setting to frame memory, press [Frame Memory], turning it on. When frame memory is selected, it is not possible to apply settings to the <Category> group data.
- You cannot select [User Setup] when [Src Patch Link] is lit on the menu screen (☞ p. 262).

- 4 Press [← Load].
- 5 Check the message, then press [Yes].

### To execute the load after clearing the data in the destination regions

Before pressing [← Load], press [CLR Before Load], turning it on.

The following categories of data can be cleared before execution of the load.

Effect, Snapshot, Wipe Snapshot, DME Wipe Snapshot, Key Snapshot, Shotbox, and Macro

### Notes

When frame memory is selected for the setting, the data is always deleted before execution of the load.

---

## Batch Copying Files

To copy files between a local disk and removable disk, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the File >All, External File >All menu (7161).
- 2 In the operating device selection section, select the storage location ([Local Disk] or [Removable Disk] and directory) of the source files.
- 3 In the operating device selection section, select the destination storage location ([Local Disk] or [Removable Disk] and directory) of the source files.
- 4 If there are files you do not want to copy, remove them from the selection in the <Category> group. To select all files, press [All Select].

### Notes

The frame memory is not selected when you press [All Select]. To apply the setting to frame memory, press [Frame Memory], turning it on. When frame memory is selected, it is not possible to apply settings to the <Category> group data.

- 5 Press [→ Copy].

If there is already data in the specified location, a confirmation message appears. Select “Yes” to overwrite the data.

---

## Importing and Exporting Files

You can import or export frame memory image data from or to external media.

**Import:** Transfers a file in a different format from a local disk or removable disk to frame memory as image data.

**Export:** Changes the file format of register data and saves the data on a local disk or removable disk.

For details about the formats supported for import and export, ☞ “Importing or exporting files to or from frame memory” (p. 201).

---

## Importing Frame Memory Data

As an example, to import data in a bitmap format from a removable disk to a frame memory register, use the following procedure.

For details about the points you should take note of when importing data, see “About import image size” (p. 201).

- 1 Open the File >All, External File >Import/Export menu (7162).
- 2 Press the file format selection area at the top of the screen to select [Frame Memory (.BMP)].  
  
Files of the selected type are shown in the list on the right.
- 3 Press one of the buttons at the top left to select the type of data to display.
  - To display still image files, press [Still].
  - To display clip files, press [Clip].All of the selected type of frame memory data appears in the list on the left.
- 4 In the folder selection area on the left, select the frame memory folder to which you want to import the file.
- 5 Press the device selection area on the right to select [Removable Disk].
- 6 Select the directory to hold the imported files.

#### Notes

Files on a removable disk to be imported must always be in a directory immediately below root.

- 7 Select the file to be imported.
- 8 Press [← Import].

## Exporting Frame Memory Data

As an example, to save image data from frame memory in a bitmap format on a removable disk, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the File >All, External File >Import/Export menu (7162).
- 2 In the Import/Export menu, press the file format selection area at the top of the screen to select [Frame Memory (.BMP)].  
  
Files of the selected type are shown in the list on the right.
- 3 Press one of the buttons at the top left to select the type of data to display.
  - To display still image files, press [Still].
  - To display clip files, press [Clip].

All of the selected type of frame memory data appears in the list on the left.

- 4 Press the device selection area on the right to select [Removable Disk].

- 5 Select the directory to which to export the files.

#### Notes

The displayed directories are only those directories immediately below root.

- 6 In the folder selection area on the left, select the frame memory folder that contains the file you want to export.
- 7 Select the file you want to export from the list on the left.
- 8 Press [→ Export].

This adds the image data from the frame memory in a bitmap format on the removable disk. If the specified destination file name already exists, an overwriting confirmation message appears. Select “Yes” to overwrite the data.

## Directory Operations

You can create a new directory on a local disk or removable disk, rename, or delete a directory.

### Creating a New Directory

You can create a maximum of 120 directories on a removable disk, or 200 on an internal local disk.

- 1 Open the File >Configure >Directory menu (7171).
- 2 In the device selection pull-down menu, select [Local Disk] or [Removable Disk].
- 3 Press [New].
- 4 Enter a name of up to eight characters, and press [Enter].

#### Notes

The following names cannot be used for directories: CON, PRN, AUX, CLOCK\$, and NUL COM0, COM1, COM2, COM3, COM4, COM5, COM6, COM7, COM8, and COM9

LPT0, LPT1, LPT2, LPT3, LPT4, LPT5, LPT6, LPT7, LPT8, LPT9

---

## Renaming a Directory

- 1 Open the File >Configure >Directory menu (7171).
- 2 In the device selection pull-down menu, select [Local Disk] or [Removable Disk].
- 3 Select a directory.
- 4 Press [Rename].
- 5 Enter a new name of not more than eight characters, and press [Enter].

---

## Deleting a Directory

- 1 Open the File >Configure >Directory menu (7171).
- 2 In the device selection pull-down menu, select [Local Disk] or [Removable Disk].
- 3 Select a directory.
- 4 Press [Delete].
- 5 Check the message, then press [Yes].

---

## Copying Files between Different Unit IDs

Switcher files on a local disk or removable disk are handled separately for each unit ID (☞ p. 211). With the normal file copy operation, it is not possible to copy files between different unit IDs. To copy files between different unit IDs, grouped by category, use the following procedure.

### Notes

The following operation applies to frame memory data.

- 1 Open the File >Configure >Unit ID Copy menu (7172).
- 2 In the Unit ID Copy menu, press the category selection section at the top right of the screen.

- 3 Press the categories you do not want to select, turning them off.
- 4 Press [OK].
- 5 In the operating device selection section on the left list, select the storage location of the source files, and in the operating device selection section on the right list, specify the destination storage location.
- 6 Select the copy source and copy destination unit IDs.
- 7 Press [→ Copy].
- 8 Check the message, then press [Yes].

### Notes

If there is already data present in the copy destination, note that this will overwrite all of the data.

---

## Saving Files Recalled by Autoload

If you save effect setting data, frame memory image files and so on in the PWON\_LD directory on a local disk, then when the system is powered on this data is recalled automatically. This is known as the autoload function. To save the data to be recalled by the autoload function, use the menu for operations on individual files.

For information about the data recalled by the autoload function, ☞ “Saving data recalled by autoload” (p. 202).

For information about enabling or disabling the autoload function, ☞ “Setting Automatic Loading of Register Data at Power On (Autoload Function)” (p. 214).

For example, to save snapshot data, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the File >Snapshot >Snapshot menu (7131).
- 2 In the device selection area on the left, select [Register].
- 3 In the device selection area on the right, select [Local Disk].  
Be sure to select [Local Disk] as the saving destination.
- 4 Select the PWON\_LD directory.

The PWON\_LD directory is automatically created when [Power On File Load] is set to On in the

Engineering Setup > System > Start Up menu (7314). If set to Off, the directory does not appear.

**5** Select the data to be saved, and the file in which to save it.

**6** Press [→ Save].

If there is already data in the specified location, a confirmation message appears.  
Select “Yes” to overwrite the data.



## Setup for the Whole System

Carry out operations relating to setup for the whole system in the Engineering Setup menu. Here the “whole system” refers to all devices connected on the system switcher LAN.

### Setting the unit ID

In addition, the switcher processor and control panel are all tied to unit ID of 1.

*For more details of how to make the unit ID settings, refer to the installation manual for the particular device.*

## Network Settings

This provides automatic configuration of all devices connected to the switcher system LAN, and displays a list of them.

### Setting the Group ID

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >System >Network Config menu (7311), press [Group ID].
- 2 Enter a number (1 to 8) in the pop-up menu, and press [Enter].
- 3 Check the message, then press [Yes].

### Authenticating the IP Address Automatically

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >System >Network Config menu (7311), press [Auto Config].

Devices with the same group ID within the network are detected and displayed.

- 2 Check the message, then press [Yes].
- 3 To register the list of detected devices as the setting values at power-on, press [Define].
- 4 Check the message, then press [Yes].

## Setting the Signal Format

### Notes

After changing any of the following settings, be sure to press [Execute] (or [FC Format Execute] for changing the format converter signal format) to save the new values. When you press [Execute], some data is lost (such as frame memory images). If you press [FC Format Execute], this data is not lost.

### Setting the Signal Format

Specify the signal format to be handled by the devices. The combinations of signal formats that can be selected are as follows.

System	Field frequency	Effective number of scan lines
HD system	50	1080i
	59.94	
	23.976	1080PsF
	24	
	50	
SD system	59.94	720P
	50	480i
		576i

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >System >Format menu (7313), select the device for operations.

- 2 Press [Signal Format].
- 3 Press the button for the desired signal format.

## Switching the Input Reference Signal for HD System

In the <Ref Input Format> group of the Engineering Setup >System >Format menu (7313), select one of the following.

- **Tri Sync:** Tri-level sync for an HD system
- **BB (Black Burst):** Black burst or sync

The following table shows the relation between signal format and the frequency of a signal that can be used as the input reference signal.

Signal format	Input reference signal		
	Tri Sync	BB	
1080i/59.94	59.94	Black Burst 59.94	Sync 59.94
1080i/50	50	Black Burst 50	Sync 50
1080PsF/24	48	–	
1080PsF/23.976	47.952	–	
720P/59.94	59.94	Black Burst 59.94	Sync 59.94
720P/50	–	Black Burst 50	Sync 50

## Setting Conversion Formats

The format conversion is valid only when BB is selected in the <Ref Input Format> group.

The format conversion is assigned to primary inputs and outputs in advance. For details about the assignment, see [“Selecting the Primary Input to be Used in the Format Converter” \(p. 243\)](#) and [“Selecting the Output to be Used as the Format Converter” \(p. 248\)](#).

### Format converter

The following video signal conversion formats are supported by the format converter.

- Up-conversion: SD (4:3) to HD (16:9)
- Down-conversion: HD (16:9) to SD (4:3)
- Cross-conversion: HD (720P) to HD (1080i), or HD (1080i) to HD (720P)

The number of format converter inputs and outputs can be set to one of the following in “FC Config” ([p. 216](#)).

- 8 inputs, no outputs
- 4 inputs, 2 outputs

#### Notes

After format conversion, input and output signals have one-frame delays with respect to the reference signals. To

synchronize converted input signals and unconverted input signals, it is possible to delay the unconverted input signal.

For details, see [“To delay unconverted input signals \(frame delay function\)” \(p. 213\)](#).

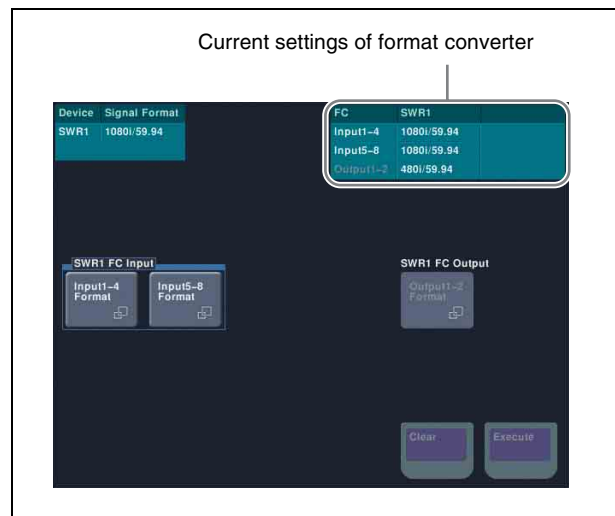
## Conversion format combinations

The combinations of switcher signal formats and supported format converter formats are as follows.

Switcher signal format setting	Format converter signal format setting	
	FC Input 1 to 8	FC Output 1, 2
480i/59.94	720P/59.94 1080i/59.94	720P/59.94 1080i/59.94
576i/50	720P/50 1080i/50	720P/50 1080i/50
720P/50	576i/50 1080i/50	576i/50 1080i/50
720P/59.94	480i/59.94 1080i/59.94	480i/59.94 1080i/59.94
1080i/50	576i/50 720P/50	576i/50 720P/50
1080i/59.94	480i/59.94 720P/59.94	480i/59.94 720P/59.94

## Setting the conversion format

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >System >Format menu (7313).



- 2 Press [Format Converter].  
The Format Converter menu (7313.4) appears.
- 3 To select the conversion format for format converter inputs 1 to 4, press [Input 1-4 Format] in the <SWR1 FC Input> group.
- 4 Press the button for the desired signal format in the pop-up window

**5** Set one of the following, as determined by the setting in “FC Config” (☞ p. 216).

- If “8 in” is selected, press [Input 5-8 Format] and then set the desired signal format in the same way as in step **4**.
- If “4 in 2 out” is selected, press [Output 1-2 Format] in the <SWR1 FC Output> group and then press the button for the desired format.

### To delay unconverted input signals (frame delay function)

When the signal format is 1080i/59.94 or 1080i/50, you can press [Frame Delay] in the pop-up window in step **4** to delay input signals.

For the format of the format converter input signal, the same format as the signal format is shown.

#### Notes

You can set the delay amount in units of frames, up to eight frames.

For details, ☞ “*Selecting the Input to which the Frame Delay Function Applies*” (p. 243).

---

## Setting the Screen Aspect Ratio

Switches the screen aspect ratio to 16:9 or 4:3.

### Setting the screen aspect ratio

**1** In the Engineering Setup >System >Format menu (7313), press [Aspect].

The Aspect menu (7313.1) appears.

**2** In the <Screen Aspect> group, select one of the following.

- 16:9
- 4:3
- Independ: Set the screen aspect ratio separately for M/E, P/P, and USER.

**3** If you selected [Independ] in step **2**, select the following.

**Switcher Aspect:** Make the setting for the switcher. “DME Aspect” is disabled, even if selected.

**4** In each of the <M/E-1>, <P/P>, and <USER> groups, select either [16:9] or [4:3].

**5** Press [Aspect Execute].

**6** Select [Yes].

---

## Selecting the State After Power-on

Sets the initial state of the devices when the system is powered on.

For each device, you can select Resume mode or Custom mode.

### Resume mode

This resumes the setting state at the previous power-off operation. This setting is only available for the switcher processor and control panel.

### Custom mode

This uses the settings saved in non-volatile memory or ROM within the device.

In this mode, there are Setup and Initial Status settings which can be set separately.

- **Setup mode:** Selects the setup state to be used after powering on from the following.

**User:** Starts up using the user data previously saved with [Setup Define].

**Factory:** Starts up with the factory default settings.

- **Initial status mode:** Selects the state of each device after powering on (excluding the settings to which “setup” applies).

**User:** Starts up using the user data previously saved with [Initial Status Define].

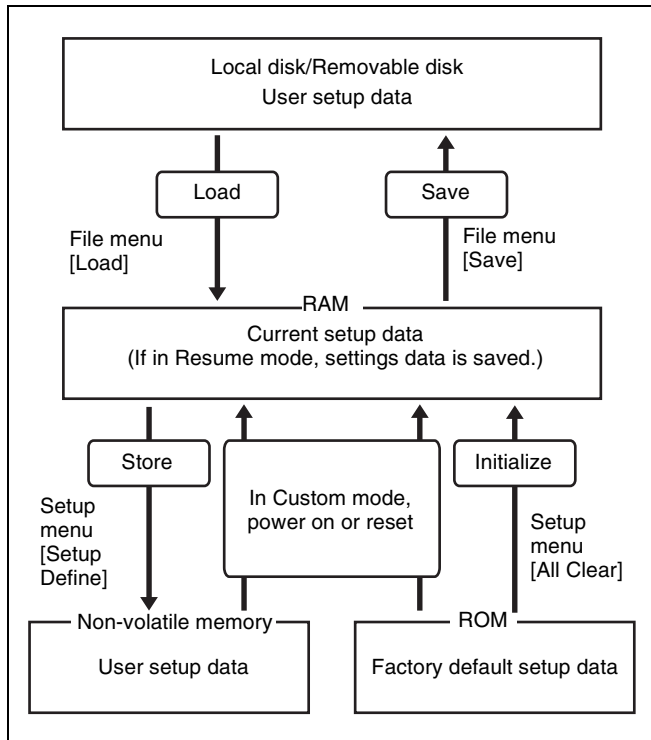
**Factory:** Starts up with the factory default settings.

For details, ☞ “*Saving and Recalling Setup Data*” (p. 214) and ☞ “*Data Saved by [Setup Define] and [Initial Status Define]*” (p. 297).

### Autoload function

Switch on or off the function to automatically load predetermined register data or frame memory image data at power on. Set the data to be read in the File menu.

## Saving and Recalling Setup Data



Updating the switcher or control panel setup data saves the updated setup data in RAM in the switcher.

- In Resume mode (☞ p. 213), even if the switcher is reset or powered off, the data is preserved in RAM, and recalled when the power is turned back on.
- In Custom mode (☞ p. 213), the user-defined settings (user setup data) saved in non-volatile memory or factory default setup data held in ROM are recalled when a reset is made or the power is turned back on (☞ p. 214).

Note that the setup data in RAM can also be saved to the control panel local disk or removable disk.

## Selecting the State at Start-up

- 1 In the status area of the Engineering Setup >System >Start Up menu (7314), select the device to which the settings are to apply.
- 2 In the <Start Up Mode> group, select one of the following modes.
  - Resume:** When this is on, Resume mode is enabled (☞ p. 213).
  - Custom:** When this is on, Custom mode is enabled (☞ p. 213).

## Notes

Resume mode is only valid when a switcher or control panel is selected for the setting.

- 3 When Custom mode is selected, in each of the <Setup> group and <Initial Status> group, select one of the following.

**User:** When this is on, user-defined settings are used for the Setup or Initial Status settings. For the method of saving the user-defined settings, see the next item.

**Factory:** When this is on, factory default settings are used for the Setup or Initial Status settings.

- 4 Press [Execute].
- 5 Check the message, then press [Yes].

## Saving User-Defined Settings

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >System >Start Up menu (7314).
- 2 Select the target device, and then select one of the following.

- To save the Setup settings, press [Setup Define].
- To save the Initial Status settings, press [Init Status Define].

For details about the settings which will be saved, ☞ “Data Saved by [Setup Define] and [Initial Status Define]” (p. 297).

- 3 Check the message, then press [Yes].

## Setting Automatic Loading of Register Data at Power On (Autoload Function)

To have specified data read in at power on, press [Power On File Load] in the Engineering Setup >System >Start Up menu (7314), turning it on.

This enables the autoload function.

When the autoload function is enabled, a directory “PWON\_LD” appears in the corresponding File menu.

For details about saving data which can be loaded by the autoload function, ☞ “Saving data recalled by autoload” (p. 202).

---

# Reset and Initialization

You can carry out a reset or memory initialization for a device.

- **Reset:** Resets state after powering on.
- **All Clear:** Clears the memory and restores the factory default settings. The Network Config, Format, and Start Up setup values are set by reference to data stored in non-volatile memory, and the system automatically starts up. It is not necessary to reset the Date/Time settings.

For details, see [“Saving and Recalling Setup Data”](#) (p. 214).

## Notes

Resetting SWR1 also resets PNL1 at the same time. However, resetting PNL1 does not reset SWR1.

- 1 In the status area of the Engineering Setup >System >Initialize menu (7315), select the device.
- 2 In the <Initialize> group, select one of the following modes.
  - Reset:** Resets the target device, causing it to restart in the start-up state.
  - All Clear:** Initializes the target device, causing it to restart in the factory default state.
- 3 Press [Execute].
- 4 Check the message, then press [Yes].

---

# Installation and Device Setup

This installs the software and firmware in all devices connected to the LAN.

## Displaying installation details

In the Engineering Setup >System >Install/Unit Config menu (7316), press [Detail Information]. This accesses the Detail Information menu (7316.1), and displays the detailed information on the software and firmware installed in the currently selected device.

---

# Installing Software

- 1 Insert the removable disk containing the software to the USB connector of the external monitor or control panel.
- 2 In the Engineering Setup >System >Install/Unit Config menu (7316), press [Install].

The Install menu (7316.10) appears; the status area shows the following information.

**Upper list:** For each connected device, this shows the device name, current software version (Current), and the latest version that can be installed (Install, Title).

- **OK:** Installation already completed.
- **On:** For installation, but not completed.
- **Error:** An error occurred during installation.
- **Cancel:** Installation canceled.

**Lower list:** For the device selected in the upper list, this shows an automatically detected list of software that can be installed on the particular device. Also, software selected as a candidate for installation in the upper list is marked in the lower list with a bullet.

- 3 If you are satisfied with the currently installed version of all items in the upper list, skip to step 6.

To change the items to be installed, select the relevant device.

## To display all related software

Press [Display All Software], turning it on.

Not just the automatically detected software, but the names of all related software for the selected device appear.

- 4 In the lower list, select the software you want to install.

- 5 Press [Set].

The selection is reflected under “Install” and “Title” in the upper list.

- 6 Press [Install].

The “Install” box shows “On,” confirming that this is to be installed. To cancel this installation setting, press “Install” once more, making the box blank.

- 7 Repeat steps 3 to 6, to confirm all software to be installed.

- 8 Press [Execute].

- 9 Check the message, then press [Yes].

This carries out the installation, and when it completes normally, the “Install” box shows “OK.”

---

## Saving a Frame Memory Clip with Ancillary Data

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >System >Install/Unit Config menu (7316), select [SWR1], and press [Unit Config].

The Unit Config menu (7316.8) appears.

- 2 Press [FM Ancillary], turning it on.

**On:** Save with ancillary data.

**Off:** Save without ancillary data.

### Notes

Enabling this selection by pressing [Execute] in the following step reinitializes all frame memory data. Make backups of required data beforehand.

- 3 Press [Execute].
- 4 Check the message, then press [Yes].

---

## Setting the Number of Format Converter Input/Outputs

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >System >Install/Unit Config menu (7316), select [SWR1], and press [Unit Config].

The Unit Config menu (7316.8) appears.

- 2 In the [FC Config] group, press one of the following.

**8 in:** 8 inputs (no outputs)

**4 in 2 out:** 4 inputs and 2 outputs

- 3 Press [Execute].
- 4 Check the message, then press [Yes].

---

# System Maintenance

---

## Setting the Date and Time

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >System >Maintenance menu (7317), set the following parameters.

Parameter group [1/2]

No.	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Hour	Hour	0 to 23
2	Min	Minute	0 to 59
3	Sec	Second	0 to 59

Parameter group [2/2]

No.	Parameter	Adjustment	Setting values
1	Month	Month	1 to 12
2	Day	Day	1 to 31
3	Year	Year	2000 to 2037

The set date and time appears in the “Set” box in the status area.

- 2 Press the [Set Date/Time] button.

---

## Using Removable Disks

### Displaying removable disk information

- 1 Insert the removable disk to the USB connector of the external monitor or control panel.
- 2 In the <USB Storage Device> group of the Engineering Setup >System >Maintenance menu (7317), press [Refresh].

### Formatting a removable disk

#### Notes

Format the removable disk if this is the first time the removable disk has been used.

- 1 Insert the removable disk to the USB connector of the external monitor or control panel.
- 2 In the Engineering Setup >System >Maintenance menu (7317), select the removable disk.
- 3 In the <USB Storage Device> group, press [Format].
- 4 Check the message, then press [Yes].

---

## Carrying Out the Primary Setting

To specify a removable disk as a primary device, use the following procedure.

## Notes

Without this setting, you cannot use the “Removable Disk” item in the File menu to access a removable disk. Be sure to configure this setting.

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >System >Maintenance menu (7317), select the removable disk.
- 2 In the <USB Storage Device> group, press [Set Primary].

### Making the primary setting automatic

In the <USB Storage Device> group, press [Auto Detect].

---

## Formatting a Local Disk

If a file system corruption error has occurred on the local disk, you should format the local disk.

- 1 In the <Local Disk> group of the Engineering Setup >System >Maintenance menu (7317), press [Format].

## Notes

When the local disk is operating normally, pressing [Format] has no effect.

- 2 Press [Yes].
- 3 Press [OK].


---

## Locking the Setup Menu Settings


To protect the data, you can inhibit operations in selected setup menus. Use the following procedure. (It is not possible to lock the Setup Operation Lock menu.)

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >System >Maintenance menu (7317), press [Setup Operation Lock].  
The Setup Operation Lock menu (7317.1) appears.
- 2 In the <VF Group> group, select the group including the desired menu.
- 3 Select the menu or the set of menus as candidates for the locking operation.

You can also select a menu while it is open.

For details,  “Selecting an opened setup menu for locking” (p. 217).

- 4 Press [Lock Item Select].

This makes the selected menus candidates for locking, and a padlock icon appears in the “Lock” box (in the unlocked state) .

## Notes

If there are already one or more locked menus, selection of lock candidates is not possible.


### To deselect a lock candidate

After selecting a menu, press [Lock Item Select] once more, to clear the Lock box.

### To deselect all lock candidates in the selected VF group

Press [Lock Item All Clear].

- 5 Repeat steps 2 to 4, to select all of the lock candidates.
- 6 Press [Lock].
- 7 Enter the password with a maximum of 16 characters in the keyboard window, and press [Enter].

If the password is correct, the menus selected in the list of candidates are all locked. The padlock icon changes to the locked state .

## Releasing the lock

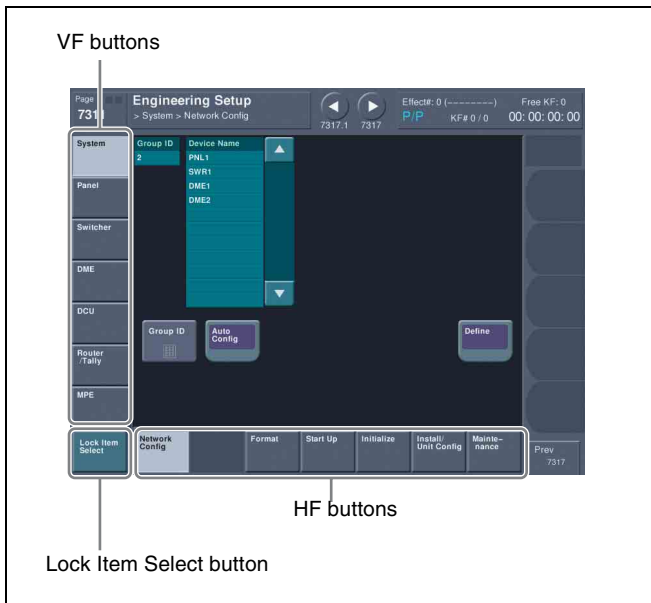
- 1 In the Setup Operation Lock menu (7317.1), press [Lock].
- 2 Enter the password in the keyboard window.

## Changing the lock password

- 1 In the Setup Operation Lock menu (7317.1), press [Change Password].
- 2 Press [Yes].
- 3 Enter the old password and new password when prompted.

## Selecting an opened setup menu for locking

With the menu you want to lock open, press [Lock Item Select] button at the lower left.



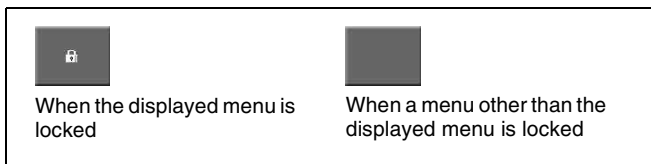
The [Lock Item Select] button turns red, and a padlock icon appears.



This selection is reflected in the lock candidate list in the Setup Operation Lock menu.

### Notes

If there are already one or more locked menus, selection of lock candidates is not possible. In this case, the indication of the [Lock Item Select] button changes as follows.



If you want to select lock candidates, first remove the lock in the Setup Operation Lock menu.

## Locking File Loading Operations

You can inhibit load operations for a specified file category.

**1** In the Engineering Setup >System >Maintenance menu (7317), press [File Load Lock].

The File Load Lock menu (7317.2) appears.

**2** Select the category as the candidate for the locking operation.

**3** Press [Lock].

This makes the selected categories candidates for locking. The category name display color changes to yellow, and the indication “Lock” is displayed in yellow in the Lock box.

### To deselect a lock candidate

After selecting a category, press [Clear] to clear the indication “Lock” in the Lock box.

**4** Repeat steps **2** and **3**, to select all of the lock candidates.

**5** Press [Execute].

**6** Enter the password with a maximum of 16 characters in the keyboard window, and press [Enter].

If the password is correct, the categories selected in the list of candidates are all locked. The category name display color and the “Lock” indication color in the Lock box both change to white.

## Releasing the lock

**1** In the File Load Lock menu (7317.2), press [Lock].

**2** Enter the password in the keyboard window.

## Changing the lock password

**1** In the File Load Lock menu (7317.2), press [Change Password].

**2** Press [Yes].

**3** Enter the old password and new password when prompted.

## Overall Control Panel Settings

In panel setup, you carry out settings particular to the control panel.

### Interchanging the Bank Order or Disabling Operation

You can set the assignments for the M/E and PGM/PST banks, and then enable, disable, or inhibit operations for each of the M/E and PGM/PST banks.

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Panel >Config menu (7321), select the Bank you want to set.

The Bank selection here indicates the physical position on the control panel.

Corresponds to the 2nd row and 3rd row from the top; the 1st row cannot be used.

- 2 Select the bank that you want to assign to the selected Bank number in the <M/E Assign> group.

The status area shows the interchanged state of the banks.

#### Notes

It is not possible to assign the same M/E logical bank to more than one physical bank. Be sure to make different M/E assignments.

- 3 For the selected Bank number, in the <M/E Operation> group, select one of the following.

**Enable:** Enables panel display and operation of the bank.

**Disable:** Enables only panel display, and disables operation of the bank.

**Inhibit:** Disables both the panel display and operation of the bank.

#### Notes

When this is set to Inhibit, snapshots of the bank are not recalled.

### Linking Switcher Bus and Router Destination

To provide links between the switcher bus and router destination, make the following settings as required.

**Matrix selection:** Selects the target of link setting from the eight matrices (1 to 8).

**Matrix position definition:** Sets the start address and level for the source and destination on the S-Bus.

**Link table setting:** Links a switcher cross-point button and matrix source.

**Link bus setting:** Links a switcher bus address and router destination.

### Selecting a matrix number

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >External Bus Link menu (7321.3).

- 2 Set the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Link No	Link number
2	Link Matrix	Matrix number

- 3 Press [Link Matrix Set].

#### To delete a link

With the link selected, press [Clear].

### Defining the position of a matrix

Specify where in the 1024 × 1024 S-Bus space the link matrix is to be provided, by setting the source and destination start address.

For the matrix selected in the External Bus Link menu, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >External Bus Link >Link Matrix Adjust menu (7321.4).

In this menu too, you can use the [Link Matrix] parameter to select the matrix number.

- 2 Define the position of the matrix to be linked.
- 3 To confirm a source address selected in step 2, press [Source Set], to confirm a destination address press [Destination Set], and to confirm a level press [Level Set].

### Setting a link table

For the link selected in the External Bus Link menu, make the settings as follows.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >External Bus Link >Link Matrix Adjust >Link Table Adjust menu (7321.5).

The status area lists the status of the currently selected link, combinations of video signals and sources, and the sources that can be selected.

- 2 Select the switcher cross-point button and the matrix source to be linked to the button.
- 3 To confirm the matrix source selection made in step 2, press [Link Source Set].
- 4 As required, repeat steps 2 and 3 to select the matrix sources to be linked to other cross-point buttons.

### To initialize the set links

- 1 In the Link Matrix Adjust menu (7321.4), press [Init Link Table].
- 2 Check the message, then press [Yes].

### Making link bus settings

For the link number selected in the External Bus Link menu, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >External Bus Link >Link Bus Adjust menu (7321.6).

The status area lists the current link status, and the switcher buses and router destinations that can be selected.

In this menu too, you can use the [Link No] parameter to set the link number.

- 2 Select the switcher bus and the router destination to be linked to the switcher bus.

- 3 To confirm the bus selected in step 2, press [Master Bus Set], and to confirm the destination press [Linked Dest Set].

---

## Linking Transitions between Keyers

You select whether or not to link transitions between keyers, and if so which keyer to link to.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >Key Trans Link menu (7321.2).
- 2 Select the keyer to be master.
- 3 In the <Key Select> group, select the keyer to be linked to the transition of the master.

---

## Linking the Next Transition Selection Buttons

To the transition links between keyers, you can add a link for the next transition selection buttons in the transition control block. The effect of this additional link is such that if for example, two keyers (Key2 and Key3) are linked with the master keyer (Key1), pressing the [KEY1] next transition selection button also selects the [KEY2] and [KEY3] buttons.

- 1 Set the transition links between keyers.

*For details about the operation, see “Linking Transitions between Keyers” (p. 220)*

- 2 Press [Next Trans Link], turning it on.

The [KEY1] to [KEY4] next transition selection buttons in the transition control block are now selected coupled to the settings in the Key Trans Link menu for transition links between keyers.

### Notes

These settings apply to the whole Key Trans Link menu. It is not possible to make separate settings for each master keyer.

---

## Assigning Regions to Region Selection Buttons in the Flexi Pad

You can set a maximum of four regions to each of the region selection buttons in the Flexi Pad.

In the Flexi Pad, pressing the region selection button [MORE] displays the regions not assigned to the region selection buttons on the memory recall section numeric

keypad buttons, so that you can select them, and set the assignment of regions to the numeric keypad buttons. However, in the Flexi Pad, it is not possible to assign a region to the [EXIT] button.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >Region Button Assign menu (7321.7).



The left side of the status area shows region selection buttons; the upper part of the right side shows a list of regions assigned to region selection buttons, and the lower part shows a list of assignable regions.

- 2 In the <Flexi Pad Area Sel> group, press one of the following.

**[Region Sel Btn Area] button:** When assigning a region to the region selection buttons

**[Mem Rcl Btn Area] button:** When assigning a region to the numeric keypad buttons in the memory recall section

- 3 Press the indication of the button for the assignment.
- 4 Select one of the four regions for the setting.
- 5 Select the region to be assigned.

“M/E2” and “DME1” to “DME8” regions are disabled, even if assigned.

- 6 Press [Set], to confirm the selection.

### Notes

Only regions assigned here can be used for keyframe or snapshot recall.

### To return the region assignment to the factory default state

In the Region Button Assign menu (7321.7), press [Default].

### To delete a region assignment

In step 3 of the procedure in “Assigning Regions to Region Selection Buttons in the Flexi Pad” (p. 220), make the selection to which the operation applies, then press [Clear].

### Setting the region selection buttons selected when the [ALL] button is pressed

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >Region Button Assign menu (7321.7), press [All Select] in the button area, or the [All Select] button indication in the status area, setting it to On.

The [All Select] button indication in the status area changes to orange, and the system switches to a mode for assigning region selection buttons to the [ALL] button. In the factory default state, all buttons appear in reverse video, and are assigned to the [ALL] button.

- 2 If you do not want to assign any region selection button to the [ALL] button, press the corresponding button indication, setting it to Off.

The button you pressed returns to normal display.

### Notes

Assignment to the [ALL] button is region by region. Changing the assignment of a region selection button does not change the regions assigned to the [ALL] button.

## Setting Transition Control Block Button Assignments

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >Transition Module menu (7321.9).
- 2 Select the bank of the transition control block you want to set in the <Bank Select> group.
- 3 Press the button whose assignment you wish to change.

- 4 Select the function you want to assign from the list on the right.
- 5 Press [Set].

#### To cancel the assignment

Press [Clear].

#### To make the assignment the default

Press [Default].

## Assigning Devices or Functions to the Region Selection Buttons of the Device Control Block (Trackball)

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >Trackball Module menu (7321.17).
- 2 In the button indications on the left, press the button for the assignment.
- 3 Select the device or function to be assigned.
- 4 Press [Set].

#### To cancel an assignment

Select the button, then press [Clear].

#### To return all button assignments to the factory default state

Press [Default].

## Inhibiting Utility Bus and Key Operations

You can inhibit operations on the utility bus and keys of the M/E and PGM/PST banks from the menu.

This inhibition applies to the following control blocks.

- Cross-point control block
- Transition control block

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >Util Bus/Key Inhibit menu (7321.18).
- 2 In the list in the status area, select the switcher bank for which operations are to be inhibited.
- 3 In the <Util Bus/Key Inhibit> group, press the utility bus or key button ([Util1 Bus] or [Key1] to [Key4]) for the operations to be inhibited.

## Assigning Functions to the Buttons in the Flexi Pad

You can assign functions to the buttons in the various parts of the Flexi Pad in the following menus.

**Mode selection buttons:** Multi Function Module menu

**Region selection buttons:** Region Button Assign menu

**Memory recall buttons:** Multi Function Module menu

For details about assignment of regions to the region selection buttons, see [“Assigning Regions to Region Selection Buttons in the Flexi Pad” \(p. 220\)](#).

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >Multi Function Module menu (7321.20).
- 2 Press one of the following three buttons displayed in the button area.
  - [Mode Sel Assign] button:** Assigns a function to the mode selection buttons
  - [Eff Edit Assign] button:** Assigns a function to a button in the memory recall section for effect editing (when the [EFF] and [EDIT ENBL] buttons are pressed)
  - [Macro Edit Assign] button:** Assigns a function to a button in the memory recall section for macro editing (when the [MCRO] and [EDIT ENBL] buttons are pressed)
- 3 In the button indications on the left, press the button for the assignment.
- 4 Select the mode or action to be assigned.

The following modes and functions can be selected.

#### • Mode selection buttons

Mode	Button indication
Effect	EFF
Snapshot	SNAP SHOT
Shotbox	SHOTBOX
Macro	MCRO
Wipe snapshot	WIPE
DME wipe snapshot	DME WIPE
Transition rate	TRANS RATE
Key adjust	KEY ADJ
Key snapshot	KEY SS

#### • Buttons in the memory recall section during effect editing

Function	Button indication
Undo	UNDO
Pause setting	PAUS

Function	Button indication
Copy	COPY
Paste	PSTE
Select all	ALL
Insert	INS
Modify	MOD
Delete	DEL
Keyframe loop count setting	KF LOOP
Effect duration setting	EFF DUR
Keyframe duration setting	KF DUR
Delay setting	DLY
Constant duration mode on or off	CNST DUR
Go to specified timecode	GOTO TC
Go to specified keyframe	GOTO KF
Set range	FROM TO
Return the button display to that before effect was executed	EXIT
Switch to numeric keypad input mode	STOR
Go to first keyframe	REWIND
Switch to shifted functions	SHFT
Go to previous keyframe	<<PREV
Go to next keyframe	>>NEXT
Execute effect	RUN

The functions of the buttons in the memory recall section during effect editing are on two pages; to set the functions of buttons on the second page, press the [2] button in the <PageSelect> group in the button area.

- **Buttons in the memory recall section during macro editing**

Function	Button indication
Undo	UNDO
Pause setting	PAUS
Auto insert mode on or off	AUTO INS
Copy	COPY
Paste	PSTE
Select all	ALL
Insert	INS
Modify	MOD
Delete	DEL
Set range	FROM TO
Go to specified event	GOTO EVNT

**5** Press [Set] to confirm the setting.

### To cancel an assignment

Select the corresponding button, then press [Clear].

### To return all button assignments to the factory default state

Press [Default].

## Cross-Point Settings

### Creating Cross-Point Assign Tables

As cross-point assign tables, you can create a “main” table and up to 14 other tables (table 1 to table 14). However, you can only carry out assignment of the video and key combinations in the main table.

### Creating the main table

In the main table, a pair consisting of a video signal and a key signal is assigned to each button number. You can also assign the same signal to another button number at the same time. Further, you can delete currently assigned signals from the main table.

**1** In the Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign menu (7322) or Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign >Table Button Assign menu (7322.1), press [Main, V/K Pair Assign].

The Main, V/K Pair Assign menu (7322.5) appears. The left of the status area shows the video and key signal names, and source number currently assigned in the main table. On the right is a list of the source numbers and signals that can be assigned. When the shift button is pressed, the number column is distinguished by color.

**2** Select the button number.

**3** When assigning a video signal, press [Video] in the <Assign> group. When assigning a key signal, press [Key]. (You can select a video signal and a key signal at the same time.)

#### Notes

[Video] and [Key] in the <Assign> group cannot be turned off at the same time. One or the other is always on.

**4** Select the signal.

“IN33” to “IN48” and signal names relating to DME and M/E-2 are disabled, even if selected.

**5** Using the buttons in the <Xpt Assign> group, assign the selected signal to the button number currently selected in the main table.

**Set:** Deletes the signal currently assigned to the selected button number and makes a new assignment.

**Insert:** Moves the signal currently assigned to the selected button number to the next number, and makes a new assignment.

#### Notes

When a button number above 121 is selected, execution of “Insert” is impossible. If an [Insert] execution attempts to change a signal assignment to a button number above 121, the signal assigned to 120 is automatically deleted while signal assignments to 121 and above are maintained.

#### To disable a button

Select the button you want to disable, and press [Inhibit].

#### To delete an assigned signal

Select the button for the signal you want to delete, and press [Delete] in the <Xpt Assign> group. Signal deletion is executed in accordance with the selection in the <Assign> group, and the signal assigned to the button number next to the selected button number moves up one line.

#### Notes

When a button number above 121 is selected, execution of [Delete] is impossible.

If [Delete] execution attempts to change a signal assignment to a button number above 121, the move ends when the signal assigned to 120 moves to 119, and the signals assigned to numbers 121 and above are maintained.

### Creating tables 1 to 14

When creating tables 1 to 14, in the same way as when creating the main table, you can assign the same signal to more than one button number, or delete currently assigned signals. However, assignment of video and key combinations is impossible.

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign menu (7322), press [Table Button Assign].

The Table Button Assign menu (7322.1) appears.

The table number appears on the upper left part of the status area.

The left part of the status area shows the cross-point button numbers, video and key pair numbers, video signal source names and source numbers, and key signal source names and source numbers. When the shift button is pressed, the number column is distinguished by color.

The right part shows the video and key pair numbers, and the names of video signals and key signals set in the main table.

The Table Button Assign menu also allows you to access the Main, V/K Pair Assign menu and the Src Name/Src Color menu.

- 2 Select the table number.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Table No	Selection of the table to be set

- 3 Select the button number.

- 4 Select the pair number.

- 5 Using the buttons in the <Button Assign> group, assign the selected pair number to the button number currently selected in table 1.

**Set:** Deletes the signal currently assigned to the selected button number and makes a new assignment.

**Insert:** Moves the signal currently assigned to the selected button number to the next number, and makes a new assignment.

(If a button number above 121 is selected, see “Notes” in step 5 in “*Creating the main table*” (☞ p. 223).

#### To disable a button

Select the button you want to disable, and press [Inhibit].

#### To delete an assigned signal

Select the button for the signal you want to delete, and press [Delete] in the <Button Assign> group.

The signal assigned to the button number next to the selected button number moves up one line.

(When a button number above 121 is selected, see “Notes” in “*To delete an assigned signal*” (☞ p. 224).

### Returning the table to its default state

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign >Main, V/K Pair Assign menu (7322.5) or Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign >Table Button Assign menu (7322.1), press [Default Recall].

- 2 Check the message, then press [Yes].

### Setting the cross-point button shift operation

You can set the operation of the rightmost button in each row of cross-point buttons.

In the <Xpt Shift Mode> group of the Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign >Main, V/K Pair Assign menu (7322.5) or Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign >Table

Button Assign menu (7322.1), select one of the following for each cross-point table.

**Hold:** Acts as a shift button, and the shifted version of the cross-point buttons is enabled while the button is held down.

**Lock:** Acts as a shift button, and pressing the button toggles between the shifted version and the unshifted version.

**Off:** Acts as cross-point button 24.

## Setting the action of the [SHIFT] button in the cross-point control block

The function of the shift button is set in the <Display Shift Mode> group of the Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign >Main, V/K Pair Assign menu (7322.5) or Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign >Table Button Assign menu (7322.1).

**Shift All Bus:** When this is On, it functions as a shift button for all buses. When this is Off, it functions as a shift button for the source name display section.

### Notes

- It is not possible to make this setting separately for each of the M/E and PGM/PST banks.
- “Shift All Bus” is only valid when the cross-point button shift operation (see previous item) is set to “Lock” or “Off.”

## Setting the source signal name

**1** Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign >Src Name >Src Color menu (7322.6).

**2** Select the signal to be set.

“Primary33” to “Primary48” and signal names relating to DME and M/E-2 are disabled, even if selected.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Source No	Source signal selection
2	Num	Number of source signals to be selected

**3** Press [Source Name].

**4** Enter a name of not more than 16 characters, then press [Enter].

### Sequential names for multiple signals

When you specify a number at the end of a signal name, all of the signals in the range selected are automatically assigned names ending with sequential numbers.

Example: To assign sequential names to source signal 2 through source signal 4

1. In step **2** above, set the [Source No] parameter to “2,” and set the [Num] parameter to “3.”

2. Set the name of source signal 2 to “CAM2.”

The name “CAM3” is assigned automatically to source signal 3, and the name “CAM4” is assigned automatically to source signal 4.

## Setting the Cross-point Button Color for Each Signal

You can set the color of cross-point buttons for background A bus and background B bus on the M/E and P/P banks.

**1** Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign >Src Name/Src Color Select menu (7322.6).

**2** Select the target color.

“Primary33” to “Primary48” and signal names relating to DME and M/E-2 are disabled, even if selected.

**3** In the <Source Color> group, press one of [User Color 1] to [User Color 3].

### To change the color assigned to User Color 1 to 3

**1** Press the [User Color Select] button.

The User Color Select menu (7322.12) appears.

**2** Select the object to set in the “Target” field on the left.

**3** Select the desired color in the “Color” field on the right.

The selected color is displayed in the list on the left.

**4** Repeat steps **2** and **3** above to change colors, as required.

**5** Press [Execute].

## Copying Cross-Point Assign Tables

The contents of a cross-point assign table can be copied to another cross-point assign table, and vice versa.

### Notes

The contents of a sub table cannot be copied to the main table.

**1** Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign >Table Copy menu (7322.8).

**2** Select the copy source and copy destination table numbers.

- 3 Press [Copy].
- 4 Check the message, then press [Yes].

## Selecting Cross-Point Assign Tables

You can select the cross-point assign table to be used for the M/E-1 or PGM/PST bank.

### Notes

It is not possible to assign cross-point tables 5 to 14 to a bus of a switcher operated by an MKS-8080/8082 AUX Bus Remote Panel.

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign menu (7322), select the bank or bus.
- 2 Select a table.
- 3 Press [Table Assign Set].

## Exporting Source Names and Destination Names

To send the source names and destination names to the S-Bus, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >XPT Assign >Name Export menu (7322.9).
- 2 Set the destination station ID.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Station ID	Station ID setting <sup>a)</sup>

a) If set to 255, the information is sent to all stations (with display of "All").

- 3 Press [Src Name Export].

This exports the source names to the station selected in step 2.

- 4 Press [Dest Name Export].

This exports the destination names to the station selected in step 2.

### Notes

Since destination names cannot be selected freely, fixed names are used.

## Assigning a Cross-Point Button to Enable/Disable Side Flags

By assigning the side flag function to the rightmost button in a cross-point button row, you can use this button to enable/disable side flags for each of the M/E and PGM/PST banks.

This setting applies to all of the M/E and PGM/PST banks. When you make this assignment, the SHIFT button (the button assigned to the shift function) is moved one to the left.

### Notes

If a macro attachment is set, when you assign the button to the side flag function, the button numbers are offset, and therefore when you press the button this does not execute the macro. The settings, however, are maintained, so that when you cancel the side flag assignment, the macro can be accessed once more.

For details about side flag operation, see [“Side Flag Settings” \(p. 128\)](#).

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign >Side Flags Button Assign menu (7322.10).
- 2 Press [Side Flags Btn Assign], turning it on.

## Router Remote Control Settings

### Assigning a Destination to a Destination Selection Button

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Router Remote >RTR Mode Setting menu (7323.1).
- 2 Select a destination selection button and the destination to be assigned to the button.

### Notes

When a destination selection button having a number in the range 65 to 128 is selected, source table selection automatically becomes invalid, and therefore the Inhibit function also becomes invalid.

- 3 Press [Dest Set] to confirm the selection.
- 4 If in step 2 you selected a value in the range 1 to 64, select the source table.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Source Table	Source table selection

- 5 Press [Source Table Set] to confirm the selection.
- 6 Repeat steps 2 to 5 as required.

---

## Setting the Source Table

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Router Remote >RTR Mode Setting >Table Assign menu (7323.3).
- 2 In the <Source Table Select> group, select the source table you want to manipulate.
- 3 Select a source selection button and the source you want to assign.
- 4 Press [Source Set] to confirm the selection.

---

## Assigning Levels to a Level Selection Button

To assign levels to the [LEVEL1] to [LEVEL4] buttons in the auxiliary bus control block, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Router Remote >RTR Mode Setting >Level Button Assign menu (7323.4).
- 2 In the <Level Button Select> group, select the button you want to set.
- 3 In the <Level Assign> group, press the levels you want to assign to the button, turning them on.

You can select multiple levels. You can also make a selection that overlaps that of another button.

---

## Selecting a Destination Selection Button for a Snapshot

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Panel >Router Remote >RTR Mode Setting menu (7323.1), select the destination selection button to set.
- 2 Press [SS Enable], turning it on or off.

**On:** When a snapshot applying to the router is recalled, the recall also applies to the selected destination selection button.

**Off:** When a snapshot applying to the router is recalled, the recall does not apply to the selected destination selection button.

### Notes

When a destination selection button is set to Inhibit, then even if SS Enable is on, the snapshot for that destination is not recalled.

---

## Setting Button Assignments

You can assign user preference buttons that can be accessed via macros or GPI ([PREFS 1] to [PREFS 16]) and the cross-point control block buttons.

This assigns recalling frequently used menus (menu shortcuts), enabling/disabling functions (recalling utility commands) and recalling shotbox registers or macro registers.

### Notes

User preference buttons are virtual buttons that can be accessed via a macro or GPI. They are not physical buttons on the control panel.

---

## Assigning Functions to User Preference Buttons

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Panel >Prefs/Utility menu (7324), select the button to be assigned.
- 2 In the <Action> group, select the function to be assigned.

**Menu Shortcut:** Disabled, even if selected.

**Utility Command:** Assigns a function enable/disable or similar operation (utility command).

**Macro Recall:** Assigns a macro register recall.

**Shotbox Recall:** Assigns a shotbox register recall.

- 3 Depending on the selection in step 2, make the following settings.

**If Utility Command is selected:** Select a command on the right side of the status area.

**If Macro Recall is selected:** Select the macro register you want to assign.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Macro	Macro register selection

**If Shotbox Recall is selected:** Select the shotbox register you want to assign.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Shotbox	Shotbox register selection

**4** Press [Action Set].

#### To cancel an assignment

Select the button, then press [Clear].

#### To display register names in the Utility Command column

If in step **2** you select [Macro Recall] or [Shotbox Recall], press the [Reg Name Display] button to select whether or not register names appear in the Utility Command column.

### List of utility commands and user preference button status

The following table shows the utility commands that can be assigned to user preference buttons.

Command name <sup>a)</sup>	Function	Button status	
		Lit amber	Off
SWR RemoteS1 Enbl SWR RemoteS2 Enbl	Switcher Remote S1 enabled/disabled Switcher Remote S2 enabled/disabled	Enabled	Disabled
ME1 PGM1 ST   ME1 PGM4 ST	M/E-1 PGM1 output safe title on/off   M/E-1 PGM4 output safe title on/off	On	Off
ME1 PVW ST	M/E-1 preview output safe title on/off	On	Off
ME1 Clean ST	M/E-1 clean output safe title on/off	On	Off
ME1 K-PVW ST	M/E-1 key preview output safe title on/off	On	Off
PP PGM1 ST   PP PGM4 ST	P/P PGM1 output safe title on/off   P/P PGM4 output safe title on/off	On	Off
PP PVW ST	P/P preview output safe title on/off	On	Off
PP Clean ST	P/P clean output safe title on/off	On	Off
PP K-PVW ST	P/P key preview output safe title on/off	On	Off
Edit PVW ST	Edit preview output safe title on/off	On	Off
Preset ST	Preset output safe title on/off	On	Off
AUX1 ST   AUX24 ST	AUX1 output safe title on/off   AUX24 output safe title on/off	On	Off
FM Src1 Frame Freeze	Frame freeze of frame memory source 1	During frame freeze	Either of the other two states
FM Src1 Filed Freeze	Field freeze of frame memory source 1	During field freeze	Either of the other two states
FM Src1 Freeze Off	Release freeze of frame memory source 1	While freeze being released	Either of the other two states
FM Src2 Frame Freeze	Frame freeze of frame memory source 2	During frame freeze	Either of the other two states
FM Src2 Field Freeze	Field freeze of frame memory source 2	During field freeze	Either of the other two states
FM Src2 Freeze Off	Release freeze of frame memory source 2	While freeze being released	Either of the other two states
SWR GPI Enbl	Enable/disable switcher GPI	Enabled	Disabled
Panel GPI Enbl	Enable/disable panel GPI	Enabled	Disabled

Command name <sup>a)</sup>	Function	Button status	
		Lit amber	Off
SWR GPI1 Test Fire   SWR GPI8 Test Fire	Output test trigger from switcher GPI1   Output test trigger from switcher GPI8	Output (lights only at the instant the button is pressed)	When the output is assigned
Panel GPI1 Test Fire   Panel GPI8 Test Fire	Output test trigger from panel GPI1   Output test trigger from panel GPI8	Output (lights only at the instant the button is pressed)	When the output is assigned
Macro Attachment Enbl	Enable/disable macro attachment	Enabled	Disabled
Macro Only Set	Macro only mode on/off	On	Off
Pre Macro	Set macro attachment in pre macro mode	Can be set only while pressed (lit)	When the function is assigned
Post Macro	Set macro attachment in post macro mode	Can be set only while pressed (lit)	When the function is assigned
Macro Take	Macro execution	During execution	When the function is assigned
Macro Cancel	Cancel a macro	Lit only at the instant the button is pressed	When the function is assigned
Macro Auto Ins	Macro auto insert mode on/off	On	Off
Macro AT with Rate	When registering an auto transition macro event, on/off setting of mode to save transition rate	On	Off
Macro AT with A/B Bus	When registering an auto transition macro event for the transition control block, on/off setting of mode to save A/B Bus cross-point settings	On	Off
Macro TL with Region	When registering a timeline macro event, on/off setting of mode to save applicable region	On	Off
System Manager Enbl	Enable/disable operation from System Manager	Enabled	Disabled
Inhibit Set	Inhibit cross-point button	Can be set only while pressed (lit)	When the function is assigned
Inhibit All Clear	Clear all cross-point button inhibit settings	Can be set only while pressed (lit)	When the function is assigned
K-SS Store	Enable/disable key snapshot saving <sup>b)</sup>	Enabled	Disabled

a) For the safe title on/off commands (from ME1 PGM1 ST-ME1 PGM4 ST to AUX1 ST-AUX24 ST), the name of the assigned output signal is shown.

b) Pressing this button to turn it on enables key snapshot operations for all control blocks.

## Assigning a Function to 2nd Row Cross-Point Buttons

You can assign functions to the 2nd row cross-point buttons for the M/E-1 and PGM/PST banks.

- 1 Engineering Setup > Panel > Prefs/Utility > Xpt Module Src/Reg Btn Assign menu (7324.2).
- 2 Select the button to be assigned.
- 3 In the <Action> group, select the function to be assigned.

**Menu Shortcut:** Assigns a frequently used menu to be recalled (menu shortcut).

**Utility Command:** Assigns a function enable/disable or similar operation (utility command).

**Macro Recall:** Assigns a macro register recall.

**Shotbox Recall:** Assigns a shotbox register recall.

- 4 Depending on the selection in step 3, make the following settings.

**If Menu Shortcut is selected:** With the 2nd row cross-point buttons flashing, press one of the cross-points buttons after displaying the menu for which you want to create a shortcut to assign the menu shortcut. To finish the assignment, press [Menu Shortcut] again.

**If Utility Command is selected:** A list of commands appears on the right of the status area, select the command you want to assign.

**If Macro Recall is selected:** Select the macro register you want to assign.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Macro	Macro register selection

**If Shotbox Recall is selected:** Select the shotbox register you want to assign.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Shotbox	Shotbox register selection

- 5** If you selected a function other than “Menu Shortcut” in step **2**, press [Action Set].

This assigns the selected action, which is reflected in the status area.

### To cancel an assignment

Select the button, then press [Clear].

### To display register names in the Utility Command column

If in step **3** you select [Macro Recall] or [Shotbox Recall], press the [Reg Name Display] button to select whether or not register names appear in the Utility Command column.

## Interfacing with External Devices

### Making Control Panel GPI Input Settings

You can set the GPI input ports and trigger type, and make the action settings.

- Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Device Interface >GPI Input menu (7325.1).
- Select the port to set.
- In the <Trigger Type> group, select the trigger type.
  - (Rising Edge):** Applies the trigger on a rising edge of an input pulse.
  - (Falling Edge):** Applies the trigger on a falling edge of an input pulse.
  - (Any Edge):** Applies the trigger on a change in the polarity of the input signal.
  - (Level):** Carries out the specified operation when the input is low or high.

**No Operation:** Applies no trigger on an input pulse.
- In the <Target> group, select the action block.

**M/E-1 and P/P:** Sets an action for the M/E or PGM/PST bank.

**Common/Setup:** Sets an action for something other than the above, or a setup action.

- Select the action to set.
- Press [Action Set] to confirm the action selection.

### Selectable actions for various trigger types

- When the trigger type is other than “Level”**

(The x in M/E-x is the M/E bank number, the x in DSKx is the DSK number, and the x in Keyx is the key number).

When Target is M/E-x: Cut, Auto Trans, Keyx Cut, Keyx Auto Trans, Keyx SS ? Recall

When Target is P/P: Cut, Auto Trans, DSKx Cut, DSKx Auto Trans, DSKx SS ? Recall, FTB Auto Trans, FTB Cut

When Target is Common/Setup: Master SS ? Recall, Master Effect ? Recall, SS ? Recall, Effect ? Recall, Effect ? Recall & Run, KF Run, KF Stop, KF Rewind, FM Src1 Frame Freeze, FM Src1 Field Freeze, FM Src1 Freeze Off, FM Src2 Frame Freeze, FM Src2 Field Freeze, FM Src2 Freeze Off, FM Src1 Clip Record, FM Src1 Clip Stop, FM Src2 Clip Record, FM Src2 Clip Stop, FM1 to FM8 Clip Cueup, FM1 to FM8 Clip Play, FM1 to FM8 Clip Stop, Shotbox ? Recall, Macro Take, Prefs Button?, Macro ? Recall, No Action

- When the trigger type is “Rising Edge” or “Falling Edge”**

Aux ? O’ride Src ??

Select a source from the following.

Primary inputs: 1 to 48 (33 to 48 are disabled)

Format converter dedicated inputs: 49 to 56

- When the trigger type is “Level”**

When Target is M/E-1-x: No Action

When Target is Common/Setup: System Format

Aspect (overall system settings), Level Enable, No Action

### Notes

- “Level Enable” is a function that determines whether GPI inputs are enabled (“Enable”) or disabled (“Disable”) for the “Aspect” and “System Format” actions that can be used when the trigger type is Level. When Level Enable is used, if the input is “Disable” then it is not possible to switch “Aspect” or “System Format” by GPI input. If a GPI to switch “Aspect” or “System Format” occurs when powering the system off, the action triggered by the GPI may start immediately before the power goes off and the power may go off before the action is completed. This may corrupt the setup settings. It is therefore recommended to use Level Enable to avoid such a situation.

- As for “Aux ? O’ride Src ??,” when “Rising Edge” is selected, on a rising edge the set AUX bus input is used. On a falling edge, the original state of the cross-point is restored. If the GPI trigger is applied repeatedly at short intervals (0.5 second or less), the cross-point switching may not be carried out correctly. In this case, apply the GPI trigger again.

### Carrying out level settings

To set the low level and high level, first set the trigger type to “Level,” then use the following procedure.

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Panel >Device Interface >GPI Input menu (7325.1), select the action to be set, and press [H/L Set].  
The H/L Set menu (7325.2) appears.
- 2 Select the setting.
- 3 To apply the selection made in step 2 when the input is the GPI high level, press [H Set]. To apply the selection the input is low, press [L Set].


#### To set the level for the format converter


- 1 Set “System Format” for “Action” using the same operation in Step 5 of “*Making Control Panel GPI Input Settings*” (p. 230).  
The format converter list appears.
- 2 Select the format converter that you want to set from the list.
- 3 In the <FC Input/Output> group, press [H Set] or [L Set] to set the high level or low level, respectively.


## Making Control Panel GPI Output Settings

You can set the GPI output ports and trigger type, and make the action settings.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Device Interface >GPI Output menu (7325.3).
- 2 Select the setting.
- 3 In the <Trigger Type> group, select the trigger type.

 **(Rising Edge):** The trigger causes the relay contacts to be open-circuit or drives the output high, and holds this state for the specified pulse width.

 **(Falling Edge):** The trigger causes the relay contacts to be shorted or drives the output low, and holds this state for the specified pulse width.

 **(Any Edge):** Each time the trigger occurs, the relay contacts are alternately closed or opened, or the output is switched between high and low.


**Status:** Depending on the status, the relay contacts are closed or opened, or the output is switched between high and low.

**No Operation:** The trigger has no effect on the relay state or output level.

- 4 Select the pulse width and timing.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Pulse Width	Pulse width
4	Timing	Output timing <sup>a)</sup>

a) 1: Field 1, 2: Field 2, 3: Any

When “” is selected as the trigger polarity, there is no Pulse Width setting. When “Status” is selected, there is no Pulse Width or Timing setting.

- 5 In the <Source> group, select the action block.

**M/E-1 and P/P:** Sets an action for the M/E or PGM/PST bank.

**Common:** Sets an action for error status.

- 6 Select the action to set.

- 7 Press [Action Set] to confirm the action selection.

#### Selectable actions for various trigger types

- **When the trigger type is other than “Status”**  
(The x in M/E-x is the M/E bank number, the x in DSKx is the DSK number, and the x in Keyx is the key number).  
When Source is M/E-x: Keyx SS ? Recall, No Action  
When Source is P/P: DSKx SS ? Recall, No Action  
When Source is Common: KF Run, No Action
- **When the trigger type is “Status”**  
(The x in M/E-x is the M/E bank number, the x in DSKx is the DSK number, and the x in Keyx is the key number).  
When Source is M/E-x: Keyx SS ? Recall, Keyx On, No Action  
When Source is P/P: DSKx SS ? Recall, DSKx On, No Action  
When Source is Common: Error Make, Error Break, Keep Break, Keep Make, PREFS1, PREFS2, PREFS3, PREFS4, PREFS5, PREFS6, PREFS7, PREFS8, PREFS9, PREFS10, PREFS11, PREFS12, PREFS13, PREFS14, PREFS15, PREFS16, Device Recording, No Action

## Test firing the trigger

Press [Test Fire].

This outputs a trigger from the selected output port. This is no output when the trigger type is “Status.”

---

## Assigning a Parallel Output Port

This sets the Tally/GPI OUTPUT port on the rear panel of the switcher.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Device Interface >Tally/GPI Output Config menu (7325.12).
- 2 Select the setting.
- 3 In the <Parallel Output Assign> group, select either of the following.
  - Tally Output: Assigns a tally output.
  - Switcher: Assigns a switcher GPI output.
  - Panel: Assigns a control panel GPI output.
- 4 Select the output you want to assign from the list on the right.
- 5 Press [Action Set].

---

## Setting the Control Mode for P-Bus Devices

This sets the control mode for external P-Bus (Peripheral II protocol) devices.

In the <P-Bus Control> group of the Engineering Setup >Panel >Device Interface menu (7325), select the mode.

**Trigger:** When a predetermined button is pressed, the action command assigned to that button is output to control an external device.

**Timeline:** Controls the external device as a keyframe effect controlled by the center control panel.

---

## Associating a Port with a Device Selection Button

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Device Interface >Device Assign menu (7325.4).
- 2 Select the port to set.
- 3 In the <Assign> group, press one of the [DEV1] to [DEV12] buttons.

### Notes

- It is not possible to assign more than one device selection button to the same port. The later assigned device selection button takes priority, and the previous selection is invalidated.
- If P-Bus is assigned to a serial port, it is not possible to assign a device selection button to that port.

- 4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 as required to make assignments to other ports.

## Sharing disk recorder/extended VTR file lists

You can share files between devices connected to ports on the same disk recorder/Extended VTR.

- 1 Select the port to set.
- 2 Select the device selection button for sharing the file list.
- 3 Press [Same File List Set].

---

## Serial Port Settings

This sets the Remote1 to Remote4 ports on the rear panel of the switcher.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Device Interface >Serial Port Assign menu (7325.5).
- 2 In the list on the left, select the port for the setting.
- 3 In the list on the right, select the device type.
- 4 Press [Device Type Set].
- 5 To attach a name to the selected port, push [Set] in the <Assign> group and enter a port name in the keyboard window.
- 6 To display detail information about the selected port, press [Port Setting].

---

## Making Detailed Settings on the External Device Connected to the Serial Port

After setting the external device for each serial port, it is necessary to make further detailed settings for operation of the external device.

## Making detailed settings for a P-Bus device

- In the Engineering Setup >Panel >Device Interface >Serial Port Assign menu (7325.5), select the serial port connected to the P-Bus device for which you want to make the settings.
- Press [Port Setting].  
The P-Bus Setting menu (7325.6) appears. At the top of the status area, the relevant serial port, slot number, protocol, serial port name, and SCU number appear. In the lower part of the status area, the device name and response speed settings appear.
- Select the ID for which you want to make a device name setting.
- In the <Name> group, press [Set].
- Input the desired name, and press [Enter].  
**To return the device name for the selected ID to the default name**  
Press [Clear] in the <Name> group.
- Specify the command to which the response speed setting applies.
- Set the disk recorder response speed.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Delay	Response speed setting

- Press [Delay Set].
- Repeat steps 3 to 8 as required to make the settings for other commands.

## Making detailed settings for a VTR

- In the Engineering Setup >Panel >Device Interface >Serial Port Assign menu (7325.8), select the serial port connected to the VTR for which you want to make the settings.
- Press [Port Setting].  
The VTR Setting menu (7325.7) appears. At the top of the status area, the relevant serial port, slot number, protocol, serial port name, SCU number, and timecode source appear. In the lower part of the status area, the VTR constants appear.

- In the <TC Source> group, select the timecode source (reference signal for determining the tape position) from the following.

**LTC (Longitudinal Time Code):** Uses LTC. When interpolation data is returned from a VTR, use that interpolation data.

**LTC:VITC (Vertical Interval Time Code):**

Normally uses LTC, but when the tape is moving at speeds at which LTC cannot be read, use VITC.

When interpolation data is returned from a VTR, use that interpolation data.

**VITC:** Uses VITC.

**CTL (Control):** Uses CTL pulses or timer counter pulses. Use this only for a tape on which no timecode is recorded.

The displayed tape position is based on the reference signal specified here.

- Specify the VTR constants to set.
- Press [Set].

A numeric keypad window for hexadecimal input appears.

- Set the VTR constants using values in the range 00 to FF.

Block	Byte	Setting item
BLOCK 1	1	HI-BYTE (DEVICE TYPE)
	2	LO-BYTE (DEVICE TYPE)
	3	HI-BYTE (FRAME) (PREROLL TIME)
	4	LO-BYTE (FRAME) (PREROLL TIME)
	5	EDIT DELAY (FRAME)
	6	EE DELAY (FRAME)
	7	OVER RUN (FRAME)
	8	TRAJECTORY
BLOCK 2	1	TC READ DELAY (FRAME)
	2	START DELAY (FRAME)
	3	AFTER SYNC DELAY-
	4	AFTER SYNC DELAY+
	5	MODE1
	6	MODE2
	7	MAX PRRL SPEED
	8	QUICK PVW PRRL TIME (FRAME)

- Press [Enter].
- Repeat steps 4 to 7 as required to set the constants for other VTRs.

## Making detailed settings for a disk recorder (video disk communications protocol)

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Panel >Device Interface >Serial Port Assign menu (7325.5), select the serial port connected to the disk recorder for which you want to make the settings.
- 2 Press [Port Setting].

When “DDR VDCP” is selected as the protocol, the DDR VDCP Setting menu (7325.9) appears.



When “Simple VDCP” is selected as the protocol, the Simple VDCP Setting menu (7325.11) appears.



- 3 In the <DDR Type> group, select the type of disk recorder.
  - Player:** Functions as a player.
  - Recorder:** Functions as a recorder.
- 4 In the <Name Mode> group, select the file name character count mode.
  - Fixed 8 Character:** Uses 8-character file names.
  - Variable Length:** Uses variable-length file names. (The file name is limited to 23 characters.)
- 5 In the <TC Sense> group, select the type of timecode sensing.

**Zero based:** Mode in which timecode is detected taking the first frame of the recalled file as 00:00:00:00

**SOM based:** Mode in which timecode saved in the recalled file is detected

### Notes

The details of the above operation modes depend on the connected device. For more information, consult the documentation for the connected device.

- 6 When using a disk recorder that does not support the timecode drop frame bit, in the <Frame Control Mode> group, select the drop frame mode or non-drop frame mode.

**Drop Frame:** Drop frame mode.

**Non Drop Frame:** Non-drop frame mode.

### Notes

This setting is only valid when the system field frequency is 59.94.

- 7 Specify the item to which the video port number or response speed setting applies.

1. Video Port: number of the video port associated with the serial port to which the setting applies. For a player, the output port setting. For a recorder, the input port setting.
2. Maximum Open Delay: Maximum time required to open a file
3. Maximum Cueup Delay: Maximum time required to cue up a file
4. Play After Cueup Delay: Delay time from the cued-up state to begin playback
5. Stop Delay: Delay time from issuing the stop command until actually stopping
6. Still Delay: Delay time from issuing the still command until actually stopping
7. Continue Delay: Delay time from issuing the continue command until actually stopping
8. Idle Delay: Delay time from unloading a file until entering the idle state (The idle state is a state wherein a file has been unloaded but a new file has not been loaded yet, that is, a state wherein no file is loaded.)
9. Status Sense Interval: Time until the next Status Sense command is issued (Simple VDCP Setting menu only)

- 8 Set the disk recorder video port number or response speed.

**When setting the video port number**

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
2	Setting	Video port number

**When setting the response speed**

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
2	Setting	Response speed

- 9 Press [Set].
- 10 Repeat steps 3 to 9 as required to make the settings for other items.

**To enable or disable the loop and recue functions**

Press the [Loop] and [Recue] buttons, respectively, to enable/disable the loop and recue functions.

**Loop:** Replays the recalled file in a continuous loop.

**Recue:** After playing the recalled file, recues to the beginning and then stop.

**Making detailed settings for an Extended VTR**

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Panel >Device Interface >Serial Port Assign menu (7325.5), select the serial port connected to the extended VTR for which you want to make the settings.
- 2 Press [Port Setting].  
  
The Extend VTR Setting menu (7325.10) appears. At the top of the status area, the relevant serial port, slot number, protocol, serial port name, and SCU number appear. In the lower part of the status area, the response speed settings appear.
- 3 Specify the command to which the response speed setting applies.
  1. Maximum Open Delay: Maximum time required to open a file
  2. Maximum Cueup Delay: Maximum time required to cue up a file
  3. Play After Cueup Delay: Delay time from the cued-up state to begin playback
  4. Stop Delay: Delay time from issuing the stop command until actually stopping
- 4 Set the response speed of the Extended VTR.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
2	Setting	Response speed setting

- 5 Press [Set].

- 6 Repeat steps 3 to 5 as required to make the settings for other items.

**Setting the AUX Bus Override Operating Mode**

Set the operating mode when the trigger type is “Rising Edge” or “Falling Edge,” and “Aux ? O’ride Src ??” is selected as the GPI input action.

In the <Aux Bus Override Mode> group of the Engineering Setup >Panel >Device Interface menu (7325), select one of the following modes.

**Momentary:** On an input pulse rising (falling) edge, the input of the selected AUX bus is used, and on a falling (rising) edge this returns to the original cross-point.

**Latch:** On an input pulse rising (falling) edge, the input of the selected AUX bus is used, and this does not return to the original cross-point change even on a falling (rising) edge.

**Operation Settings****Setting the On-Air Tally**

To set the high tally state reflected on the control panel, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Operation >Button Tally menu (7326.9).
- 2 In the <Tally Type> group, select either of the following.
  - [R1] to [R8]: Reflect the tally state of the tally group (1 to 8).
  - Independent:** Reflects the tally state of the switcher only.
- 3 Press [Execute].

**Assigning a Bus or Function to 1st Row Buttons**

Assigns keys AUX bus, and other functions that are selectable in the 1st row of the cross-point control block.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Operation >Key/AUX/Function Assign menu (7326.13).
- 2 In the list on the left, select the button.

- 3 Select the bus or function you want to assign from the list on the right.
- 4 Press [Set].

---

## Setting the Transition Rate Display Mode

To determine whether to display transition rate values in menus and on the control panel in frames or as timecode values, select either of the following in the <Trans Rate Display> group.

**Frame:** Displays in frames.

**Timecode:** Display as timecode (SS:FF).

---

## Making Settings Relating to Effects

To make settings relating to the functions used when carrying out keyframe effect operations, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Operation >Effect Mode menu (7326.2).
- 2 Make the following settings as required.

**Effect recall mode:** To select the state of the first keyframe when an effect is recalled, select [Recall] (the first keyframe is not recalled) or [Recall&Rewind] (the first keyframe is recalled) in the <Recall Mode> group.

**Automatic first keyframe insertion:** When an empty register is recalled, to automatically insert a first keyframe of the state at that point, turn [1st KF Auto Insert] on.

**Automatic effect saving:** To automatically save an effected when it is recalled after being edited, turn [Effect Auto Save] on.

**Keyframe duration default value:** Press [Default KF Duration], then enter the default value from the numeric keypad window.

---

## Setting the First Keyframe When a Rewind is Executed

For P-Bus, GPI, and DDR/VTR timeline operations, to execute the first keyframe when a rewind is carried out, set each external device on in the <REWIND&1st KF> group in the Effect Mode menu.

### Notes

When an effect is executed by pressing the [RUN] button with this setting on, the first keyframe action is not executed.

**GPI:** Settings for the GPI timeline.

**P-Bus:** Settings for the P-Bus timeline.

**DDR/VTR:** Settings for the VTR/disk recorder/Extended VTR timeline.

**Macro:** Settings for the macro timeline.

---

## Setting the Source and Destination Names

To set the Source and Destination names used in the control panel, use the following procedure.

### Notes

Before carrying out these settings, it is necessary to set the number of the S-Bus description name ([p. 257](#)).

- 1 In the <Source/Dest Name> group of the Engineering Setup >Panel >Operation menu (7326), select the names to be used from the following.

**Sw'er Local:** Source names set in the Xpt Assign menu, and fixed bus names

**S-Bus Descript:** Description names set in the router

**S-Bus Type + Num:** Type + Num set in the router (In this case, always eight characters.)

- 2 In the <Name Display Mode> group, select the method of display in the source name displays.

**Auto:** Optimizes the display according to the number of characters. Line breaks occur every four characters, with up to the first twelve characters shown in three lines.

**4 Character:** The first four characters appear.

### To replace a name set in the Xpt Assign menu with an S-Bus description name

Turn [S-Bus Name Link] on.

This has such effect that each time a description name is changed on the router, the corresponding source name is automatically changed. Thus, the same description name can always be used both on the router and the switcher. Even when [Sw'er Local] is selected, the same name as when [S-Bus Descript] is selected can be displayed. The S-Bus description name can also be displayed in the Xpt Assign menu.

## Settings for the Flexi Pad and Wipe Snapshot Menus

Makes settings for the display of buttons in the Flexi Pad and menus.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Operation >Flexi Pad Mode menu (7326.3).
- 2 Make the following settings, as required.

**Settings for memory recall buttons in the Wipe Snapshot menu and DME Wipe Snapshot menu:** Press [Pattern] or [Register Name] in the <Wipe/DME Display> group to select the buttons.

**Settings for memory recall buttons in the Misc >Snapshot menu:** Press [Register No] or [Register Name] in the <Snapshot/Effect Display> group to select the buttons.

**Coupling the transition type selection with the Flexi Pad mode selection:** To make the Flexi Pad mode selection change automatically when [WIPE] or [DME] is selected in the transition control block, press [Wipe/DME Auto Deleg], turning it on.

**Button indications in the memory recall section:** When the Flexi Pad mode is [WIPE] or [DME], for the button indications in the memory recall section, select [Pattern] or [Register Name] in the <Wipe/DME Display> group. When the mode is [Snapshot], [Effect], or [MCRO], select [Register No] or [Register Name] in the <Snapshot/Effect Display> group.

## Setting the Button Operation Mode

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Operation >Custom Button menu (7326.4).
- 2 Make the following settings as required.

**Operation mode during an auto transition:** For the operation mode when the [AUTO TRANS] or [TAKE] button is pressed once more during an auto transition, select [Continue] or [Cancel] in the <Auto Trans/Take> group.

- **Continue:** Continues the transition.
- **Cancel:** Cancels the transition and returns to the state before starting the transition.

**Operation mode during keyframe execution:** For the operation mode when the [RUN] button is pressed once more during effect execution, select [Continue] or [Cancel] in the <Run> group.

- **Continue:** Continues the effect.
- **Cancel:** Cancels the effect and returns to the state before starting the execution.

**Interchanging the [AUTO TRANS] and [CUT] buttons:** To interchange the [AUTO TRANS] and [CUT] buttons in the transition control block, press the [Auto Trans/Cut Swap] button, turning it on.

**Transition preview operation mode:** For the operation mode of the [TRANS PVW] button, select [Lock] or [Hold] in the <Trans Pvw> group. The setting as to whether to use the “One-time mode” in which the transition preview terminates when the transition completes, or to use button control, is made on the switcher side (☞ p. 250).

**[KEY] button operation mode for 2nd row buttons in the cross-point control block:** When a bus is selected with the 1st row buttons, specify the [KEY] button operation mode in the <Key Source Bus Select Mode> group, as follows.

- **Key:** If you select this, the [KEY] button is always lit, and this mode allows only key signals to be selected with the cross-point buttons.
- **Video & Key:** The [KEY] button is enabled, and either video or key signals can be selected.

**Operation mode of the [XPT HOLD] buttons in the 1st row of the cross-point control block:** Sets the operation mode of the [XPT HOLD] buttons assigned in the 1st row in the <Xpt Hold> group, as follows.

- **A/B Bus:** When the [XPT HOLD] button is pressed, turning it on, enables only A bus and B bus cross-point hold.
- **All Bus:** When the [XPT HOLD] button is pressed, turning it on, enables cross-point hold for all buses used in the corresponding bank. (A/B bus, Key1 to Key4 bus, utility bus)

## Setting the Operation Mode of the [ALL] Button in the Transition Control Block

Specify the next transition selected by pressing the [ALL] button in the transition control block.

### Notes

If everything here is set to Off, then pressing the [ALL] button does not change the specification of the next transition.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Operation >Custom Button >Next Trans All menu (7326.11).
- 2 Press the button for the next transition you want to select with the [ALL] button, turning it On.

## Setting Trackball and Button Double-Click Sensitivity

You can adjust the sensitivity of the trackball and button double-clicks.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Operation >Sensitivity menu (7326.5).

- 2 Make the following settings as required.

**Trackball and Z-ring sensitivity in normal mode:**

In the <Trackball Normal Mode> group, select [×1], [×2], or [×4].

**Trackball and Z-ring sensitivity in fine mode:**

In the <Trackball Fine Mode> group, select [<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>], [<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>], or [<sup>1</sup>/<sub>8</sub>].

**Touch sensitivity for recalling menus by double-clicking buttons:** In the <Double Click> group, select [Fast], [Normal], or [Slow].

## Setting the Macro Execution Mode

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Panel >Operation >Macro menu (7326.6).

- 2 In the <Macro Execution Mode> group, select the macro execution mode.

**Normal:** Normal execution mode

**Step:** Step execution mode

- 3 When making a macro attachment setting, select whether or not to enable cross-point button operations in the <Attachment Setting Mode> group.

**With Btn Function:** Enables cross-point button operations.

**W/o Btn Function:** Disables cross-point button operations.

- 4 Using the <Macro 2nd Recall Mode> group, set the action to occur during macro execution or when a macro is stopped, if the cross-point button with the macro attachment set is pressed again.

**Continue:** Resumes execution of a macro that has been stopped (executing macros continue execution).

**Cancel:** Terminates execution of a stopped or executing macro.

- 5 Using the <Macro Recall Override> group buttons, set the action to occur during macro execution or when a macro is stopped, if another macro is recalled.

**Disable:** Ignores macro recalls.

**Enable:** Executes other macros.

## To have a cross-point button with a macro attachment set lit continuously

Press [Attchd Btn Indication], turning it on.

When the [MCRO ATTCH ENBL] button in the cross-point control block is on, the cross-point button with a macro attachment is constantly lit green.

## Screen Saver and Other Settings

### Using the Menu Display Screen Saver

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Panel >Maintenance menu (7327), press [Screen Saver], turning it on.

- 2 Adjust the following parameter.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Sleep Time	Time until screen saver starts operation

### Using Panel Sleep Mode

The brightness of all indicators on the control panel, with the exception of the menu screen, can be dimmed.

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Panel >Maintenance menu (7327), press [Panel Sleep Mode], turning it on.

- 2 Set the following parameter.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Sleep Time	Time of inactivity until panel sleep mode starts.

### Adjusting the Brightness

You can adjust the brightness of the following hardware parts.

**LCD Btn Brightness:** Adjusts the brightness of the LCD buttons in the Flexi Pad.

**Display Brightness:** Adjust the brightness of the organic EL panel for the source name displays, etc.

**Switch Brightness:** Adjusts the brightness of the panel switches.

The following description takes the LCD brightness as an example. Use a similar process for the other adjustments.

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Panel >Maintenance menu (7327), press [LCD Btn Brightness].
- 2 Adjust the following parameter.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Brightness	LCD button brightness

## Setting the Touch Operation Beep Sound

In the Engineering Setup >Panel >Maintenance menu (7327), press [Touch Beep]. Each time you press this button, it toggles the beep setting on and off.

## Calibrating the Touch Panel

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Panel >Maintenance menu (7327), press [Touch Panel Calibration].

The following message appears.  
“To Perform Calibration, please touch the center of each plus sign.”

- 2 Press [Yes].
- 3 Press the center of the plus sign displayed on the screen.

When you press on the plus sign, it disappears and then reappears on the diagonal.

- 4 Press the center of the plus sign.

## Setting the Menu to be Shown When the Menus Are Started

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Panel >Maintenance menu (7327), press [Initial Menu Set].
- 2 Enter the page number of the desired menu.

The next time the menus are started, the menu specified by this number appears.

### Notes

To enable this setting, the initial state of the control panel when powered on must be set to one of the following.

- Set to Resume mode
- Set to Custom mode, with “User” selected in the <Setup> group.

For details about these settings, see [“Selecting the State After Power-on” \(p. 213\)](#).

## Setting the Mouse Wheel Scrolling Direction for Parameter Setting

In the <Mouse Wheel Direction> group of the Engineering Setup >Panel >Maintenance menu (7327), press one of the following buttons.

**Scrl Down = Clockwise:** Turning the mouse wheel in the direction to scroll down is the same as moving the parameter setting button indicator to the right.

**Scrl Up = Clockwise:** Turning the mouse wheel in the direction to scroll up is the same as moving the parameter setting button indicator to the right.

## Selecting the Mouse Button for the Parameter Setting Buttons

In the <Mouse Slider Control> group of the Engineering Setup >Panel >Maintenance menu (7327), press one of the following buttons.

**Left Button:** Dragging the bar while holding down the left mouse button adjusts the bar of the parameter setting button.

**Right Button:** Dragging the bar while holding down the right mouse button adjusts the bar of the parameter setting button.

### Notes

When [Left Button] is selected, pressing one of the parameter setting buttons in the menu does not display a numeric keypad window.

## Settings for Switcher Configuration

### Adjusting the Reference Phase

To adjust the switcher internal reference phase, in the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config menu (7331), set the following parameter.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Phase	Switcher internal reference phase

### Specifying the Video Switching Timing

**1** In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config menu (7331), press [Switching Timing].

The Switching Timing menu (7331.8) appears.

**2** Select any of the following.

**Any:** Not specified

**Field 1:** Field 1

**Field 2:** Field 2

#### Notes

When the signal format is set to 720P or 1080PsF, this selection is not possible.

### Setting the Operation Mode

In the <M/E Config> group of the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config menu (7331), select the operation mode for each M/E or PGM/PST bank from the following.

- **Standard mode:** Fixes the output configuration for the maximum of four outputs (Out1 to 4) as follows.
  - Out1: Program output
  - Out2: Preview output

- Out3: Clean output
- Out4: Key preview output<sup>1)</sup>
- **Multi-program mode:** The M/E or P/P 4-system outputs (Out1 to 4) can be assigned to one of the following outputs (M/E Output Assign).
  - Program outputs 1 to 4
  - Preview output
  - Key preview outputs 1 and 2<sup>1)</sup>
  - Clean output

Further, you can change the combination of signals from which the program output is configured (PGM Config).

1) For the key preview output, you can select either video mode (background and key) or key mode (key only), and select the background and key (K-PVW Config).

#### Notes

When Multi Program mode is selected, two or more transition type indication may light. It is also possible that more than one "Transition Type" has been selected in the Misc >Transition menu for each M/E.

### Assigning the output of each bank in Multi Program mode

When [Multi Program] is selected as the operation mode, use the following procedure.

**1** In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config menu (7331), press [M/E Output Assign].

The M/E Output Assign menu (7331.1) appears.

**2** On the list in the status area, select the bank output to be assigned.

**3** In the <M/E Output Assign> group, select the output signal to be assigned.

### Setting the output configuration for each bank

When [Multi Program] is selected as the operation mode, use the following procedure.

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config menu (7331), press [PGM Config].

The PGM Config menu (7331.2) appears. The status area shows the background and key configuration assigned to the output of each bank.

- 2 Select the output you want to set.
- 3 In the <Bkgd> group, select the background.  
In Multi Program mode, select [Clean] or [Utility1], then skip to step 4.
- 4 In the <Key Enable> group, select [Enable] or [Disable] for each of the keys.

### Setting the key preview configuration

You can make this setting at any time, regardless of the operation mode.

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config menu (7331), press [K-PVW Config].  
The K-PVW Config menu (7331.3) appears. The status area shows the key preview configuration for each bank.
- 2 Select the key preview to set.
- 3 In the <Mode> group, select [Video] mode or [Key] mode.  
If you select Key mode, skip to step 5.
- 4 In the <Bkgd> group, select the background.  
In standard mode or Multi Program mode, select [Clean] or [Utility1], then skip to step 5.
- 5 In the <Key1> to <Key8> groups, select the corresponding key status from the following.

**Link:** Follows the key on/off setting.

**On:** Key is always on.

**Off:** Key is always off.

## Switching Backgrounds using DME Wipes

### Notes

- Only the background DME wipe or key 1 can be enabled at any one time.
- If background DME wipe is enabled, side flags cannot be used in DME wipes.

This setting can be made for each of the M/E and PGM/PST banks.

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config menu (7331), select the target M/E or P/P bank.
- 2 In the <BKGD DME Wipe/Key1> group, select [BKGD DME Wipe].

## Setting User Regions

This assigns the color backgrounds 1 and 2, AUX1 to 24, and frame memory 1 to 8 for User regions to any of User1 to User8.

### Notes

If you change the user region settings, the previously stored snapshot data and keyframe effect data can no longer be used.

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config menu (7331), press [User1-8 Config].  
The User1-8 Config menu (7331.4) appears. The status area shows the region names and assigned user region numbers.
- 2 Select the region to set.
- 3 In the <User Region Assign> group, select the user region you want to assign. If you do not want to assign a user region, select [No Assign].
- 4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 as required to make the settings for other regions.
- 5 Press [Execute].
- 6 Check the message, then press [Yes].

## Setting the Side Flag Video Material and Operation

Makes settings relating to the video material (4:3 aspect ratio) for applying side flags (☞ *“Side Flag Settings” (p. 128)*).

### Setting the aspect ratio (4:3/16:9)

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config menu (7331), press [Side Flags].  
The Side Flags menu (7331.7) appears. The status area lists the video/key pair numbers, video

signal source names, and aspect ratio settings (16:9/4:3).

- 2 Select the pair number for which you want to set.
- 3 In the <Aspect> group, press [4:3].

If you select [16:9], no side flags are applied.

### To set 4:3 video material to have side flags applied automatically

You can make a setting so that when a signal with aspect ratio set to 4:3 is selected in the cross-point control block, side flags are automatically applied.

To do so, in the Side Flags menu, press [Auto Side Flags]. Pressing this button toggles the setting on and off.

This setting applies to all of the M/E and PGM/PST banks.

### To set to crop to 4:3 when a DME wipe is executed

When side flags are enabled, you can automatically crop an image as set to be a 4:3 image when executing a DME wipe. Use the following procedure.

To do so, in the Side Flags menu, press [Auto Crop].

Pressing this button toggles the setting on and off.

This setting applies to all of the M/E and PGM/PST banks.

## Adjusting the width of the side flags

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config >Side Flags menu (7331.7), press [Width].
- 2 Adjust the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Left	Width of left side flag
4	Right	Width of right side flag
5	All	Width of both side flags

## Displaying the menu for enabling/disabling the side flags

In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config >Side Flags menu (7331.7), press [Misc >Enbl >Setup Flags].

## Displaying the menu for assigning the side flags on/off function to a cross-point button

In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config >Side Flags menu (7331.7), press [Side Flags Button Assign].

# Signal Input Settings

## Making Through Mode Settings

This sets the through mode for input. You can set this independently for each primary input.

### Notes

Through mode is disabled for the input signals which have been converted in the format converter.

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Input menu (7332), select the input signal to which the settings apply.  
“Input33” to “Input48” are disabled, even if selected.
- 2 To enable through mode, press [Through Mode], turning it on.

## Configuring the Color Corrector

You can switch the color corrector on or off for each input signal, and adjust the brightness, hue and other parameters.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Input >CCR menu (7332.1).
- 2 Select the input signal you want to set.  
“Primary33” to “Primary48” are disabled, even if selected.
- 3 Press [CCR], turning it on.  
This enables the color correction function.
- 4 Press [Video Process], turning it on.
- 5 Adjust the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Video Gain	Video signal gain
2	Y Gain	Y signal gain
3	C Gain	Chrominance signal gain
4	Hue Delay	Hue delay
5	Black Level	Black level

To return adjustment values to their defaults, press [Unity].

## Applying primary color correction

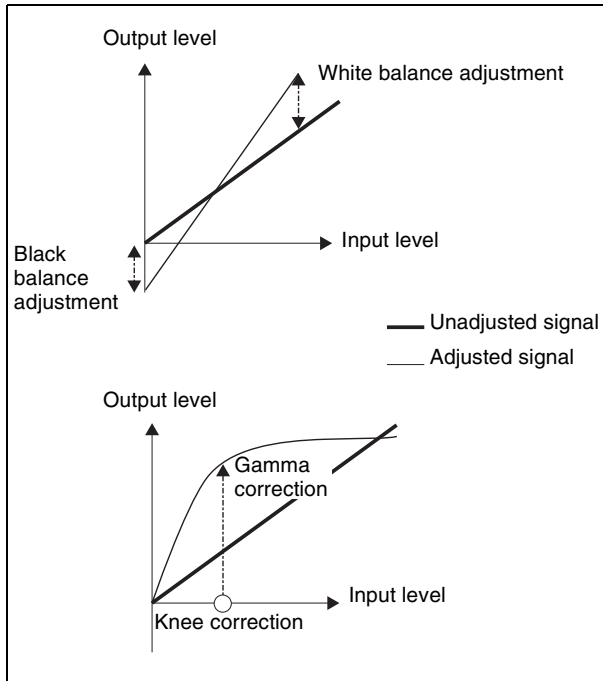
- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Input >CCR menu (7332.1), press [Primary CCR], turning it on.
- 2 In the <Primary CCR Adjust> group, select the setting item.

**Black:** Black balance adjustment

**White:** White balance adjustment

**Gamma:** Gamma correction

**Knee:** Knee correction



- 3 Depending on the selection in step 2, adjust the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Red	Red signal adjustment
2	Green	Green signal adjustment
3	Blue	Blue signal adjustment
4	All	Simultaneous RGB adjustment

### To return the parameters to their default settings

In the <Primary CCR> group, press [Unity].

## Making RGB clip adjustments

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Input >CCR menu (7332.1), press [RGB Clip], turning it on.
- 2 In the <RGB Clip Adjust> group, select the item you want to adjust.

**Dark:** Dark clip adjustment

**White:** White clip adjustment

- 3 Adjust the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Red	Red signal adjustment
2	Green	Green signal adjustment
3	Blue	Blue signal adjustment
4	All	Simultaneous RGB adjustment

### To return the parameters to their default settings

In the <RGB Clip> group, press [Unity].

## Enabling the Illegal Color Limiter

To enable the illegal color limiter for the signals generated by the switcher internal matte generator, press [Matte Illeg Col Limit] in the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Input menu (7332), turning it on.

## Selecting the Primary Input to be Used in the Format Converter

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Input >FC Input Select menu (7332.3).
- 2 Select the number of the FC (format converter) that you want to set from the table on the left.

The format converter range is either FC1 to FC4 or FC1 to FC8, depending on the FC Config setting (p. 216).

- 3 Select the primary number from the table on the right. “Primary33” to “Primary48” are disabled, even if selected.
- 4 Press [Set].
- 5 To input the name of the input signal which has been converted in the format converter, press [FC Name].
- 6 Enter a name (of up to 16 characters), and press [Enter].

## Selecting the Input to which the Frame Delay Function Applies

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Input menu (7332), select the input signal to which the settings apply.

You can select the input signals for which the frame delay function is enabled in advance.

- Adjust the following parameter.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
2	Frame Delay	Delay amount

## Selecting the Format Converter Conversion

You can select the conversion (up-conversion or down-conversion) when the format converter is applied to an input.

### Notes

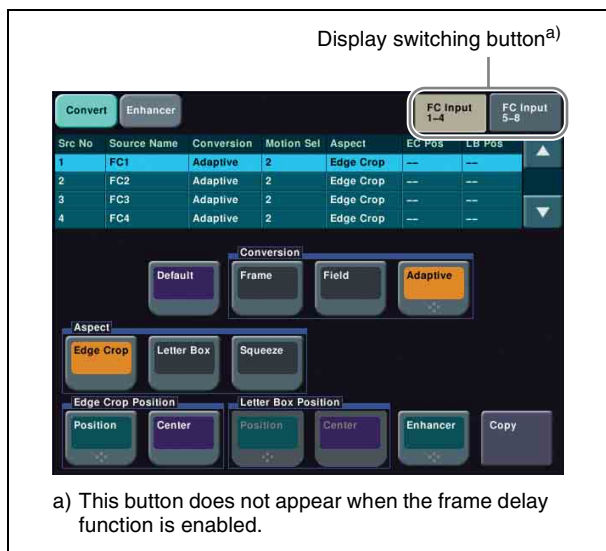
Adjustment is not required for cross conversion.

## Selecting the format converter inputs to be set

The same settings are applied to the two groups of FC1 to FC4 and FC5 to FC8.

- Open the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Input >FC Adjust menu (7332.2).

The following figure illustrates the case when FC1 to FC4 are set to up-conversion.



- Press [FC Input 1-4] or [FC Input 5-8] as required.  
The list corresponding to the pressed button appears.
- Select the setting to apply.

## Making detailed settings for up-conversion

- In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Input >FC Adjust menu (7332.2), select the input to which the setting applies.
- In the <Conversion> group, select one of the following.

**Frame:** Conversion mode in frame units

**Field:** Conversion mode in field units

**Adaptive:** Automatically switches between the above two modes

When Adaptive is selected, adjust the following parameter.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
2	Motion Select	Motion detection sensitivity <sup>a)</sup>

a) 1: Still priority mode, 2: Standard mode, 3: Motion priority mode

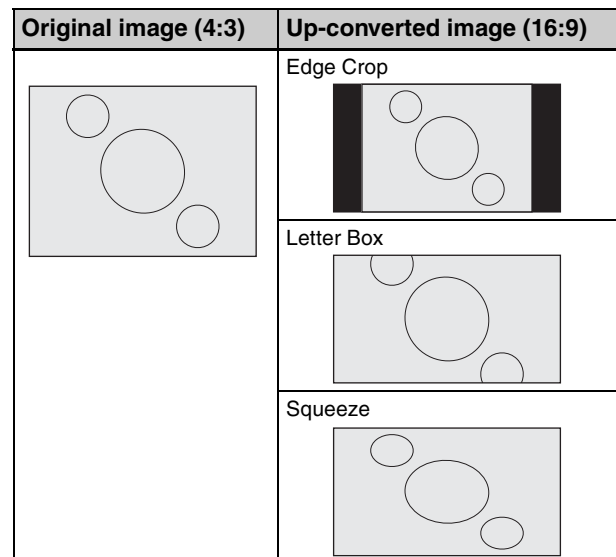
- In the <Aspect> group, select one of the following.

**Edge Crop:** Adds black bars on the left and right sides of a 4:3 aspect ratio image to convert it to a 16:9 image.

**Letter Box:** Crops the top and bottom of a 4:3 aspect ratio image to convert it to a 16:9 image.

**Squeeze:** Stretches a 4:3 image horizontally to convert it to a 16:9 image.

(For details about the image transformations, see the following figure.)



## Setting the image position in edge crop up-conversion mode

- In the <Edge Crop Position> group of the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Input >FC Adjust menu (7332.2), press [Position], turning it on.

- 2** Adjust the following parameter.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
2	EC Position	Image position

**To return the edge crop image to the center**  
Press [Cancel].

### Setting the image position in letter box up-conversion mode

- 1** In the <Letter Box Position> group of the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Input >FC Adjust menu (7332.2), press [Position], turning it on.
- 2** Adjust the following parameter.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
2	LB Position	Image position

**To return the letterbox image to the center**  
Press [Cancel].

### Making enhancer settings

- 1** In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Input >FC Adjust menu (7332.2), press [Enhancer], turning it on.
- 2** Set the following parameters.

Parameter group [1/2]

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
2	Detail Gain	Adjust the edge enhancement sharpness
3	Limiter	Adjust the maximum signal level to be added to the original signal
4	Crisp	Set the amplitude value for which a low-amplitude signal is not emphasized
5	Level Depend	Set the luminance range for edge enhancement

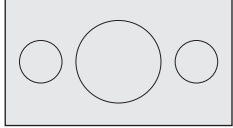
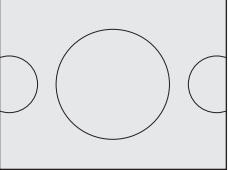
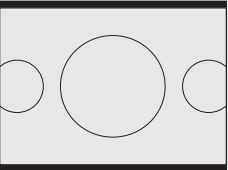
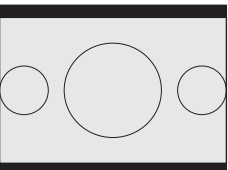
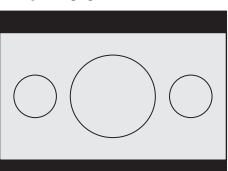
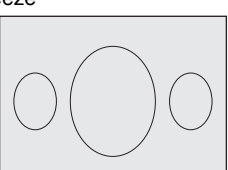
Parameter group [2/2]

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
2	Frequency	Set the center frequency for edge enhancement
3	H/V Ratio	Set the horizontal/vertical ratio for edge enhancement

### Making detailed settings for down-conversion

- 1** In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Input >FC Adjust menu (7332.2), select the input to which the setting applies.
- 2** In the <Aspect> group, select one of the following.
- Edge Crop:** Crops the left and right sides of a 16:9 image to convert it to a 4:3 image.
- Letter Box 13:9:** Crops the left and right sides of a 16:9 image to make a 13:9 image and add black bars at the top and bottom of the 13:9 image to make a 4:3 image.
- Letter Box 14:9:** Crops the left and right sides of a 16:9 image to make a 14:9 image and add black bars on the top and bottom of the 14:9 image to make a 4:3 image.
- Letter Box 16:9:** Adds black bars on the top and bottom of a 16:9 image to convert it to a 4:3 image.
- Squeeze:** Compresses a 16:9 image horizontally to convert it to a 4:3 image.

(For details about the image transformations, see the following figure.)

Original image (16:9)	Down-converted image (4:3)
	Edge Crop 
	Letter Box 13:9 
	Letter Box 14:9 
	Letter Box 16:9 
	Squeeze 

For down-conversion, the image position setting in edge crop mode is the same as for up-conversion. The value is from -30 to +30 inclusive.

For details, [☞ “Setting the image position in edge crop up-conversion mode” \(p. 244\).](#)

For down-conversion, the enhancer settings are the same as for up-conversion.

For details, [☞ “Making enhancer settings” \(p. 245\).](#)

## Copying format converter input data

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Input >FC Adjust menu (7332.2), press [Copy].  
The Copy/Swap >Copy >Format Converter menu (3121) appears.
- 2 Select [Input] in the <Data Select> group.
- 3 Select the data and press [Copy].

# Signal Output Settings

## Notes

- The numbers that can be configured as output signals are 1 to 16. Note that numbers up to 32 are also displayed, but that only numbers 1 to 16 are enabled.
- The Video Clip, V Blank, Through, Safe Title, and 4:3 Crop cannot be set for the following outputs.
  - Output signals from connectors assigned to Out 1 to 12
  - Multi Viewer 1 and 2
  - FC Output 1 and 2

## Assigning Output Signals

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Output >Output Assign menu (7333.1).
- 2 In the <Output Assign> group, select either of the following.

**[Re-Entry Source]:** It is possible to make duplicate assignments.

M/E-1 Output 1 to 4<sup>1)</sup>

PGM/PST 1 to 4<sup>1)</sup>

Undefined

Color Bkgd 2

Frame Memory 1 to 8

1) M/E output signals selected in the M/E Output Assign menu.

**[Aux Bus]:** It is not possible to make duplicate assignments.

Preset

Edit Preview

AUX 1 to 24

**[Output/MV/FC/DME]:** It is possible to make duplicate assignments.

Out 1 to 12<sup>1)</sup>

Multi Viewer 1 and 2

FC Output 1 and 2<sup>2)</sup>

1) Makes duplicate assignments if the signal that is assigned is the same signal as one already assigned to one of Output 1 to 12. However, the following signals are unavailable if already assigned to Output 1 to 12.

Out 1 to 12

Multi Viewer 1 and 2

FC Output 1 and 2

2) FC Output 1 and 2 can be assigned as a pair combination to Outputs 15 and 16.

- 3 Select the output connector number and signal to be assigned.  
For output connectors not to be assigned, press [Inhibit].

The signals that can be assigned to Outputs 13 to 16 are selected from the list displayed by pressing [Output/MV/FC/DME Mode].

- 4 Press [Set] to confirm the assignment.

## Adjusting the Video Clip

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Output >Video Clip menu (7333.2).
- 2 Select the output you want to set.
- 3 Adjust the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
2	White Clip	Luminance signal white clip value
3	Dark Clip	Luminance signal dark clip value
4	Chroma Clip	Chrominance signal clip value

To set the values to the default values, press [Default].

## Making Vertical Blanking Interval Adjustment and Through Mode Settings

This sets the number of scan lines from the reference blanking position of field 1 for each format that should be masked.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Output >V Blank/Through menu (7333.3).
- 2 Select the output you want to set.
- 3 Press [V Blank Mask].
- 4 Adjust the following parameter.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
2	Mask End	Final value for vertical blanking interval <sup>a)</sup>

a) Depending on the signal format, the adjustment range varies as follows.

**480i:** 10 to 19  
**576i:** 6 to 22  
**1080i/1080PsF:** 7 to 20  
**720P:** 7 to 25

- 5 To enable through mode, press [Through Mode], setting it to Enable. The following outputs can be enabled.

- Aux 1 to 24 outputs

- Program outputs of the M/E and PGM/PST rows
- Clean outputs of the M/E and PGM/PST rows

## Making Safe Title Settings

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Output >Safe Title menu (7333.4).

The status area shows the output ports and the assigned signals, with the box 1, box 2, cross, and grid states.

- 2 Select the output you want to set.
- 3 To enable the safe title on/off setting made in the Misc menu, press [Safe Title], turning it on.
- 4 Carry out one of the following operations.

**To display a box:** Press [Box1] or [Box2], turning it on.

In this case, carry out the following steps **5** and **6**.

**To display a cross:** Press [Cross], turning it on.

**To display a grid:** Press [Grid], turning it on.

In this case, carry out the following steps **5** and **6**.

- 5 If you selected [Box1] or [Box2] in step **4**, adjust the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
2	Box Size	Box size
3	Luminance	Display brightness <sup>a)</sup>

a) Adjustable for Box2

If [Grid] is selected in step **4**, in the <Grid Size> group, select one of the following.

**80.00%:** Sets the grid size to 80% of the screen frame.

**85.00%:** Sets the grid size to 85% of the screen frame.

**90.00%:** Sets the grid size to 90% of the screen frame.

**100.00%:** Sets the grid size to the full-screen size (100% of the screen frame).

- 6 If you selected [Box1] or [Box2] in step **4**, in the <Box1 Adjust> or <Box2 Adjust> group, select the screen aspect ratio (16:9/14:9/4:3).  
If you selected [Grid] in step **4**, in the <Grid Adjust> group, select the screen aspect ratio (16:9/4:3).

## Cropping the Image to a 4:3 Aspect Ratio in an HD System

In an HD system, to crop an image having a screen aspect ratio of 16:9 to an aspect ratio of 4:3, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Output >4:3 Crop menu (7333.5).

The status area shows the output ports and respective 4:3 Crop mode settings.

- 2 Select the output you want to set.
- 3 Press [4:3 Crop], turning it on.

#### Notes

When the screen aspect ratio of 16:9 is selected for all M/E banks in the Engineering Setup >System >Format >Aspect menu (7313.1), the setting of 4:3 Crop is disabled (off).

## Selecting the Output to be Used as the Format Converter

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Output menu (7333), press [FC Output Select].

The FC Output Select menu (7333.11) appears. The status area shows the format converter list (left) and the output signal list (right).

#### Notes

The following signals cannot be used in the format converter.

- Signals output from connectors assigned to Out 1 to 12
  - Multi Viewer 1 and 2
  - FC Output 1 and 2
- 2 Select the number of the FC (format converter) that you want to set from the table on the left. (However, the setting is not possible when FC Config (☞ p. 216) is set to 8 In.
  - 3 Use any of the following methods to select the target outputs in the list on the left.
  - 4 Press [Set].

## Setting the Format Converter Outputs

### Setting the format converter

Display the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Output >FC Adjust menu (7333.6).

The subsequent operations are the same as for the format converter input settings.

For details about operations, ☞ “Selecting the Format Converter Conversion” (p. 244).

## Copying format converter output data

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Output >FC Adjust menu (7333.6), press [Copy].

The Copy/Swap >Copy >Format Converter menu (3121) appears.

- 2 Select the output you want to set.
- 3 Select [Output] in the <Data Select> group.
- 4 Select the data and press [Copy].

## Making Settings for the Multi Viewer

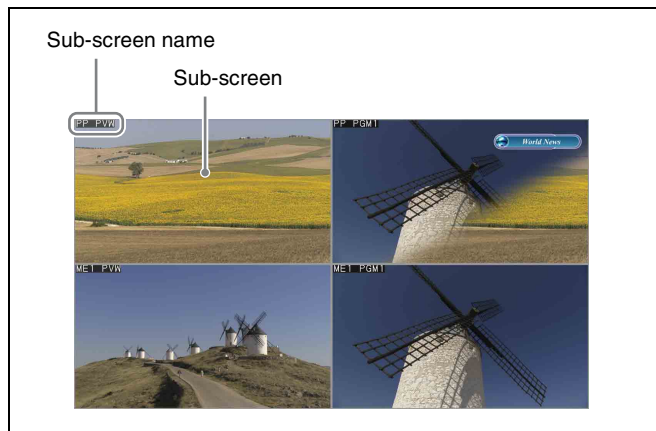
The multi viewer is a function for splitting the screen into some windows and simultaneously displaying multiple images in those windows.

The screen can be split into 4 or 10 windows, which can be individually set for each of 2-channel multi viewers.

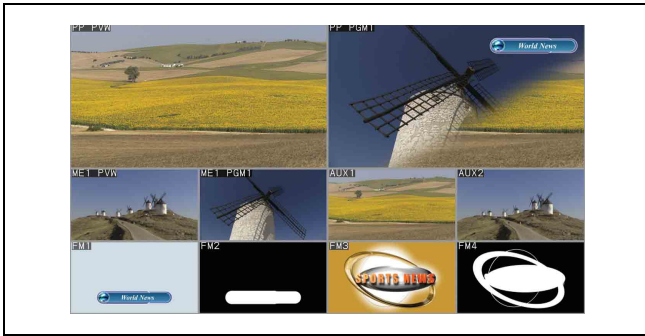
#### Notes

To output the multi viewer signals, it is necessary to assign the multi viewer outputs to the output connectors in advance (☞ “Assigning Output Signals” (p. 246)).

### Example of 4-split screen:



## Example of 10-split screen:



In the following description, a split window is referred to as a “sub-screen.”

- In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Output menu (7333), press [Multi Viewer].  
The Multi Viewer menu (7333.9) appears.
- In the <Multi Viewer> group, press [1] or [2] to select the setting target.  
The status area shows a list of outputs assigned to the sub-screens.
- In the <Split Mode> group, select the number of split windows.  
**Split 4:** Splits the screen into 4 windows.  
**Split 10:** Splits the screen into 10 windows.
- To add borders to the sub-screens, press [Border Enable] to turn it on.

### Tally colors

Tallies are shown on the multi viewer screen. In this way, you can see, for example, which input signals are used in the on-air video.

Borders appear in the following two colors.

**Red border:** Video with a red tally

**Green border:** Video with a green tally

For details about tally settings, see [“Setting the On-Air Tally” \(p. 235\)](#) and [“Making New Tally Generation Settings” \(p. 258\)](#).

### Notes

If “Independent” is set in the Engineering Setup >Panel >Operation >Button Tally menu (7326.9), then tallies are not shown on the multi viewer.

## Specifying whether to show or hide the sub-screen names

- In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Output >Multi Viewer menu (7333.9), select the target sub-screens.
- Press [Name Enable] to select either of the following.  
**Enable:** Shows the sub-screen name.  
**Disable:** Hides the sub-screen name.  
To make the setting for all of 10 sub-screens in a single operation, turn [All Name Enable] on or off.
- To set the name display position, adjust the following parameters.

### Notes

If you change any of the following parameter values, the name display position will change on all sub-screens. You cannot adjust the name display position for each sub-screen.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
2	Name Position H	Horizontal position
3	Name Position V	Vertical position

## Assigning signals to the sub-screens

- Open the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Output >Multi Viewer >Source/Output Assign menu (7333.10).
- Select the target sub-screens in the list on the left.
- If assigning an input signal to a sub-screen, press [Source] in the <Source/Output Select> group. If assigning an output signal, press [Output]. “Primary33” to “Primary48” are disabled, even if selected.
- Select the signal you want to assign from the list on the right.

### Notes

If [Output] is selected in step 3, the following signals cannot be used.

- Signals output from connectors assigned to Out 1 to 12
- Multi Viewer 1 and 2
- FC Output 1 and 2

- Press [Set].

# Settings Relating to Video Switching

## Selecting the Bank to Make the Settings

In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Transition menu (7334), select the bank to which the settings apply, then make the settings.

## Setting the transition preview mode

In the <Transition Preview> group of the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Transition menu (7334), select either of the following.

**One Time:** The transition preview ends after a single transition.

**Normal:** Switching the [TRANS PVW] button on or off switches between the transition preview mode and the normal mode.

## Selecting the independent key transition mode of the transition control block

In the <Key Transition> group of the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Transition menu (7334), select either of the following.

**Same:** The transition settings for the On and Off directions are the same.

**Independ:** The transition settings for the On and Off directions can be set separately.

## Selecting the background transition flip-flop mode

In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Transition menu (7334), press [Bus Toggle] to switch between on and off.

**On:** Flip-flop mode

**Off:** Bus fixed mode

For details, see “Fader Lever Operation in Bus Fixed Mode” (p. 56).

## Enabling or disabling the fade-to-black function

In the <FTB> group of the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Transition menu (7334), press the program output name to toggle between On and Off.

**On:** When the [FTB] button is pressed, a fade-to-black is carried out.

**Off:** Even when the [FTB] button is pressed, no fade-to-black is carried out.

### Notes

The PGM2 to PGM4 settings are only valid in Multi Program mode or DSK mode.

## Setting a preset color mix

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Transition >Preset Color Mix menu (7334.1).
- 2 In the <Stroke Mode> group, select whether to carry out a transition in one stroke or two strokes.

**Normal:** Carries out a preset color mix with two transition operations.

**Single:** Carries out a preset color mix with a single transition operation.

### Notes

In bus fixed mode (see p. 250), the setting is fixed to “Single.”

- 3 In the <Non Drop Key> group, select the key setting for a transition including a key.

To carry out the transition with the key state maintained, press [Key1] to [Key4], turning them on.

- 4 If each time a transition ends the transition type is to return to the previous setting, press [One Time Enable].

## Settings relating to fader lever operations

To select the way in which the fader lever position and the transition progress are related, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Transition >Transition Curve menu (7334.2).
- 2 In the <Fader Curve> group, select the fader lever operation mode.

**Normal:** The transition progress is linear, according to the fader lever position. (Factory default setting)

**Adv Tally Mode:** When the fader lever is moved from the end of its travel, the tally is output slightly before the transition starts.

# Settings Relating to Keys, Wipes, Frame Memory and Color Correction

## Settings for the Show Key Function

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Key/Wipe/FM/CCR >Show Key menu (7335.1).
- 2 In the <Show Key Enable> group, press the signal for which “show key” is enabled, turning it on.
- 3 To set the time for which “show key” is held, press [Hold Time].
- 4 Adjust the following parameter.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Hold Time	Show key hold time

## Settings for Key Auto Drop Function

The “key auto drop” function automatically switches off a particular key when you press a cross-point button in a bus that outputs the background on the particular switcher bank (PGM/PST or M/E-1).

When the background output bus is in flip-flop mode, this is always the A bus. In bus-fixed mode, it is either the A bus or the B bus depending on the fader lever position (☞ “*Fader Lever Operation in Bus Fixed Mode*” (p. 56)).

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Key/Wipe/FM/CCR menu (7335), press [Key Auto Drop].

The Key Auto Drop menu (7335.2) appears.



- 2 In the <Key Auto Drop> group, press the name of the keyer for which you want the key to be deleted automatically, turning it on.

## Automatically Naming and Saving to Frame Memory

In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Key/Wipe/FM/CCR menu (7335), press [FM Auto Store], turning it on.

## Selecting the Bank to Make the Settings

In the following procedures, select the bank to which the settings apply, then make the settings.

### Selecting the key memory mode

In the <Key Memory> group of the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Key/Wipe/FM/CCR menu (7335), select one from Full (full mode)/Simple (simple mode)/Off (☞ “*Key Memory*” (p. 64)).

### Selecting the processing order of masks and borders

In the <Mask/Border Process> group of the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Key/Wipe/FM/CCR menu (7335), select one of the following.

**Mask >Border:** Applies the Mask effect, then applies the Border effect.

**Border >Mask:** Applies the Border effect, then applies the Mask effect.

### Selecting the key priority operation mode

In the <Key Priority> group of the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Key/Wipe/FM/CCR menu (7335), select one of the following.

**Normal:** The key priority sequence can be varied freely.

**Fix:** Fixed at currently set priority sequence.

### Setting the operation mode of the key bus [XPT HOLD] button

In the <Xpt Hold Mode> group of the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Key/Wipe/FM/CCR menu (7335), select any of the following. This setting is applied for the attributes of snapshots as well as the operation mode of [XPT HOLD] button.

**Key Disable:** The [XPT HOLD] button of the key bus functions not only as a cross-point hold button but also as a key disable button. When the [XPT HOLD] button is on, recalling a snapshot or keyframe effect does not

reflect the key settings, including the cross-point selection information.

**Key Disable with Status:** Same as [Key Disable], and further disables the reflection of the key on/off status.

**Xpt Hold:** The [XPT HOLD] button of the key bus functions as a cross-point hold button. When the [XPT HOLD] is on, recalling a snapshot or keyframe effect does not reflect the cross-point selection information.

### To change the cross-point hold attribute of a snapshot

If you select “Key Disable” above, this also applies key disable to the cross-point hold attribute.

If you select “Key Disable With Status,” the key disable function is applied, including the key on/off status.

#### Notes

This setting is only reflected in the operation of the [XPT HOLD] button when the [XPT HOLD] button operating mode is set to “All Bus.” Note that the snapshot cross-point hold attribute is also valid for settings other than “All Bus.”

### Setting the operation mode when the pattern limit is released

In the <Pattern Limit Transition> group of the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Key/Wipe/FM/CCR menu (7335), select either of the following operation modes.

**Auto:** When the pattern limit is released, the remainder of the transition is carried out automatically at a special-purpose transition rate.

**Manual:** After the pattern limit is released, the transition waits for the next operation, then executes. Until you move the fader lever or press [AUTO TRANS], the transition is not executed.

### Applying color correction to AUX bus signal

#### Notes

When color correction is applied in the AUX bus, the color correction that was applied to the input signal is disabled.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Key/Wipe/FM/CCR >CCR menu (7335.3).
- 2 Select the AUX bus to set.
- 3 Press [Bus CCR] to switch between Enable and Disable.

## Settings Relating to Function Links

### Setting a Cross-Point Button Link

To link together two buses internal to the switcher, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Link >Internal Bus Link menu (7336.1).
- 2 Select the setting to apply.
- 3 Press [Link Bus Select].
- 4 In the <Bus Select> group, select [Master Bus] (link source bus).
- 5 Select the bus to be the link source, and press [Bus Set].

Only when [Master Bus] is selected, M/E-1 Trans PGM and P/P Trans PGM are available.

#### Notes

With M/E-1 Trans PGM or P/P Trans PGM is selected for [Master Bus], the link setting become effective as soon as you start moving the fader lever.

- 6 In the <Bus Select> group, select [Linked Bus] (link destination bus).
- 7 Select the bus to be the link destination, and press [Bus Set].  
Only when [Linked Bus] is selected, AUX 1 to AUX 24 as Key are available.
- 8 Select the link table, and press [Link Table Set].

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Link Table No	Link table selection

For more information about link tables, see [“Making Link Table Settings” \(p. 253\)](#).

#### To release a link

With the link selected, press [Clear].

## Making Link Table Settings

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Link >Internal Bus Link >Link Table Select menu (7336.3).
- 2 Select the link source and link destination files.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Link No	Link to which setting applies
3	Link Table No	Link table selection

- 3 To confirm the selection, press [Link Src Set].

This links the link destination signal to the signal selected as Main No.

### To initialize the set source address

Press [Init Link Table].

Check the message, then press [Yes].

## Linking Cross-Point Buttons and GPI Output Ports

To link cross-point buttons or the [CUT] and [AUTO TRANS] buttons in the cross-point control block, and GPI output ports, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Link >GPI Link menu (7336.4).
- 2 Select the GPI output port.
- 3 Press [GPI Link Adjust].  
The GPI Link Adjust menu (7336.5) appears.
- 4 Select the setting to apply. For each GPI port there can be up to eight links.
- 5 In the <Video/Button> group, press [Select].  
The selected video or button name is reflected in the status area.  
**To clear a video/button name link**  
Make the selection to which the setting applies, then press [Clear] in the <Video/Button> group.
- 6 To select for each bus whether the GPI link setting is enabled or disabled, select the bus to which the setting applies.
- 7 In the <Bus> group, select any of the following.

**Enable:** Enables the GPI link setting for the selected bus.

**Disable:** Disables the GPI link setting for the selected bus.

**All Enable:** Enables the GPI link setting for all buses.

## Setting the delay value

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Link >GPI Link Adjust menu (7336.5), select the output port for which you want to set the delay value, and the corresponding delay value.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	GPI Port	GPI output port to be configured
5	Delay	Delay value for the output port

- 2 Press [Delay Set].

## Setting the operation mode when selecting M/E reentry inputs

When you select a re-entry signal in the cross-point control block of an M/E block (upstream M/E block), the output of the upstream M/E block is read in. You can set the system so that when a GPI link is set for the cross-point selected on the A bus<sup>1)</sup> of the upstream M/E block this triggers the GPI output.

In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Link >GPI Link menu (7336.4), set [Re-Entry Enable] to On or Off.

When set to On, the GPI is executed upstream.

1) When the bus toggle is set to Off, the applicable bus depends on the position of the fader lever.

### Notes

- For re-entry, “upstream” applies to a single stage only.
- This setting is common to all GPI output ports.
- GPI output execution on the upstream M/E block is only possible on buses for which GPI Link is set to “Enable” in the GPI Link Adjust menu.
- GPI outputs are executed when reentry signals are selected under the following conditions.
  - When selected using buttons in cross-point control block
  - When selected by macro execution
  - When selected on the AUX bus remote panel

## Setting Links between M/E Banks

The operations for which you can link two M/E banks are as follows.

- Transition execution (auto transition, cut, and fader lever operation)
- Next transition selection

- Transition type selection

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Link >M/E Link menu (7336.6) and specify the link number to set.
- 2 In the <M/E Select> group, select [Master M/E] (link source).
- 3 Select the M/E or PGM/PST link source, then press [M/E Set].
- 4 In the <M/E Select> group, select [Linked M/E] (link destination).
- 5 Select the M/E or PGM/PST bank you want to be the link destination, then press [M/E Set].

**To link the banks not only for transition execution but also for the other operations**  
Press [Transition Only], turning it off.

#### To release a link

Use the same operation as in step 1 to select the link number for which you want to release the link setting, then press [Clear].

## Making a Link Setting for Key Transition

The operations for which you can link two banks are the following independent key transition operations.

- Auto transition
- Turning the key on or off

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Link >Key Transition Link menu (7336.7) and specify the link number to set.
- 2 In the <Key Select> group, select [Master Key] (link source).
- 3 Select the key you want to be the link source, then press [Key Set].
- 4 In the <Key Select> group, select [Linked Key] (link destination).
- 5 Select the key you want to be the link destination, then press [Key Set].

#### To release a link

Use the same operation as in step 1 to select the link number for which you want to release the link setting, then press [Clear].

# Interfacing with External Devices

## Making 9-Pin Port Device Interface Settings

The description in this section takes the Remote S1 port as an example. For other Remote ports, carry out the same process as required.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Device Interface >Remote Assign menu (7337.1).
- 2 Select the device interface you want to set for the Remote port from the <Remote S1> group.





**Editor A:** Assigns Editor A to the Remote S1 port.

**Editor B:** Assigns Editor B to the Remote S1 port.

**AUX:** Assigns AUX to the Remote S1 port.

The device interfaces which can be selected for Remote S2 are the same as for Remote S1.

## Making Switcher Processor GPI Input Settings

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Device Interface >GPI Input menu (7337.2).
- 2 Select the setting to apply.
- 3 In the <Trigger Type> group, select the trigger type.
  -  **(Rising Edge):** Applies the trigger on a rising edge of an input pulse.
  -  **(Falling Edge):** Applies the trigger on a falling edge of an input pulse.
  -  **(Any Edge):** Applies the trigger on a change in the polarity of the input signal.
  -  **(Level):** Carries out the specified operation when the input is low or high.

**No Operation:** Applies no trigger on an input pulse.
- 4 In the <Target> group, select the action block.
  - M/E-1 and P/P:** Sets an action for the M/E or PGM/PST bank.
  - Common/Setup:** Sets an action for something other than the above, or a setup action.
- 5 Select the action.
- 6 Press [Action Set] to confirm the action selection.

## Selectable actions for various trigger types

### • When the trigger type is other than “Level”

(The x in M/E-x is the M/E bank number, the x in DSKx is the DSK number, and the x in Keyx is the key number).

When Target is M/E-x: Cut, Auto Trans, Keyx Cut, Keyx Auto Trans, SS ? Recall, Keyx SS ? Recall, Effect ? Recall, Effect ? Recall & Run, KF Run, KF Stop, KF Rewind, KF Rev Run, No Action

When Target is P/P: Cut, Auto Trans, DSKx Cut, DSKx Auto Trans, FTB Cut, FTB Auto Trans, SS ? Recall, DSKx SS ? Recall, Effect ? Recall, Effect ? Recall & Run, KF Run, KF Stop, KF Rewind, KF Rev Run, No Action

When Target is Common/Setup: FM Src1 Field Freeze, FM Src1 Frame Freeze, FM Src2 Field Freeze, FM Src2 Frame Freeze, FM Src1 Freeze Off, FM Src2 Freeze Off, FM Src1 Clip Record, FM Src1 Clip Stop, FM Src2 Clip Record, FM Src2 Clip Stop, FM1 to FM8 Clip Cueup, FM1 to FM8 Clip Play, FM1 to FM8 Clip Stop, User1 to 8 SS ? Recall, User1 to 8 EFF ? Recall, User1 to 8 EFF ? Recall & Run, User1 to 8 KF Run, User1 to 8 KF Stop, User1 to 8 KF Rewind, User1 to 8 KF Reverse Run, No Action

### • When the trigger type is “Level”

(The x in M/E-x is the M/E number).

When Target is M/E-x or P/P: Aspect, Bkgd A Side Flags, Bkgd B Side Flags, No Action

When Target is Common/Setup: Format, Aspect, Level Enable, No Action (for information about “Level Enable,” see “Notes” in *“Making Control Panel GPI Input Settings”* (p. 230).)

## Notes

If “Format” is selected for “Action” when the format converter is used on the switcher, you can set the conversion format of the format converter for “FC Input 1-4,” “FC Input 5-8” and “FC Output 1-2.”

## Carrying out level settings

To set the low level and high level, first set the trigger type to “Level,” then use the following procedure.

- 1 In the Engineering Setup > Switcher > Device Interface > GPI Input menu (7337.2), select the action to be set, and press [H/L Set].

The H/L Set menu (7337.3) appears.

- 2 Select the setting to apply.
- 3 To apply the selection made in step 2 when the input is the GPI high level, press [H Set]. To apply the selection the input is low, press [L Set].

## Notes

- When the action is “Format,” these settings conflict with the current settings, but after making the settings, agreement is restored after a pulse change or power off/on.
- When the Action is “Bkgd A Side Flags” or “Bkgd B Side Flags,” the levels are fixed, as follows.  
High level: Off  
Low level: On

## To set the level for the format converter

- 1 Set “Action” to “Format” in step 5 of the procedure in *“Making Switcher Processor GPI Input Settings”* (p. 254).

The format converter list appears.

- 2 Select the format converter that you want to set from the list.
- 3 In the <FC Input/Output> group, press [H Set] or [L Set] to set the high level or low level, respectively.

## Making Switcher Processor GPI Output Settings

The switcher port must be assigned before using the following procedure (*“Assigning a Parallel Output Port”* (p. 232)).

- 1 In the Engineering Setup > Switcher > Device Interface menu (7337), press [GPI Output].

The GPI Output menu (7337.4) appears.

- 2 Select the setting to apply.
- 3 In the <Trigger Type> group, select the trigger type.

(Rising Edge): The trigger causes the relay contacts to be open-circuit or drives the output high, and holds this state for the specified pulse width.

(Falling Edge): The trigger causes the relay contacts to be shorted or drives the output low, and holds this state for the specified pulse width.

(Any Edge): Each time the trigger occurs, the relay contacts are alternately closed or opened, or the output is switched between high and low.

**Status:** Depending on the status, the relay contacts are closed or opened, or the output is switched between high and low.

**No Operation:** The trigger has no effect on the relay state or output level.

- 4 Select the pulse width and timing to be set.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Pulse Width	Pulse width
4	Timing	Output timing <sup>a)</sup>

a) 1: Field 1, 2: Field 2, 3: Any

When “∞” is selected as the trigger polarity, there is no Pulse Width setting. When “Status” is selected, there is no Pulse Width or Timing setting.

- 5 In the <Source> group, select the action block.

**M/E-1 and P/P:** Sets an action for the M/E or PGM/PST bank.

**Common:** Sets an action for error status.

- 6 Select the action to be set.

- 7 Press [Action Set] to confirm the action selection.

### Selectable actions for various trigger types

- **When the trigger type is other than “Status”**

(The x in M/E-x is the M/E bank number, the x in DSKx is the DSK number, and the x in Keyx is the key number).

When Source is M/E-x: Cut, Auto Trans, Keyx Cut, Keyx Auto Trans, Keyx SS ? Recall, Effect ? Recall, Effect ? Recall & Run, KF Run, KF Stop, KF Rewind, No Action

When Source is P/P: Cut, Auto Trans, DSKx Cut, DSKx Auto Trans, FTB Cut, FTB Auto Trans, DSKx SS ? Recall, Effect ? Recall, Effect ? Recall & Run, KF Run, KF Stop, KF Rewind, No Action

When Source is Common: No Action

- **When the trigger type is “Status”**

(The x in M/E-x is the M/E bank number, the x in DSKx is the DSK number, and the x in Keyx is the key number).

When Source is M/E-x: Keyx On, No Action

When Source is P/P: DSKx On, No Action

When Source is Common: Error Make, Error Break, No Action

### Test firing the trigger

Press [Test Fire].

This outputs a trigger from the selected output port. This is no output when the trigger type is “Status.”

## Enabling or Disabling AUX Bus Control

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Device Interface menu (7337), press [AUX Control].

The AUX Control menu (7337.5) appears.

- 2 Select the 9-pin port for the setting from the <Control> group.

**Remote S1:** Makes the settings for the Remote S1 port.

**Remote S2:** Makes the settings for the Remote S2 port.

- 3 Select the AUX bus.

- 4 Select whether to enable or disable AUX bus control from the <Control Mode> group.

**Enable:** Enables control of the port selected in step 2.

**Disable:** Disables control of the port selected in step 2.

**Manual:** Sets whether control of the port selected in step 2 is possible or not depend on the setting in the Misc menu.

- 5 Repeat steps 2 to 4 as required to make the settings for other ports.

## Selecting the Mode for Turning Off Keys upon Receiving the Editor Command

Selects the mode for turning off keys when an “All Stop” command is received from the editor.

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Device Interface menu (7337), press [Editor I/F].

The Editor I/F menu (7337.8) appears.

- 2 Select one of the following modes.

**All:** When an “All Stop” command is received, all keys for the selected regions are turned off.

**Specified:** When an “All Stop” command is received, among all the keys for the selected regions, only the keys specified by the editor are turned off.

### Notes

When an “All Stop” command is received in the process of a transition, the keys selected for the next transition are also turned off.

## Router Interface Settings

In this system, the interface with a router (routing switcher) uses the S-Bus protocol. It is therefore necessary to assign inputs and outputs of the switcher and so on to an S-Bus space. The settings are common to the parallel and serial tallies.

### Assigning Switcher Inputs and Outputs to S-Bus Space

- 1 In the <Device> group of the Engineering Setup >Router/Tally >Router menu (7361), select the device to which the settings apply.

**SWR1:** Settings apply to switcher 1. (The SWR2 setting is disabled.)

- 2 In the <Matrix Size> group, select the matrix size.
  - 136 × 138 (Standard):** Assigns to S-Bus space with the switcher input/output at 136 × 138 size.
  - 128 × 128:** Assigns to S-Bus space with the switcher input/output at 128 × 128 size.

- 3 Set the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Source	Source start address
2	Destination	Destination start address
3	Level	S-Bus space level

### Setting the group number of an S-Bus description name

Sets the group number for an S-Bus description name to be displayed in the source name displays for a cross-point operation.

- 1 In the <Alias Name Gp> group of the Engineering Setup >Router/Tally >Router menu (7361), press [Gp No].

- 2 Set the following parameter.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Gp No	Group number of S-Bus description name <sup>a)</sup>

a) When setting values 1 to 7 are selected and the name is not set, the description name for "0" appears. If the description name for "0" is not registered either, the Type and No values appear.

- 3 In the <Alias Name Gp> group, press [Set].

#### Notes

Transmit the description name selected here from the router.

## Tally Group Settings

With the S-Bus protocol, tally control is possible for groups 1 to 8, but in this system you can use either groups 1 to 4 or groups 5 to 8.

You can also select whether or not to transfer the tally information over the S-Bus.

### Setting the tally groups

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Router/Tally >Group Tally menu (7362).
- 2 To select a consecutive sequence of groups from each of groups 1 to 4 and groups 5 to 8, set [All Group Enable] to On.
- 3 In the <Tally Group> group, select the desired groups.
- 4 Set [SBus Tally Enable] to On to enable the tally information on the S-Bus.

# Wiring Settings

When configuring a system in which the switcher inputs and outputs are connected to a router, setting this connection configuration (referred to as “wiring”) in the S-Bus space, or inputting the information which specifies the physical wiring, is necessary.

The settings are common to the parallel and serial tallies.

## Making New Wiring Settings

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Router/Tally >Wiring >New menu (7363.1).
- 2 Set the destination.

When switcher inputs and outputs are connected to the router in a group, you can specify the start and end destination addresses.

**Destination From:** Specifies the start destination address for the wiring configuration.

**Destination To:** When the wiring configuration is multiple, specifies the end destination address. For a single wiring connection, this setting is not required.

**Destination Level:** Specifies the destination level of the wiring configuration.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Destination (From)	Destination start address
2	Destination (To)	Destination end address
3	Destination (Level)	Destination level

- 3 Set the source.

**Source From:** Specifies the source start address for the wiring configuration.

**Source Level:** Specifies the source level for the wiring configuration.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
4	Source (From)	Source start address
5	Source (Level)	Source level

- 4 Press [Execute].

## Changing Wiring Settings

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Router/Tally >Wiring >Modify menu (7363.2).
- 2 Referring to steps 2 and 3 in the preceding section “*Making New Wiring Settings*” (p. 258) change the parameters as required. In this case, however, it is not possible to specify multiple destinations in a single operation, and a single address in “Destination Address” must be specified.
- 3 Press [Execute].

## Deleting Wiring Settings

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Router/Tally >Wiring menu (7363), select the wiring.
- 2 Press [Delete].

## Sorting Wiring Settings

In the Engineering Setup >Router/Tally >Wiring menu (7363), press [Sort].

The sorting of wiring settings are executed in the following order.

Destination level order (ascending) → Destination address order (ascending) → Source level order (ascending)

# Tally Generation Settings

You specify the destination to be the reference for tally generation, and make various settings.

The settings are common to the parallel and serial tallies.

## Making New Tally Generation Settings

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Router/Tally >Tally Enable >New menu (7364.1).
- 2 Set the following parameters.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Destination Address	Destination address

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
2	Destination Level	Destination level
3	Tally Type	Tally type <sup>a)</sup>

a) 1:R1, 2:G1, 3:R2, 4:G2, 5:R3, 6:G3, 7:R4, 8:G4, 9:R5, 10:G5, 11:R6, 12:G6, 13:R7, 14:G7, 15:R8, and 16:G8. (R is an abbreviation of "Red Tally," and G of "Green Tally.")

- 3 In the <Tally Enable> group, specify the tally generation mode.

**Enable:** Always generate a tally.

**Disable:** Never generates a tally.

"Tally Input" is disabled, even if selected.

- 4 Press [Execute].

## Modifying Tally Generation

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Router/Tally >Tally Enable >Modify menu (7364.2).
- 2 With reference to steps 2 to 3 in the preceding section "*Making New Tally Generation Settings*" (p. 258) change the parameters as required.
- 3 Press [Execute].

## Deleting Tally Generation Settings

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Router/Tally >Tally Enable menu (7364), select the tally generation entry.
- 2 Press [Delete].

## Tally Copy Settings

You can copy the tally information pertaining to a particular source to a different source. The settings are common to the parallel and serial tallies.

### Making New Tally Copy Settings

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Router/Tally >Tally Copy >New menu (7365.1).
- 2 Select the copy-from source. When setting more than one tally copy, you can specify the copy-from source start and end addresses.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Copy From (From)	Copy-from source start address
2	Copy From (To)	Copy-from source end address

- 3 Specify the copy-to source address.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
3	Copy To (From)	Copy-to source (start) address
4	Copy To (To)	Copy-to source (end) address

- 4 Press [Execute].

## Modifying Tally Copy Settings

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Router/Tally >Tally Copy >Modify menu (7365.2).
- 2 Select the copy source and copy destination.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
1	Copy From	Copy-from source
2	Copy To	Copy-to source

- 3 Press [Execute].

## Deleting Tally Copy Settings

- 1 In the Engineering Setup >Router/Tally >Tally Copy menu (7365), select the tally copy settings.
- 2 Press [Delete].

## Serial Tally Settings

This sets the serial tally settings, including tally type and source address for each serial tally port.

### Setting or Changing the Serial Tally Settings

- 1 In the <Serial Tally Port> group of the Engineering Setup >Router/Tally >Serial Tally menu (7367), select the port to which the setting applies.

(The display relating to DCU is disabled, even if selected.)

- 2 In the <Tally Group> group, select the tally group.
- 3 In the <Tally Type> group, press the tally types to select. (You can select up to four.)

#### Notes

The selectable tally types depend on the settings in step 2.

- 4 In the <Tally Data Size> group, press one of the following to select the data size.

**128 Bit:** 128 bits

**256 Bit:** 256 bits

## Making the Serial Tally Source Address Settings

To set the serial tally source address for each port, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the Engineering Setup >Router/Tally >Serial Tally >Source Assign menu (7367.1).
- 2 In the<Serial Tally Port> group, select the port to which the setting applies.
- 3 Select the bit number of the port.
- 4 Select the source address.

No.	Parameter	Adjustment
2	Source Addr	Source address selection

- 5 Press [Source Address Set].

### Clearing a source address setting

#### To clear a source address setting for a particular bit

In the Source Assign menu, select the serial tally port and bit number (see steps 2 and 3 in the previous item), then press [Clear].

#### To clear all source address settings

In the Source Assign menu, select the serial tally port, then press [All Clear].

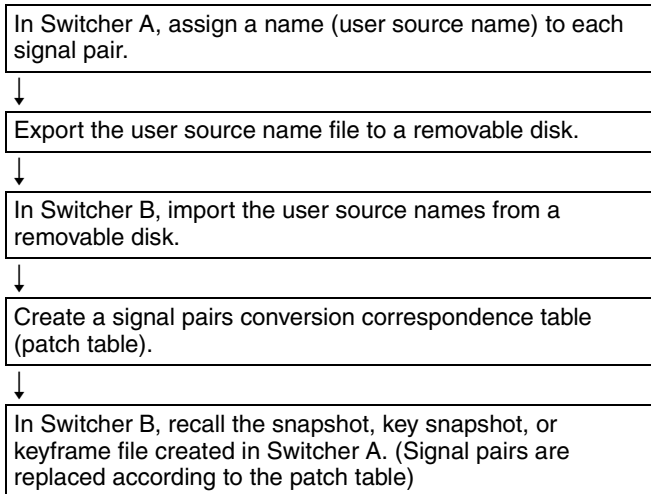
Check the message, then press [Yes].

## Source Patch

The source patch is a function whereby signal pairs recorded in applicable data are automatically converted to use key snapshots, snapshots, and keyframes in different switcher systems as is.

## Sequence of Source Patch Operations

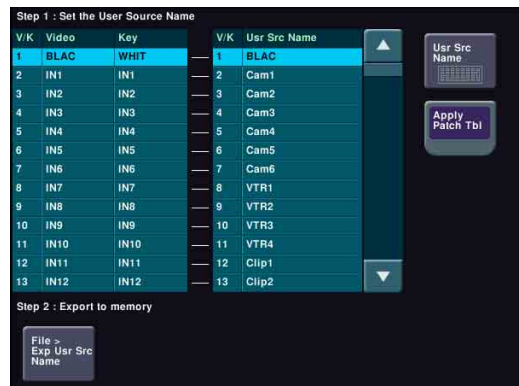
In the following description, two different switcher systems are referred to as Switcher A and Switcher B.



## Exporting a User Source Name File to a Removable Disk

In Switcher A, use the following procedure.

- 1 Open the User Setup >Source Patch >User Source Name menu (7211).



- 2 Select the target pair in the list on the left.
- 3 Press [Usr Src Name] outside the list.
- 4 Enter a name of not more than 16 characters, and press [Enter].
- 5 Repeat steps 2 to 4, to set all of the necessary names.
- 6 Press [File >Exp Usr Src Name].  
The Exp Usr Src Name menu (7116) appears.
- 7 Select the removable disk as the destination, and press [→Export].

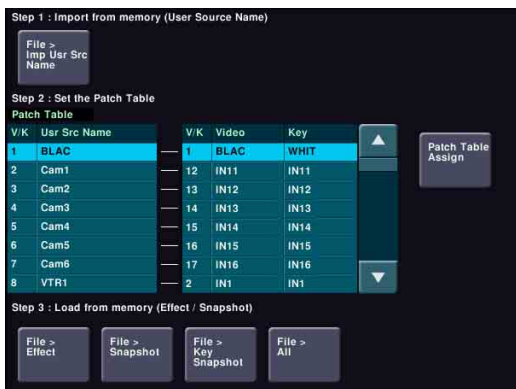
## To apply the signal pairs in the patch table to this menu

Press [Apply Patch Tbl].

## Creating a Patch Table (Conversion Table)

Load the removable disk prepared in Switcher A to Switcher B, and use the following procedure in Switcher B.

- 1 Open the User Setup >Source Patch >Patch Table menu (7212).



- 2 Press [File >Imp Usr Src Name].

The Imp Usr Src Name menu (7117) appears.

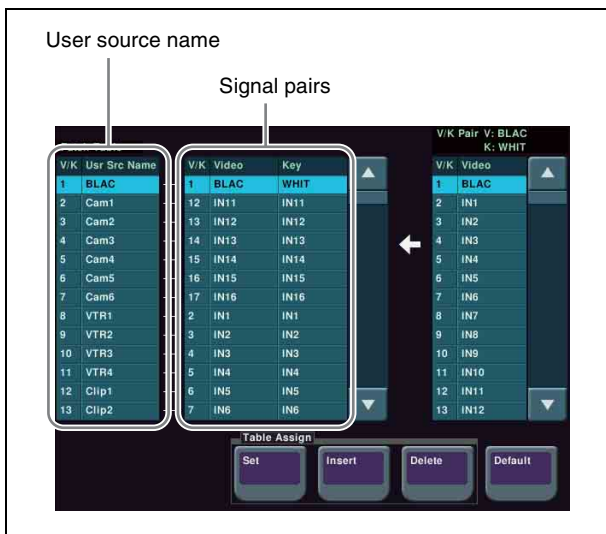
- 3 Select the removable disk as the import source, and press [→Import].

The user source name file is loaded from the removable disk.

- 4 Press [Patch Table Assign].

The Patch Table Assign menu (7212.1) appears.

The user source names in Switcher A imported by step 3 are listed on the left and the pairs of videos and keys set in Switcher B are listed on the right.



- 5 Select the target user source name in the list on the left.
- 6 Select the signal pair you want to assign from the list on the right.
- 7 In the <Table Assign> group, press [Set].

The video/key signal name selected in the list on the right is reflected in the list on the left.

- 8 Repeat steps 5 to 7 to create a patch table.

It is also possible to execute the following editing operations using the buttons in the <Table Assign> group.

- Press [Insert] to insert a signal name above the signal name selected in the list on the left.
- Press [Delete] to delete the signal name selected in the list on the left.

## Replacing Signal Pairs Using the Patch Table

The source patch is effective for key snapshots, snapshots, and keyframes.

The following describes the operation for a snapshot as an example.

Copy a snapshot file created in switcher A to a removable disk in advance.

- 1 In the User Setup >Source Patch >Patch Table menu (7212), press [File >Snapshot].

The File >Snapshot >Snapshot menu (7131) appears.



- 2 In the list on the right, select the file you want to recall to the register.
- 3 Press [Src Patch Link] to turn it on.
- 4 Press [→Load].

The snapshot, with signal pairs replaced according to the patch table, is recalled to Switcher B.

## Checking the Communications Status

In the Diagnosis menu, you can check the LAN communications status within the system.

### Communications Status Display

Open the Diagnosis >System Info >LAN Status menu (7341).

The following communications status screen appears.



Device	Target	Status
UI	PNL1	Connected
	SWR1	Connected
PNL1	UI	Connected
	SWR1	Connected
SWR1	PNL1	Connected

Devices constituting the system only appear if they are connected.

On the screen, devices that send information are listed under Device, and those that receive information are listed under Target.

The following information appears in the Status column.

- **Connected:** Ready for communication from Device to Target.
- **Not Connected:** Not Ready for communication from Device to Target.

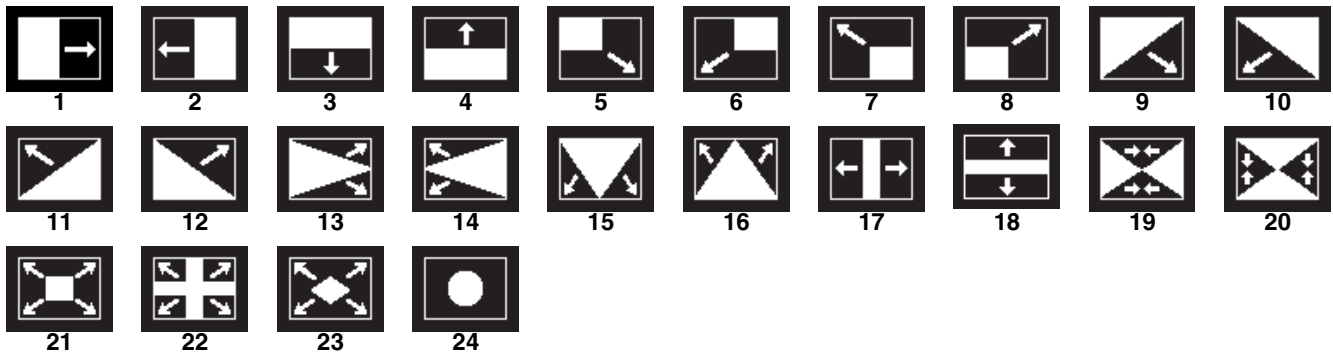
# Appendix

## Wipe Pattern List

### Wipe Pattern List

#### Interpreting the illustrations for patterns

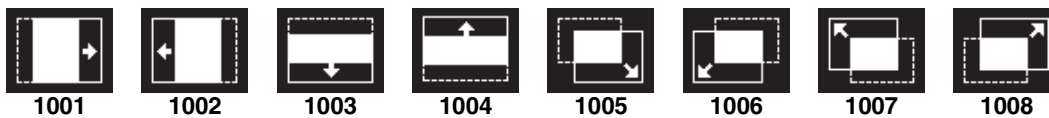
The black part of the pattern represents the old video, and the white part the new video, with the wipe taking place in the direction of the arrow.



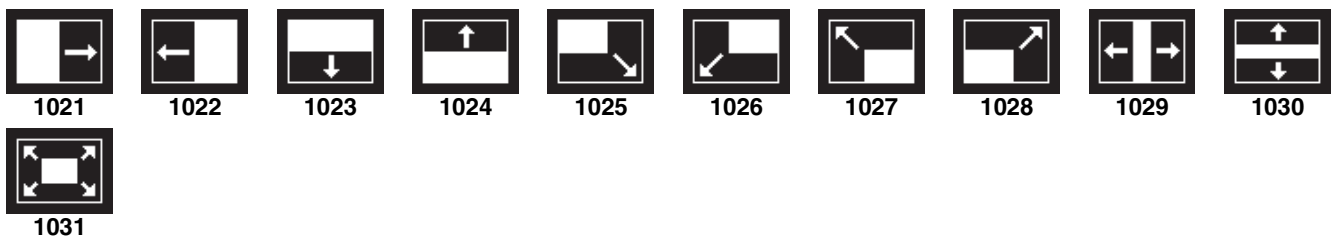
### DME Wipe Pattern List

#### DME wipe patterns available in one-channel mode

##### Slide

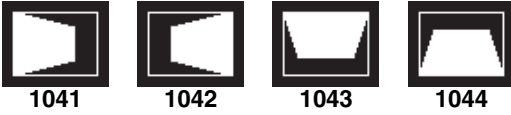


##### Squeeze



Appendix

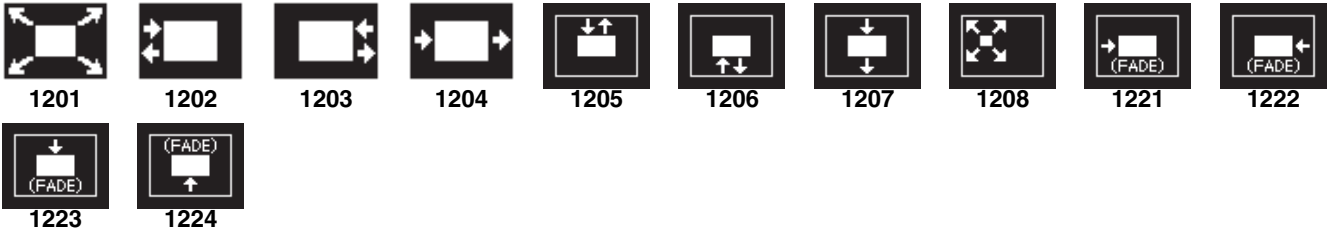
## Door



## Flip tumble



## Frame in-out



## Picture-in-picture



## Mosaic



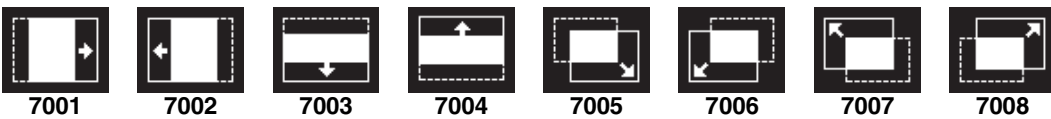
## Defocus



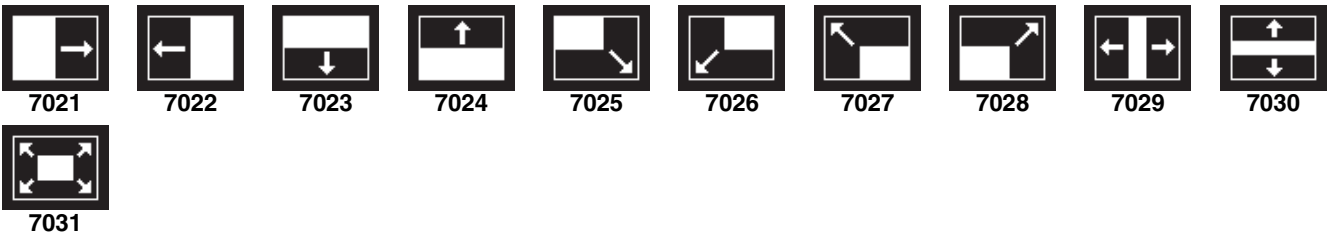
---

## Resizer DME Wipe Pattern List

### Slide



### Squeeze



## Frame in-out



7201



7202



7203



7204



7205



7206



7207



7208



7221



7222



7223



7224

---

# Menu Tree

This section shows the structure of each menu.  
Menus with “Yes” in the Default Recall column can be reset to their initial values by pressing the [Default Recall] button.

### Notes

Some menu display items and functions not supported by the MVS-3000 system.

For details, [☞ “Menus of Disabled Operations and Settings” \(p. 281\)](#)



# M/E-1 Menu

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
VF1: Key1 VF2: Key2 <sup>a)</sup> VF3: Key3 <sup>a)</sup> VF4: Key4 <sup>a)</sup>	HF1: Type (1111)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	Chroma Adjust (1111.1)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	Matte Adjust (1111.2) <sup>b)</sup>	Yes
	Pattern Select (1116.2)	Yes
	Wipe Adjust (1116.1)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	Pattern Select (1116.2) <sup>c)</sup>	Yes
	Signal Select (1111.3) <sup>b) c)</sup>	Yes
	Key Priority (1173)	No
	HF2: Edge (1112) <sup>c)</sup>	Yes
	Matte Adjust (1112.1)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	Mix Ptn Select (1112.2)	Yes
	Zabton Adjust (1112.3)	Yes
	Pattern Select (1116.2)	Yes
	Mix Ptn Select (1112.2)	Yes
	Main Mask (1113)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	Matte Adjust (1112.1)	Yes
	Wipe Adjust (1116.1)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	Key Delay Mode (1112.4)	Yes
	HF3: Main Mask (1113)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	Mask Ptn Select (1113.1)	Yes
	HF5: Processed Key (1115)	Yes
	Monitor (1115.1)	Yes
	Border/Crop (1115.2) <sup>d)</sup>	Yes
	Resizer Process (1115.3) <sup>d)</sup>	Yes
	Enhanced Effect (1115.4) <sup>d)</sup>	Yes
	HF6: Transition (1116)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	Wipe Adjust (1116.1)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
Pattern Select (1116.2)	Yes	
DME Wipe Adjust (1116.3)	Yes	
1ch Pattern Select (1116.4)	Yes	
2ch Pattern Select (1116.5)	Yes	
Remove From Begin (1116.7)	Yes	
VF5: Wipe	HF1: Main Pattern (1151)	Yes
	HF4: Edge/Direction (1154)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	Matte Adjust (1154.1) <sup>e)</sup>	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	Mix Ptn Select (1154.2)	Yes
	HF5: Main Modify (1155)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	HF7: Wipe Snapshot (1157)	No
	DME Wipe Snapshot (1167)	No

Appendix

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
VF6: DME Wipe	HF1: 1ch (1161)	Yes
	HF2: 2ch (1162)	Yes
	HF4: Edge/Direction (1164)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	HF5: Modify (1165)	Yes
	Remove From Begin (1165.1)	Yes
	HF7: DME Wipe Snapshot (1167)	No
	Wipe Snapshot (1157)	No
VF7: Misc	HF1: Transition (1171)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	Clip Transition (1176)	Yes
	Clip (1176.1)	Yes
	Transition (1171)	Yes
	Snapshot (1177)	No
	HF3: Key Priority (1173)	No
	HF4: Next Key Priority (1174)	No
	HF6: Clip Transition (1176)	Yes
	Clip (1176.1)	Yes
	Transition (1171)	Yes
	Snapshot (1177)	No
	HF7: Snapshot (1177)	No

a) For Key2, Key3, and Key4, the menu page number changes as follows.

Key2: 112X, Key3: 113X, Key4: 114X

b) The Matte Adjust menu (1111.2) is displayed if [Matte] is selected in the <Key Fill> group, and the Signal Select menu (1111.3) is displayed if [Key Bus] is selected.

c) The Pattern Select menu (1116.2) is displayed if [Key Wipe Pattern] is selected in the <Key Type> group, and the Signal Select menu (1111.3) is displayed if a setting other than [Key Wipe Pattern] is selected.

d) Not displayed for Key3 and Key4.

e) For Key3 and Key4, the menu name changes to "Edge Pattern Adjust >Pattern Select."

f) Some parameters are not reset to default values.

# PGM/PST Menu

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
VF1: DSK1 VF2: DSK2 <sup>a)</sup> VF3: DSK3 <sup>a)</sup> VF4: DSK4 <sup>a)</sup>	HF1: Type (1411)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	Chroma Adjust (1411.1)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	Matte Adjust (1411.2) <sup>b)</sup>	Yes
	Pattern Select (1416.2)	Yes
	Wipe Adjust (1416.1)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	Pattern Select (1416.2) <sup>c)</sup>	Yes
	Signal Select (1411.3) <sup>b) c)</sup>	Yes
	Key Priority (1473)	No
	HF2: Edge (1412) <sup>c)</sup>	Yes
	Matte Adjust (1412.1)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	Mix Ptn Select (1412.2)	Yes
	Zabton Adjust (1412.3)	Yes
	Pattern Select (1416.2)	Yes
	Mix Ptn Select (1412.2)	Yes
	Main Mask (1413)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	Matte Adjust (1412.1)	Yes
	Wipe Adjust (1416.1)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	Key Delay Mode (1412.4)	Yes
	HF3: Main Mask (1413)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	Mask Ptn Select (1413.1)	Yes
	HF5: Processed Key (1415)	Yes
	Monitor (1415.1)	Yes
	Border/Crop (1415.2) <sup>d)</sup>	Yes
	Resizer Process (1415.3) <sup>d)</sup>	Yes
	Enhanced Effect (1415.4) <sup>d)</sup>	Yes
	HF6: Transition (1416)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	Wipe Adjust (1416.1)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
Pattern Select (1416.2)	Yes	
DME Wipe Adjust (1416.3)	Yes	
1ch Pattern Select (1416.4)	Yes	
2ch Pattern Select (1416.5)	Yes	
Remove From Begin (1416.7)	Yes	
VF5: Wipe	HF1: Main Pattern (1451)	Yes
	HF4: Edge/Direction (1454)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	Matte Adjust (1454.1) <sup>e)</sup>	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	Mix Ptn Select (1454.2)	Yes
	HF5: Main Modify (1455)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	HF7: Wipe Snapshot (1457)	No
	DME Wipe Snapshot (1467)	No

Appendix

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
VF6: DME Wipe	HF1: 1ch (1461)	Yes
	HF2: 2ch (1462)	Yes
	HF4: Edge/Direction (1464)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	HF5: Modify (1465)	Yes
	Remove From Begin (1465.1)	Yes
	HF7: DME Wipe Snapshot (1467)	No
VF7: Misc	Wipe Snapshot (1457)	No
	HF1: Transition (1471)	Yes <sup>f)</sup>
	Clip Transition (1476)	Yes
	Clip (1476.1)	Yes
	Transition (1471)	Yes
	Snapshot (1477)	No
	HF3: Key Priority (1473)	No
	HF4: Next Key Priority (1474)	No
	HF6: Clip Transition (1476)	Yes
	Clip (1476.1)	Yes
	Transition (1471)	Yes
	Snapshot (1477)	No
	HF7: Snapshot (1477)	No

- a) For DSK2, DSK3, and DSK4, the menu page number changes as follows.  
DSK2: 142X, DSK3: 143X, DSK4: 144X
- b) The Matte Adjust menu (1411.2) is displayed if [Matte] is selected in the <Key Fill> group, and the Signal Select menu (1411.3) is displayed if [Key Bus] is selected.
- c) The Pattern Select menu (1416.2) is displayed if [Key Wipe Pattern] is selected in the <Key Type> group, and the Signal Select menu (1411.3) is displayed if a setting other than [Key Wipe Pattern] is selected.
- d) Not displayed for DSK3 and DSK4.
- e) For DSK3 and DSK4, the menu name changes to “Edge Pattern Adjust >Pattern Select.”
- f) Some parameters are not reset to default values.

## Color Bkgd Menu

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
VF1: Color Bkgd1 (2210)	Mix Ptn Select (2210.1)	Yes <sup>a)</sup>
		Yes
VF2: Color Bkgd2 (2220)	Mix Ptn Select (2220.1)	Yes <sup>a)</sup>
		Yes

- a) Some parameters are not reset to default values.

## AUX Menu

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
VF1: Aux Bus (2311)		Yes

## Frame Memory Menu

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
VF1: Still	HF1: Recall (2511)	No
	HF2: Freeze/Store (2512)	Yes
	HF4: Animation Record (2514)	No
	HF5: Create Key Frame (2515)	No
VF2: Clip	HF1: Recall (2521)	No
	HF2: Play (2522)	No
	HF3: Record (2523)	No
	HF5: Ancillary Enable (2525)	No
VF3: Reposition/Lock	HF1: Reposition (2531)	Yes
	HF2: Lock (2532)	No
VF4: File	HF1: Pair Recombination (2541)	No
	Recall (2511)	No
	Recall (2521)	No
	HF2: Auto Extraction (2542)	No
	HF4: Move (2544)	No
	HF5: Delete (2545)	No
	HF6: Rename (2546)	No
VF5: Folder (2551)		No
VF6: External Device	HF1: Ext HDD Format (2561)	No
	HF2: Ext HDD Backup/Restore (2562)	No
	HF4: Backup to DDR/VTR (2564)	No
	File Name Data (7153)	No
	HF5: Restore from DDR/VTR (2565)	No
	File Name Data (7153)	No

## Copy/Swap Menu

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
VF1: Copy/Swap	HF1: M/E (3111)	No
	HF2: Key (3112)	No
	HF3: Wipe (3113)	No
	HF4: DME Wipe (3114)	No
	HF5: Matte (3115)	No
	HF6: Color (3116)	No
	HF7: DME (3117)	No
VF2: Copy	HF1: Format Converter (3121)	No

## Misc Menu

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
VF1: Enable	HF1: Port Enable (3211)	No
	HF3: Side Flags (3213)	No
	Side Flags (7331.7)	No
	Side Flags Button Assign (7322.10)	No
VF2: Safe Title (3221)		No
VF3: Transition	HF1: Key/ME/FTB (3231)	No

## Router Menu

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
VF1: Router Control	HF1: Router Control (5111)	No
	Change Xpt (5111.1)	No

## Device Menu

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
VF1: GPI Timeline	HF1: GPI Timeline (5311)	No
	Rewind Action (5311.1)	No
VF2: P-Bus Timeline	HF1: P-Bus Timeline (5321)	No
	Rewind Action (5321.1)	No
VF3: DDR/VTR	HF1: Cueup & Play (5331)	No
	HF2: Timeline (5332)	No
	Rewind Action (5332.1)	No
	HF3: File List (5333)	No

## Macro Menu

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
VF1: Register	HF2: Lock (5412)	No
	On Line Edit (7142.2)	No
	Off Line Edit (7142.3)	No
	HF3: Copy (5413)	No
	HF6: Delete (5416)	No
	On Line Edit (7142.2)	No
	Off Line Edit (7142.3)	No
	HF7: Rename (5417)	No
	On Line Edit (7142.2)	No
	Off Line Edit (7142.3)	No
VF2: Attachment (5421)		No

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
VF3: Menu Macro Register	HF1: Recall & Run (5431)	No
	Menu Macro Edit (7144.2)	No
	HF2: Lock (5432)	No
	Menu Macro Edit (7144.2)	No
	HF3: Copy (5433)	No
	HF6: Delete (5436)	No
	Menu Macro Edit (7144.2)	No
VF4: Timeline	HF7: Rename (5437)	No
	Menu Macro Edit (7144.2)	No
	HF1: Timeline (5441)	No
	Rewind Action (5441.1)	No

## Key Frame Menu

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
	HF1: Time Line (6111)	No
	HF3: Path (6113)	Yes
	M/E-1 (6113.1)	Yes
	P/P (6113.4)	Yes
	User1 (6113.5)	Yes
	User2 (6113.6)	Yes
	User3 (6113.7)	Yes
	User4 (6113.8)	Yes
	User5 (6113.9)	Yes
	User6 (6113.10)	Yes
	User7 (6113.11)	Yes
	User8 (6113.12)	Yes
	DME 3D Trans Local (6113.13)	Yes
	DME 3D Trans Global (6113.14)	Yes
	DME Effect (6113.15)	Yes
	DME Global Effect (6113.16)	Yes
	HF4: DME User PGM (6114)	No
	HF5: Timeline Assign (6115)	No
	HF7: Region Select (6117)	No
Region Button Assign (7321.7)	No	

## Effect Menu

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
Status (6200)		No

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
VF1: Master Timeline	HF1: Store (6211)	No
	Edit (6211.1)	No
	HF2: Lock (6212)	No
	HF3: Copy (6213)	No
	HF4: Move (6214)	No
	HF5: Swap (6215)	No
	HF6: Delete (6216)	No
	HF7: Rename (6217)	No
VF2: Effect 1-99	HF1: Attribute (6221)	No
	HF2: Lock (6222)	No
	HF3: Copy/Merge (6223)	No
	HF4: Move (6224)	No
	HF5: Swap (6225)	No
	HF6: Delete (6226)	No
	HF7: Rename (6227)	No
VF3: User DME Wipe Effect 101-199	HF1: Attribute (6231)	No
	HF2: Lock (6232)	No
	HF3: Copy/Merge (6233)	No
	HF4: Move (6234)	No
	HF5: Swap (6235)	No
	HF6: Delete (6236)	No
	HF7: Rename (6237)	No
VF4: User DME Wipe Effect 201-299	HF1: Attribute (6241)	No
	HF2: Lock (6242)	No
	HF3: Copy/Merge (6243)	No
	HF4: Move (6244)	No
	HF5: Swap (6245)	No
	HF6: Delete (6246)	No
	HF7: Rename (6247)	No
VF6: DEV/PBUS Effect 1-250	HF2: Lock (6262)	No
	HF3: Copy/Merge (6263)	No
	HF4: Move (6264)	No
	HF5: Swap (6265)	No
	HF6: Delete (6266)	No
	HF7: Rename (6267)	No

## Snapshot Menu

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
Status (6300)		No

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
VF1: Master Snapshot	HF1: Store (6311)	No
	Edit (6311.1)	No
	HF2: Lock (6312)	No
	HF3: Copy (6313)	No
	HF4: Move (6314)	No
	HF5: Swap (6315)	No
	HF6: Delete (6316)	No
	HF7: Rename (6317)	No
VF2: Snapshot	HF1: Attribute (6321)	No
	Xpt Hold (6321.1)	No
	Clip Event (6321.2)	No
	Play (2522)	No
	HF2: Lock (6322)	No
	HF3: Copy (6323)	No
	HF4: Move (6324)	No
	HF5: Swap (6325)	No
	HF6: Delete (6326)	No
HF7: Rename (6327)	No	
VF3: Wipe Snapshot	HF2: Lock (6332)	No
	HF3: Copy (6333)	No
	HF4: Move (6334)	No
	HF5: Swap (6335)	No
	HF6: Delete (6336)	No
	HF7: Rename (6337)	No
VF4: DME Snapshot	HF2: Lock (6342)	No
	HF3: Copy (6343)	No
	HF4: Move (6344)	No
	HF5: Swap (6345)	No
	HF6: Delete (6346)	No
	HF7: Rename (6347)	No
VF5: Key Snapshot	HF1: Attribute (6351)	No
	HF2: Lock (6352)	No
	HF3: Copy (6353)	No
	HF4: Move (6354)	No
	HF5: Swap (6355)	No
	HF6: Delete (6356)	No
	HF7: Rename (6357)	No

# Shotbox Menu

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
VF1: Register	HF1: Store/Recall (6411)	No
	Edit (6411.1)	No
	HF2: Lock (6412)	No
	HF3: Copy (6413)	No
	HF4: Move (6414)	No
	HF5: Swap (6415)	No
	HF6: Delete (6416)	No
	HF7: Rename (6417)	No

# File Menu

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
VF1: Setup, Init, KMem	HF1: Setup (7111)	No
	File Edit (7111.1)	No
	HF2: Initial Status (7112)	No
	File Edit (7112.1)	No
	HF3: Key Memory (7113)	No
	File Edit (7113.1)	No
	HF5: User Setup (7115)	No
	File Edit (7115.1)	No
VF2: Effect	HF6: Export User Source Name (7116)	No
	File Edit (7116.1)	No
	HF7: Import User Source Name (7117)	No
	File Edit (7117.1)	No
	HF1: Effect 1-99 (7121)	No
	File Edit (7121.1)	No
	HF2: User DME Wipe Effect 101-199 (7122)	No
	File Edit (7122.1)	No
VF3: Snapshot	HF3: User DME Wipe Effect 201-299 (7123)	No
	File Edit (7123.1)	No
	HF5: DEV/PBUS Effect 1-250 (7125)	No
	File Edit (7125.1)	No
	HF1: Snapshot (7131)	No
	File Edit (7131.1)	No
	HF2: Wipe Snapshot (7132)	No
	File Edit (7132.1)	No
	HF3: DME Snapshot (7133)	No
	File Edit (7133.1)	No
	HF4: Key Snapshot (7134)	No
	File Edit (7134.1)	No

Appendix

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
VF4: Shotbox, Macro	HF1: Shotbox (7141)	No
	File Edit (7141.1)	No
	HF2: Macro (7142)	No
	File Edit (7142.1)	No
	On Line Edit (7142.2)	No
	Off Line Edit (7142.3)	No
	HF3: Macro Attachment (7143)	No
	File Edit (7143.1)	No
	HF4: Menu Macro (7144)	No
	File Edit (7144.1)	No
Menu Macro Edit (7144.2)	No	
VF5: Frame Mem	HF1: Frame Memory (7151)	No
	File Edit (7151.1)	No
	HF2: Frame Memory Folder (7152)	No
	HF3: File Name Data (7153)	No
File Edit (7153.1)	No	
VF6: All, External File	HF1: All (7161)	No
	HF2: Import/Export (7162)	No
VF7: Configure	HF1: Directory (7171)	No
	HF2: Unit ID Copy (7172)	No
	HF3: Group ID Copy (7173)	No

## User Setup Menu

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
VF1: Source Patch	HF1: User Source Name (7211)	No
	Exp Usr Src Name (7116)	No
	File Edit (7116.1)	No
	HF2: Patch Table (7212)	No
	Patch Table Assign (7212.1)	No
	Imp Usr Src Name (7117)	No
	File Edit (7117.1)	No
	Effect 1-99 (7121)	No
	File Edit (7121.1)	No
	Snapshot (7131)	No
	File Edit (7131.1)	No
	Key Snapshot (7134)	No
	File Edit (7134.1)	No
	All (7161)	No

# Engineering Setup Menu

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
VF1: System	HF1: Network Config (7311)	No
	HF3: Format (7313)	No
	Aspect (7313.1)	No
	Switcher Aspect (7313.2)	No
	DME Aspect (7313.3)	No
	Format Converter (7313.4)	No
	HF4: Start Up (7314)	No
	HF5: Initialize (7315)	No
	HF6: Install/Unit Config (7316)	No
	Detail Information (7316.1)	No
	License (7316.6)	No
	License Management (7316.7)	No
	Unit Config (7316.8)	No
	Texture Package (7316.9)	No
	Install (7316.10)	No
	HF7: Maintenance (7317)	No
	Setup Operation Lock (7317.1)	No
File Load Lock (7317.2)	No	
VF2: Panel	HF1: Config (7321)	No
	Key Trans Link (7321.2)	No
	External Bus Link (7321.3)	No
	Link Matrix Adjust (7321.4)	No
	Link Table Adjust (7321.5)	No
	Link Bus Adjust (7321.6)	No
	Region Button Assign (7321.7)	No
	Transition Module (7321.9)	No
	Trackball Module (7321.17)	No
	Util Bus/Key Inhibit (7321.18)	No
	Menu Panel (7321.19)	No
	Multi Function Module (7321.20)	No
	Mode Sel Assign (7321.21)	No
	Eff Edit Assign (7321.22)	No
	Macro Edit Assign (7321.23)	No
TB Module DME Ch Inhibit (7321.27)	No	
Trackball User Setting (7321.31)	No	

Appendix

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
VF2: Panel	HF2: Xpt Assign (7322)	No
	Table Button Assign (7322.1)	No
	Main, V/K Pair Assign (7322.5)	No
	Src Name/Src Color (7322.6)	No
	Main, V/K Pair Assign (7322.5)	No
	Src Name/Src Color (7322.6)	No
	User Color Select (7322.12)	No
	Table Copy (7322.8)	No
	Name Export (7322.9)	No
	Side Flags Button Assign (7322.10)	No
	Mixer Xpt Assign (7322.11)	No
	Main, V/K Pair Assign (7322.5)	No
	HF3: Router Remote (7323)	No
	RTR Mode Setting (7323.1)	No
	Table Assign (7323.3)	No
	Level Button Assign (7323.4)	No
	HF4: Prefs/Utility (7324)	No
	Xpt Module Src/Reg Btn Assign (7324.2)	No
	HF5: Device Interface (7325)	No
	GPI Input (7325.1)	No
	H/L Set (7325.2)	No
	GPI Output (7325.3)	No
	Device Assign (7325.4)	No
	Serial Port Assign (7325.5)	No
	P-Bus Setting (7325.6) <sup>a)</sup>	No
	VTR Setting (7325.7) <sup>a)</sup>	No
	DDR VDCP Setting (7325.9) <sup>a)</sup>	No
	Extend VTR Setting (7325.10) <sup>a)</sup>	No
	Simple VDCP Setting (7325.11) <sup>a)</sup>	No
	Device Assign (7325.4)	No
	Tally/GPI Output Config (7325.12)	No
	HF6: Operation (7326)	No
	Effect Mode (7326.2)	No
	Flexi Pad Mode (7326.3)	No
	Custom Button (7326.4)	No
	Next Trans All (7326.11)	No
	Sensitivity (7326.5)	No
	Macro (7326.6)	No
	Button Tally (7326.9)	No
	Key/AUX/Function Assign (7326.13)	No
	HF7: Maintenance (7327)	No

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
VF3: Switcher	HF1: Config (7331)	No
	M/E Output Assign (7331.1)	No
	PGM Config (7331.2)	No
	K-PVW Config (7331.3)	No
	User 1-8 Config (7331.4)	No
	DME Config (7331.6)	No
	Side Flags (7331.7)	No
	Side Flags (3213)	No
	Side Flags Button Assign (7322.10)	No
	Switching Timing (7331.8)	No
	HF2: Input (7332)	No
	CCR (7332.1)	No
	FC Adjust (7332.2)	No
	Format Converter (3121)	No
	FC Input Select (7332.3)	No
	Xpt Assign (7322)	No
	HF3: Output (7333)	No
	Output Assign (7333.1)	No
	Video Clip (7333.2)	No
	V Blank/Through (7333.3)	No
	Safe Title (7333.4)	No
	4:3 Crop (7333.5)	No
	FC Adjust (7333.6)	No
	Format Converter (3121)	No
	Multi Viewer (7333.9)	No
	Source/Output Assign (7333.10)	No
	FC Output Select (7333.11)	No
	HF4: Transition (7334)	No
	Preset Color Mix (7334.1)	No
	Transition Curve (7334.2)	No
	HF5: Key/Wipe/FM/CCR (7335)	No
	Show Key (7335.1)	No
	Key Auto Drop (7335.2)	No
CCR (7335.3)	No	
HF6: Link (7336)	No	
Internal Bus Link (7336.1)	No	
Link Bus Select (7336.2)	No	
Link Table Select (7336.3)	No	
GPI Link (7336.4)	No	
GPI Link Adjust (7336.5)	No	
M/E Link (7336.6)	No	
Key Transition Link (7336.7)	No	

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
VF3: Switcher	HF7: Device Interface (7337)	No
	Remote Assign (7337.1)	No
	GPI Input (7337.2)	No
	H/L Set (7337.3)	No
	GPI Output (7337.4)	No
	AUX Control (7337.5)	No
	DME SDI I/F (7337.7)	No
	Editor I/F (7337.8)	No
VF6: Router/Tally	HF1: Router (7361)	No
	External Box Assign (7361.1)	No
	HF2: Group Tally (7362)	No
	HF3: Wiring (7363)	No
	New (7363.1)	No
	Modify (7363.2)	No
	HF4: Tally Enable (7364)	No
	New (7364.1)	No
	Modify (7364.2)	No
	HF5: Tally Copy (7365)	No
	New (7365.1)	No
	Modify (7365.2)	No
	HF6: Parallel Tally (7366)	No
	Set (7366.1)	No
HF7: Serial Tally (7367)	No	
Source Assign (7367.1)	No	

## Diagnostic Menu

Menu (Page No.)		Default Recall
VF1: Error Info	HF1: Error Status (7411)	No
	HF2: Error Log (7412)	No
VF3: System Info	HF1: LAN Status (7431)	No

## Menus of Disabled Operations and Settings

The following menus display functions and items that are not supported by the MVS-3000 system. These are disabled, even if the item is selected or a value specified, and do not affect device operation.

Menu		Disabled operation/setting
Number	Path	
1115	M/E-1 >Key1 >Processed Key <sup>a)</sup>	[DME1], [DME2], [Override] settings
1115.1	M/E-1 >Key1 >Processed Key >Monitor <sup>a)</sup>	All menu operations

Menu		Disabled operation/setting
Number	Path	
1116.4	M/E-1 >Key1 >Transition >DME Wipe Adjust >1ch Pattern Select <sup>a)</sup>	Selection of unsupported patterns <sup>b)</sup>
1116.5	M/E-1 >Key1 >Transition >DME Wipe Adjust >2ch Pattern Select <sup>a)</sup>	All menu operations
1161	M/E-1 >DME Wipe >1ch	Selection of unsupported patterns <sup>c)</sup>
1162	M/E-1 >DME Wipe >2ch	All menu operations
1177	M/E-1 >Misc >Snapshot	[DME 2nd Video] selection
1415	PGM/PST >DSK1 >Processed Key <sup>a)</sup>	[DME1], [DME2], [Override] settings
1415.1	PGM/PST >DSK1 >Processed Key >Monitor <sup>a)</sup>	All menu operations
1416.4	PGM/PST >DSK1 >Transition >DME Wipe Adjust >1ch Pattern Select <sup>a)</sup>	Selection of unsupported patterns <sup>b)</sup>
1416.5	PGM/PST >DSK1 >Transition >DME Wipe Adjust >2ch Pattern Select <sup>a)</sup>	All menu operations
1461	PGM/PST >DME Wipe >1ch	Selection of unsupported patterns <sup>c)</sup>
1462	PGM/PST >DME Wipe >2ch	All menu operations
1477	PGM/PST >Misc >Snapshot	[DME 2nd Video] selection
3111	Copy/Swap >Copy/Swap >M/E	M/E-2 selection
3112	Copy/Swap >Copy/Swap >Key	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• M/E-2 Key1 to 8 selection</li> <li>• P/P DSK5 to 8 selection</li> </ul>
3113	Copy/Swap >Copy/Swap >Wipe	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Selection of items related to M/E-2</li> <li>• P/P DSK5 to 8 selection</li> </ul>
3114	Copy/Swap >Copy/Swap >DME Wipe	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Selection of items related to M/E-2</li> <li>• P/P DSK5 to 8 selection</li> </ul>
3115	Copy/Swap >Copy/Swap >Matte	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Selection of items related to M/E-2</li> <li>• Selection of items related to P/P DSK5 to 8</li> </ul>
3116	Copy/Swap >Copy/Swap >Color	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Selection of items related to M/E-2</li> <li>• Selection of items related to P/P DSK5 to 8</li> <li>• Selection of items related to DME</li> </ul>
3117	Copy/Swap >Copy/Swap >DME	All menu operations
3211	Misc >Enable >Port Enable	[DME Override], [On Air Protect] settings
3213	Misc >Enable >Side Flags	M/E-2 settings
3221	Misc >Safe Title	Output 13 to 32 settings
6113.1	Key Frame >Path >M/E-1	Key5 to 8 settings
6113.2	Key Frame >Path >M/E-2	All menu operations
6113.4	Key Frame >Path >P/P	DSK5 to 8 settings
6113.13	Key Frame >Path >DME 3D Trans Local	All menu operations
6113.14	Key Frame >Path >DME 3D Trans Global	All menu operations
6113.15	Key Frame >Path >DME Effect	All menu operations
6113.16	Key Frame >Path >DME Global Effect	All menu operations
6114	Key Frame >DME User PGM	All menu operations
6211.1	Effect >Master Timeline >Store >Edit	M/E-2, DME region settings
6221 to 6227	Effect >Effect 1-99	M/E-2, DME region selection and settings
6231 to 6237	Effect >User DME Wipe Effect 101-199	All menu operations

Menu		Disabled operation/setting
Number	Path	
6241 to 6247	Effect >User DME Wipe Effect 201-299	All menu operations
6311.1	Snapshot >Master Snapshot >Store >Edit	M/E-2, DME region settings
6321 to 6327	Snapshot >Snapshot	M/E-2, DME region selection and settings
6332 to 6337	Snapshot >Wipe Snapshot	M/E-2 region selection and settings
6342 to 6347	Snapshot >DME Snapshot	M/E-2 region selection and settings
6351 to 6357	Snapshot >Key Snapshot	M/E-1 Key5 to 8, M/E-2 Key1 to 8, P/P Key5 to 8 selection and settings
6411.1	Shotbox >Register >Store/Recall >Edit	M/E-2, DME region settings
7121	File >Effect >Effect 1-99	M/E-2, DME region selection
7121.1	File >Effect >Effect 1-99 >File Edit	M/E-2, DME region selection
7122	File >Effect >User DME Wipe Effect 101-199	All menu operations
7122.1	File >Effect >User DME Wipe Effect 101-199 >File Edit	All menu operations
7123	File >Effect >User DME Wipe Effect 201-299	All menu operations
7123.1	File >Effect >User DME Wipe Effect 201-299 >File Edit	All menu operations
7131	File >Snapshot >Snapshot	M/E-2, DME region selection
7131.1	File >Snapshot >Snapshot >File Edit	M/E-2, DME region selection
7132	File >Snapshot >Wipe Snapshot	M/E-2 region selection
7132.1	File >Snapshot >Wipe Snapshot >File Edit	M/E-2 region selection
7133	File >Snapshot >DME Snapshot	M/E-2 region selection
7133.1	File >Snapshot >DME Snapshot >File Edit	M/E-2 region selection
7134	File >Snapshot >Key Snapshot	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• M/E-2 region selection</li> <li>• P/P Key5 to 8 selection</li> </ul>
7134.1	File >Snapshot >Key Snapshot >File Edit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• M/E-2 region selection</li> <li>• P/P Key5 to 8 selection</li> </ul>
7313.2	Engineering Setup >System >Format >Aspect >Switcher Aspect	M/E-2 settings
7313.3	Engineering Setup >System >Format >Aspect >DME Aspect	All menu operations
7317.1	Engineering Setup >System >Maintenance >Setup Operation Lock	Selection of items related to DME, DCU, MPE
7321	Engineering Setup >Panel >Config	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• [M/E2] selection</li> <li>• 1st row settings</li> </ul>
7321.2	Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >Key Trans Link	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• M/E-2 settings</li> <li>• P/P DSK5 to 8 settings</li> <li>• [Key5] to [Key8] selection</li> </ul>
7321.3	Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >External Bus Link	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Selection of items related to M/E-2</li> <li>• Selection of items related to Key5 to 8</li> </ul>

Menu		Disabled operation/setting
Number	Path	
7321.6	Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >External Bus Link >Link Bus Adjust	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Selection of items related to M/E-2</li> <li>• Selection of items related to Key5 to 8</li> </ul>
7321.7	Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >Region Button Assign	M/E-2, DME selection
7321.9	Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >Transition Module	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• KEY5 to KEY8, KEY1/5 to KEY 4/8 selection</li> <li>• ADD, SHIFT selection</li> </ul>
7321.18	Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >Util Bus/Key Inhibit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• M/E-2 settings</li> <li>• [Key5] to [Key8] selection</li> </ul>
7321.19	Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >Menu Panel	All menu operations
7321.27	Engineering Setup >Panel >Config >TB Module DME Ch Inhibit	All menu operations
7322	Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Setting of items related to M/E-2, DME</li> <li>• [Audio Follow] settings</li> </ul>
7322.5	Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign >Main, V/K Pair Assign	Primary33 to Primary48, DME Monitor Video, DME Monitor Key, M/E2 OUT1 to M/E2 OUT4 selection
7322.6	Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign >Src Name/Src Color	Primary 33 to 48, DME Monitor Video, DME Monitor Key, M/E-2 Out1 to M/E-2 Out4 settings
7322.11	Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign >Mixer Xpt Assign	All menu operations
7324	Engineering Setup >Panel >Prefs/Utility	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Selection of following utility commands: DME Monitor Video ST, DME Monitor Key ST, DME2 GPI Enbl, DME Override, DME Graphic</li> <li>• [Menu Shortcut] settings</li> </ul>
7324.2	Engineering Setup >Panel >Prefs/Utility >Xpt Module Src/Reg Btn Assign	Selection of following utility commands: DME Monitor Video ST, DME Monitor Key ST, DME2 GPI Enbl, DME Override, DME Graphic
7325.1	Engineering Setup >Panel >Device Interface >GPI Input	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Primary 33 to 48 selection when Action is set to Aux Bus Xpt Override</li> <li>• [M/E-2] selection</li> <li>• Selection of the following items when Trigger Type is not set to Level in [M/E-1] (x=5 to 8): Keyx Cut, Keyx Auto Trans, Keyx SS ? Recall</li> <li>• Selection of the following items when Trigger Type is not set to Level in [P/P] (x=5 to 8): DSKx Cut, DSKx Auto Trans, DSKx SS ? Recall</li> </ul>
7325.3	Engineering Setup >Panel >Device Interface >GPI Output	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• [M/E-2] selection</li> <li>• Selection of the following items when Trigger Type is not set to Status in [M/E-1] (x=5 to 8): Keyx SS ? Recall</li> <li>• Selection of the following items when Trigger Type is set to Status in [M/E-1] (x=5 to 8): Keyx SS ? Recall, Keyx On</li> <li>• Selection of the following items when Trigger Type is not set to Status in [P/P] (x=5 to 8): DSKx SS ? Recall</li> <li>• Selection of the following items when Trigger Type is set to Status in [P/P] (x=5 to 8): DSKx SS ? Recall, DSKx On</li> </ul>
7326.11	Engineering Setup >Panel >Operation >Custom Button >Next Trans All	Key5 to 8 selection
7326.13	Engineering Setup >Panel >Operation >Key/AUX/Function Assign	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• M/E-2 settings</li> <li>• Key5 to 8, EXT DME, DME1 V, K, DME2 V, K, DME5 V, K to DME8 V, K selection</li> </ul>
7331	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config	M/E-2 settings
7331.1	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config >M/E Output Assign	M/E-2 settings
7331.2	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config >PGM Config	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• M/E-2 settings</li> <li>• [Key5] to [Key8] selection</li> </ul>

Menu		Disabled operation/setting
Number	Path	
7331.3	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config >K-PVW Config	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>M/E-2 settings</li> <li>[Key5] to [Key8] selection</li> </ul>
7331.6	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config >DME Config	All menu operations
7332	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Input	Primary 33 to 48 settings
7332.1	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Input >CCR	Primary 33 to 48 settings
7332.3	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Input >FC Input Select	Primary 33 to 48 selection
7333.1	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Output >Output Assign	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Output 17 to 32 settings</li> <li>M/E-2 Out1 to M/E-2 Out4 selection</li> </ul>
7333.2	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Output >Video Clip	Output 13 to 32 settings
7333.3	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Output >V Blank/Through	Output 13 to 32 settings
7333.4	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Output >Safe Title	Output 13 to 32 settings
7333.5	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Output >4:3 Crop	Output 13 to 32 settings
7333.10	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Output >Multi Viewer >Source/ Output Assign	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When setting the [Src No] parameter: M/E-2 signal, Primary 33 to 48 signal selection</li> <li>When setting the [Output No] parameter: Output 13 to 32 selection</li> </ul>
7333.11	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Output >FC Output Select	Output 13 to 32 selection
7334	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Transition	M/E-2 settings
7334.1	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Transition >Preset Color Mix	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>M/E-2 settings</li> <li>[Key5] to [Key8] selection</li> </ul>
7334.2	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Transition >Transition Curve	M/E-2 settings
7335	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Key/ Wipe/FM/CCR	M/E-2 settings
7335.1	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Key/ Wipe/FM/CCR >Show Key	[M/E2 PVW] settings
7336.2	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Link >Internal Bus Link >Link Bus Select	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Selection of items related to M/E-2</li> <li>Selection of items related to P/P Key5 to 8</li> </ul>
7336.5	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Link >GPI Link >GPI Link Adjust	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>M/E-2 Auto Trans, M/E-2 Cut selection on video/button display</li> <li>M/E-2 bus settings on bus display</li> </ul>
7336.6	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Link >M/E Link	M/E-2 selection
7336.7	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Link >Key Transition Link	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Selection of items related to M/E-2</li> <li>Selection of items related to P/P Key5 to 8</li> </ul>
7337.2	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Device Interface >GPI Input	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[M/E-2] selection</li> <li>Selection of following items on [P/P] (x=5 to 8): DSKx Cut, DSKx Auto Trans, DSKx SS ? Recall</li> </ul>
7337.4	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Device Interface >GPI Output	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[M/E-2] selection</li> <li>Selection of following items when Trigger Type is not set to Status in [P/P] (x=5 to 8): DSKx Cut, DSKx Auto Trans, DSKx SS ? Recall</li> <li>Selection of following items when Trigger Type is set to Status in [P/P] (x=5 to 8): DSKx On</li> </ul>
7337.7	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Device Interface >DME SDI I/F	All menu operations

Menu		Disabled operation/setting
Number	Path	
7361.1	Engineering Setup >Router/Tally >Router >External Box Assign	All menu operations
7364.1	Engineering Setup >Router/Tally >Tally Enable >New	Tally Input settings
7364.2	Engineering Setup >Router/Tally >Tally Enable >Modify	Tally Input settings
7366	Engineering Setup >Router/Tally >Parallel Tally	All menu operations
7366.1	Engineering Setup >Router/Tally >Parallel Tally >Set	All menu operations
7367	Engineering Setup >Router/Tally >Serial Tally	[DCU1 Port1] to [DCU2 Port2] settings in the <Serial Tally Port> group

- a) The same conditions apply to the Key2 to Key4 and DSK2 to DSK4 menus.  
b) For details about patterns that can be selected, see “DME wipe patterns that can be used in independent key transitions” (p. 97).  
c) For details about patterns that can be selected, see “Types of DME Wipe Pattern” (p. 93).

## Menu Access by Pressing a Button Twice

For relevant buttons, pressing twice in rapid succession directly recalls a related menu page. The following table lists these buttons of each control block, together with the menus they recall. (XX indicates the last recalled page in each menu.)

### Cross-point control block

Button	Double-press Menu	Refer to
FM1 to 8 signals assigned buttons	Frame Memory >Still >Recall	<a href="#">p. 107</a>
Color Bkgd1 signal assigned button	Color Bkgd >Color Bkgd1	<a href="#">p. 122</a>
Color Bkgd2 signal assigned button	Color Bkgd >Color Bkgd2	
FMS1	Frame Memory >Still >Recall	<a href="#">p. 107</a>
FMS2	Frame Memory >Still >Recall	

### Transition control block

Button	Double-press Menu	Refer to
KEY1 (DSK1)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>M/E-1 &gt;Key1 &gt;XX</li> <li>PGM/PST &gt;DSK1 &gt;XX</li> </ul>	<a href="#">p. 64</a>
KEY2 (DSK2)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>M/E-1 &gt;Key2 &gt;XX</li> <li>PGM/PST &gt;DSK2 &gt;XX</li> </ul>	
KEY3 (DSK3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>M/E-1 &gt;Key3 &gt;XX</li> <li>PGM/PST &gt;DSK3 &gt;XX</li> </ul>	
KEY4 (DSK4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>M/E-1 &gt;Key4 &gt;XX</li> <li>PGM/PST &gt;DSK4 &gt;XX</li> </ul>	
WIPE	M/E-1, PGM/PST >Wipe >Main Pattern	<a href="#">p. 83</a>
DME	M/E-1, PGM/PST >DME Wipe >XX	<a href="#">p. 95</a>
SUPER MIX	M/E-1, PGM/PST >Misc >Transition	<a href="#">p. 50</a>
PST COLOR MIX	M/E-1, PGM/PST >Misc >Transition	<a href="#">p. 50</a>
FM1&2 CLIP, FM3&4 CLIP, FM5&6 CLIP, FM7&8 CLIP	M/E-1, PGM/PST >Misc >Clip Transition	<a href="#">p. 115</a>
PRIOR SET	M/E-1, PGM/PST >Misc >Key Priority	<a href="#">p. 50</a>

Transition control block

Button	Double-press Menu	Refer to
KEY PRIOR	M/E-1, PGM/PST >Misc >Next Key Priority	<a href="#">p. 50</a>
WIPE (Independent key transition type selection buttons)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>M/E-1 &gt;Key1, 2, 3, 4 &gt;Transition &gt;Wipe Adjust &gt;Pattern Select</li> <li>PGM/PST &gt;DSK1, 2, 3, 4 &gt;Transition &gt;Wipe Adjust &gt;Pattern Select</li> </ul>	<a href="#">p. 87</a>
DME (Independent key transition type selection buttons)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>M/E-1 &gt;Key1, 2, 3, 4 &gt;Transition &gt;DME Wipe Adjust &gt;1ch Pattern Select</li> <li>PGM/PST &gt;DSK1, 2, 3, 4 &gt;Transition &gt;DME Wipe Adjust &gt;1ch Pattern Select</li> </ul>	<a href="#">p. 97</a>
K-SS STORE	Snapshot >Key Snapshot >XX	<a href="#">p. 171</a>

Device control block

Button	Double-press Menu	Refer to
DEV1 to DEV12 assigned buttons	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Device &gt;DDR/VTR &gt;Cueup &amp; Play<sup>a)</sup></li> <li>Device &gt;DDR/VTR &gt;Timeline<sup>b)</sup></li> </ul>	<a href="#">p. 136</a> <a href="#">p. 140</a>
FM1CLIP to FM8CLIP assigned buttons	Frame Memory >Clip >Recall	<a href="#">p. 111</a>
K1RSZ, K2RSZ <sup>c)</sup>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>M/E-1 &gt;Key1, 2, 3, 4 &gt;Processed Key</li> <li>PGM/PST &gt;DSK1, 2, 3, 4 &gt;Processed Key</li> </ul>	<a href="#">p. 76</a>

a) When the [MENU] button is Off.

b) When the [MENU] button is On.

c) When the resizer operation mode is enabled.

Flexi Pad

Button	Double-press Menu	Refer to	
WIPE	M/E-1, PGM/PST >Wipe >Main Pattern	<a href="#">p. 83</a>	
DME WIPE	M/E-1, PGM/PST >DME Wipe >XX	<a href="#">p. 95</a>	
SNAPSHOT	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Snapshot &gt;Master Snapshot &gt;Store<sup>a)</sup></li> <li>Snapshot &gt;Snapshot &gt;XX<sup>b)</sup></li> </ul>	<a href="#">p. 171</a>	
EFF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Effect &gt;Master Timeline &gt;Store<sup>a)</sup></li> <li>Effect &gt;Effect 1-99 &gt;XX<sup>b)</sup></li> </ul>	<a href="#">p. 162</a> <a href="#">p. 164</a>	
SHOTBOX	Shotbox >Register >Store/Recall	<a href="#">p. 177</a>	
MCRO	Macro >Register >XX	<a href="#">p. 186</a>	
TRANS RATE	Misc >Transition >Key/ME/FTB	<a href="#">p. 126</a>	
KEY SS	Snapshot >Key Snapshot >XX	<a href="#">p. 171</a>	
STOR <sup>c)</sup>	Key Frame >Region Select	<a href="#">p. 152</a>	
RCLL <sup>c)</sup>	Key Frame >Region Select	<a href="#">p. 152</a>	
KEY ADJ	KEY1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>M/E-1 &gt;Key1 &gt;XX</li> <li>PGM/PST &gt;DSK1 &gt;XX</li> </ul>	<a href="#">p. 64</a>
	KEY2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>M/E-1 &gt;Key2 &gt;XX</li> <li>PGM/PST &gt;DSK2 &gt;XX</li> </ul>	
	KEY3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>M/E-1 &gt;Key3 &gt;XX</li> <li>PGM/PST &gt;DSK3 &gt;XX</li> </ul>	
	KEY4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>M/E-1 &gt;Key4 &gt;XX</li> <li>PGM/PST &gt;DSK4 &gt;XX</li> </ul>	
	LUM LIN WIPE PTN	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>M/E-1 &gt;Key1, 2, 3, 4 &gt;Type</li> <li>PGM/PST &gt;DSK1, 2, 3, 4 &gt;Type</li> </ul>	<a href="#">p. 65</a>
CRK	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>M/E-1 &gt;Key1, 2, 3, 4 &gt;Type &gt;Chroma Adjust</li> <li>PGM/PST &gt;DSK1, 2, 3, 4 &gt;Type &gt;Chroma Adjust</li> </ul>	<a href="#">p. 67</a>	

Button		Double-press Menu	Refer to
KEY SS	KEY1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• M/E-1 &gt;Key1 &gt;XX</li> <li>• PGM/PST &gt;DSK1 &gt;XX</li> </ul>	p. 64
	KEY2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• M/E-1 &gt;Key2 &gt;XX</li> <li>• PGM/PST &gt;DSK2 &gt;XX</li> </ul>	
	KEY3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• M/E-1 &gt;Key3 &gt;XX</li> <li>• PGM/PST &gt;DSK3 &gt;XX</li> </ul>	
	KEY4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• M/E-1 &gt;Key4 &gt;XX</li> <li>• PGM/PST &gt;DSK4 &gt;XX</li> </ul>	

- a) When the [MSTR] button is On.  
b) When the [MSTR] button is Off  
c) When the [SNAPSHOT] button is On.

System control unit	Board	STATION ID switches
MVS-3000	CA-85	S3801

## Simple Connection of the MKS-8080/8082 AUX Bus Remote Panel

### Procedure for Simple Connection

To connect the MKS-8080/8082 AUX Bus Remote Panel to the control panel using an S-Bus data link requires a HKSP-R80 Routing Switcher Controller Board or similar primary station and various settings for connection.

However, using a simple connection, the need for an S-Bus data link primary station is avoided, and direct connection to the MKS-8080/8082 is possible.

A simple connection is possible if the following conditions are met:

- There are no devices other than the control panel and MKS-8080/8082 connected on the S-Bus data link.
- There are no more than 16 MKS-8080/8082 units connected on the S-Bus data link.

To carry out simple connection of the MKS-8080/8082 AUX Bus Remote Panel, use the following procedure.

For settings on the MKS-8080/8082, see the section “Making the Setting With Buttons (Setup Function)” in the Operation Manual for the MKS-8080/8082.

- 1** Initialize the MKS-8080/8082 settings.  
This can be executed on the MKS-8080/8082 separately.
- 2** Set the MKS-8080/8082 station number in the range 2 to 17.  
This can be set on the MKS-8080/8082 separately.
- 3** Set the S-Bus data link primary station to the control panel by setting the STATION ID switches on the front of the board in the MVS-3000 SLOT 8 to 001 (switch 1 only to the OPEN position).

- 4** In the Engineering Setup >System >Initialize menu (7315), select PNL, and carry out a reset.

This carries out a restart, and when the restart is completed connection to the MKS-8080/8082 is possible.

- 5** In the Engineering Setup >Router/Tally >Router menu (7361), set the position of the MVS-3000 system in S-Bus space.

Select the setting of SWR1, and set each of Source, Destination, and Level to 1.

### Setting Status of the MKS-8080/8082 in Simple Connection

As a result of making the simple connection, the MKS-8080/8082 operates in AUX bus mode, and the settings are the following factory defaults.

With regard to the meaning of the following settings, see the section “Menu Operations” in the Operation Manual for the MKS-8080/8082.

#### C: SET SWITCHER ID (for AUX mode)

This is set to 001, which is the station number of the control panel.

#### D: SET AUX DESTINATION/SOURCE (for AUX mode)

The source is set to IN001 and following, and destination is set to OUT001 and following.

#### H: SET PHANTOM TABLE (for Router mode)

Not set, as unit does not operate in router mode.

#### N: SET PANEL TABLE (for Router mode)

The source is set to IN001 and following, and destination is set to OUT001 and following. However, since the unit

does not operate in router mode, these settings are not used.

### O: SET AVAILABLE SOURCE/DESTINATION

Set the source and destination ranges so that the MVS-3000 inputs and outputs can be selected.

### R: SET ROUTE

Since when using the simple connection the switcher and router cannot be connected in cascade, no route setting is required, and this is unset.

### Y: SET DISPLAY MODES

The DISPLAY MODES/PANEL FUNCTION setting is set to NORMAL.

The TALLY GROUP setting is set to be the same as the setting in Engineering Setup >Router/Tally >Group Tally menu (7362) on the MVS-3000.

### Z: SET PANEL STATUS

The various settings are the same as the factory default settings.

---

## Macro File Editing Rules

When editing a macro file, follow the rules described below.

---

### Macro File Syntax

The macro file syntax is as follows.

#### File format

The file is in CSV (comma-separated value) format.

#### Newline code

CR (ASCII code 0D), LF (ASCII code 0A), or CRLF may be used.

#### Statement syntax

There are four types of statement, each terminated by a newline code.

**File header:** This must always appear as the first line of the file. It comprises 28 characters, as follows.

Example: PNL (space) 0001PNL\_rrrr.PMRnnnnnnnn  
rrrr: Macro register number (0001 to 0099)

nnnnnnnn: In a file created on the switcher, this is a register name automatically set by the switcher.

When creating a new file, it is recommended to set this to be the same as the file name (☞ p. 290).

The name is limited to eight characters.

The following characters may not be used.

space, \, /, :, ;, , (comma), . (dot), <, >, \*, ?, ", |

**Comment:** Begins with “#”. The content of the line following the “#” up to the next newline has no effect on macro execution, and can be used as a comment.

#### Notes

You can only use comments in files saved to a local disk or removable disk. When you load a macro file into a register, the comments are discarded.

**Event statement:** Begins with “Event?”, and defines the macro event. For details, see “*Syntax of Event and Continue Statements*” (☞ p. 289).

**Continue statement:** Begins with “Continue?”, and defines the macro event.

For details, see “*Syntax of Event and Continue Statements*” (☞ p. 289).

Some events cannot be used (☞ “*Correspondence between Events and Symbols*” (p. 290)).

---

## Syntax of Event and Continue Statements

An event can be written with an Event statement only, or with an Event statement followed by any number of Continue statements. The Event statements and Continue statements have the following syntax.

#### Word separator character

Use “,” (comma).

#### Ignored

Spaces and tabs are ignored. There is no distinction between lowercase and uppercase. If two or more separator characters appear consecutively, later ones are ignored. Separator characters at the beginning of a line are also ignored.

#### Content of line

Must begin with “Event?” or “Continue?”, followed by symbols and parameters.

Event?,[symbol], [parameter], [parameter], ...

Continue?,[symbol], [parameter], [parameter], ...

**symbol:** ASCII character string showing the type of event (☞ “*Correspondence between Events and Symbols*” (p. 290)).

**parameter:** Shows details of an event. Consists of parameter names and arguments, and these must appear in pairs. The number and type of parameters depends on the event (☞ “*Symbols and Parameters*” (p. 291)).

If the same parameter appears twice or more, the last occurrence is valid.

## How to use Continue statements

When a single parameter has more than one argument, use a Continue statement. The following example is of a snapshot event.

An event to recall a snapshot in region M/E-1 is written as:

```
Event?,Snapshot,Region?,ME1,Register?,1,Attribute
?,Off,Time?,Current
```

In the Event statement, only one region can be specified. To specify region M/E-1 and PGM/PST, use a Continue statement, thus:

```
Event?,Snapshot,Region?,ME1,Register?,1,Attribute
?,Off,Time?,Current
```

```
Continue?,Snapshot,Region?,PP,Register?,1,Attribut
e?,Off,Time?,Current
```

To specify more than one argument for a region parameter, follow the Event statement by a Continue statement on the next line.

## File Name

Set the file name as follows.

**Example:** nnnnnnnn.PNL\_rrrr.PMR

nnnnnnnn: In a file created on the switcher, this is a register name automatically set by the switcher.

The name is limited to eight characters.

The following characters may not be used.

space, \, /, :, ;, , (comma), . (dot), <, >, \*, ?, ", |

rrrr: Macro register number (0001 to 0099)

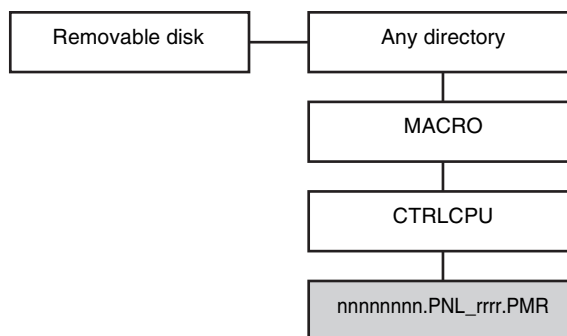
## Saving and Recalling a File

For a newly created file, if you create a directory on a removable disk (see figure below), and move the file to the

prescribed location, you can then recall it in the File All, External File menu.

### Notes

When amending a file saved on the switcher, be sure to save it in the original directory.



Path example: Removable Disk\Sample\MACRO\CTRLCPU\nnnnnnnn.PNL\_rrrr.PMR

## Errors

If any of the following problems occur, it is not possible to recall the file. Attempting to recall the file will produce an error message.

- If there is a syntax error.
- If a required parameter is not present.

For details about error messages, see [“Error Messages” \(p. 298\)](#).

## Correspondence between Events and Symbols

For details about events, see [“Events” \(p. 180\)](#).

Event	Symbol	Using Continue
AUX bus cross-point selection in the cross-point control block	AuxXpt	No
Cross-point selection in the router	RouterXpt	Yes
Cross-point selection in the cross-point control block	MEXpt	Yes
Auto transition and take in the transition control block	MEAutoTransition	Yes
Cut in the transition control block	MECut	No
Transition type selection	TransitionType	No
Next transition setting	NextTransition	No
Pattern limit on/off	PatternLimit	No
Fade-to-black execution	FadeToBlack	No
Auto transition and take in independent key transitions	KeyAutoTransition	Yes
Key insertion and deletion in independent key transitions	KeyCut	Yes

Event	Symbol	Using Continue
Selection of independent key transition type	KeyTransitionType	No
VTR/DDR/clip start point setting	StartTc	Yes
VTR/DDR/clip playback	Play	Yes
VTR/DDR/clip stop	Stop	Yes
VTR/DDR/clip cue-up	Cue	Yes
VTR/DDR/clip fast forward	FF	Yes
VTR/DDR/clip rewind	Rewind	Yes
Disk recorder/Extended VTR file recall	DiskFileLoad	No
Recall snapshot	Snapshot	Yes
Recall key snapshot	KeySnapshot	Yes
Recall wipe snapshot	WipeSnapshot	Yes
Recall DME wipe snapshot	DMEWipeSnapshot	Yes
Recall shotbox	Shotbox	No
Recall master snapshot	MasterSnapshot	No
Recall master timeline	MasterTimelineRecall	No
Recall effect	TimelineRecall	Yes
Execute effect	TimelineRun	Yes
Rewind keyframe	TimelineRewind	Yes
Fast forward effect	TimelineFF	Yes
Effect execution direction selection (normal)	TimelineDirectionNormal	Yes
Effect execution direction selection (reverse)	TimelineDirectionReverse	Yes
Effect execution direction selection (normal/reverse on)	TimelineNormalReverseOn	Yes
Effect execution direction selection (normal/reverse off)	TimelineNormalReverseOff	Yes
Pause <sup>a)</sup>	Pause	No
Recall of function assigned to memory recall button/user preference button	UtilityButton	No
Recall of function assigned to a 2nd row cross-point button	Key Bus Utility Button	No
Frame memory clip loop on/off	FMLoop	Yes
Menu macro recall and execution	MenuMacroRun	No
Recall of frame memory clip	ClipRecall	No
Record with device	DeviceRecord	Yes

a) For details about pause events, see [“Macro Execution” \(p. 182\)](#).

## Symbols and Parameters

### Table legend

n: Indicates a numeral 0 to 9.

x: Indicates an alphanumeric character.

Symbol	Parameter name	Arguments	Description
MEXpt	ME?	ME1, PP	Control blocks on the applicable bank
	MEBus?	A, B, Key1 to Key4, Key1Source to Key8Source, Utility1,	Applicable bus
	Xpt?	1 to 300	Main table cross-point button number set in the Xpt Assign menu
	VideoKey?	Video, Key	Signal type selected on the applicable bus (video signal or key signal)

Symbol	Parameter name	Arguments	Description
AuxXpt	AuxBus?	EditPreview, AUX1 to AUX24, FrameMemory1, FrameMemory2	Applicable AUX bus
	Xpt?	1 to 300	Main table cross-point button number set in the Xpt Assign menu
	VideoKey?	Video, Key	Signal type selected on the applicable bus (video signal or key signal)
MEAutoTransition	ME?	ME1, PP	Control blocks on the applicable bank
	Time?	Current (a), 0 to 999	Transition rate (number of frames) (a): Mode in which the current value set on the transition control block is used
	ABusXpt?	Current (a), 1 to 300	A bus or B bus cross-point button number. Use the button number of the main table set in the Xpt Assign menu. (a): Mode in which the cross-point number set for the current A bus or B bus is used
	BBusXpt?	Current (a), 1 to 300	
MECut	ME?	ME1, PP	Control blocks on the applicable bank
KeyAutoTransition	ME?	ME1, PP	Control blocks on the applicable bank
	Key?	Key1 to Key4	Key of the applicable independent key transition
	Time?	Current (a), 0 to 999	Transition rate (number of frames) (a): Mode in which the current value set on the independent key transition is used
	Direction?	ToOn (a), ToOff (b), Any (c)	Transition execution mode (a): Key is inserted (b): Key is deleted (c): Transition is always executed
KeyCut	ME?	ME1, PP	Control blocks on the applicable bank
	Key?	Key1 to Key4	Key of the applicable independent key transition
	Direction?	ToOn (a), ToOff (b), Any (c)	Transition execution mode (a): Key is inserted (b): Key is deleted (c): Transition is always executed
Play	Device?	1 to 12, FrameMemory1Clip to FrameMemory8Clip	Applicable device
	Mode?	Normal (a), Recue (b), Loop (c)	Playback mode (a): Normal mode As for Frame Memory 1 Clip to Frame Memory 8 Clip, settings are ignored and operation mode is fixed to "Normal." (b): Recue mode (c): Loop mode
Cue	Device?	1 to 12, FrameMemory1Clip to FrameMemory8Clip	Applicable device
	Timecode?	Current (a), hh:mm:ss:ff	Start point timecode hh=hours (00 to 23) As for Frame Memory 1 Clip to Frame Memory 8 Clip, hh is fixed to "01." mm=minutes (00 to 59) ss=seconds (00 to 59) ff=frames (00 to 29) (a): Mode in which the currently set timecode is used
Stop	Device?	1 to 12, FrameMemory1Clip to FrameMemory8Clip	Applicable device
FF	Device?	1 to 12, FrameMemory1Clip to FrameMemory8Clip	Applicable device

Symbol	Parameter name	Arguments	Description
Rewind	Device?	1 to 12, FrameMemory1Clip to FrameMemory8Clip	Applicable device
DiskFileLoad	Device?	1 to 12	Applicable device
	FileName?	File Name	Name of file being set (max. 23 characters)
Snapshot	Region?	ME1, PP, User1 to User8, Router	Applicable region
	Register?	1 to 99	Applicable register number
	Attribute?	Off, Dissolve, AutoTransition, Dissolve&AutoTransition	Applicable snapshot attributes
	Time?	Current (a), 0 to 999	Duration of effect dissolve (number of frames) (a): Mode in which the currently set value is used
KeySnapshot	ME?	ME1, PP	Control blocks on the applicable bank
	Key?	Key1 to Key4	Applicable key
	Register?	1 to 4	Applicable register number
WipeSnapshot	ME?	ME1, PP	Control blocks on the applicable bank
	Register?	1 to 10	Applicable register number
DMEWipeSnapshot	ME?	ME1, PP	Control blocks on the applicable bank
	Register?	1 to 10	Applicable register number
TimelineRecall	Region?	ME1, PP, User1 to User8, PBus, Device1 to Device12, GPI	Applicable region
	Register?	1 to 399	Applicable register number
TimelineRun	Region?	ME1, PP, User1 to User8, PBus, Device1 to Device12, GPI, Current (a)	Applicable region (a): Mode in which operation takes place in the region currently specified in the Flexi Pad
TimelineRewind	Region?	ME1, PP, User1 to User8, PBus, Device1 to Device12, GPI, Current (a)	Applicable region (a): Mode in which operation takes place in the region currently specified in the Flexi Pad
TimelineFF	Region?	ME1, PP, User1 to User8, PBus, Device1 to Device12, GPI, Current (a)	Applicable region (a): Mode in which operation takes place in the region currently specified in the Flexi Pad
Shotbox	Register?	1 to 99	Applicable register number
Pause	Time?	0 to 999	Time for which macro is paused (number of frames)
StartTc	Device?	1 to 12, FrameMemory1Clip to FrameMemory8Clip	Applicable device
MasterSnapshot	Register?	1 to 99	Applicable register number
MasterTimelineRecall	Register?	1 to 99	Applicable register number
RouterXpt	DestinationButton?	1 to 128	Router cross-point button
	Source?	1 to 1024	Router source number
	Level?	1 to 8	Router level selection
PatternLimit	ME?	ME1, PP	Control blocks on the applicable bank
	Status?	ToOn (a), ToOff (b), Any (c)	Pattern limit status (a): Pattern limit applies (b): Pattern limit does not apply (c): The pattern limit status always changes

Symbol	Parameter name	Arguments	Description
TransitionType	ME?	ME1, PP	Control blocks on the applicable bank
	TransitionType?	Mix, NAM, SuperMix, PresetColorMix, Wipe, DMEWipe, FM1&2Clip, FM3&4Clip, FM5&6Clip, FM7&8Clip	Transition type
KeyTransitionType	ME?	ME1, PP	Control blocks on the applicable bank
	Key?	Key1 to Key4	Key of the applicable independent key transition
	Direction?	On (a), Off (b), Any (c)	Independent key transition execution mode (a): Key is inserted (b): Key is deleted (c): Transition is always executed
	KeyTransitionType?	Mix, Wipe, DMEWipe, Cut	Transition type of the independent key transition
NextTransition	ME?	ME1, PP	Control blocks on the applicable bank
	All?	On, Off	Applicable next transition
	KeyPriority?	On, Off	Applicable next transition
	BKGD?	On, Off	Applicable next transition
	Key1 to Key8	On, Off	Applicable next transition
FadeToBlack	Time?	Current (a), 0 to 999	Transition rate (number of frames) (a): Mode in which the current value set in fade to black is used
TimelineDirectionNormal	Region?	ME1, PP, User1 to User8, PBus, Device1 to Device12, GPI, Current (a)	Applicable region (a): Mode in which operation takes place in the region currently specified in the Flexi Pad
TimelineDirectionReverse	Region?	ME1, PP, User1 to User8, PBus, Device1 to Device12, GPI, Current (a)	Applicable region (a): Mode in which operation takes place in the region currently specified in the Flexi Pad
TimelineNormalReverseOn	Region?	ME1, PP, User1 to User8, PBus, Device1 to Device12, GPI, Current (a)	Applicable region (a): Mode in which operation takes place in the region currently specified in the Flexi Pad
TimelineNormalReverseOff	Region?	ME1, PP, User1 to User8, PBus, Device1 to Device12, GPI, Current (a)	Applicable region (a): Mode in which operation takes place in the region currently specified in the Flexi Pad
UtilityButton	UtilityModule?	UserPrefs, UtilityBox	Control blocks on the applicable bank
	Button?	1 to 96	Applicable button
	UtilityStatus?	On, Off, Current (a)	Status of function assigned to button (a): Operates according to currently assigned function
FMLoop	Device?	FrameMemory1Clip to FrameMemory8Clip	Applicable clip
	FMLoopMode?	On (a), Off (b)	Frame memory clip loop on/off (a): Loop is enabled (b): Loop is disabled
MenuMacroRun	Register?	1 to 99	Applicable register number

Symbol	Parameter name	Arguments	Description
KeyBusUtilityButton	ME?	ME1, PP	Control blocks on the applicable bank
	BANK?	Bank1 to Bank5	Applicable bank
	KeyBusUtilityButton?	1 to 32	Applicable button
	UtilityStatus?	On, Off, Current (a)	Status of function assigned to button (a): Operates according to currently assigned function
ClipRecall	Device?	FrameMemory1Clip to FrameMemory8Clip	Applicable clip
	ClipType?	Pair, Single	File type of clip (pair/single)
	Clip?	Clip Name	Name of clip (up to four characters)
DeviceRecord	Device?	1 to 12	Applicable device

## Example of File Contents

Line	Content	Description
1	PNL 0001PNL_0000.PMRMACROREG	File header
2	#,Sample,	Comment
3	Event?, Snapshot, Region?, ME1, Register?, 1,Attribute?, Off,Time?, Current	Simultaneously recall snapshots from register number 1 in the M/E-1 and PGM/PST regions.
4	Continue?, Snapshot, Region?, PP, Register?, 1,Attribute?, Off,Time?, Current	
5	Event?, MEXpt, ME?, ME1, MEBus?, A, Xpt?, 1, VideoKey?, Video	Select button number 1 on the M/E-1 A bus.

## About the Macro Attachment List Display

The Button column in the macro attachment list displayed in the status area of the Macro >Attachment menu (5421) screen shows character strings which identify macro attachment assigned buttons.

Each of these character strings is in fact a combination of characters shown in the Button(1), Button(2), and Button(3) columns in the following tables.

For example, if Block and Button(1) to Button(3) are:

Block: P/P XPT

Button(1): UTIL1 Bus

Button(2): V

Button(3): XPT2

Then, the display in the Button column is:

UTIL1 Bus V XPT2

which indicates “P/P row utility1 bus video signal, cross-point button 2.”

## M/E and PGM/PST Banks

The following table shows only the macro attachment assignable buttons in the PGM/PST bank.

For the M/E1 bank, “P/P” changes to “M/E1” in the Block Select and Block columns. In addition, “DSK” changes to “KEY” in the Button(1) and Button(2) columns. The contents of the Button(3) column do not change.

### Block Select: P/P, Block: P/P XPT

Button (1)	Button (2)	Button (3)
A Bus B Bus DSK1 Bus : DSK4 Bus	(nothing) Shift	XPT 1 : XPT 128 M/E 1 P/P
DSK1 Src Bus : DSK4 Src Bus	V K V Shift K Shift	
UTIL1 Bus	V K V Shift K Shift	XPT 1 : XPT 128 M/E 1 P/P

Button (1)	Button (2)	Button (3)
Utility/Shotbox	Bank 1-1 : Bank 1-32 Bank 2-1 : Bank 2-32 Bank 3-1 : Bank 3-32 Bank 4-1 : Bank 4-32 Bank 5-1 : Bank 5-32	(nothing)

### Block Select: P/P, Block: P/P Trans

Button (1)	Button (2)	Button (3)
(blank) DSK1 : DSK4	MIX <sup>a)</sup> NAM <sup>a)</sup> SUPER MIX <sup>a)</sup> PST COLOR MIX <sup>a)</sup> WIPE <sup>a)</sup> DME <sup>a)</sup> DSK_ON AUTO TRANS CUT  ALL <sup>a)</sup> KEY PRIOR <sup>a)</sup> BKGD <sup>a)</sup> DSK1 <sup>a)</sup> : DSK4 <sup>a)</sup> NORM <sup>a)</sup> NORM/REV <sup>a)</sup> REV <sup>a)</sup> Fader PRIOR SET <sup>a)</sup> TRANS PVW <sup>a)</sup>	(nothing)

a) These buttons can be assigned with their functions in the setup menu. They can be assigned with any of the following functions: transition type selection (MIX, NAM, SUPER MIX, PST COLOR MIX, WIPE, DME, FM1&2CLIP, FM3&4CLIP, FM5&6CLIP, FM7&8CLIP), next transition selection (BKGD, DSK1 to DSK8, PRIOR, ALL), wipe direction selection (NORM, NORM/REV, REV), PLAY, CUE, STOP, and PTN LIMIT.

## Other Blocks

### Block Select: Others, Block: Multi Function Flexi Pad<sup>a)</sup>

Button (1)	Button (2)	Button (3)
DSK1 : DSK4  M/E-1 KEY1 : M/E-1 KEY4	AUTO TRANS KEY_ON	(nothing)

Button (1)	Button (2)	Button (3)
EFF	RUN REWIND NORM REV NORM/REV	(nothing)

a) The Flexi Pad control block appears as "10KeyPad."

### Block Select: Others, Block: Trackball

Button (1)	Button (2)	Button (3)
DEV	CLR WORK BUFR (CUE) Y (PLAY) TRGT (STOP) AXIS LOC (START TC)	(nothing)

## Menu Operations Not Recorded in a Menu Macro

The menu operations not recorded in a menu macro comprise some operations common to all menus and some operations inhibited in individual menus.

### Operations not recorded in menu macros, common to all menus

- Recalling a menu
- Delegation operations: region selection, channel delegation, operations enabling parameter setting buttons, and so forth
- Parameter setting operations using the parameter setting buttons or trackball (value input operations from the numeric keypad are recorded)

### Operations not recorded in menu macros, in individual menus

Menu No.	Menu path
0011 to 0023	All menus under Home
2541	Frame Memory >File >Pair Recombination
2542	Frame Memory >File >Auto Extraction
2544	Frame Memory >File >Move
2545	Frame Memory >File >Delete
2546	Frame Memory >File >Rename
2551	Frame Memory >Folder
2561	Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD >Format
2562	Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD >Backup/Restore
5333	Device >DDR/VTR >File List
5412 to 5441	All menus under Macro

Menu No.	Menu path
7111 to 7173	All menus under File
7311 to 7317	All menus under Engineering Setup >System
7327	Engineering Setup >Panel >Maintenance

## Data Saved by [Setup Define] and [Initial Status Define]

This section lists the data saved in the Engineering Setup >System >Start Up menu (7314), by each of [Setup Define] and [Initial Status Define].

### Data Saved by [Setup Define]

#### Included in Panel Setup

Menu No.	Menu path	Saved data
0022	Home >Favorites >Group Edit	All data relating to Group Edit menu
0023	Home >Favorites >Button Edit	All data relating to Button Edit menu
7321	Engineering Setup >Panel >Config	All data relating to Config menu
7322	Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign	Data relating to Table assignments for each bus
7322.1	Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign >Table Button Assign	All data relating to Table Button Assign menu
7322.5	Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign >Main, V/K Pair Assign	<Xpt Shift Mode> and <Display Shift Mode> group data
7322.10	Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign >Side Flags Button Assign	All data relating to Side Flags Button Assign menu
7324	Engineering Setup >Panel >Prefs/Utility	All data relating to function assignment to user preference buttons and cross-point control block 2nd row buttons
7325	Engineering Setup >Panel >Device Interface	All data relating to Device Interface menu
7326	Engineering Setup >Panel >Operation	All data relating to Operation menu
7327	Engineering Setup >Panel >Maintenance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Setting data for the following buttons: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- [Screen Saver]</li> <li>- [Panel Sleep Mode]</li> <li>- [LCD Btn Brightness]</li> <li>- [Display Brightness]</li> <li>- [Switch Brightness]</li> <li>- [Touch Beep]</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Setting data for Initial Menu</li> </ul>
7361 to 7367	Engineering Setup >Router/Tally	All data relating to router interface and tally interface
-	-	Data of Color Palette window

## Included in Switcher Setup

Menu No.	Menu path	Saved data
3221	Misc >Safe Title	All data relating to Safe Title menu
7322.5	Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign >Main,V/K Pair Assign	Cross-point assignment settings (excluding <Xpt Shift Mode> and <Display Shift Mode> groups)
7322.6	Engineering Setup >Panel >Xpt Assign >Src Name/ Src Color	Names of source signals
7326.2	Engineering Setup >Panel >Operation >Effect Mode	Setting of [Default KF Duration] for switcher keyframes
7331	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config	All data relating to Config menu
7332	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Input	All data relating to Input menu
7333	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Output	All data relating to Output menu
7334	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Transition	All data relating to Transition menu
7335	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Key/Wipe/FM/CCR	All data relating to Key/Wipe/FM/CCR menu
7336	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Link	All data relating to Link menu
7337	Engineering Setup >Switcher >Device Interface	All data relating to Device Interface menu

## Data Saved by [Initial Status Define]

### Included in Panel

Menu No.	Menu path	Saved data
-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Settings for the following cross-point control block buttons               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Delegation buttons assigned to the 1st row</li> <li>[1ST ROW DSPLY], [2ND ROW DSPLY], [SHIFT], [MCRO ATTCH ENBL]</li> </ul> </li> <li>Transition control block: [KF], [SHIFT], and independent key transition [KEY1] to [KEY4] buttons</li> <li>Flexi Pad: Settings for the [WIPE], [DME WIPE], [SNAPSHOT], [EFF], [SHOTBOX], [MCRO], [TRNS RATE], [KEY ADJ], [KEY SS] buttons</li> </ul>
6351	Snapshot >Key Snapshot >Attribute	Settings of <Recall Mode> group

### Included in Switcher (Same as data saved in Snapshots)

Menu No.	Menu path	Saved data
-	-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For each M/E, setting data relating to the following: cross-points, transitions, Key1 to Key4 (including independent key transition settings), wipes, DME wipes</li> <li>Color backgrounds 1/2</li> <li>Frame memory</li> <li>AUX bus (including CCR settings)</li> </ul>
3211	Misc >Enable >Port Enable	Setting data for <Switcher> group
3213	Misc >Enable >Side Flags	All data relating to Side Flags menu

## Error Messages

- Message boxes
- List based on the Error Information menu (9900)

Error messages appear in the following three formats.

- A list display in the Error Status menu (7411)/Error Log menu (7412)

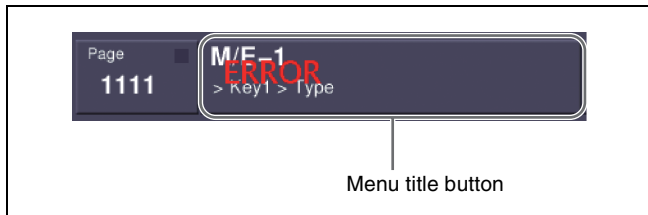
## Error Messages Displayed in the Error Status/Error Log Menu

When an error occurs, the word “ERROR” appears in red on the menu title button.

When “ERROR” is displayed, pressing the menu title button displays the Error Status menu or Error Log menu.

**When an error is still in effect:** The Error Status menu appears (☞ p. 299).

**When an error has already been cleared:** The Error Log menu appears (☞ p. 299).



You can select whether or not to indicate the occurrence of an error by the word “ERROR” shown on the menu title button, by setting [Error Popup] in the Error Status menu or Error Log menu.

### To display the error status or error log regardless of whether there is currently an error

- 1 Carry out either of the following.
  - Press the [DIAG] button of the top menu selection buttons.
  - Press the menu page number button at the upper left of the menu screen, to display the top menu window, then enter 7411 or 7412, and press [Enter].

The Diagnostic menu appears.

- 2 Press VF1 [Error Info].

The error information menu appears.

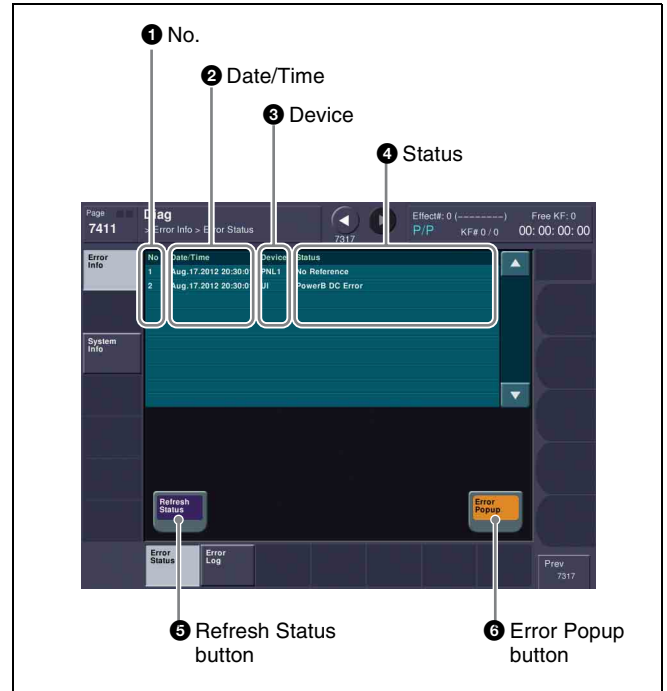
- 3 Press either of the following buttons.

- HF1 [Error Status]:** Displays the Error Status menu.
- HF2 [Error Log]:** Displays the Error Log menu.

### Error Status menu

The Error Status menu lists currently occurring error information, listed with the most recent information at the top.

When an error has been cleared, the error disappears from the list.

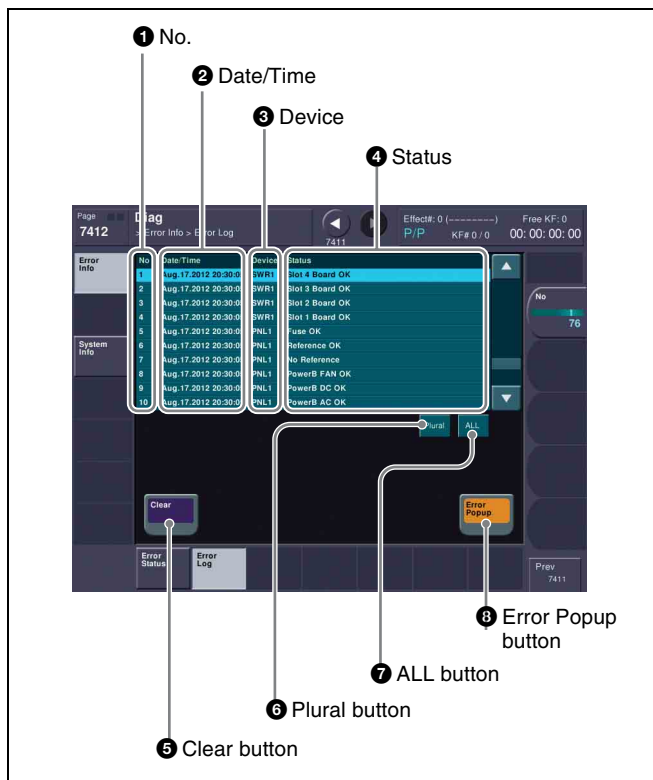


- 1 **No.**  
This is a sequential number assigned to the error status.
- 2 **Date/Time**  
This shows the date and time the error occurred.
- 3 **Device**  
This shows the device on which the error occurred.
- 4 **Status**  
This shows the details of the error.
- 5 **Refresh Status button**  
This refreshes the list display.
- 6 **Error Popup button**  
This selects whether or not to display “ERROR” on the menu title button when an error occurs. This button is linked to the Error Popup button in the error log menu.  
**On:** If a device error occurs, displays “ERROR” on the menu title button.  
**Off:** If a device error occurs, does not display “ERROR” on the menu title button.

### Error Log menu

The Error Log menu lists changes in the error status from the time that the menu display is started up, listed with the most recent information at the top.

A maximum of 1024 error status changes appear, and when the number exceeds 1024, the oldest items disappear from the list.

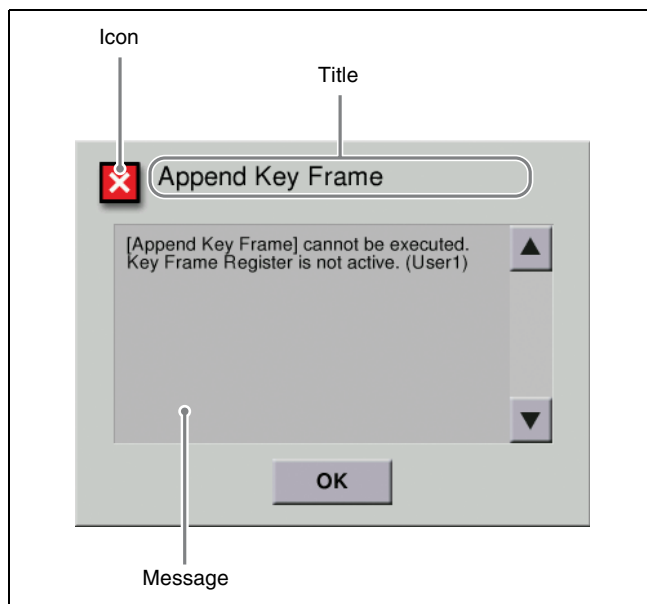


- 1 No.**  
This is a sequential number assigned to the items in the error log.
- 2 Date/Time**  
This shows the date and time the status change occurred.
- 3 Device**  
This shows the device on which the status change occurred.
- 4 Status**  
This shows the details of the status change.  
If you press on the list, this switches the display to reverse video, and selects the item. You can also select items in the error log by pressing the parameter setting button.
- 5 Clear button**  
This deletes the selected error log item from the list.





- 6 Plural button**  
When this is on, you can select more than one error log. To cancel the selection, press once again to return to the normal display.
- 7 All button**  
When this is on, all error log items are selected. To cancel the selection, press once again to return to the normal display.
- 8 Error Popup button**  
This selects whether or not to display “ERROR” on the menu title button when an error occurs. This button is linked to the Error Popup button in the error status menu.  
**On:** If a device error occurs, displays “ERROR” on the menu title button.  
**Off:** If a device error occurs, does not display “ERROR” on the menu title button.

## Error Messages Appearing in a Message Box













Corresponding to the content of the message, an icon appears.














Icon	Message	Description
<b>Append Key Frame</b>		
	[Append Key Frame] cannot be executed. FMx is not assigned to a user region.	2515: Frame Memory >Still >Create >Key Frame In the above menu, an attempt was made to execute [Append Key Frame], but it failed because the frame memory output (FMx) is not assigned to a user region. 7331.4: Make the assignment in the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config >User1-8 Config menu, and try again.
	[Append Key Frame] cannot be executed. Key Frame Register is locked. (UserX)	2515: Frame Memory >Still >Create >Key Frame In the above menu, an attempt was made to execute [Append Key Frame] using a locked register (UserX region). Unlock the register.


Icon	Message	Description
	[Append Key Frame] cannot be executed. Key Frame Register is busy. (UserX)	2515: Frame Memory >Still >Create >Key Frame In the above menu, an attempt was made to execute [Append Key Frame] using a register (UserX region) into which files are being loaded. Try again after file loading has finished.
	[Append Key Frame] cannot be executed. Key Frame Register is being edited. (UserX)	2515: Frame Memory >Still >Create >Key Frame In the above menu, an attempt was made to execute [Append Key Frame] using a register (UserX region) with which a keyframe creating or editing operation is proceeding. Try again after the keyframe operation has finished.
	[Append Key Frame] cannot be executed. Key Frame Register is full. (UserX)	2515: Frame Memory >Still >Create >Key Frame In the above menu, an attempt was made to execute [Append Key Frame] using a register (UserX region) in which no keyframe remains.
	[Append Key Frame] cannot be executed. Key Frame Register is not active. (UserX)	2515: Frame Memory >Still >Create >Key Frame In the above menu, an attempt was made to execute [Append Key Frame] using a register for which the appropriate region selection button in the numeric keypad control block is not selected. Try again after you select the region selection button [UserX] in the numeric keypad control block.

### Backup






	No external HDD was found (-2).	2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore In the above menu, an attempt was made to execute [Backup] but the external HDD could not be recognized. Check that the external HDD is correctly connected.
	Format operation failed (-10). Format operation failed (-11).	2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore When [Backup] was pressed in the above menu, formatting of the HDD failed.
	Cannot access the partition (-12).	2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore In the above menu, an attempt was made to execute [Backup] but the logical drives of the external HDD could not be accessed. Check that the external HDD is correctly formatted.
	Cannot access the directory (-20). Cannot access the directory (-21).	2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore In the above menu, an attempt was made to execute [Backup] but the directory of the external HDD could not be accessed.
	The external HDD is busy (-22).	2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore In the above menu, an attempt was made to execute [Backup] to the external HDD which was busy and could not be accessed. Try again after you check that the access lamp of the HDD or the indicator of the menu is turned off.
	The external HDD is full (-32).	2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore In the above menu, an attempt was made to execute [Backup] to the external HDD which does not have enough capacity.
	Backup operation failed (-33) Backup operation failed (-34) Backup operation failed (-36)	2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore In the above menu, an attempt was made to execute [Backup] to the external HDD but the file storing process was not completed correctly.
	Cannot be executed. Amount of FM files exceeds the capacity of usable frame memory.	2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore When [Backup] was pressed in the above menu, the number of files exceeded the storage capacity.
	Cannot be executed. The function requires two frames of frame memory.	2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore When [Backup] was pressed in the above menu, two files are required, but there was only one file remaining.
	No directory exists (-50).	2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore When [Backup] was pressed in the above menu, the specified directory does not exist.
	Rename operation failed (-52). Rename operation failed (-53).	2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore When [Backup] was pressed in the above menu, renaming the directory failed.
	Invalid FM OutCh (-6).	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, when [Backup] is pressed, this message appears if the specified frame memory output channel cannot be used.


Icon	Message	Description
	Specified FM OutCh was locked (-7).	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, when [Backup] is pressed, this message appears if the specified frame memory output channel is locked.
	Not enough free register area for Backup or Restore process (-10).	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, when [Backup] is pressed, this message appears if there is not enough space to carry out the backup.
	Prepare failed, not any file was found on this board (-11).	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, when [Backup] is pressed, this message appears if no image is present.
	Backup failed, not prepared yet (-12).	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, when [Backup] is pressed, this message appears if not yet ready.
	Backup failed, Clip recall failed (-13).	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, when [Backup] is pressed, this message appears if All One Clip ID Recall failed (internal processing error).
	Prepare failed, Clip create failed (-14).	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, when [Backup] is pressed, this message appears if All One Clip creation failed (internal processing error).
	Prepare failed, insufficient Clip id (-15).	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, when [Backup] is pressed, this message appears if there are not enough Clip IDs (internal processing error).
	Prepare failed, symbol files create failed (-16).	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, when [Backup] is pressed, this message appears if marker frame file creation failed (internal processing error).
	Prepare failed, all one Clip recall failed (-17).	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, when [Backup] is pressed, this message appears if All One Clip Recall failed (internal processing error).
	ERROR (-19). Bad register number.	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, when [Backup] is pressed, this message appears if Register Number is invalid (internal processing error).
	Prepare failed, because there is clip playing (-22).	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, when [Backup] is pressed, this message appears if processing failed during clip playback.

### Change Password


	Failed. The password was not changed.	7317.1: Engineering Setup >System >Maintenance >Setup Operation Lock In the above menu, the password was not changed.
---	--	--

### Create Key Frame






	[Create Key Frame] cannot be executed. FMx is not assigned to a user region.	2515: Frame Memory >Still >Create >Key Frame In the above menu, an attempt was made to execute [Create Key Frame], but it failed because the frame memory output (FMx) is not assigned to a user region. 7331.4: Make the assignment in the Engineering Setup >Switcher >Config >User1-8 Config menu, and try again.
	[Create Key Frame] cannot be executed. Key Frame Register is locked. (UserX)	2515: Frame Memory >Still >Create >Key Frame In the above menu, an attempt was made to execute [Create Key Frame] using a locked register (UserX region). Unlock the register.
	[Create Key Frame] cannot be executed. Key Frame Register is busy. (UserX)	2515: Frame Memory >Still >Create >Key Frame In the above menu, an attempt was made to [Create Key Frame] using a register (UserX region) into which files are being loaded. Try again after file loading has finished.
	[Create Key Frame] cannot be executed. Key Frame Register is being edited. (UserX)	2515: Frame Memory >Still >Create >Key Frame In the above menu, an attempt was made to execute [Create Key Frame] using a register (UserX region) with which a keyframe creating or editing operation is proceeding. Try again after the keyframe operation has finished.
	[Create Key Frame] cannot be executed. There is no free Key Frame. (UserX)	2515: Frame Memory >Still >Create >Key Frame In the above menu, an attempt was made to execute [Create Key Frame] for a UserX region with insufficient usable keyframes.

Icon	Message	Description
	[Create Key Frame] cannot be executed. Key Frame Register is not active. (UserX)	2515: Frame Memory >Still >Create >Key Frame In the above menu, an attempt was made to execute [Create Key Frame] using a register for which the appropriate region selection button in the numeric keypad control block is not selected. Try again after you select the region selection button [UserX] in the numeric keypad control block.










### Disk Format






	Failure. Make sure of the removable disk.	7317: Engineering Setup >System >Maintenance In the above menu, removable disk formatting procedure failed. Check that the removable disk is correctly inserted.
---	--	---

### Error


	This operation is cancelled, because the register is locked. Please change the register status to be unlocked first.	6211.1: Effect >Master Timeline >Store >Edit 6311.1: Snapshot >Master Snapshot >Store >Edit 6411.1: Shotbox >Register >Store/Recall >Edit In the above menus, an attempt was made to assign to a register that is locked. Unlock the register before carrying out the assignment.
	The file was not able to be read.	7142.1: File >Shotbox, Macro >File Edit In the above menu, [Off Line Edit] was pressed but the selected file could not be read. Select the file again, and press [Off Line Edit] once more.
	It was not possible to make a file.	7142.3: File >Shotbox, Macro >File Edit >Off Line Edit In the above menu, when storing, the file could not be written. Store once more.
	Failed...	7162: File >All, External File >Import/Export In the above menu, importing a file failed. Check the format of the original file, and try again.
	The Source and the target are the same directory. Please change the source or the target directory.	7172: File >Configure >Unit ID Copy In the above menu, the same directory and ID were selected for source and target. Select a different directory and ID.

### Extraction


	ERROR (-1).	2542: Frame Memory >File >Auto Extraction In the above menu, when [Extraction Start] is pressed, this message appears if an internal processing error occurs.
	Create thumbnail failed (-2).	2542: Frame Memory >File >Auto Extraction In the above menu, when [Extraction Start] is pressed, this message appears if thumbnail creation failed (internal processing error).
	Red Symbol file not match (-3).	2542: Frame Memory >File >Auto Extraction In the above menu, when [Extraction Start] is pressed, this message appears if a red marker frame file is invalid.
	Blue Symbol file not match (-4).	2542: Frame Memory >File >Auto Extraction In the above menu, when [Extraction Start] is pressed, this message appears if a blue marker frame file is invalid.
	No data between two symbol files (-5).	2542: Frame Memory >File >Auto Extraction In the above menu, when [Extraction Start] is pressed, this message appears if there is no data between two marker frames.
	Cannot find symbol file (-8).	2542: Frame Memory >File >Auto Extraction In the above menu, when [Extraction Start] is pressed, this message appears if a marker frame file was not found.
	Clip frame error (-10).	2542: Frame Memory >File >Auto Extraction In the above menu, when [Extraction Start] is pressed, this message appears if a clip frame count is invalid (internal processing error).
	Clip not found (-12).	2542: Frame Memory >File >Auto Extraction In the above menu, when [Extraction Start] is pressed, this message appears if the specified clip does not exist.
	Clip is playing or being edited (-13).	2542: Frame Memory >File >Auto Extraction In the above menu, when [Extraction Start] is pressed, this message appears if the specified clip is being played back or edited.

Icon	Message	Description
	Clip register error (-14).	2542: Frame Memory >File >Auto Extraction In the above menu, when [Extraction Start] is pressed, this message appears if the specified register number data cannot be processed (internal processing error).
	Can't extract pair clip (-15).	2542: Frame Memory >File >Auto Extraction In the above menu, when [Extraction Start] is pressed, this message appears if an attempt is made to extract a pair clip.
	Clip id not enough (-50).	2542: Frame Memory >File >Auto Extraction In the above menu, when [Extraction Start] is pressed, this message appears if there are 100 clips or more.
	Still frame on FM 2nd board (-51).	2542: Frame Memory >File >Auto Extraction In the above menu, when [Extraction Start] is pressed, this message appears if a still image was extracted from an external clip.
	Clip frame number can't be ODD in 720P format (-9).	2542: Frame Memory >File >Auto Extraction In the above menu, when [Extraction Start] is pressed, this message appears if an odd number of clips are extracted (720P format only).


### File Frame Memory

	Some requests are skipped. Following operation is not permitted. — Loading that will cause duplicate register name.	7151: File >Frame Memory 7162: File >All, External File >Import/Export In the above menus, an attempt was made to load a file of a name already existing in the register.
---	---	---


### File Open Status

	ERROR (01)	533X: Device >DDR/VTR When an error is returned from the DDR/VTR, one of these messages appears, depending on the error number. Use the following menus to check the device settings. 7325.4: Engineering Setup >Panel >Device Interface >Device Assign 7325.5: Engineering Setup >Panel >Device Interface >Serial Port Assign
	ERROR (02)	
	ERROR (FF): No target device has been assigned	




### GPI Input



	Please set Target.	7325.1/2: Engineering Setup >Panel >Device Interface >GPI Input 7357.2/3: Engineering Setup >Switcher >Device Interface >GPI Input In the above menus, when making a setting, a parameter setting value was incorrect. Check the settings, and try again.
	Please set Trigger Type.	
	Please set Reg No.	
	Please set Aux Bus No.	
	Please set Src No.	

### GPI Output


	Please set Target.	7325.3: Engineering Setup >Panel >Device Interface >GPI Output 7337.4: Engineering Setup >Switcher >Device Interface >GPI Output In the above menus, when making a setting, a parameter setting value was incorrect. Check the settings, and try again.
	Please set Trigger Type.	
	Please set Reg No.	
	Please set Pulse Width.	
	Please set Pulse Timing.	

### HDD Format




	No external HDD was found (-2).	2561: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Format In the above menu, when [5 Partition] or [15 Partition] is pressed, this message appears if the external HDD cannot be found. Check that the external HDD is correctly connected.
	Format operation failed (-11).	2561: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Format In the above menu, when [5 Partition] or [15 Partition] is pressed, this message appears if HDD formatting failed.
	Cannot access the partition (-12).	2561: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Format In the above menu, when [5 Partition] or [15 Partition] is pressed, this message appears if the external HDD logical drive could not be accessed. Check that the external HDD is correctly formatted.

Icon	Message	Description
	Cannot access the directory (-20).	2561: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Format In the above menu, when [5 Partition] or [15 Partition] is pressed, this message appears if an external HDD directory could not be accessed.
	The external HDD is busy (-22).	2561: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Format In the above menu, when [5 Partition] or [15 Partition] is pressed, this message appears if the external HDD is in use and cannot be accessed. Try again after you check that the access lamp of the HDD or the indicator of the menu is turned off.


### Import

	Cannot create the clip file, because the number of selected files is insufficient.	7162: File >All, External File >Import/Export In the above menu, when importing a clip file, this message appears if insufficient files are selected to make up the clip.
---	--	--


### Install

	No Task. Select a package on the list.	7316.10: Engineering Setup >System >Install/Unit Config >Install In the above menu, the package for installation was not selected. Select a package to be installed.
	An error occurred during the install process. For more details, see Page 9900.	7316.10: Engineering Setup >System >Install/Unit Config >Install In the above menu, the menu software installation package does not match the model on which it is to be installed.
	Not Found. The software package does not exist on the removable disk.	7316.10: Engineering Setup >System >Install/Unit Config >Install In the above menu, the software package to be installed was not found. Check that the removable disk is correctly inserted, and try the installation once more.


### Internal Error: Local Disk is unknown

	Local disk is incorrect or not formatted. To format the local disk, please execute "Format" on Page 7317.	When starting up the menu system, an error was found on the local disk. Execute format local disk in menu 7317 (Engineering Setup >System >Maintenance).
---	--	--



### Internal Error: Local Disk (System Data)

	The system data partition of local disk is damaged. The local disk needs to be reformatted. Please execute local disk format on Page 7317. Please make sure to save all data in the user data partition of local disk drive to any other device or media, before reformatted.	When starting up the menu system, an error was found on the local disk. Execute format local disk in menu 7317 (Engineering Setup >System >Maintenance).
---	--	--

### Internal Error: Local Disk (User Data)



	The user data partition of local disk is damaged, and all data is lost. The local disk needs to be reformatted. Please execute local disk format on Page 7317.	When starting up the menu system, an error was found on the local disk. Execute format local disk in menu 7317 (Engineering Setup >System >Maintenance).
---	--	--

### Invalid Name


	Empty...	2512: Frame Memory >Still >Freeze/Store In the above menu, a Store was carried out without specifying a name. Alternatively, 71XX: File Menu 7171: File>Configure>Directory In the above menus, when renaming a file or creating a directory, the name was not entered. Enter the name correctly.
	The file exists already...	2512: Frame Memory >Still >Freeze/Store In the above menu, the file name specified when [Store] was executed already exists in the switcher. Specify a different name.

Icon	Message	Description
------	---------	-------------


### Local Disk Format

	Failure. Local Disk device is busy. In order to complete local disk format, System needs to be restarted and formatted again. System will be restarted, then please execute local disk format again.	7317: Engineering Setup >System >Maintenance In the above menu, the local disk formatting procedure failed. If the local disk is functioning correctly, or in some cases when there is damage to the disk, it may not be possible to format the disk correctly in a single attempt. In such cases, it is necessary to restart the system, and then carry out formatting again. Press [OK] to restart the system.
	Success!! But some partitions cannot be created because the capacity of the local disk is not enough.	7317: Engineering Setup >System >Maintenance In the above menu, the local disk formatting procedure completed successfully.  However, because of insufficient local disk capacity, only the possible number of partitions were created.





### Password

	Password Incorrect	7317.1: Engineering Setup >System >Maintenance >Setup Operation Lock In the above menu, the wrong password was entered. Enter the correct password.
---	--------------------	---





### Record


	Cannot be executed. Maximum number of clips are created.	2523: Frame Memory >Clip >Record In the above menu, an attempt was made to execute [Rec Start] but the number of recorded clips had already reached its upper limit.
---	---	---

### Refresh Status














	No external HDD was found (-2).	2561: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Format 2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore In the above menus, an attempt was made to execute [Refresh Status] but the external HDD could not be recognized. Check that the external HDD is correctly connected.
	Cannot access the partition (-12).	2561: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Format 2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore In the above menus, an attempt was made to execute [Refresh Status] but the logical drives of the external HDD could not be accessed. Check that the external HDD is correctly formatted.
	Cannot access the directory (-20). Cannot access the directory (-21).	2561: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Format 2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore In the above menus, an attempt was made to execute [Refresh Status] but the directory of the external HDD could not be accessed.
	The external HDD is busy (-22).	2561: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Format 2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore In the above menus, an attempt was made to execute [Refresh Status] but the external HDD was busy and could not be accessed. Try again after you check that the access lamp of the HDD or the indicator of the menu is turned off.












### Rename

	This operation is inhibited because of the illegal combination in the selected files.	7151.1: File >Frame Memory >Frame Memory >File Edit In the above menu, this message appears if you select files of different types and press [Rename]. Check that the selected files are all of the same type.
	Files currently used for playback cannot be renamed.	2546: Frame Memory >File >Rename In the above menu, this message appears if [Rename] is pressed, when the selected files include a movie (clip) currently being played back.
	No external HDD was found (-2).	2546: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore In the above menu, when [Rename] is pressed, this message appears if the external HDD cannot be found. Check that the external HDD is correctly connected.
	Cannot access the directory (-20).	2546: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore In the above menu, when [Rename] is pressed, this message appears if an external HDD directory could not be accessed.


Icon	Message	Description
	The external HDD is busy (-22).	2546: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore In the above menu, when [Rename] is pressed, this message appears if the external HDD is in use and cannot be accessed. Try again after you check that the access lamp of the HDD or the indicator of the menu is turned off.

### Restore




	Success!! But some files were not restored.	2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore In the above menu, recalling a file from the external HDD was correctly done. However, some files were not restored because of a different video format or file corruption.
	Success!! But the number of folder exceeds the limit (-12) and the files expected for the folders were restored in the default folder. Or the name was changed because it was the same file name.	2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore In the above menu, recalling a file from the external HDD was correctly done. However, the limit on the number of folders was reached, and therefore files were restored to the default folder. Alternatively, the file name was changed because a file of the same name already exists.
	Success!! But the number of folder exceeds the max limit (12) and the files expected for the folders were restored in the default folder (-50)!	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, recalling a file from the external device was correctly done. However, the limit on the number of folders was reached, and therefore files were restored to the default folder.
	Success!! But some still files had been renamed because the same file name already existed (-51)!	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, recalling a file from the external device was correctly done. However, some files were renamed because of still image file name conflicts.
	Success!! But some Clip files had been renamed because the same Clip name already existed (-52)!	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, recalling a file from the external device was correctly done. However, some clips were renamed because of clip name conflicts.
	No external HDD was found (-2).	2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore In the above menu, an attempt was made to execute [Restore] but the external HDD could not be recognized. Check that the external HDD is correctly connected.
	Format operation failed (-10). Format operation failed (-11).	2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore When [Restore] was pressed in the above menu, formatting of the HDD failed.
	Cannot access the partition (-12).	2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore In the above menu, an attempt was made to execute [Restore] but the logical drives of the external HDD could not be accessed. Check that the external HDD is correctly formatted.
	Cannot access the directory (-20). Cannot access the directory (-21).	2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore In the above menu, an attempt was made to execute [Restore] but the directory of the external HDD could not be accessed.
	The external HDD is busy (-22).	2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore In the above menu, an attempt was made to execute [Restore] but the external HDD was busy and could not be accessed. Try again after you check that the access lamp of the HDD or the indicator of the menu is turned off.
	No file was found (-40).	2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore In the above menu, an attempt was made to execute [Restore] but the file to be written into the external HDD was not found.
	Restore operation failed (-42). Restore operation failed (-43). Restore operation failed (-46).	2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore In the above menu, an attempt was made to execute [Restore] but the recalling file from the external HDD was not completed correctly.
	No directory exists (-50).	2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore When [Restore] was pressed in the above menu, the specified directory does not exist.


Icon	Message	Description
	Rename operation failed (-52). Rename operation failed (-53).	2562: Frame Memory >External Device >Ext HDD Backup/Restore When [Restore] was pressed in the above menu, directory renaming failed.
	Invalid FM OutCh (-6).	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, when [Restore] is pressed, this message appears if the specified frame memory output channel cannot be used.
	Specified FM OutCh was locked (-7).	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, when [Restore] is pressed, this message appears if the specified frame memory output channel is locked.
	Restore failed, some Clip files cannot be deleted on this board (-8).	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, when [Restore] is pressed, this message appears if the restore failed because a clip file cannot be deleted.
	Not enough free register area for Backup or Restore process (-10).	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, when [Restore] is pressed, this message appears if there is not enough space to carry out the backup.
	Prepare failed, not any file was found on this board (-11).	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, when [Restore] is pressed, this message appears if no image is present.
	Prepare failed, insufficient Clip id (-15).	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, when [Restore] is pressed, this message appears if there are not enough Clip IDs (internal processing error).
	Restore failed, Cannot find symbol files on this tape (-18).	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, when [Restore] is pressed, this message appears if a marker frame file was not found.
	ERROR (-19). Bad register number.	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, when [Restore] is pressed, this message appears if Register Number is invalid (internal processing error)
	Restore failed, file name already exist, try to rename but unsuccessful (-20).	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, when [Restore] is pressed, this message appears if renaming failed.
	Cannot find the File Name Data, please load the File Name Data first (-21).	2565: Frame Memory >External Device >Restore from DDR/VTR In the above menu, when [Restore] is pressed, this message appears if the file list was not loaded.

### Set Time/Date

	Error: Wrong Format.	7317: Engineering Setup >System >Maintenance In the above menu, an incorrect date and time was specified. Specify the date and time correctly.
---	----------------------	---

### Trim

	The Start TC or Stop TC is not properly set.	2522: Frame Memory >Clip >Play In the above menu, when [Trim] is pressed, this message appears if neither Start TC not Stop TC is set.
2522: Frame Memory >Clip >Play In the above menu, when [Trim] is pressed, this message appears if the interval between Start TC (or Clip Begin) and Stop TC (or Clip End) is the entire clip.		
2522: Frame Memory >Clip >Play In the above menu, when [Trim] is pressed, this message appears if the Start TC (or Clip Begin) value is greater than the Stop TC (or Clip End) value.		
	This file is locked.	2522: Frame Memory >Clip >Play In the above menu, when [Trim] is pressed, this message appears if the file is locked.
	This file is using for playback.	2522: Frame Memory >Clip >Play In the above menu, when [Trim] is pressed, this message appears if the file is being played back.

Icon	Message	Description
<b>Warning</b>		
	This operation will be cancelled, because the register is locked. Please change the register status to be unlocked first.	6211.1: Effect >Master Timeline >Store >Edit 6311.1: Snapshot >Master Snapshot >Store >Edit 6411.1: Shotbox >Register >Store >Edit In the above menus, an attempt was made to store to a register that is locked. Unlock the register before carrying out the store.

## Error Messages Shown in the Error Information Menu

If a file transfer related error occurs, the Error Information menu appears to the following error messages.

Error message	Error description/measures
[Error] Server Not Respond	There is absolutely no response on the LAN from the processor. Check your LAN connections and the power source of the processor.
[Error] No Space	There is insufficient space in the local disk or removable disk.

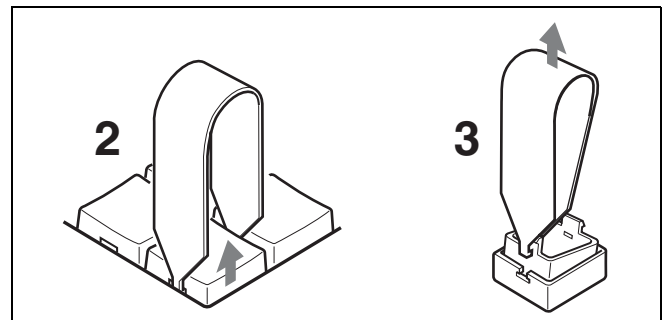
If a message other than those above appears, store the data or recall the data again. If the error message persists, contact your Sony service representative.

## Maintenance

### Exchanging Button Labels

A button top puller is supplied with the control panel. After changing a pattern assigned to a numeric button, you can use the following procedure to exchange the button label.

- 1** Write the new pattern on one of the supplied exchange labels.
- 2** Grip the holes on the button sides with the supplied button top puller and remove the button.
- 3** Grip the slots on the sides of the white button cap with the button top puller, so that the cap flexes slightly, and remove the cap.
- 4** Remove the old label and insert the new label.
- 5** Replace the button cap.
- 6** Replace the button in its original location.



---

## Care of the Control Panel

Clean the control panel unit, switches, and fader lever, by gently wiping with a soft dry cloth.

In the event of excessive grime, moisten the cloth with a little cold or lukewarm water, and wipe gently.

### Notes

Wring out all surplus water from the cloth before use, to prevent any surplus water from penetrating the panel.

Moisture inside the panel can cause it to fail.

Never use organic solvents, cleaners, or other chemicals.

Do not wipe with excessive force, as this may scratch the panel.



# Index

## Numerics

- 1st row 22
- 1ST ROW DSPLY button 23
- 2nd row 22
- 2ND ROW DSPLY button 23
- 9-pin port 254

## A

- Add Favorite button 33
- Additive mix 67
- Ancillary data 105, 111, 115
- Angle 86
- Animation 110
- Aspect ratio
  - setting 86, 89
- Attributes
  - effect 145
  - key snapshot 173
  - keyframe 164
  - snapshot 171
  - temporary attributes 168
  - type 145, 167
- Auto chroma key 69
- Auto transition 55
- Autoload function 202, 209, 214
- AUX bus control enable/disable 256
- AUX bus override 235
- AUX bus remote panel 288
- AUX bus settings 126
- AUX menu 126

## B

- Background 13
- Bank 168
- Blink 74
- Border 63
- BS button 35
- Bus fixed mode 56
- Bus override 168
- Bus selection 45
- Button assignment 227
  - user preference buttons 227
- Button numbers
  - cross-point control block 46
- Button operation mode 237

## C

- Caps Lock button 35
- Chroma key 67
  - adjustment 68
  - auto chroma keys 69

- composition 67
- Clear button 34, 35
- Clip transition 115
- Clips
  - operation 111
  - overview 111
- Close button 33, 34, 35
- Color backgrounds 122
- Color cancel
  - adjustment 69
  - overview 68
- Color copy/swap 124
- Color corrector
  - AUX bus 126
  - configuring 242
- Color matte settings 50
- Color palette window 36
- Color vector key 65
- Communications status 263
- Config menu 219, 240
- Constant duration mode 146
- Continuously capturing still images 109
- Control panel
  - button labels 309
  - care 310
  - connectors 43
  - power supply 42
  - shutdown 42
- Control panel settings 219
- Copy 123
  - operations 124, 125
- Cross-point assign tables 223, 226
- Cross-point button 22
  - inhibiting operation 46
- Cross-point control block 22
- Cut 55

## D

- Date and time 216
- DDR
  - recording 119
- Default recall button 32
- Del button 35
- Delay 147, 159
- Device control block 26
- Device Interface menu 254
  - control panel 230
- Device setup 215
- Diagnosis menu 263
- Directories 208
- Disk recorder 134, 234
- DME wipe copy/swap 124
- DME wipe modifiers 94
  - operations 100
- DME wipe modify clear 97, 101
- DME wipe pattern list 264

- DME wipe patterns
  - modifiers 94
  - operations 95
  - selecting 95
  - type 93
- DME wipe snapshots 99
  - operations 99
- DME wipes
  - independent key transitions 97
  - operations 95, 99
  - overview 93
- Drop border 63
- Duration
  - effect 146
  - keyframe 146
- Duration modes 146, 158
  - constant 146
  - variable 146

## E

- Edge fill
    - color mix 84
    - overview 64
  - Edge modifiers 63
    - wipe 83
  - Edit point 152
  - Effect 145
    - attributes 145, 164
    - duration 146, 159
    - editing 145
    - executing 148, 161
    - keyframes 17
    - register editing 164
    - resizer 80
    - saving 145, 162
    - status 164
    - time settings 146, 159
  - Emboss 63
  - Engineering setup 211
  - Enter button 34, 35
  - Error messages 298
    - Error Information menu message box 309
    - error status/log 299
    - Message box 300
  - Events 180
  - Exporting
    - files 207
    - source and destination names 226
  - Extended VTR 134, 235
  - External device 131
    - control port settings 125
  - External HDD 118
- ## F
- Fader lever operation 250

Fade-to-black 60, 250  
 setup 250  
 Features 12  
 Files 200  
 autoload function 202, 209  
 batch copying 207  
 batch loading 207  
 batch saving 206  
 copying 204  
 copying between different unit IDs 209  
 deleting 117, 205  
 frame memory 117  
 importing and exporting 207  
 loading 204  
 locking load operations 218  
 renaming 118, 205  
 saving 203  
 Flexi Pad 13, 28  
 assigning functions 222  
 DME wipe patterns 99  
 effects 161  
 key adjustment 74  
 keyframe 153  
 macros 182  
 master timeline 162  
 shotbox 179  
 snapshot 168  
 wipe patterns 90  
 Flip-flop mode and bus fixed mode 56  
 Format converter  
 conversion 244  
 output 248  
 setting 212  
 Frame memory  
 clip function 111  
 clip operation 111  
 extracting images 120  
 folders 114  
 menus 103  
 overview 102  
 pair files 117  
 still image operation 103  
 Frame memory clip 111  
 creating 114  
 playback 112  
 recalling 112  
 Frame memory folder 205  
 Function button area 32

## G

GPI devices 133  
 timeline 133  
 GPI input  
 control panel 230  
 switcher 254

GPI output  
 control panel 231  
 switcher 255  
 Group Tally menu 257

## H

HDD 118  
 formatting 118  
 partitions 118  
 HF buttons 31

## I

Image data  
 backing up and restoring 119  
 deleting 117  
 extracting 120  
 moving 117  
 pair file 117  
 renaming 118  
 still image operations 103  
 Independent key transition  
 combining with transitions 57  
 control block 24  
 DME wipes 97  
 execution section 25  
 operation 57  
 setting the transition rate 60  
 type selection buttons 26  
 wipe 87  
 wipe modifier 88  
 Initial Status Define, data saved by 298  
 Initialize menu 215  
 Input display 34, 35  
 Input menu 242  
 Install/Unit Config menu 215  
 Installation 215  
 Item display 34, 35

## K

Key active 68, 69  
 Key adjustments  
 Flexi Pad 74  
 menus 68  
 Key auto drop 251  
 KEY button 23  
 Key default 64  
 Key delegation buttons 26  
 Key edge modification 70  
 Key fill  
 color mix 67  
 selection 66  
 Key memory 64  
 Key modify clear 74  
 Key priority 251  
 displaying 50

operation mode 251  
 setting 49  
 Key rotation 77  
 Key settings  
 menu 64  
 Key snapshot 81  
 attributes 173  
 buttons 26  
 Key source  
 name display 26  
 selecting 66  
 switcher 66  
 Key types  
 overview 62  
 setting 65  
 Key wipe pattern key 65  
 Key/Wipe/FM/CCR menu 251  
 Keyboard window 35  
 Keyer copy/swap 123  
 Keyframe 17, 145, 148  
 copying 157  
 creating 154  
 deleting 156  
 duration 146, 159  
 inserting 154  
 modifying 154  
 moving 156  
 path 147, 159  
 time setting 146, 159  
 Keyframe loop 157  
 Keyframe pause 157  
 Keys 62  
 inserting and deleting 13  
 modifiers 63  
 output status 50  
 priority 49  
 K-SS STORE button 26

## L

Left button 35  
 Line feed button 35  
 Linear key 62  
 Link  
 cross-point buttons 252, 253  
 key transition 254  
 M/E 253  
 Link menu 252  
 Local disk 200  
 formatting 217  
 Locking 217  
 Loop 139  
 Luminance key 62

## M

M/E copy/swap 123

- Macro
  - auto insert mode 184
  - creating 181, 183, 186
  - editing 181, 183, 186
  - execution 182
  - execution mode 183, 238
  - file editing rules 289
  - menu macro 194
  - offline editing 188
  - online editing 186
  - operations 182
  - overview 180
  - registers 180, 182, 186
- Macro attachment 190
  - listing 193
  - macro execution 193
  - setting and canceling 191
- Macro register
  - editing 186
  - recalling 182
- Macro timeline 198
  - creating/editing 199
- Magnitude 86
- Main mask
  - operation 73
  - overview 64
- Maintenance menu 216, 238
- Mask processing order 251
- Masks
  - operation 73
  - overview 64
- Master region 144
- Master snapshot 167, 171, 173
- Master timeline 145, 148, 162
- Matte copy/swap 124
- Max./min. value indication 34
- Memory recall section 29
- Menu
  - basic operations 36
  - overview 30
  - recalling 36
  - screen 30
  - selecting 37
  - selecting list items 37
  - setting parameters 37
  - shortcut menus 38
  - top menu list 30
- MENU button 28
- Menu macro
  - creation/editing 196
  - executing 194
  - recalling a register 194
  - register editing 198
- Menu page number button 31
- Menu title button 31
- Menu tree 266
- Message box 309
- Minus button 34

- Misc menu 125
- Mix 47
- Mode selection buttons 28
- Mouse 38
- Mouse button settings 239
- Mouse wheel settings 239
- Multi viewer 248
- Multiplication 87, 89

## N

- Network Config menu 211
- Network settings 211
- Next transition
  - selection buttons 24
- Non-additive mix 47
- Non-sync state 56
- Normal edge 63
- Normal mix 67
- Numeric keypad window 34

## O

- Operation buttons 27
- Operation menu 235
- Operation settings 235
- Outline 63
- Output menu 246

## P

- Page number entry section 33
- Parameter group button 32
- Parameter setting buttons 32
- Parameters
  - initializing 38
  - setting 37
- Path 147
  - setting 159
- Pattern limit 53, 252
- P-Bus devices 132
  - timeline 132
- Positioner 85
  - setting 88
- POWER switch
  - control panel 42
  - switcher processor 39
- Power-on state 213
- Prefs/Utility menu 227
- Preset color mix 250
- Previous page button 32
- PRIOR SET button 25

## R

- Recalling a continuous sequence of
  - still images 110
- Record 109
- Recue 139

- Reference region 144
- Region 144
  - selecting 150, 152
- Region selection buttons 26, 29
- Register 144
  - effect 150
  - keyframe 150
  - macro 182
  - menu macro 194
  - shotbox 177
  - snapshot 168
- Register editing
  - effect 164
  - keyframe 164
  - macro 186
  - menu macro 198
  - shotbox 179
  - snapshot 174
- Register listing
  - effect 166
  - snapshot 174
- Removable disk 200, 216
- Reset/initialization 215
- Resizer 76
  - DME wipe pattern list 265
- Right button 35
- Rotation 86, 89
- Router destination 219
  - list display 127
  - source switching 127
- Router interface/tally setup 257
- Router menu 127, 257
- Router remote control 226
- Run mode 161

## S

- Safe title 125
- Saving/recalling
  - effect 145
  - setup data 214
- Screen saver 238
- Serial Tally menu 259
- Serial tally settings 259
- Setup 18
  - data saving/recalling 214
  - locking 217
  - switcher system 240
  - whole system 211
- Setup Define, data saved by 297
- Shadow 63
- SHIFT button 23
- Shift button 35
- Shift operation 224
- Shortcut menu 38
  - recalling 38
  - registering 38

Shotbox 176  
 execution 179  
 register creation 177  
 register editing 179  
 Show key 251  
 Shutdown button 33  
 Side flags  
 assigning a cross-point button 226  
 DME wipes 129  
 operations 128  
 overview 128  
 setup 241  
 wipes 129  
 Signal assignment and selection 45  
 Signal format 211  
 Signal input settings 242  
 Signal name display 47  
 Signal output settings 246  
 Signal selection 45  
 Snapshot 17  
 attributes 167  
 editing registers 174  
 operations 168, 171, 174  
 overview 167  
 status 173  
 types 167  
 Soft edge 63, 88  
 Source name displays 23  
 Source patch 261  
 Space button 35  
 Start Up menu 213, 214  
 Start-up state 213  
 Status area 32  
 Super mix 47  
 setting 50  
 Swap 123  
 operations 124  
 Switcher configuration 240  
 Switcher processor  
 connectors 40  
 power supply 39  
 System configuration examples 19  
 System maintenance 216

## T

Tally 257  
 copy settings 259  
 generation settings 258  
 group settings 257  
 Tally Copy menu 259  
 Tally Enable menu 258  
 TC button 34  
 Temporary attributes 145, 168  
 Through mode 242, 247  
 Thumbnail displays 108

Timeline  
 GPI 133  
 macro timeline 198  
 master timeline 148  
 P-Bus 132  
 VTR/Extended VTR/disk recorder 139  
 Timeline menu 149  
 Top menu list 30  
 Top menu selection buttons 33  
 Top menu window 33  
 Touch panel 239  
 Trackball 27  
 Trackball sensitivity 238  
 TRANS PVW button 25  
 Transition control block 24  
 Transition execution section 25  
 Transition menu 250  
 Transition preview mode 250  
 Transition rate  
 list display and settings 126  
 Transition rate setting  
 Flexi Pad 52  
 menu 53  
 Transition type  
 selection buttons 24, 48  
 Transitions 47  
 auto execution 55  
 basic operation procedure 48  
 manual execution 55  
 preview 57  
 Trim button 34

## U

User region setting 241  
 User setup 261  
 Utility 176

## V

Variable duration mode 146  
 Vertical blanking interval adjustment 247  
 VF buttons 31  
 Video clips 247  
 Video processing flow 44  
 Video signal adjustment 69, 70  
 Video switching 250  
 VTR  
 extracting images 120  
 recording 119  
 VTR/Extended VTR/disk recorder 134  
 cueup & play 137  
 operations 135  
 timeline 139

## W

Window  
 adjustment 70  
 overview 68  
 Wipe copy/swap 124  
 Wipe direction  
 menu 83  
 selection buttons 25  
 specification 88  
 Wipe modifiers  
 operation 83, 88, 91  
 Wipe modify clear 87, 92  
 Wipe pattern list 264  
 Wipe patterns  
 modifiers 83  
 possible modifiers 87  
 selection 83  
 Wipe snapshot 89  
 operation 89, 90  
 Wipes  
 independent key transition 87  
 operation 83, 90  
 overview 83  
 Wiring menu 258  
 Wiring settings 258

## X

Xpt Assign menu 223  
 XPT HOLD button 251

## Y

Y balance  
 adjustment 70  
 overview 68

## Z

Z-ring 28

The material contained in this manual consists of information that is the property of Sony Corporation and is intended solely for use by the purchasers of the equipment described in this manual.

Sony Corporation expressly prohibits the duplication of any portion of this manual or the use thereof for any purpose other than the operation or maintenance of the equipment described in this manual without the express written permission of Sony Corporation.

**Trademarks**

- Windows is either a registered trademark or a trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Adobe and Photoshop are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

The products or system names appearing in this document are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

Further, the ® or ™ symbols are not used in the text.